

Linux on System z



Device Drivers, Features, and Commands on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7

Linux on System z



Device Drivers, Features, and Commands on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7

Note

Before using this document, be sure to read the information in “Notices” on page 595.

This edition applies to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© Copyright IBM Corporation 2000, 2014.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

About this publication	vii
Part 1. General concepts	1
Chapter 1. How devices are accessed by Linux.	3
Chapter 2. Devices in sysfs	7
Chapter 3. Kernel and module parameters	21
Part 2. Storage	29
Chapter 4. DASD device driver	31
Chapter 5. SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver	65
Chapter 6. Storage-class memory device driver supporting Flash Express	101
Chapter 7. Channel-attached tape device driver.	105
Chapter 8. XPRAM device driver	115
Part 3. Networking	119
Chapter 9. qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets	123
Chapter 10. OSA-Express SNMP subagent support	185
Chapter 11. LAN channel station device driver	193
Chapter 12. CTCM device driver	199
Chapter 13. AF_IUCV address family support.	213
Part 4. z/VM virtual server integration	217
Chapter 14. z/VM concepts	219
Chapter 15. Writing kernel APPLDATA records	223
Chapter 16. Writing z/VM monitor records	229
Chapter 17. Reading z/VM monitor records	233
Chapter 18. z/VM recording device driver	239
Chapter 19. z/VM unit record device driver	247

Chapter 20. z/VM DCSS device driver	249
Chapter 21. Watchdog device driver.	261
Chapter 22. z/VM CP interface device driver	265
Chapter 23. z/VM special messages uevent support.	267
Chapter 24. Cooperative memory management	273
<hr/>	
Part 5. System resources	275
Chapter 25. Managing CPUs	277
Chapter 26. Managing hotplug memory	281
Chapter 27. Large page support	287
Chapter 28. S/390 hypervisor file system	291
Chapter 29. ETR- and STP-based clock synchronization	297
Chapter 30. Identifying the System z hardware	301
<hr/>	
Part 6. Security	303
Chapter 31. Generic cryptographic device driver	305
Chapter 32. Pseudo-random number device driver	319
<hr/>	
Part 7. Booting and shutdown	321
Chapter 33. Console device drivers	323
Chapter 34. Initial program loader for System z - zipl	347
Chapter 35. Booting Linux	375
Chapter 36. Suspending and resuming Linux.	395
Chapter 37. Shutdown actions	401
<hr/>	
Part 8. Performance measurement using hardware facilities.	405
Chapter 38. Channel measurement facility	407
Chapter 39. OProfile hardware sampling support	411
Chapter 40. Using the CPU-measurement counter facility	415
<hr/>	
Part 9. Diagnostics and troubleshooting	419

Chapter 41. Logging I/O subchannel status information	421
Chapter 42. Control program identification	423
Chapter 43. Activating automatic problem reporting	427
Chapter 44. Avoiding common pitfalls	429
<hr/> Part 10. Reference	433
Chapter 45. Commands for Linux on System z	435
Chapter 46. Selected kernel parameters	569
Chapter 47. Linux diagnose code use	587
<hr/> Part 11. Appendixes	589
Appendix A. Accessibility	591
Appendix B. Understanding syntax diagrams	593
Notices	595
Glossary	597
Bibliography	601
Index	605

About this publication

This publication describes the device drivers, features, and commands available to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for the control of IBM® System z® devices and attachments. Unless stated otherwise, in this book the terms *device drivers* and *features* are understood to refer to device drivers and features for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

Unless stated otherwise, all z/VM® related information in this document assumes a current z/VM version, see www.ibm.com/vm/techinfo.

In this document, System z is taken to include all IBM mainframe systems supported by Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z. In particular, this includes IBM zEnterprise® BC12 (zBC12), IBM zEnterprise EC12 (zEC12), IBM zEnterprise 196 (z196) and IBM zEnterprise 114 (z114) mainframes.

For a support matrix, see the Capabilities and Limits section in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux. The same Web page contains Technical Notes with details on various features and known issues.

You can find the latest version of this publication on the developerWorks® website at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_red_hat.html

How this publication is organized

The first part of this publication contains general and overview information for the System z device drivers for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

Part two contains chapters specific to individual storage device drivers.

Part three contains chapters specific to individual network device drivers.

Part four contains chapters that describe device drivers and features in support of z/VM virtual server integration.

Part five contains chapters about device drivers and features that help to manage the resources of the real or virtual hardware.

Part six contains chapters about device drivers and features that support security aspects of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

Part seven contains chapters about device drivers and features that are used in the context of booting and shutting down Linux.

Part eight contains chapters about assessing the performance of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

Part nine contains chapters about device drivers and features that are used in the context of diagnostics and problem solving.

Part ten contains chapters with reference information about commands, kernel parameters, and Linux use of z/VM DIAG calls.

Who should read this publication

Most of the information in this publication is intended for system administrators who want to configure Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

The following general assumptions are made about your background knowledge:

- You have an understanding of basic computer architecture, operating systems, and programs.
- You have an understanding of Linux and System z terminology.
- You are familiar with Linux device driver software.
- You are familiar with the System z devices attached to your system.

Programmers: Some sections are of interest primarily to specialists who want to program extensions to the Linux on System z device drivers and features.

Conventions and assumptions used in this publication

This section summarizes the styles, highlighting, and assumptions used throughout the publication.

Authority

Most of the tasks described in this document require a user with root authority. In particular, writing to procfs, and writing to most of the described sysfs attributes requires root authority.

Throughout this document, it is assumed that you have root authority.

Making changes persistent

This document describes how to change settings and options for mainframe computers in sysfs. In most cases, changes in sysfs are not persistent. If you need to make your changes persistent, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide* for details about the configuration files to use.

This document describes how to load modules with **modprobe**. Loading a module this way is not persistent across reboots. If you want to load your kernel modules automatically at boot time, see the section on persistent module loading in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

Terminology

In this document, the term *booting* is used for running boot loader code that loads the Linux operating system. *IPL* is used for issuing an IPL command, to load boot loader code, a stand-alone dump utility, or a DCSS. See also “IPL and booting” on page 375.

sysfs and procfs

In this document, the mount point for the virtual Linux file system sysfs is assumed to be /sys. Correspondingly, the mount point for procfs is assumed to be /proc.

debugfs

This document assumes that debugfs has been mounted at /sys/kernel/debug.

To mount debugfs, you can use this command:

```
# mount -t debugfs none /sys/kernel/debug
```

Documentation directory

This document sometimes refers to files in the Documentation directory in the Linux source tree.

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 the full path to this directory is:

/usr/share/doc/kernel-doc-<version>/Documentation

If this directory is not present, install the *kernel-doc-<version.el7>.noarch* RPM.

Number prefixes

In this publication, KB means 1024 bytes, MB means 1,048,576 bytes, and GB means 1,073,741,824 bytes.

Hexadecimal numbers

Mainframe documents and Linux documents tend to use different styles for writing hexadecimal numbers. Thirty-one, for example, would typically read X'1F' in a mainframe book and 0x1f in a Linux book.

Because the Linux style is required in many commands and is also used in some code samples, the Linux style is used throughout this publication.

Highlighting

This document uses the following highlighting styles:

- Paths and URLs are highlighted in monospace.
- Variables are highlighted in *<italics within angled brackets>*.
- Commands in text are highlighted in **bold**.
- Input and output as normally seen on a computer screen is shown

within a screen frame.
Prompts are shown as hash signs:
#

Other relevant Linux on IBM System z publications

Another Linux on IBM System z publication for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 is available on developerWorks.

You can find the latest versions of this publication at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_red_hat.html.

- Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, SC34-2711

For each of the following publications, the same web page points to the version that most closely reflects Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7:

- How to Improve Performance with PAV, SC33-8414

- *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413
- *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596
- *libica Programmer's Reference*, SC34-2602
- *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294
- *Linux on System z Troubleshooting*, SC34-2612

Finding IBM books

You can locate the latest versions of the referenced IBM books through the IBM Publications Center at:

www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order

Part 1. General concepts

Chapter 1. How devices are accessed by Linux	3
Device names, device nodes, and major/minor numbers	3
Network interfaces	4
Chapter 2. Devices in sysfs	7
Device categories	7
Device directories	8
Chapter 3. Kernel and module parameters	21
Specifying kernel parameters	21
Specifying parameters for modules	26

This information at an overview level describes concepts that apply across different device drivers and kernel features.

Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at
ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html

Chapter 1. How devices are accessed by Linux

Applications on Linux access character and block devices through device nodes, and network devices through network interfaces.

Device names, device nodes, and major/minor numbers

The Linux kernel represents character and block devices as pairs of numbers $\langle\text{major}\rangle:\langle\text{minor}\rangle$.

Some major numbers are reserved for particular device drivers. Other major numbers are dynamically assigned to a device driver when Linux boots. For example, major number 94 is always the major number for DASD devices while the device driver for channel-attached tape devices has no fixed major number. A major number can also be shared by multiple device drivers. See `/proc/devices` to find out how major numbers are assigned on a running Linux instance.

The device driver uses the minor number $\langle\text{minor}\rangle$ to distinguish individual physical or logical devices. For example, the DASD device driver assigns four minor numbers to each DASD: one to the DASD as a whole and the other three for up to three partitions.

Device drivers assign device names to their devices, according to a device driver-specific naming scheme (see, for example, “DASD naming scheme” on page 37). Each device name is associated with a minor number (see Figure 1).

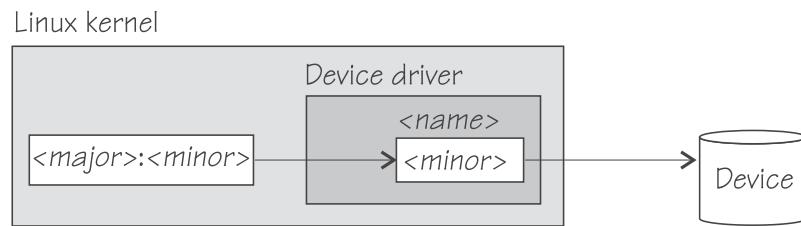


Figure 1. Minor numbers and device names

User space programs access character and block devices through *device nodes* also referred to as *device special files*. When a device node is created, it is associated with a major and minor number (see Figure 2).

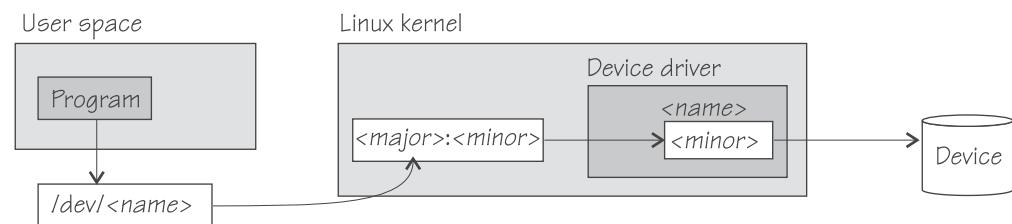


Figure 2. Device nodes

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses udev to create device nodes for you. There is always a device node that matches the device name that is used by the kernel, and additional nodes might be created by special udev rules. See the udev man page for more details.

Network interfaces

The Linux kernel representation of a network device is an interface.

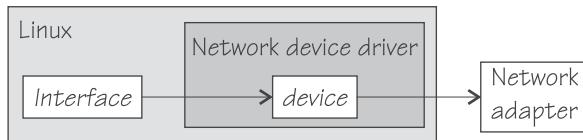


Figure 3. Interfaces

When a network device is defined, it is associated with a real or virtual network adapter (see Figure 3). You can configure the adapter properties for a particular network device through the device representation in sysfs (see “Device directories” on page 8).

You activate or deactivate a connection by addressing the interface with `ip` or an equivalent command. All interfaces that are provided by the System z specific network device drivers are interfaces for the Internet Protocol (IP).

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux, you configure network interfaces through the NetworkManager. Use the `nmcli` command line tool to interact with the NetworkManager.

Predictable network device names

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses predictable names for network devices. These names are stable across reboots and network adapter replacements.

Predictable naming is enabled by default. In this naming scheme, a System z network device has a name of the following form:

`<pf><type><bus_id>`

For example:

`enccw0.0.f5f0`

Where:

<pf> A two-character prefix for the network type. The type can be one of the following:

`en` - Ethernet

`ww` - WAN

`sl` - serial line, such as CTC

<type> The device type. The device type of CCW devices is `ccw`.

<bus_id>

The bus ID identifies the device within the scope of a Linux instance. For a CCW device, the bus ID is the device number of the device with a leading “`0.n.`”, where `n` is the subchannel set ID, for example, `0.1.0ab1`.

You can use **znetconf -c** or **lscss -a** to obtain a list of the devices in your system.

For more information about the predictable naming scheme, see the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Networking Guide* available at
https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

Matching devices with the corresponding interfaces

If you define multiple interfaces on a Linux instance, you must keep track of the interface names assigned to your network devices.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses predictable network names, which make it easy to match network devices with their interface names. The interface names are preserved across reboots.

How you can list interface names and devices depends on the network device driver. For qeth, you can use the **lsgqeth** command (see “[lsgqeth - List qeth-based network devices](#)” on page 509) to obtain a mapping. To see the mapping for CTC devices also, use **znetconf** (see “[znetconf - List and configure network devices](#)” on page 565).

After setting a device online, read `/var/log/messages` or issue **journctl** to find the associated interface name in the messages that are issued in response to the device being set online.

For each network device that is online, there is a symbolic link of the form `/sys/class/net/<interface>/device` where `<interface>` is the interface name. This link points to a sysfs directory that represents the corresponding network device. You can read this symbolic link with **readlink** to confirm that an interface name corresponds to a particular network device.

“[Device views in sysfs](#)” on page 11 tells you where you can find the device directories with their attributes in sysfs.

Main steps for setting up a network interface

The main steps apply to all Linux on System z network devices drivers. How to perform a particular step can be different for the different device drivers.

These steps create a qeth device with a predictable network interface name. It is not persistent and lost after reboot. To persistently configure a network device, use tools provided with Red Hat Enterprise Linux. See *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Networking Guide*.

Procedure

The main steps are:

1. Define a network device. The device driver creates directories that represent the device in sysfs.

Tip: Use the **znetconf** command to perform this step. See “[znetconf - List and configure network devices](#)” on page 565.

2. Configure the device through its attributes in sysfs (see “[Device views in sysfs](#)” on page 11).

Some devices have attributes that can or must be set later when the device is online or when the connection is active.

3. Set the device online.

This step makes the device known to the Linux network stack and associates the device with an interface name. For devices that are associated with a physical network adapter it also initializes the adapter for the network interface.

4. Configure and activate the interface.

This step adds interface properties like IP addresses, netmasks, and MTU to a network interface and makes the network interface available to user space programs.

Chapter 2. Devices in sysfs

Most of the device drivers create structures in sysfs. These structures hold information about individual devices and are also used to configure and control the devices.

Device categories

There are several Linux on System z specific device categories in the /sys/devices directory.

Figure 4 illustrates a part of sysfs.

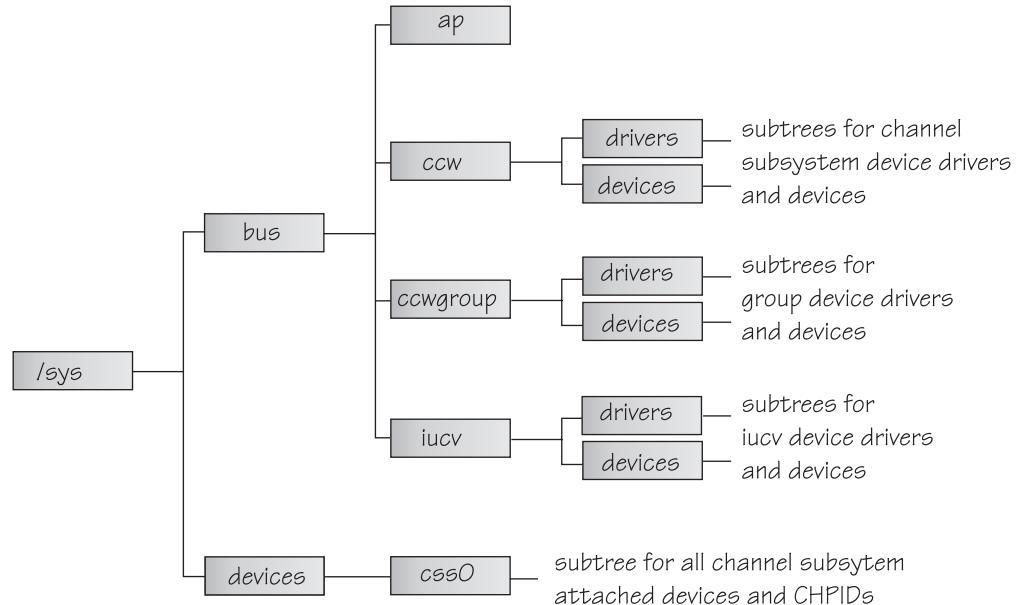


Figure 4. sysfs

/sys/bus and /sys/devices are common Linux directories. The directories following /sys/bus sort the device drivers according to the categories of devices they control. There are several categories of devices. The sysfs branch for a particular category might be missing if there is no device for that category.

AP devices

are adjunct processors used for cryptographic operations.

CCW devices

are devices that can be addressed with channel-command words (CCWs). These devices use a single subchannel on the mainframe's channel subsystem.

CCW group devices

are devices that use multiple subchannels on the mainframe's channel subsystem.

IUCV devices

are devices for virtual connections between z/VM guest virtual machines within an IBM mainframe. IUCV devices do not use the channel subsystem.

Table 1 lists the device drivers that have representation in sysfs:

Table 1. Device drivers with representation in sysfs

Device driver	Category	sysfs directories
3215 console	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3215
3270 console	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270
DASD	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/dasd-eckd /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/dasd-fba
SCSI-over-Fibre Channel	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp
Channel-attached tape	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/tape_34xx /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/tape_3590
Cryptographic	AP	/sys/bus/ap/drivers/cex3a
DCSS	n/a	/sys/devices/dcsselk
XPRAM	n/a	/sys/devices/system/xpram
z/VM recording	IUCV	/sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr
qeth (OSA-Express features and HiperSockets™)	CCW group	/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth
LCS	CCW group	/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs
CTCM	CCW group	/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm

Some device drivers do not relate to physical devices that are connected through the channel subsystem. Their representation in sysfs differs from the CCW and CCW group devices, for example, the Cryptographic device drivers have their own category, AP.

The following sections provide more details about devices and their representation in sysfs.

Device directories

Each device that is known to Linux is represented by a directory in sysfs.

For CCW and CCW group devices the name of the directory is a *bus ID* that identifies the device within the scope of a Linux instance. For a CCW device, the bus ID is the device's device number with a leading "0.n.", where n is the subchannel set ID. For example, 0.1.0ab1.

CCW group devices are associated with multiple device numbers. For CCW group devices, the bus ID is the primary device number with a leading "0.n.", where n is the subchannel set ID.

"Device views in sysfs" on page 11 tells you where you can find the device directories with their attributes in sysfs. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses configuration files to control devices. For example, network devices have interface scripts called /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-<interface-name>. See the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Networking Guide* for details about configuration files.

Device attributes

The device directories contain attributes. You control a device by writing values to its attributes.

Some attributes are common to all devices in a device category, other attributes are specific to a particular device driver. The following attributes are common to all CCW devices:

online

You use this attribute to set the device online or offline. To set a device online, write the value 1 to its online attribute. To set a device offline, write the value 0 to its online attribute.

cutype

specifies the control unit type and model, if applicable. This attribute is read-only.

cmb_enable

enables I/O data collection for the device. See “Enabling, resetting, and switching off data collection” on page 408 for details.

devtype

specifies the device type and model, if applicable. This attribute is read-only.

availability

indicates whether the device can be used. The following values are possible:

good

This is the normal state. The device can be used.

boxed

The device is locked by another operating system instance and cannot be used until the lock is surrendered or the DASD is accessed by force (see “Accessing DASD by force” on page 46).

no device

Applies to disconnected devices only. The device disappears after a machine check and the device driver requests to keep the device online anyway. Changes back to “good” when the device returns after another machine check and the device driver accepts the device back.

no path

Applies to disconnected devices only. After a machine check or a logical vary off, no path remains to the device. However, the device driver keeps the device online. Changes back to “good” when the path returns after another machine check or logical vary on and the device driver accepts the device back.

modalias

contains the module alias for the device. It is of the format:

`ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model>`

or

`ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model>dt<dev_type>dm<dev_model>`

Setting attributes

Directly write to attributes or, for CCW devices, use the **chccwdev** command to set attribute values.

Procedure

- You can set a writable attribute by writing the designated value to the corresponding attribute file.
- For CCW devices, you can also use the **chccwdev** command (see “chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes” on page 436) to set attributes.

With a single **chccwdev** command you can:

- Set an attribute for multiple devices
- Set multiple attributes for a device, including setting the device online
- Set multiple attributes for multiple devices

Working with newly available devices

Errors can occur if you try to work with a device before its sysfs representation is completely initialized.

About this task

When new devices become available to a running Linux instance, some time elapses until the corresponding device directories and their attributes are created in sysfs. Errors can occur if you attempt to work with a device for which the sysfs structures are not present or are not complete. These errors are most likely to occur and most difficult to handle when you are configuring devices with scripts.

Procedure

Use the following steps before you work with a newly available device to avoid such errors:

1. Attach the device, for example, with a z/VM CP ATTACH command.
2. Assure that the sysfs structures for the new device are complete.

```
# echo 1 > /proc/cio_settle
```

This command returns control after all pending updates to sysfs are complete.

Tip: For CCW devices, you can omit this step if you then use **chccwdev** (see “chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes” on page 436) to work with the devices. **chccwdev** triggers **cio_settle** for you and waits for **cio_settle** to complete.

3. Assure that udev actions for the new device are complete.

```
# udevadm settle
```

The **settle** command returns control after all pending events are complete.

Results

You can now work with the new device. For example, you can set the device online or set attributes for the device.

Device views in sysfs

sysfs provides multiple views of device specific data.

The most important views are:

- “Device driver view”
- “Device category view”
- “Device view” on page 12
- “Channel subsystem view” on page 12

Many paths in sysfs contain device bus-IDs to identify devices. Device bus-IDs of subchannel-attached devices are of the form:

0.n.dddd

where n is the subchannel set-ID and dddd is the device ID.

Device driver view

This view groups devices by the device drivers that control them.

The device driver view is of the form:

/sys/bus/<bus>/drivers/<driver>/<device_bus_id>

where:

<bus> is the device category, for example, ccw or ccwgroup.

<driver>

is a name that specifies an individual device driver or the device driver component that controls the device (see Table 1 on page 8).

<device_bus_id>

identifies an individual device (see “Device directories” on page 8).

Note: DCSSs and XPRAM are not represented in this view.

Examples

- This example shows the path for an ECKD™ type DASD device:
/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/dasd-eckd/0.0.b100
- This example shows the path for a qeth device:
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100
- This example shows the path for a cryptographic device (a CEX3A card):
/sys/bus/ap/drivers/cex3a/card3b

Device category view

This view groups devices by major categories that can span multiple device drivers.

The device category view does not sort the devices according to their device drivers. All devices of the same category are contained in a single directory. The device category view is of the form:

/sys/bus/<bus>/devices/<device_bus_id>

where:

<bus> is the device category, for example, ccw or ccwgroup.

<device_bus_id>

identifies an individual device (see “Device directories” on page 8).

Note: DCSSs and XPRAM are not represented in this view.

Examples

- This example shows the path for a CCW device.

/sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100

- This example shows the path for a CCW group device.

/sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.a100

- This example shows the path for a cryptographic device:

/sys/bus/ap/devices/card3b

Device view

This view sorts devices according to their device drivers, but independent from the device category. It also includes logical devices that are not categorized.

The device view is of the form:

/sys/devices/<driver>/<device>

where:

<driver>

is a name that specifies an individual device driver or the device driver component that controls the device.

<device>

identifies an individual device. The name of this directory can be a device bus-ID or the name of a DCSS or IUCV device.

Examples

- This example shows the path for a qeth device.

/sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a100

- This example shows the path for a DCSS block device.

/sys/devices/dcssblk/mydcss

Channel subsystem view

The channel subsystem view shows the relationship between subchannels and devices.

The channel subsystem view is of the form:

/sys/devices/css0/<subchannel>

where:

<subchannel>

is a subchannel number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID.

I/O subchannels show the devices in relation to their respective subchannel sets and subchannels. An I/O subchannel is of the form:

/sys/devices/css0/<subchannel>/<device_bus_id>

where:

<subchannel>

is a subchannel number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID.

<device_bus_id>

is a device number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID (see “Device directories” on page 8).

Examples

- This example shows a CCW device with device number 0xb100 that is associated with a subchannel 0x0001.

/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0001/0.0.b100

- This example shows a CCW device with device number 0xb200 that is associated with a subchannel 0x0001 in subchannel set 1.

/sys/devices/css0/0.1.0001/0.1.b200

- The entries for a group device show as separate subchannels. If a CCW group device uses three subchannels 0x0002, 0x0003, and 0x0004 the subchannel information could be:

/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0002/0.0.a100

/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0003/0.0.a101

/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0004/0.0.a102

Each subchannel is associated with a device number. Only the primary device number is used for the bus ID of the device in the device driver view and the device view.

- This example lists the information available for a non-I/O subchannel with which no device is associated:

```
ls /sys/devices/css0/0.0.ff00/  
bus driver modalias subsystem type uevent
```

Subchannel attributes

There are sysfs attributes that represent subchannel properties, including common attributes and information specific to the subchannel type.

Subchannels have two common attributes:

type

The subchannel type, which is a numerical value, for example:

- 0 for an I/O subchannel
- 1 for a CHSC subchannel
- 3 for an EADM subchannel

modalias

The module alias for the device of the form css:t<n>, where <n> is the subchannel type (for example, 0 or 1).

These two attributes are the only ones that are always present. Some subchannels, like I/O subchannels, might contain devices and further attributes.

Apart from the bus ID of the attached device, I/O subchannel directories typically contain these attributes:

chpids

is a list of the channel-path identifiers (CHPIIDs) through which the device is connected. See also “Channel path ID information” on page 15.

pimpampom

provides the path installed, path available, and path operational masks. See *z/Architecture Principles of Operation*, SA22-7832 for details about the masks.

Channel path measurement

A sysfs attribute controls the channel path measurement facility of the channel subsystem.

`/sys/devices/css0/cm_enable`

With the `cm_enable` attribute you can enable and disable the extended channel-path measurement facility. It can take the following values:

- 0** Deactivates the measurement facility and remove the measurement-related attributes for the channel paths. No action if measurements are not active.
- 1** Attempts to activate the measurement facility and create the measurement-related attributes for the channel paths. No action if measurements are already active.

If a machine does not support extended channel-path measurements the `cm_enable` attribute is not created.

Two sysfs attributes are added for each channel path object:

cmg Specifies the channel measurement group or unknown if no characteristics are available.

shared

Specifies whether the channel path is shared between LPARs or unknown if no characteristics are available.

If measurements are active, two more sysfs attributes are created for each channel path object:

measurement

A binary sysfs attribute that contains the extended channel-path measurement data for the channel path. It consists of eight 32-bit values and must always be read in its entirety, or 0 will be returned.

measurement_chars

A binary sysfs attribute that is either empty, or contains the channel measurement group dependent characteristics for the channel path, if the channel measurement group is 2 or 3. If not empty, it consists of five 32-bit values.

Examples

- To turn measurements on issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/css0/cm_enable
```

- To turn measurements off issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/css0/cm_enable
```

Channel path ID information

All CHPIDs that are known to Linux are shown alongside the subchannels in the /sys/devices/css0 directory.

The directories that represent the CHPIDs have the form:

/sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>

where <chpid> is a two digit hexadecimal CHPID.

Example: /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a

Setting a CHPID logically online or offline

Directories that represent CHPIDs contain a status attribute that you can use to set the CHPID logically online or offline.

About this task

When a CHPID has been set logically offline from a particular Linux instance, the CHPID is, in effect, offline for this Linux instance. A CHPID that is shared by multiple operating system instances can be logically online to some instances and offline to others. A CHPID can also be logically online to Linux while it has been varied off at the SE.

Procedure

To set a CHPID logically online, set its status attribute to online by writing the value on to it. To set a CHPID logically offline, set its status attribute to offline by writing off to it.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<CHPID>/status
```

where:

<CHPID>

is a two digit hexadecimal CHPID.

<value>

is either on or off.

Examples

- To set a CHPID 0x4a logically offline issue:

```
# echo off > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status
```

- To read the status attribute to confirm that the CHPID is logically offline issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status  
offline
```

- To set the same CHPID logically online issue:

```
# echo on > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status
```

- To read the status attribute to confirm that the CHPID is logically online issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status
online
```

Configuring a CHPID on LPAR

For Linux in LPAR mode, directories that represent CHPIDs contain a configure attribute that you can use to query and change the configuration state of I/O channel-paths.

About this task

The following configuration changes are supported:

- From standby to configured (“configure”)
- From configured to standby (“deconfigure”)

Procedure

To configure a CHPID, set its configure attribute by writing the value 1 to it. To deconfigure a CHPID, set its configure attribute by writing 0 to it.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<CHPID>/configure
```

where:

<CHPID>
is a two digit hexadecimal CHPID.

<value>
is either 1 or 0.

To query and set the configure value using commands, see “chchp - Change channel path status” on page 438 and “lschp - List channel paths” on page 497.

Examples

- To set a channel path with the ID 0x40 to standby issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure
```

This operation is equivalent to performing a Configure Channel Path Off operation on the hardware management console.

- To read the configure attribute to confirm that the channel path has been set to standby issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure
0
```

- To set the same CHPID to configured issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure
```

This operation is equivalent to performing a Configure Channel Path On operation on the hardware management console.

- To read the status attribute to confirm that the CHPID has been set to configured issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure  
1
```

Finding the physical channel associated with a CHPID

Use the mapping of physical channel IDs (PCHID) to CHPIDs to find the hardware from the CHPID number or the CHPID numbers from the PCHID.

About this task

A CHPID is associated with either a physical port or with an internal connection defined inside the mainframe, such as HiperSockets. See Figure 5. You can determine the PCHID or internal channel ID number associated with a CHPID number.

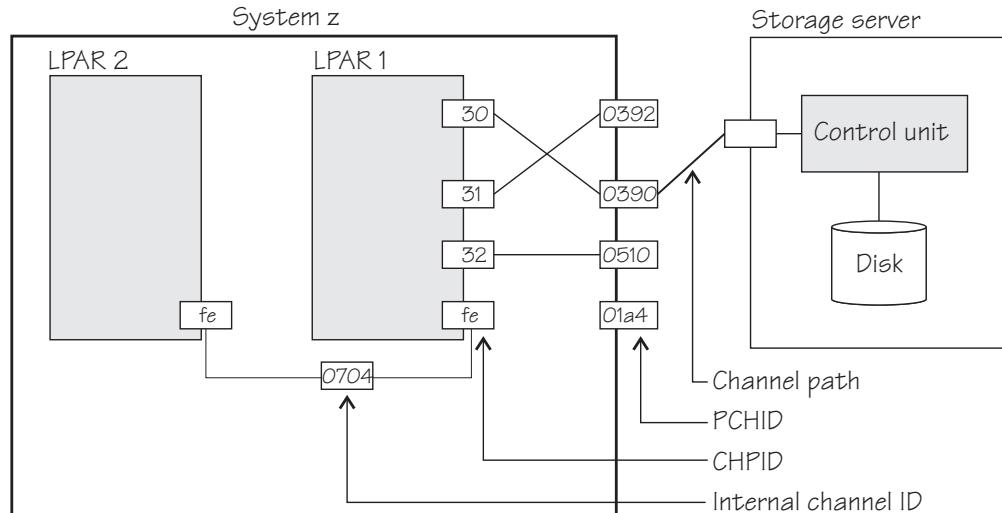


Figure 5. Relationships between CHPIDs, PCHIDs, and internal channel ID numbers.

Knowing the PCHID number can be useful in the following situations:

- When Linux indicates that a CHPID is in an error state, you can use the PCHID number to identify the associated hardware.
- When a hardware interface requires service action, the PCHID mapping can be used to determine which CHPIDs and I/O devices will be affected.

The internal channel ID number can be useful to determine which CHPIDs are connected to the same communication path, such as a HiperSockets link.

Procedure

To find the physical channel ID corresponding to a CHPID, either:

- Display the mapping of all CHPIDs to PCHIDs. Issue the **lschp** command:

```
# lschp
```

- Find the channel-ID related files for the CHPID. These sysfs files are located under /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<num>, where <num> is the two-digit, lower-case, hexadecimal CHPID number. There are two attribute files:

chid The channel ID number.

chid_external

A flag indicating whether this CHPID is associated with an internal channel ID (value 0) or a physical channel ID (value 1).

The sysfs attribute files are not created when no channel ID information is available to Linux. For Linux on z/VM, the availability of this information depends on the z/VM version and configuration. For Linux in LPAR mode, this information is always available.

Example

The **lschp** command shows channel ID information in a column labeled PCHID. Internal channel IDs are enclosed in brackets. If no channel ID information is available, the column will show "-".

```
# lschp
CHPID Vary Cfg. Type Cmg Shared PCHID
=====
0..30 1 1 1b 2 1 0390
0..31 1 1 1b 2 1 0392
0..32 1 1 1b 2 1 0510
0..33 1 1 1b 2 1 0512
0..34 1 0 1b - - 0580
0..fc 1 1 24 3 1 (0702)
0..fd 1 1 24 3 1 (0703)
0..fe 1 1 24 3 1 (0704)
```

This example shows that CHPID 30 is associated with PCHID 0390, while CHPID fe is associated with internal channel ID 0704.

Alternatively, check the channel ID sysfs files, for example for CHPID 30:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.30/chid
0390
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.30/chid_external
1
```

CCW hotplug events

A hotplug event is generated when a CCW device appears or disappears with a machine check.

The hotplug events provide the following variables:

CU_TYPE

for the control unit type of the device that appeared or disappeared.

CU_MODEL

for the control unit model of the device that appeared or disappeared.

DEV_TYPE

for the type of the device that appeared or disappeared.

DEV_MODEL

for the model of the device that appeared or disappeared.

MODALIAS

for the module alias of the device that appeared or disappeared. The module alias is the same value that is contained in /sys/devices/css0/
<subchannel_id>/<device_bus_id>/modalias and is of the
format ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model> or
ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model>dt<dev_type>dm<dev_model>

Hotplug events can be used, for example, for:

- Automatically setting devices online as they appear
- Automatically loading driver modules for which devices have appeared

Chapter 3. Kernel and module parameters

Kernel and module parameters are used to configure the kernel and kernel modules.

Individual kernel parameters or module parameters are single keywords or keyword/value pairs of the form keyword=<value> with no blank. Blanks separate consecutive parameters.

Kernel parameters and module parameters are encoded as strings of ASCII characters. For tape or the z/VM reader as a boot device, the parameters can also be encoded in EBCDIC.

Use *kernel parameters* to configure the base kernel and any optional kernel parts that have been compiled into the kernel image. Use *module parameters* to configure separate kernel modules. Do not confuse kernel and module parameters. Although a module parameter can have the same syntax as a related kernel parameter, kernel and module parameters are specified and processed differently.

Where possible, this document describes kernel parameters with the device driver or feature to which they apply. Kernel parameters that apply to the base kernel or cannot be attributed to a particular device driver or feature are described in Chapter 46, “Selected kernel parameters,” on page 569. You can also find descriptions for most of the kernel parameters in Documentation/kernel-parameters.txt in the Linux source tree.

Separate kernel modules must be loaded before they can be used. Many modules are loaded automatically by Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 when they are needed. To keep the module parameters in the context of the device driver or feature module to which they apply, this document describes module parameters as part of the syntax you would use to load the module with modprobe.

To find the separate kernel modules for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, list the contents of the subdirectories of /lib/modules/<kernel-release> in the Linux file system. In the path, <kernel-release> denotes the kernel level. You can query the value for <kernel-release> with uname -r.

Specifying kernel parameters

There are different methods for passing kernel parameters to the Linux kernel.

- Including kernel parameters in a boot configuration
- Using a kernel parameter file
- Specifying kernel parameters when booting Linux

Kernel parameters that you specify when booting Linux are not persistent. To define a permanent set of kernel parameters for a Linux instance, include these parameters in the boot configuration.

Note: Parameters that you specify on the kernel parameter line might interfere with parameters that Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 sets for you. Read /proc/cmdline to find out which parameters were used to start a running Linux instance.

Including kernel parameters in a boot configuration

Use the `zipl` tool to create Linux boot configurations for IBM mainframe systems.

Which sources of kernel parameters you can use depends on the mode in which you run `zipl`. See “`zipl` modes and syntax overview” on page 348 for details.

Running `zipl` in configuration-file mode

In configuration-file mode, you issue the `zipl` command with command arguments that identify a section in a `zipl` configuration file.

You specify details about the boot configuration in the configuration file.

As shown in Figure 6, there are three sources of kernel parameters for `zipl` in configuration-file mode.

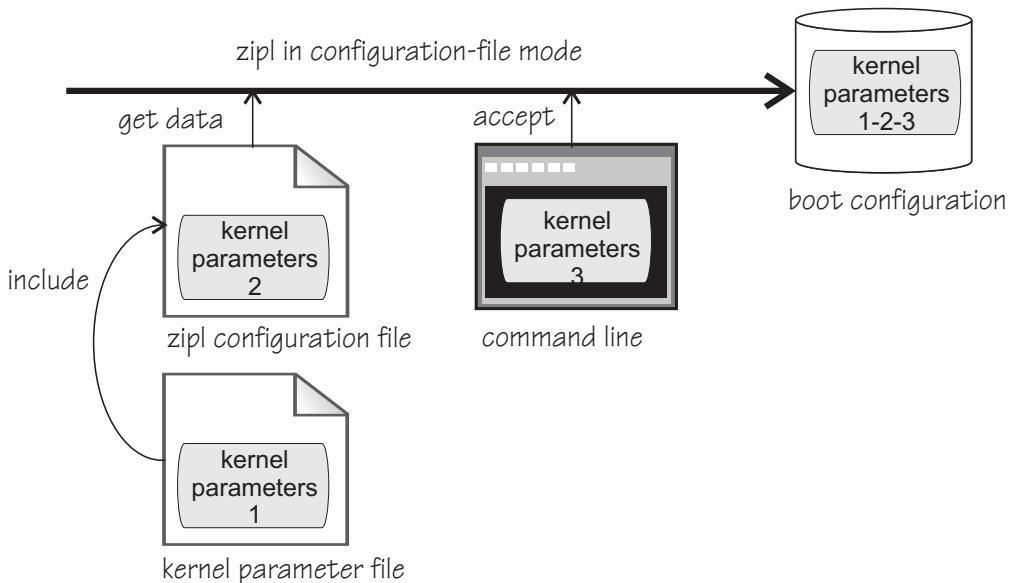


Figure 6. Sources of kernel parameters for `zipl` in configuration-file mode

In configuration-file mode, `zipl` concatenates the kernel parameters in the order:

1. Parameters that are specified in the kernel parameter file
2. Parameters that are specified in the `zipl` configuration-file
3. Parameters that are specified on the command line

See “`zipl` modes and syntax overview” on page 348 for details about the `zipl` command modes.

Running `zipl` in command-line mode

In command-line mode, you specify the details about the boot configuration to be created as arguments for the `zipl` command.

As shown in Figure 7 on page 23, there are two sources of kernel parameters for `zipl` in command-line mode.

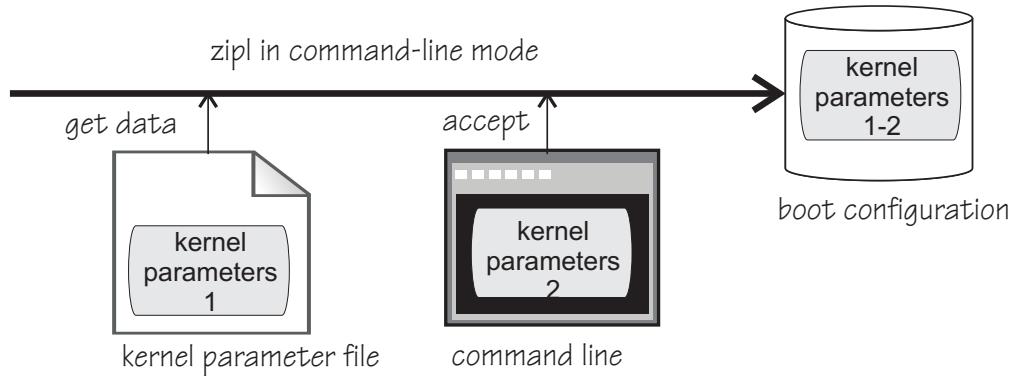


Figure 7. Sources of kernel parameters for zipl in command-line mode

In command-line mode, **zipl** concatenates the kernel parameters in the order:

1. Parameters that are specified in the kernel parameter file
2. Parameters that are specified on the command line

See “zipl modes and syntax overview” on page 348 for details about the **zipl** command modes.

Conflicting settings and limitations

There is an override order for conflicting kernel parameter settings and there are multiple length limitations.

If the resulting parameter string in the boot configuration contains conflicting settings, the last specification in the string overrides preceding ones.

The kernel parameter file can contain 895 characters of kernel parameters plus an end-of-line character.

In total, the parameter string in the boot configuration is limited to 895 characters. If your specifications exceed this limit, the parameter string in the boot configuration is truncated after the 895th character.

This limitation applies to the parameter string in the boot configuration. You can provide additional parameters when booting Linux. Linux accepts up to 4096 characters of kernel parameters in total. See “Adding kernel parameters to a boot configuration” on page 24.

Using a kernel parameter file

For booting Linux from the z/VM reader, you can use a kernel parameter file in the reader.

See “Booting from the z/VM reader” on page 382 for more details.

Specifying kernel parameters when booting Linux

Depending on the boot device and whether you boot Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine or in LPAR mode, you can provide kernel parameters when you start the boot process.

zipl interactive boot menu on DASD

When booting Linux with a zipl interactive boot menu on a DASD boot device, you can display the menu and specify kernel parameters as you

select a boot configuration. See “Example for a DASD menu configuration on z/VM” on page 379 and “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 386 for details.

z/VM guest virtual machine with a CCW boot device

When booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine from a CCW boot device, you can use the PARM parameter of the IPL command to specify kernel parameters. CCW boot devices include DASD, tape, the z/VM reader, and NSS.

For details, see the subsection of “Booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine” on page 378 that applies to your boot device.

z/VM guest virtual machine with a SCSI boot device

When booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine from a SCSI boot device, you can use the SET LOADDEV command with the SCPDATA option to specify kernel parameters. See “Booting from a SCSI device” on page 380 for details.

LPAR mode with a SCSI boot device

When booting Linux in LPAR mode from a SCSI boot device, you can specify kernel parameters in the **Operating system specific load parameters** field on the HMC Load panel. See Figure 66 on page 386.

Kernel parameters as entered from a CMS or CP session are interpreted as lowercase on Linux.

Adding kernel parameters to a boot configuration

When booting a Linux instance, you can specify kernel parameters that are used in addition to parameters in the boot configuration.

By default, the kernel parameters you specify when booting are concatenated to the end of the kernel parameters in your boot configuration. In total, the combined kernel parameter string that is used for booting can be up to 4096 characters.

If kernel parameters are specified in a combination of methods, they are concatenated in the following order:

1. Kernel parameters that have been included in the boot configuration with zipl
2. DASD only: zipl kernel parameters that are specified with the interactive boot menu
3. Depending on where you are booting Linux:
 - z/VM: kernel parameters that are specified with the PARM parameter for CCW boot devices; kernel parameters specified as SCPDATA for SCSI boot devices
 - LPAR: kernel parameters that are specified on the HMC Load panel for CCW boot devices

If the combined kernel parameter string contains conflicting settings, the last specification in the string overrides preceding ones. Thus, you can specify a kernel parameter when booting to override an unwanted setting in the boot configuration.

Examples

- If the kernel parameters in your boot configuration include `possible_cpus=8` but you specify `possible_cpus=2` when booting, Linux uses `possible_cpus=2`.

- If the kernel parameters in your boot configuration include `resume=/dev/dasda2` to specify a disk from which to resume the Linux instance when it has been suspended, you can circumvent the resume process by specifying `noresume` when booting.

Replacing all kernel parameters in a boot configuration

Kernel parameters that you specify when booting can completely replace the kernel parameters in your boot configuration.

To replace all kernel parameters in your boot configuration, specify the new parameter string with a leading equal sign (=).

Note: This feature is intended for expert users who want to test a set of parameters. By replacing all parameters, you might inadvertently omit parameters that the boot configuration requires. Furthermore, you might omit parameters other than kernel parameters that Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 includes in the parameter string for use by the init process.

Read `/proc/cmdline` to find out with which parameters a running Linux instance was started (see also “Displaying the current kernel parameter line”).

Examples for kernel parameters

Typical parameters that are used for booting Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 configure the console and the suspend and resume function.

`conmode=<mode>, condev=<cuu>, and console=<name>`
to set up the Linux console. See “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 329 for details.

`resume=<partition>, noresume, no_console_suspend`
to configure suspend-and-resume support (see Chapter 36, “Suspending and resuming Linux,” on page 395).

See Chapter 46, “Selected kernel parameters,” on page 569 for more examples of kernel parameters.

Displaying the current kernel parameter line

Read `/proc/cmdline` to find out with which kernel parameters a running Linux instance was booted.

About this task

Apart from kernel parameters, which are evaluated by the Linux kernel, the kernel parameter line can contain parameters that are evaluated by user space programs, for example, modprobe.

See also “Displaying current IPL parameters” on page 389 about displaying the parameters that were used to IPL and boot the running Linux instance.

Procedure

- Read `/proc/cmdline`. For example:

```
# cat /proc/cmdline
vconsole.keymap=us
cio_ignore=all,!condev
crashkernel=auto
rd.zfcp=0.0.1707,0x500507630513c1ae,0x402140b600000000
```

```
rd.zfcp=0.0.1807,0x500507630508c1ae,0x402140b600000000
vconsole.font=latarcyrheb-sun16
LANG=en_US.UTF-8
BOOT_IMAGE=0
```

- Alternatively, use the **lsreipl** command. For example:

```
# lsreipl
Re-IPL type: fcp_dump
WWPN: 0x500507630513c1ae
LUN: 0x402140b600000000
Device: 0.0.1707
bootprog: 0
br_lba: 0
Bootparms: ""
```

Kernel parameters for rebooting

When rebooting, you can use the current kernel parameters or an alternative set of kernel parameters.

By default, Linux uses the current kernel parameters for rebooting. See “Rebooting from an alternative source” on page 391 about how to set up Linux to use different kernel parameters for re-IPL and the associated reboot.

Specifying parameters for modules

How to specify parameters for modules depends on how the module is loaded, for example, automatically, through a tool, or from the command line.

You can specify parameters for modules with the **modprobe** command or on the kernel parameter line. You can specify certain parameters for modules in a boot configuration. Avoid specifying the same parameter through multiple means.

Specifying module parameters with modprobe

If you load a module explicitly with a modprobe command, you can specify the module parameters as command arguments.

Module parameters that are specified as arguments to modprobe are effective until the module is unloaded only.

Note: Parameters that you specify as command arguments might interfere with parameters that Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 sets for you.

Specifying parameters on the kernel parameter line

Parameters that the kernel does not recognize as kernel parameters are ignored by the kernel and made available to user space programs.

One of these programs is modprobe, which Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses to load modules for you. modprobe interprets module parameters that are specified on the kernel parameter line if they are qualified with a leading module prefix and a dot.

For example, you can include a specification with `dasd_mod.dasd=` on the kernel parameter line. modprobe evaluates this specification as the `dasd=` module parameter when it loads the `dasd_mod` module.

Including parameters for modules in a boot configuration

Parameters for modules that are required early during the boot process must be included in the boot configuration.

About this task

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses an initial file system (initramfs) when booting. The initramfs does not contain device specifications. Instead, it takes parameters from **dracut** during the boot process. **dracut** obtains the parameters by parsing the kernel parameter line for parameters with an “rd.” prefix.

Anaconda writes information about devices that must be accessible during the boot process to `zipl.conf` for you. Examples are the device with the root file system and, if configured, the swap partition that is used to resume a suspended system.

Procedure

Follow these steps to provide parameters on a kernel command line to be evaluated, for example, by **dracut**:

1. With an “rd.” prefix, specify the parameters in `zipl.conf`. For example, to specify a DASD, use `rd.dasd=`. The parameters are lower case and are case-sensitive. See the **dracut** man page, `dracut.cmdline(7)`, for more details about parameters with an “rd.” prefix.
2. Run **zipl** to include the new parameter line in your boot configuration.

Part 2. Storage

Chapter 4. DASD device driver	31
Features	31
What you should know about DASD	32
Setting up the DASD device driver	41
Working with DASDs	44
Chapter 5. SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver	65
Features	65
What you should know about zfcp	65
Setting up the zfcp device driver	70
Working with FCP devices	72
Working with target ports	79
Working with SCSI devices	84
Confirming end-to-end data consistency checking	95
Scenario for finding available LUNs	96
zfcp HBA API support	97
Chapter 6. Storage-class memory device driver supporting Flash Express	101
What you should know about storage-class memory	101
Setting up the storage-class memory device driver	102
Working with storage-class memory increments	102
Chapter 7. Channel-attached tape device driver	105
Features	105
What you should know about channel-attached tape devices	105
Loading the tape device driver	108
Working with tape devices	108
Chapter 8. XPRAM device driver	115
XPRAM features	115
What you should know about XPRAM	115
Setting up the XPRAM device driver	116

There are several System z specific storage device drivers for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at
ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html

Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at
https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

Chapter 4. DASD device driver

The DASD device driver provides access to all real or emulated direct access storage devices (DASD) that can be attached to the channel subsystem of an IBM mainframe.

DASD devices include various physical media on which data is organized in blocks or records or both. The blocks or records in a DASD can be accessed for read or write in random order.

Traditional DASD devices are attached to a control unit that is connected to a mainframe I/O channel. Today, these real DASDs have been largely replaced by emulated DASDs. For example, emulated DASDs can be the volumes of the IBM System Storage® DS8000® Turbo, or the volumes of the IBM System Storage DS6000™. These emulated DASD are completely virtual and the identity of the physical device is hidden.

SCSI disks that are attached through an FCP channel are not classified as DASD. They are handled by the zfcp driver (see Chapter 5, “SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver,” on page 65).

Features

The DASD device driver supports a wide range of disk devices and disk functions.

- The DASD device driver has no dependencies on the adapter hardware that is used to physically connect the DASDs to the System z hardware. You can use any adapter that is supported by the System z hardware (see www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity for more information).
- The DASD device driver supports ESS virtual ECKD type disks
- The DASD device driver supports the control unit attached physical ECKD (Extended Count Key Data) and FBA (Fixed Block Access) devices as summarized in Table 2:

Table 2. Supported control unit attached DASD

Device format	Control unit type	Device type
ECKD	1750	3380 and 3390
ECKD	2107	3380 and 3390
ECKD	2105	3380 and 3390
ECKD	3990	3380 and 3390
ECKD	9343	9345
ECKD	3880	3390
FBA	6310	9336
FBA	3880	3370

All models of the specified control units and device types can be used with the DASD device driver. This includes large devices with more than 65520 cylinders, for example, 3390 Model A. Check the storage support statement to find out what works for a particular distribution.

- The DASD device driver provides a disk format with up to three partitions per disk. See “System z compatible disk layout” on page 33 for details.
- The DASD device driver provides an option for extended error reporting for ECKD devices. Extended error reporting can support high availability setups.
- The DASD device driver supports parallel access volume (PAV) and HyperPAV on storage devices that provide this feature.
- The DASD device driver supports High Performance FICON®, including multitrack requests, on storage devices that provide this feature.
- The DASD device driver supports large volumes (devices with more than 65520 cylinders, for example, 3390 Model A), solid state devices, and encrypted devices.

What you should know about DASD

The DASD device driver supports various disk layouts with different partitioning capabilities. The DASD device naming scheme helps you to keep track of your DASDs and DASD device nodes.

The IBM label partitioning scheme

Linux on System z supports the same standard DASD format that is also used by traditional mainframe operating systems, but it also supports any other Linux partition table.

The DASD device driver is embedded into the Linux generic support for partitioned disks. As a result, you can use any partition table format that is supported by Linux for your DASDs.

Traditional mainframe operating systems (such as, z/OS®, z/VM, and z/VSE®) expect a standard DASD format. In particular, the format of the first two tracks of a DASD is defined by this standard. These tracks include the System z IPL, label, and for some layouts VTOC records. Partitioning schemes for platforms other than System z generally do not preserve these mainframe specific records.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z includes the IBM label partitioning scheme that preserves the System z IPL, label, and VTOC records. With this partitioning scheme, Linux can share a disk with other mainframe operating systems. For example, a traditional mainframe operating system can handle backup and restore for a partition that is used by Linux.

The following sections describe the layouts that are supported by the IBM label partitioning scheme:

- “System z compatible disk layout” on page 33
- “Linux disk layout” on page 35
- “CMS disk layout” on page 36

DASD partitions

Partitioning DASD has the same advantages as for other disk types, but there are some prerequisites and a special tool, **fdasd**.

A DASD partition is a contiguous set of DASD blocks that is treated by Linux as an independent disk and by the traditional mainframe operating systems as a data set.

With the Linux disk layout (LDL) and the CMS disk layout, you always have a single partition only. This partition is defined by the LDL or CMS formatted area of the disk. With the compatible disk layout, you can have up to three partitions.

There are several reasons why you might want to have multiple partitions on a DASD, for example:

Limit data growth

Runaway processes or undisciplined users can consume disk space to an extend that the operating system runs short of space for essential operations. Partitions can help to isolate the space that is available to particular processes.

Encapsulate your data

If a file system gets damaged, this damage is likely to be restricted to a single partition. Partitioning can reduce the scope of data damage.

Recommendations:

- Use **fdasd** to create or alter partitions on ECKD type DASD that are formatted with the compatible disk layout. If you use another partition editor, it is your responsibility to ensure that partitions do not overlap. If they do, data damage occurs.
- Leave no gaps between adjacent partitions to avoid wasting space. Gaps are not reported as errors, and can be reclaimed only by deleting and re-creating one or more of the surrounding partitions and rebuilding the file system on them.

A disk need not be partitioned completely. You can begin by creating only one or two partitions at the start of your disk and convert the remaining space to a partition later.

There is no facility for moving, enlarging, or reducing partitions, because **fdasd** has no control over the file system on the partition. You can only delete and re-create them. Changing the partition table results in loss of data in all altered partitions. It is up to you to preserve the data by copying it to another medium.

System z compatible disk layout

With the compatible disk layout a DASD can have up to three partitions that can be accessed by traditional mainframe operating systems.

You can only format ECKD type DASD with the compatible disk layout.

Figure 8 illustrates a DASD with the compatible disk layout.



Figure 8. Compatible disk layout

The IPL records, volume label (VOL1), and VTOC of disks with the compatible disk layout are on the first two tracks of the disks. These tracks are not intended for use by Linux applications. Using the tracks can result in data loss.

Linux can address the device as a whole as `/dev/dasd<x>`, where `<x>` can be one to four letters that identify the individual DASD (see “DASD naming scheme” on page 37). See “DASD device nodes” on page 38 for alternative addressing possibilities.

Disks with the compatible disk layout can have one to three partitions. Linux addresses the first partition as `/dev/dasd<x>1`, the second as `/dev/dasd<x>2`, and the third as `/dev/dasd<x>3`.

You use the **dasdfmt** command (see “dasdfmt - Format a DASD” on page 464) to format a disk with the compatible disk layout. You use the **fdasd** command (see “fdasd – Partition a DASD” on page 479) to create and modify partitions.

Volume label

The volume label includes information about the disk layout, the VOLSER, and a pointer to the VTOC.

The DASD volume label is located in the third block of the first track of the device (cylinder 0, track 0, block 2). This block has a 4-byte key, and an 80-byte data area with the following content:

key for disks with the compatible disk layout, contains the four EBCDIC characters “VOL1” to identify the block as a volume label.

label identifier
is identical to the key field.

VOLSER

is a name that you can use to identify the DASD device. A volume serial number (VOLSER) can be one to six EBCDIC characters. If you want to use VOLSERs as identifiers for your DASD, be sure to assign unique VOLSERs.

You can assign VOLSERs from Linux by using the **dasdfmt** or **fdasd** command. These commands enforce that VOLSERs:

- Are alphanumeric
- Are uppercase (by uppercase conversion)
- Contain no embedded blanks
- Contain no special characters other than \$, #, @, and %

Tip: Avoid special characters altogether.

Note: The VOLSER values SCRTCH, PRIVAT, MIGRAT, or L`nnnnn` (An “L” followed by five digits) are reserved for special purposes by other mainframe operating systems and should not be used by Linux.

These rules are more restrictive than the VOLSERs that are allowed by the traditional mainframe operating systems. For compatibility, Linux tolerates existing VOLSERs with lowercase letters and special characters other than \$, #, @, and %. Enclose VOLSERs with special characters in single quotation marks if you must specify it, for example, as a command parameter.

VTOC address

contains the address of a standard IBM format 4 data set control block (DSCB). The format is: *cylinder* (2 bytes) *track* (2 bytes) *block* (1 byte).

All other fields of the volume label contain EBCDIC space characters (code 0x40).

VTOC

Instead of a regular Linux partition table, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z, like other System z operating systems, uses a Volume Table Of Contents (VTOC).

The VTOC contains pointers to the location of every data set on the volume. These data sets form the Linux partitions.

The VTOC is on the second track (cylinder 0, track 1). It contains a number of records, each written in a separate data set control block (DSCB). The number of records depends on the size of the volume:

- One DSCB that describes the VTOC itself (format 4)
- One DSCB that is required by other operating systems but is not used by Linux. **fdasd** sets it to zeros (format 5).
- For volumes with more than 65534 cylinders, 1 DSCB (format 7)
- For each partition:
 - On volumes with 65534 or less cylinders, 1 DSCB (format 1)
 - On volumes with more than 65534 cylinders, 1 format 8 and one format 9 DSCB

The key of the format 1 or format 8 DSCB contains the data set name, which identifies the partition to z/OS, z/VM, and z/VSE.

The VTOC can be displayed with standard System z tools such as VM/DITTO. A Linux DASD with physical device number 0x0193, volume label “LNX001”, and three partitions might be displayed like this example:

```
VM/DITTO DISPLAY VTOC          LINE 1 OF 5
====>                      SCROLL ==> PAGE

CUU,193 ,VOLSER,LNX001  3390, WITH   100 CYLS, 15 TRKS/CYL, 58786 BYTES/TRK

--- FILE NAME --- (SORTED BY =,NAME ,) ---- EXT   BEGIN-END      RELTRK,
1...5...10...15...20...25...30...35...40.... SQ    CYL-HD    CYL-HD      NUMTRKS
*** VTOC EXTENT ***
               0      0  1      0  1      1,1
LINUX.VLNX001.PART0001.NATIVE           0      0  2      46 11     2,700
LINUX.VLNX001.PART0002.NATIVE           0      46 12     66 11     702,300
LINUX.VLNX001.PART0003.NATIVE           0      66 12     99 14     1002,498
*** THIS VOLUME IS CURRENTLY 100 PER CENT FULL WITH      0 TRACKS AVAILABLE

PF 1=HELP      2=TOP      3=END      4=BROWSE     5=BOTTOM     6=LOCATE
PF 7=UP       8=DOWN     9=PRINT    10=RGT/LEFT  11=UPDATE   12=RETRIEVE
```

The **ls** command on Linux might list this DASD and its partitions like this example:

```
# ls -l /dev/dasda*
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 0 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 1 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda1
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 2 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda2
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 3 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda3
```

where dasda represent the whole DASD and dasda1, dasda2, and dasda3 represent the individual partitions.

Linux disk layout

The Linux disk layout does not have a VTOC, and DASD partitions that are formatted with this layout cannot be accessed by traditional mainframe operating systems.

You can format only ECKD type DASD with the Linux disk layout. Apart from accessing the disks as ECKD devices, you can also access them using the DASD DIAG access method. See “Enabling the DASD device driver to use the DIAG access method” on page 48 for how to enable DIAG.

Figure 9 illustrates a disk with the Linux disk layout.



Figure 9. Linux disk layout

DASDs with the Linux disk layout either have an LNX1 label or are not labeled. The first records of the device are reserved for IPL records and the volume label, and are not intended for use by Linux applications. All remaining records are grouped into a single partition. You cannot have more than a single partition on a DASD that is formatted in the Linux disk layout.

Linux can address the device as a whole as `/dev/dasd<x>`, where `<x>` can be one to four letters that identify the individual DASD (see “DASD naming scheme” on page 37). Linux can access the partition as `/dev/dasd<x>1`.

You use the **dasdfmt** command (see “dasdfmt - Format a DASD” on page 464) to format a disk with the Linux disk layout.

CMS disk layout

The CMS disk layout applies only to Linux on z/VM. The disks are formatted with z/VM tools.

Both ECKD or FBA type DASD can have the CMS disk layout. DASD partitions that are formatted with this layout cannot be accessed by traditional mainframe operating systems. Apart from accessing the disks as ECKD or FBA devices, you can also access them using the DASD DIAG access method.

Figure 10 illustrates two variants of the CMS disk layout.



Figure 10. CMS disk layout

The first variant contains IPL records, a volume label (CMS1), and a CMS data area. Linux treats DASD like this equivalent to a DASD with the Linux disk layout, where the CMS data area serves as the Linux partition.

The second variant is a CMS reserved volume. In this variant, the DASD was reserved by a CMS RESERVE fn ft fm command. In addition to the IPL records and the volume label, DASD with the CMS disk layout also have CMS metadata. The CMS reserved file serves as the Linux partition.

For both variants of the CMS disk layout, you can have only a single Linux partition. The IPL record, volume label and (where applicable) the CMS metadata, are not intended for use by Linux applications.

Addressing the device and partition is the same for both variants. Linux can address the device as a whole as /dev/dasd<x>, where <x> can be one to four letters that identify the individual DASD (see “DASD naming scheme”). Linux can access the partition as /dev/dasd<x>1.

“Enabling the DASD device driver to use the DIAG access method” on page 48 describes how you can enable DIAG.

Disk layout summary

The available disk layouts differ in their support of device formats, the DASD DIAG access method, and the maximum number of partitions.

Table 3. Disk layout summary

Disk Layout	ECKD device format	FBA device format	DIAG access method support (z/VM only)	Maximum number of partitions	Formatting tool
CDL	Yes	No	No	3	dasdfmt
LDL	Yes	No	Yes	1	dasdfmt
CMS (z/VM only)	Yes	Yes	Yes	1	z/VM tools

DASD naming scheme

The DASD naming scheme maps device names and minor numbers to whole DASDs and to partitions.

The DASD device driver uses the major number 94. For each configured device it uses four minor numbers:

- The first minor number always represents the device as a whole, including IPL, VTOC, and label records.
- The remaining three minor numbers represent the up to three partitions.

With 1,048,576 (20-bit) available minor numbers, the DASD device driver can address 262,144 devices.

The DASD device driver uses a device name of the form dasd<x> for each DASD. In the name, <x> is one to four lowercase letters. Table 4 on page 38 shows how the device names map to the available minor numbers.

Table 4. Mapping of DASD names to minor numbers

Name for device as a whole		Minor number for device as a whole		Number of devices
From	To	From	To	
dasda	dasdz	0	100	26
dasdaa	dasdzz	104	2804	676
dasdaaa	dasdzzz	2808	73108	17,576
dasdaaaa	dasdnwtl	73112	1048572	243,866
Total number of devices:				262,144

The DASD device driver also uses a device name for each partition. The name of the partition is the name of the device as a whole with a 1, 2, or 3 appended to identify the first, second, or third partition. The three minor numbers that follow the minor number of the device as a whole are the minor number for the first, second, and third partition.

Examples

- “dasda” refers to the whole of the first disk in the system and “dasda1”, “dasda2”, and “dasda3” to the three partitions. The minor number for the whole device is 0. The minor numbers of the partitions are 1, 2, and 3.
- “dasdz” refers to the whole of the 101st disk in the system and “dasdz1”, “dasdz2”, and “dasdz3” to the three partitions. The minor number for the whole device is 100. The minor numbers of the partitions are 101, 102, and 103.
- “dasdaa” refers to the whole of the 102nd disk in the system and “dasdaa1”, “dasdaa2”, and “dasdaa3” to the three partitions. The minor number for the whole device is 104. The minor numbers of the partitions are 105, 106, and 107.

DASD device nodes

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses udev to create multiple device nodes for each DASD that is online.

Device nodes based on device names

udev creates device nodes that match the device names used by the kernel. These standard device nodes have the form `/dev/<name>`.

The mapping between standard device nodes and the associated physical disk space can change, for example, when you reboot Linux. To ensure that you access the intended physical disk space, you need device nodes that are based on properties that identify a particular DASD.

udev creates additional device nodes that are based on the following information:

- The bus ID of the disk
- The disk label (VOLSER)
- The universally unique identifier (UUID) of the file system on the disk
- If available: The label of the file system on the disk

Device nodes based on bus IDs

udev creates device nodes of the form
`/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>`

for whole DASD and

`/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>-part<n>`

for the <n>th partition.

Device nodes that are based on VOLSERs

udev creates device nodes of the form

`/dev/disk/by-id/ccw-<volser>`

for whole DASD and

`/dev/disk/by-id/ccw-<volser>-part<n>`

for the <n>th partition.

If you want to use device nodes based on VOLSER, be sure that the VOLSERs in your environment are unique (see “Volume label” on page 34).

If you assign the same VOLSER to multiple devices, Linux can still access each device through its standard device node. However, only one of the devices can be accessed through the VOLSER-based device node. Thus, the node is ambiguous and might lead to unintentional data access.

Furthermore, if the VOLSER on the device that is addressed by the node is changed, the previously hidden device is not automatically addressed instead. To reassign the node, you must reboot Linux or force the kernel to reread the partition tables from disks, for example, by issuing:

```
# blockdev --rereadpt /dev/dasdzzz
```

You can assign VOLSERs to ECKD type devices with **dasdfmt** when formatting or later with **fdasd** when creating partitions.

Device nodes based on file system information

udev creates device nodes of the form

`/dev/disk/by-uuid/<uuid>`

where <uuid> is the UUID for the file system in a partition.

If a file system label exists, udev also creates a node of the form

`/dev/disk/by-label/<label>`

There are no device nodes for the whole DASD that are based on file system information.

If you want to use device nodes that are based on file system labels, be sure that the labels in your environment are unique.

Additional device nodes

`/dev/disk/by-id` contains additional device nodes for the DASD and partitions, that are all based on a device identifier as contained in the `uid` attribute of the DASD.

Note: If you want to use device nodes that are based on file system information and VOLSER, be sure that they are unique for the scope of your Linux instance. This information can be changed by a user or it can be copied, for example when backup disks are created. If two disks with the same VOLSER or UUID are online to the same Linux instance, the matching device node can point to either of these disks.

Example

For a DASD that is assigned the device name dasdzzz, has two partitions, a device bus-ID 0.0.b100 (device number 0xb100), VOLSER LNX001, and a UUID 6dd6c43d-a792-412f-a651-0031e631caed for the first and f45e955d-741a-4cf3-86b1-380ee5177ac3 for the second partition, udev creates the following device nodes:

For the whole DASD:

- /dev/dasdzzz (standard device node according to the DASD naming scheme)
- /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100
- /dev/disk/by-id/ccw-LNX001

For the first partition:

- /dev/dasdzzz1 (standard device node according to the DASD naming scheme)
- /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part1
- /dev/disk/by-id/ccw-LNX001-part1
- /dev/disk/by-uuid/6dd6c43d-a792-412f-a651-0031e631caed

For the second partition:

- /dev/dasdzzz2 (standard device node according to the DASD naming scheme)
- /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part2
- /dev/disk/by-id/ccw-LNX001-part2
- /dev/disk/by-uuid/f45e955d-741a-4cf3-86b1-380ee5177ac3

Accessing DASD by udev-created device nodes

Use udev-created device nodes to access a particular physical disk space, regardless of the device name that is assigned to it.

Example

The following example is based on these assumptions:

- A DASD with bus ID 0.0.b100 has two partitions.
- The standard device node of the DASD is dasdzzz.
- udev creates the following device nodes for a DASD and its partitions:

```
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100  
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part1  
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part2
```

Instead of issuing:

```
# fdasd /dev/dasdzzz
```

issue:

```
# fdasd /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100
```

In the file system information in /etc/fstab replace the following specifications:

```
/dev/dasdzzz1 /temp1 ext4 defaults 0 0  
/dev/dasdzzz2 /temp2 ext4 defaults 0 0
```

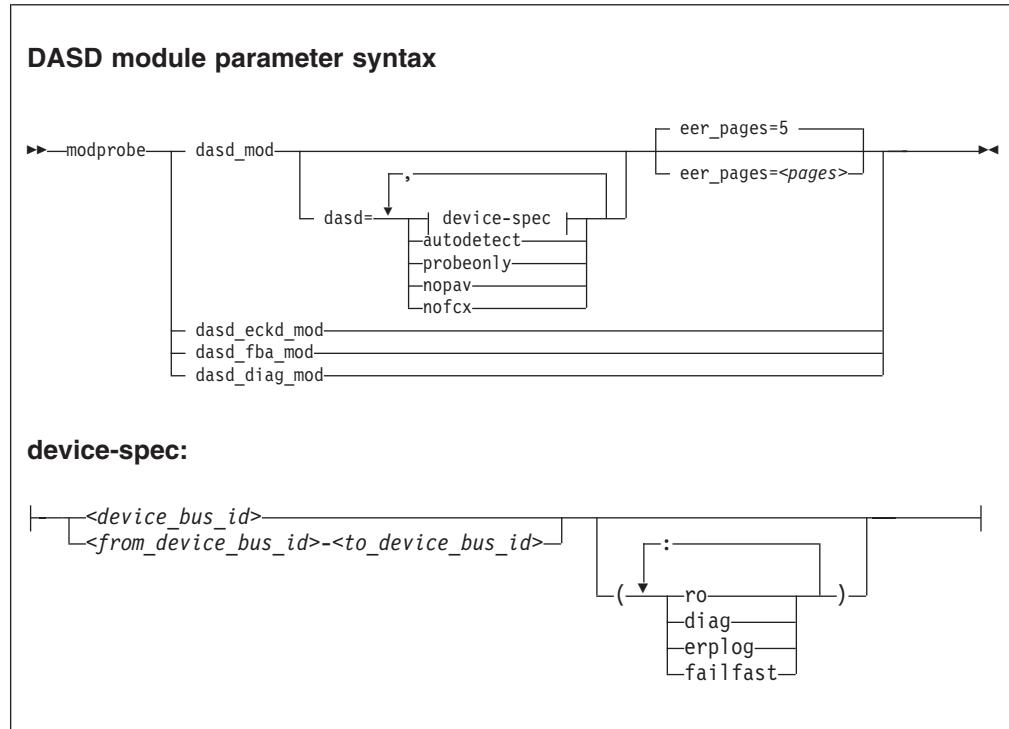
with these specifications:

```
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part1 /temp1 ext4 defaults 0 0
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part2 /temp2 ext4 defaults 0 0
```

You can make similar substitutions with other device nodes that udev provides for you (see “DASD device nodes” on page 38).

Setting up the DASD device driver

Unless the DASD device driver modules are loaded for you during the boot process, load and configure them with the **modprobe** command.



Where:

dasd_mod

loads the device driver base module.

When you are loading the base module you can specify the **dasd=** parameter.

You can use the **eer_pages** parameter to determine the number of pages that are used for internal buffering of error records.

autodetect

causes the DASD device driver to allocate device names and the corresponding minor numbers to all DASD devices and set them online during the boot process. See “DASD naming scheme” on page 37 for the naming scheme.

The device names are assigned in order of ascending subchannel numbers. Auto-detection can yield confusing results if you change your I/O configuration and reboot, or if your Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest because the devices might appear with different names and minor numbers after rebooting.

probeonly

causes the DASD device driver to reject any “open” syscall with EPERM.

autodetect,probeonly

causes the DASD device driver to assign device names and minor numbers as for auto-detect. All devices regardless of whether they are accessible as DASD return EPERM to any “open” requests.

nopav suppresses parallel access volume (PAV and HyperPAV) enablement for Linux instances that run in LPAR mode. The **nopav** keyword has no effect for Linux on z/VM.

nofcx suppresses accessing the storage server with the I/O subsystem in transport mode (also known as High Performance FICON).

<device_bus_id>
specifies a single DASD.

<from_device_bus_id>-<to_device_bus_id>
specifies the first and last DASD in a range. All DASD devices with bus IDs in the range are selected. The device bus-IDs *<from_device_bus_id>* and *<to_device_bus_id>* need not correspond to actual DASD.

(ro) accesses the specified device or device range in read-only mode.

(diag) forces the device driver to access the device (range) with the DIAG access method.

(erplog)
enables enhanced error recovery processing (ERP) related logging through syslogd. If **erplog** is specified for a range of devices, the logging is switched on during device initialization.

(failfast)

immediately returns “failed” for an I/O operation when the last path to a DASD is lost.

Attention: Enable immediate failure of I/O requests only in setups where a failed I/O request can be recovered outside the scope of a single DASD (see “Enabling and disabling immediate failure of I/O requests” on page 52).

dasd_eckd_mod

loads the ECKD module.

dasd_fba_mod

loads the FBA module.

dasd_diag_mod

loads the DIAG module.

If you supply a DASD module parameter with device specifications *dasd=<device-list1>,<device-list2> ...*, the device names and minor numbers are assigned in the order in which the devices are specified. The names and corresponding minor numbers are always assigned, even if the device is not present, or not accessible. For information about including device specifications in a boot configuration, see “Including parameters for modules in a boot configuration” on page 27.

If you use **autodetect** in addition to explicit device specifications, device names are assigned to the specified devices first and device-specific parameters, like **ro**, are honored. The remaining devices are handled as described for **autodetect**.

The DASD base component is required by the other modules. **modprobe** takes care of this dependency for you and ensures that the base module is loaded automatically, if necessary.

Hint: **modprobe** might return before udev has created all device nodes for the specified DASDs. If you need to assure that all nodes are present, for example in scripts, follow the **modprobe** command with:

```
# udevadm settle
```

For command details see the **modprobe** man page.

Example

The following example specifies a range of DASD devices and two individual DASD devices:

```
modprobe dasd_mod dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7002,0.0.7005(ro),0.0.7006
```

Table 5 shows the resulting allocation of device names:

Table 5. Example mapping of device names to devices

Name	To access
dasda	device 0.0.7000 as a whole
dasda1	the first partition on 0.0.7000
dasda2	the second partition on 0.0.7000
dasda3	the third partition on 0.0.7000
dasdb	device 0.0.7001 as a whole
dasdb1	the first partition on 0.0.7001
dasdb2	the second partition on 0.0.7001
dasdb3	the third partition on 0.0.7001
dasdc	device 0.0.7002 as a whole
dasdc1	the first partition on 0.0.7002
dasdc2	the second partition on 0.0.7002
dasdc3	the third partition on 0.0.7002
dasdd	device 0.0.7005 as a whole
dasdd1	the first partition on 0.0.7005 (read-only)
dasdd2	the second partition on 0.0.7005 (read-only)
dasdd3	the third partition on 0.0.7005 (read-only)
dasde	device 0.0.7006 as a whole
dasde1	the first partition on 0.0.7006
dasde2	the second partition on 0.0.7006
dasde3	the third partition on 0.0.7006

The following example specifies that High Performance FICON are to be suppressed for all DASDs:

```
modprobe dasd_mod dasd=nofcx,4711-4713
```

Working with DASDs

You might have to prepare DASD for use, configure troubleshooting functions, or configure special device features for your DASDs.

Most of the following tasks involve writing to and reading from device attributes in sysfs. This method is useful on a running system where you want to make dynamic changes. For changes that persist across IPLs, use the configuration file /etc/zipl.conf for DASDs that are part of the root file system and /etc/dasd.conf for data disks. An example of how to define a DASD device persistently is in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*. For a general discussion of configuration files, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

See “Working with newly available devices” on page 10 to avoid errors when you are working with devices that have become available to a running Linux instance.

- “Preparing an ECKD type DASD for use”
- “Preparing an FBA-type DASD for use” on page 46
- “Accessing DASD by force” on page 46
- “Enabling the DASD device driver to use the DIAG access method” on page 48
- “Using extended error reporting for ECKD type DASD” on page 49
- “Setting a DASD online or offline” on page 50
- “Enabling and disabling logging” on page 51
- “Enabling and disabling immediate failure of I/O requests” on page 52
- “Setting the timeout for I/O requests” on page 53
- “Working with DASD statistics in debugfs” on page 53
- “Accessing full ECKD tracks” on page 57
- “Handling lost device reservations” on page 59
- “Reading and resetting the reservation state” on page 60
- “Displaying DASD information” on page 61

Preparing an ECKD type DASD for use

Before you can use an ECKD type DASD as a Linux on System z disk, you must format it with a suitable disk layout. You must then create a file system or define a swap space.

Before you begin

- The modules for the base component and the ECKD component of the DASD device driver must have been loaded.
- The DASD device driver must have recognized the device as an ECKD type device.
- You must know the device bus-ID for your DASD.

About this task

If you format the DASD with the compatible disk layout, you must create one, two, or three partitions. You can then use your partitions as swap areas or to create a Linux file system.

Procedure

Perform these steps to prepare the DASD:

1. Issue **lsdasd** (see “**lsdasd - List DASD devices**” on page 503) to find out if the device is online. If necessary, set the device online using **chccwdev** (see “**chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes**” on page 436).

Example:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.b100
```

2. Format the device with the **dasdfmt** command (see “**dasdfmt - Format a DASD**” on page 464 for details). The formatting process can take hours for large DASDs. If you want to use the CMS disk layout, and your DASD is already formatted with the CMS disk layout, skip this step.

Tips:

- Use the largest possible block size, ideally 4096; the net capacity of an ECKD DASD decreases for smaller block sizes. For example, a DASD formatted with a block size of 512 byte has only half of the net capacity of the same DASD formatted with a block size of 4096 byte.
- Use the **-p** option to display a progress bar.

Example: Assuming that `/dev/dasdzzz` is a valid device node for 0.0.b100:

```
# dasdfmt -b 4096 -p /dev/dasdzzz
```

3. Proceed according to your chosen disk layout:

- If you have formatted your DASD with the Linux disk layout or the CMS disk layout, skip this step and continue with step 4. You already have one partition and cannot add further partitions on your DASD.
- If you have formatted your DASD with the compatible disk layout use the **fdasd** command to create up to three partitions (see “**fdasd – Partition a DASD**” on page 479 for details).

Example: To start the partitioning tool in interactive mode for partitioning a device `/dev/dasdzzz` issue:

```
# fdasd /dev/dasdzzz
```

If you create three partitions for a DASD `/dev/dasdzzz`, the device nodes for the partitions are `/dev/dasdzzz1`, `/dev/dasdzzz2`, and `/dev/dasdzzz3`.

Result: **fdasd** creates the partitions and updates the partition table (see “**VTOC**” on page 35).

4. Depending on the intended use of each partition, create a file system on the partition or define it as a swap space.
 - Either, create a file system. For example, use the Linux **mkfs.ext4** command to create an ext4 file system (see the man page for details).

Note: Do not make the block size of the file system smaller than the block size that was used for formatting the disk with the **dasdfmt** command.

Example:

```
# mkfs.ext4 -b 4096 /dev/DASDzzz1
```

- Or define the partition as a swap space with the **mkswap** command (see the man page for details).
5. Mount each file system to the mount point of your choice in Linux and enable your swap partitions.

Example: To mount a file system in a partition /dev/dasdzzz1 to a mount point /mnt and to enable a swap partition /dev/dasdzzz2 issue:

```
# mount /dev/dasdzzz1 /mnt
# swapon /dev/dasdzzz2
```

Preparing an FBA-type DASD for use

Before you can use an FBA-type DASD as a Linux on System z disk, you must create a file system or define a swap space.

Before you begin

- The modules for the base component and the FBA component of the DASD device driver must have been loaded.
- The DASD device driver must have recognized the device as an FBA device.
- You must know the device bus-ID or the device node through which the DASD can be addressed.

Procedure

Perform these steps to prepare the DASD:

1. Depending on the intended use of the partition, create a file system on it or define it as a swap space.
 - Either create a file system. For example, use the Linux **mkfs.ext4** command to create an ext4 file system (see the man page for details).

Example:

```
# mke2fs -b 4096 /dev/dasdzy1
```

- Or define the partition as a swap space with the **mkswap** command (see the man page for details).
2. Mount the file system to the mount point of your choice in Linux or enable your swap partition.

Example: To mount a file system in a partition /dev/dasdzy1 issue:

```
# mount /dev/dasdzy1 /mnt
```

What to do next

To access FBA devices, use the DIAG access method (see “Enabling the DASD device driver to use the DIAG access method” on page 48 for more information).

Accessing DASD by force

A Linux instance can encounter DASDs that are locked by another system.

Such a DASD is referred to as “externally locked” or “boxed”. The Linux instance cannot analyze a DASD while it is externally locked.

About this task

To check whether a DASD has been externally locked, read its availability attribute. This attribute should be “good”. If it is “boxed”, the DASD has been externally locked. Because a boxed DASD might not be recognized as DASD, it might not show up in the device driver view in sysfs. If necessary, use the device category view instead (see “Device views in sysfs” on page 11).

CAUTION:

Breaking an external lock can have unpredictable effects on the system that holds the lock.

Procedure

1. Optional: To read the availability attribute of a DASD, issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/availability
```

Example: This example shows that a DASD with device bus-ID 0.0.b110 (device number 0xb110) has been externally locked.

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b110/availability  
boxed
```

If the DASD is an ECKD type DASD and if you know the device bus-ID, you can break the external lock and set the device online. This means that the lock of the external system is broken with the “unconditional reserve” channel command.

2. To force a boxed DASD online, write force to the online device attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo force > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Example: To force a DASD with device number 0xb110 online issue:

```
# echo force > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b110/online
```

Results

If the external lock is successfully broken or if the lock has been surrendered by the time the command is processed, the device is analyzed and set online. If it is not possible to break the external lock (for example, because of a timeout, or because it is an FBA-type DASD), the device remains in the boxed state. This command might take some time to complete.

For information about breaking the lock of a DASD that has already been analyzed see “tunedasd - Adjust low-level DASD settings” on page 552.

Enabling the DASD device driver to use the DIAG access method

Linux on z/VM can use the DIAG access method to access DASDs with the help of z/VM functions.

Before you begin

This section applies only to Linux instances and DASD for which all of the following conditions are true:

- The Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest.
- The device can be of type ECKD with either LDL or CMS disk layout, or it can be a device of type FBA.
- The module for the DIAG component must be loaded.
- The module for the component that corresponds to the DASD type (dasd_eckd_mod or dasd_fba_mod) must be loaded.
- The DASD is offline.
- The DASD does not represent a parallel access volume alias device.

About this task

You can use the DIAG access method to access both ECKD and FBA-type DASD. You use the device's use_diag sysfs attribute to enable or switch off the DIAG access method in a system that is online. Set the use_diag attribute to 1 to enable the DIAG access method. Set the use_diag attribute to 0 to switch off the DIAG access method (this is the default).

Alternatively, you can specify diag on the command line, for example during IPL, to force the device driver to access the device (range) with the DIAG access method.

Procedure

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/use_diag
```

where *<device_bus_id>* identifies the DASD.

If the DIAG access method is not available and you set the use_diag attribute to 1, you cannot set the device online (see “Setting a DASD online or offline” on page 50).

Note: When switching between an enabled and a disabled DIAG access method on FBA-type DASD, first reinitialize the DASD, for example, with CMS format or by overwriting any previous content. Switching without initialization might cause data-integrity problems.

For more details about DIAG, see *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6179.

Example

In this example, the DIAG access method is enabled for a DASD with device number 0xb100.

1. Ensure that the driver is loaded:

```
# modprobe dasd_diag_mod
```

2. Identify the sysfs CCW-device directory for the device in question and change to that directory:

```
# cd /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/
```

3. Ensure that the device is offline:

```
# echo 0 > online
```

4. Enable the DIAG access method for this device by writing '1' to the use_diag sysfs attribute:

```
# echo 1 > use_diag
```

5. Use the online attribute to set the device online:

```
# echo 1 > online
```

Using extended error reporting for ECKD type DASD

Control the extended error reporting feature for individual ECKD type DASD through the eer_enabled sysfs attribute. Use the character device of the extended error reporting module to obtain error records.

Before you begin

To use the extended error reporting feature, you need ECKD type DASD

About this task

The extended error reporting feature is turned off by default.

Procedure

To enable extended error reporting, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/eer_enabled
```

where /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id> represents the device in sysfs. When it is enabled on a device, a specific set of errors generates records and might have further side effects.

Disable extended error reporting, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/eer_enabled
```

What to do next

You can obtain error records for all DASD for which extended error reporting is enabled from the character device of the extended error reporting module, /dev/dasd_eer. The device supports these file operations:

open

Multiple processes can open the node concurrently. Each process that opens the

node has access to the records that are created from the time the node is opened. A process cannot access records that were created before the process opened the node.

close

You can close the node as usual.

read

Blocking read and non-blocking read are supported. When a record is partially read and then purged, the next read returns an I/O error -EIO.

poll

The poll operation is typically used with non-blocking read.

Setting a DASD online or offline

Use the **chccwdev** command or the **online** sysfs attribute of the device to set DASDs online or offline.

About this task

When Linux boots, it senses your DASD. Depending on your specification for the “dasd=” parameter, it automatically sets devices online.

Procedure

Use the **chccwdev** command (“**chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes**” on page 436) to set a DASD online or offline.

Alternatively, you can write 1 to the device's **online** attribute to set it online or 0 to set it offline. In contrast to the sysfs attribute, the **chccwdev** command triggers a **cio_settle** for you and waits for the **cio_settle** to complete.

Outstanding I/O requests are canceled when you set a device offline. To wait indefinitely for outstanding I/O requests to complete before setting the device offline, use the **chccwdev** option **--safeoffline** or the sysfs attribute **safe_offline**. When you set a DASD offline, the deregistration process is synchronous, unless the device is disconnected. For disconnected devices, the deregistration process is asynchronous.

Examples

- To set a DASD with device bus-ID 0.0.b100 online, issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.b100
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/online
```

- To set a DASD with device bus-ID 0.0.b100 offline, issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.b100
```

or

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/online
```

- To complete outstanding I/O requests and then set a DASD with device bus-ID 0.0.4711 offline, issue:

```
# chccwdev -s 0.0.4711
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.4711/safe_offline
```

If an outstanding I/O request is blocked, the command might wait forever. Reasons for blocked I/O requests include reserved devices that can be released or disconnected devices that can be reconnected.

1. Try to resolve the problem that blocks the I/O request and wait for the command to complete.
2. If you cannot resolve the problem, issue **chccwdev -d** to cancel the outstanding I/O requests. The data is lost.

Dynamic attach and detach

You can dynamically attach devices to a running Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z instance, for example, from z/VM.

When a DASD is attached, Linux attempts to initialize it according to the DASD device driver configuration. You can then set the device online. You can automate setting dynamically attached devices online by using CCW hotplug events (see “CCW hotplug events” on page 18).

Attention: Do not detach a device that is still being used by Linux. Detaching devices might cause the system to hang or crash. Ensure that you unmount a device and set it offline before you detach it.

See “Working with newly available devices” on page 10 to avoid errors when working with devices that have become available to a running Linux instance.

Be careful to avoid errors when working with devices that have become available to a running Linux instance.

Enabling and disabling logging

Use the dasd= kernel or module parameter or use the erplog sysfs attribute to enable or disable error recovery processing (ERP) logging.

Procedure

You can enable and disable error recovery processing (ERP) logging on a running system. There are two methods:

- Use the dasd= parameter when you load the base module of the DASD device driver.

Example:

To define a device range (0.0.7000-0.0.7005) and enable, change the parameter line to contain:

```
dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7005(erplog)
```

- Use the sysfs attribute erplog to turn ERP-related logging on or off.

Logging can be enabled for a specific device by writing 1 to the erplog attribute.

Example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/erplog
```

To disable logging, write 0 to the `erplog` attribute.

Example:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/erplog
```

Enabling and disabling immediate failure of I/O requests

Prevent devices in mirror setups from being blocked while paths are unavailable by making I/O requests fail immediately.

About this task

By default, if all path have been lost for a DASD, the corresponding device in Linux waits for one of the paths to recover. I/O requests are blocked while the device is waiting.

If the DASD is part of a mirror setup, this blocking might cause the entire virtual device to be blocked. You can use the `failfast` attribute to immediately return I/O requests as failed while no path to the device is available.

Attention: Use this attribute with caution and only in setups where a failed I/O request can be recovered outside the scope of a single DASD.

Procedure

Use one of these methods:

- You can enable immediate failure of I/O requests when you load the base module of the DASD device driver.

Example:

To define a device range (0.0.7000-0.0.7005) and enable immediate failure of I/O requests specify:

```
dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7005(failfast)
```

- You can use the sysfs attribute `failfast` of a DASD to enable or disable immediate failure of I/O requests on or off.

To enable immediate failure of I/O requests, write 1 to the `failfast` attribute.

Example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/failfast
```

To disable immediate failure of I/O requests, write 0 to the `failfast` attribute.

Example:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/failfast
```

Setting the timeout for I/O requests

The timeout specifies how long Linux is to wait for a response from a storage server before it considers an I/O requests failed and cancels it.

About this task

The default timeout for DASD I/O requests depends on the type of DASD:

ECKD uses the default that is provided by the storage server.

FBA 300 s

DIAG 50 s

Procedure

You can use the `expires` attribute of a DASD to change the timeout value for that DASD.

1. To find out the current timeout value issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/expires
```

2. To set the timeout to a different value issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <timeout> > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/expires
```

where:

`<timeout>`

is the new timeout value in seconds. The value must be an integer in the range 1 - 40,000,000.

`<device_bus_id>`

is the device bus-ID of the DASD.

Example

This example reads the current timeout value and then sets it to 120 s.

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7008/expire  
30  
# echo 120 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7008/expire
```

Working with DASD statistics in debugfs

Gather DASD statistics and display the data with the `dasdstat` command.

Before you begin

Instead of accessing raw DASD performance data in debugfs, you can use the `dasdstat` command to obtain more structured data (see “dasdstat - Display DASD performance statistics” on page 468).

About this task

The DASD performance data is contained in the following subdirectories of `<mountpoint>/dasd`, where `<mountpoint>` is the mount point of debugfs:

- A directory `global` that represents all available DASDs taken together.
- For each DASD, one directory with the name of the DASD block device with which the DASD is known to the DASD device driver (for example, `dasda`, `dasdb`, and `dasdc`).
- For each CCW device that corresponds to a DASD, a directory with the bus ID as the name.

Block devices that are not set up for PAV or HyperPAV map to exactly one CCW device and the corresponding directories contain the same statistics.

With PAV or HyperPAV, a bus ID can represent a base device or an alias device. Each base device is associated with a particular block device. The alias devices are not permanently associated with the same block device. At any one time, a DASD block device is associated with one or more CCW devices. Statistics that are based on bus ID, therefore, show more detail for PAV and HyperPAV setups.

Each of these directories contains a file `statistics` that you can use to perform these tasks:

- Start and stop data gathering.
- Reset statistics counters.
- Read statistics.

To control data gathering at the scope of a directory in `<mountpoint>/dasd`, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <keyword> > <mountpoint>/dasd/<directory>/statistics
```

Where:

`<directory>`
is one of the directories in `<mountpoint>/dasd`.

`<keyword>`
specifies the action to be taken:
on to start data gathering.
off to stop data gathering.
reset to reset the statistics counters.

To read performance data, issue a command of this form:

```
# cat <mountpoint>/dasd/<directory>/statistics
```

Examples for gathering and reading DASD statistics in debugfs

Use the `echo` command to start and stop data gathering for individual devices or across all DASDs. Use the `cat` command to access the raw performance data.

The following examples assume that `debugfs` is mounted at `/sys/kernel/debug`, see “`debugfs`” on page ix.

- To start data gathering for summary data across all available DASDs:

```
# echo on > /sys/kernel/debug/dasd/global/statistics
```

- To stop data gathering for block device `dasdb`:

```
# echo off > /sys/kernel/debug/dasd/dasdb/statistics
```

- To reset the counters for CCW device 0.0.b301:

```
# echo reset > /sys/kernel/debug/dasd/0.0.b301/statistics
```

- To read performance data for dasda, assuming that the debugfs mount point is /sys/kernel/debug, issue:

Interpreting the data rows

The raw DASD performance data in the statistics directories in debugfs is organized into labeled data rows.

This section explains the raw data in the individual data rows of the statistics. Use the **dasdstat** command to obtain more structured data.

start time

is the UNIX epoch time stamp when data gathering was started or when the counters were last reset.

Tip: Use the `date` tool to convert the time stamp to a more readily human-readable format. See the `date` man page for details.

Single counters

have a single integer as the statistics data. All rows with labels that begin with `total` are of this data type.

The following rows show data for the sum of all requests, read and write:

total requests

is the number of requests that have been processed.

total sectors

is the sum of the sizes of all requests, in units of 512-byte sectors.

total pay

is the number of requests that were processed through a PAV alias device.

total hpf

is the number of requests that used High Performance FICON.

The following rows show data for read requests only:

total_read_requests

is the number of read requests that have been processed.

total_read_sectors

is the sum of the sizes of all read requests, in units of 512-byte sectors.

total_read_pav

is the number of read requests that were processed through a PAV alias device.

total_read_hpf

is the number of read requests that used High Performance FICON.

Linear histograms

have a series of 32 integers as the statistics data. The integers represent a histogram, with a linear scale, of the number of requests in the request queue each time a request has been queued. The first integer shows how often the request queue contained zero requests, the second integer shows how often the queue contained one request, and the n-th value shows how often the queue contained n-1 requests.

histogram_ccw_queue_length

is the histogram data for all requests, read and write.

histogram_read_ccw_queue_length

is the histogram data for read requests only.

Logarithmic histograms

have a series of 32 integers as the statistics data. The integers represent a histogram with a logarithmic scale:

- The first integer always represents all measures of fewer than 4 units
- The second integer represents measures of 4 or more but less than 8 units
- The third integer represents measures of 8 or more but less than 16 units
- The n-th integer ($1 < n < 32$) represents measures of 2^n or more but less than 2^{n+1} units
- The 32nd integer represents measures of 2^{32} ($= 4G = 4,294,967,296$) units or more.

The following rows show data for the sum of all requests, read and write:

histogram_sectors

is the histogram data for request sizes. A unit is a 512-byte sector.

histogram_io_times

is the histogram data for the total time that is needed from creating the cqr to its completion in the DASD device driver and return to the block layer. A unit is a microsecond.

histogram_io_times_weighted

is the histogram data of the total time, as measured for `histogram_io_times`, divided by the requests size in sectors. A unit is a microsecond per sector.

This metric is deprecated and there is no corresponding histogram data for read requests.

histogram_time_build_to_ssch

is the histogram data of the time that is needed from creating the cqr to submitting the request to the subchannel. A unit is a microsecond.

histogram_time_ssach_to_irq

is the histogram data of the time that is needed from submitting the request to the subchannel until an interrupt indicates that the request has been completed. A unit is a microsecond.

histogram_time_ssach_to_irq_weighted

is the histogram data of the time that is needed from submitting the request to the subchannel until an interrupt indicates that the request has been completed, divided by the request size in 512-byte sectors. A unit is a microsecond per sector.

This metric is deprecated and there is no corresponding histogram data for read requests.

histogram_time_irq_to_end

is the histogram data of the time that is needed from return of the request from the channel subsystem, until the request is returned to the block layer. A unit is a microsecond.

The following rows show data for read requests only:

histogram_read_sectors

is the histogram data for read request sizes. A unit is a 512-byte sector.

histogram_read_io_times

is the histogram data, for read requests, for the total time that is needed from creating the cqr to its completion in the DASD device driver and return to the block layer. A unit is a microsecond.

histogram_read_time_build_to_ssach

is the histogram data, for read requests, of the time that is needed from creating the cqr to submitting the request to the subchannel. A unit is a microsecond.

histogram_read_time_ssach_to_irq

is the histogram data, for read requests, of the time that is needed from submitting the request to the subchannel until an interrupt indicates that the request has been completed. A unit is a microsecond.

histogram_read_time_irq_to_end

is the histogram data, for read requests, of the time that is needed from return of the request from the channel subsystem, until the request is returned to the block layer. A unit is a microsecond.

Accessing full ECKD tracks

In raw-track access mode, the DASD device driver accesses full ECKD tracks, including record zero and the count and key data fields.

Before you begin

- This section applies to ECKD type DASD only.
- The DASD must be offline when you change the access mode.
- The DIAG access method must not be enabled for the device.

About this task

With this mode, Linux can access an ECKD device regardless of the track layout. In particular, the device does not need to be formatted for Linux.

For example, with raw-track access mode Linux can create a backup copy of any ECKD device. Full-track access can also enable a special program that runs on Linux to access and process data on an ECKD device that is not formatted for Linux.

By default, the DASD device driver accesses only the data fields of ECKD devices. In default access mode, you can work with partitions, file systems, and files in the file systems on the DASD.

When using a DASD in raw-track access mode be aware that:

- In memory, each track is represented by 64 KB of data, even if the track occupies less physical disk space. Therefore, a disk in raw-track access mode appears bigger than in default mode.
- Programs must write and should read data in multiples of complete 64 KB tracks. The minimum is a single track. The maximum is eight tracks by default but can be extended to up to 16 tracks.

The maximum number of tracks depends on the maximum number of sectors as specified in the `max_sectors_kb` sysfs attribute of the DASD. This attribute is located in the block device branch of sysfs at `/sys/block/dasd<x>/queue/max_sectors_kb`. In the path, `dasd<x>` is the device name assigned by the DASD device driver.

To extend the maximum beyond eight tracks, set the `max_sectors_kb` to the maximum amount of data to be processed in a single read or write operation. For example, to extend the maximum to reading or writing 16 tracks at a time, set `max_sectors_kb` to 1024 (16 x 64).

- Programs must write only valid ECKD tracks of 64 KB.
- Programs must use direct I/O to prevent the Linux block layer from splitting tracks into fragments. Open the block device with option `O_DIRECT` or work with programs that use direct I/O.

For example, the options `iflag=direct` and `oflag=direct` cause `dd` to use direct I/O. When using `dd`, also specify the block size with the `bs=` option. The block size determines the number of tracks that are processed in a single I/O operation. The block size must be a multiple of 64 KB and can be up to 1024 KB. Specifying a larger block size often results in better performance. If you receive disk image data from a pipe, also use the option `iflag=fullblock` to ensure that full blocks are written to the DASD device.

Tools cannot directly work with partitions, file systems, or files within a file system. For example, `fdasd` and `dasdfmt` cannot be used.

Procedure

To change the access mode, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <switch> > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/raw_track_access
```

where:

`<switch>`

is 1 to activate raw data access and 0 to deactivate raw data access.

<device_bus_id>
identifies the DASD.

Example

The following example creates a backup of a DASD 0.0.7009 on a DASD 0.0.70a1.

The initial commands ensure that both devices are offline and that the DIAG access method is not enabled for either of them. The subsequent commands activate the raw-track access mode for the two devices and set them both online. The **lsdasd** command that follows shows the mapping between device bus-IDs and device names.

The **dd** command for the copy operation specifies direct I/O for both the input and output device and the block size of 1024 KB. After the copy operation is completed, both devices are set offline. The access mode for the original device is then set back to the default and the device is set back online.

```
#cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/online
1
# chccwdev -d 0.0.7009
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/use_diag
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.70a1/online
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.70a1/use_diag
0
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/raw_track_access
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.70a1/raw_track_access
# chccwdev -e 0.0.7009,0.0.70a1
# lsdasd 0.0.7009 0.0.70a1
Bus-ID      Status     Name      Device   Type   BlkSz   Size    Blocks
=====
0.0.7009    active    dasdf    94:20    ECKD   4096   7043MB   1803060
0.0.70a1    active    dasdj    94:36    ECKD   4096   7043MB   1803060
# echo 1024 > /sys/block/dasdf/queue/max_sectors_kb
# echo 1024 > /sys/block/dasdj/queue/max_sectors_kb
# dd if=/dev/dasdf of=/dev/dasdj bs=1024k iflag=direct oflag=direct
# chccwdev -d 0.0.7009,0.0.70a1
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/raw_track_access
# chccwdev -e 0.0.7009
```

Handling lost device reservations

A DASD reservation by your Linux instance can be lost if another system unconditionally reserves this DASD.

About this task

This other system then has exclusive I/O access to the DASD for the duration of the unconditional reservation. Such unconditional reservations can be useful for handling error situations where:

- Your Linux instance cannot gracefully release the DASD.
- Another system requires access to the DASD, for example, to perform recovery actions.

After the DASD is released by the other system, your Linux instance might process pending I/O requests and write faulty data to the DASD. How to prevent pending I/O requests from being processed depends on the reservation policy. There are two reservation policies:

- ignore** All I/O operations for the DASD are blocked until the DASD is released by the second system. When using this policy, reboot your Linux instance before the other system releases the DASD. This policy is the default.
- fail** All I/O operations are returned as failed until the DASD is set offline or until the reservation state is reset. When using this policy, set the DASD offline and back online after the problem is resolved. See “Reading and resetting the reservation state” about resetting the reservation state to resume operations.

Procedure

Set the reservation policy with a command of this form:

```
# echo <policy> > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/reservation_policy
```

where:

<*device_bus_id*>
specifies the DASD.

<*policy*>
is one of the available policies, ignore or fail.

Examples

- The command of this example sets the reservation policy for a DASD with bus ID 0.0.7009 to fail.

```
# echo fail > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/reservation_policy
```

- This example shows a small scenario. The first two commands confirm that the reservation policy of the DASD is fail and that the reservation has been lost to another system. Assuming that the error that had occurred has already been resolved and that the other system has released the DASD, operations with the DASD are resumed by setting it offline and back online.

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/reservation_policy
fail
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/last_known_reservation_state
lost
# chccwdev -d 0.0.7009
# chccwdev -e 0.0.7009
```

Reading and resetting the reservation state

How the DASD device driver handles I/O requests depends on the `last_known_reservation_state` sysfs attribute of the DASD.

About this task

The `last_known_reservation_state` attribute reflects the reservation state as held by the DASD device driver and can differ from the actual reservation state. Use the `tunedasd -Q` command to find out the actual reservation state. The `last_known_reservation_state` sysfs attribute can have the following values:

- none** The DASD device driver has no information about the device reservation

state. I/O requests are processed as usual. If the DASD is reserved by another system, the I/O requests remain in the queue until they time out, or until the reservation is released.

reserved

The DASD device driver holds a valid reservation for the DASD and I/O requests are processed as usual. The DASD device driver changes this state if notified that the DASD is no longer reserved to this system. The new state depends on the reservation policy (see “Handling lost device reservations” on page 59).

ignore The state is changed to none.

fail The state is changed to lost.

lost

The DASD device driver had reserved the DASD, but subsequently another system has unconditionally reserved the DASD (see “Handling lost device reservations” on page 59). The device driver processes only requests that query the actual device reservation state. All other I/O requests for the device are returned as failed.

When the error that led another system to unconditionally reserve the DASD is resolved and the DASD has been released by this other system there are two methods for resuming operations:

- Setting the DASD offline and back online.
- Resetting the reservation state of the DASD.

Attention: Do not resume operations by resetting the reservation state unless your system setup maintains data integrity on the DASD despite:

- The I/O errors that are caused by the unconditional reservation
- Any changes to the DASD through the other system

You reset the reservation state by writing `reset` to the `last_known_reservation_state` sysfs attribute of the DASD. Resetting is possible only for the `fail` reservation policy (see “Handling lost device reservations” on page 59) and only while the value of the `last_known_reservation_state` attribute is `lost`.

To find out the reservation state of a DASD issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/last_known_reservation_state
```

where `<device_bus_id>` specifies the DASD.

Example

The command in this example queries the reservation state of a DASD with bus ID 0.0.7009.

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.7009/last_known_reservation_state  
reserved
```

Displaying DASD information

Use tools to display information about your DASDs, or read the attributes of the devices in sysfs.

About this task

There are several methods to display DASD information:

- Use **lstdasd -l** (see “[lstdasd - List DASD devices](#)” on page 503) to display summary information about the device settings and the device geometry of multiple DASDs.
- Use **dasdview** (see “[dasdview - Display DASD structure](#)” on page 471) to display details about the contents of a particular DASD.
- Read information about a particular DASD from sysfs, as described in this section.

The sysfs representation of a DASD is a directory of the form `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>`, where `<device_bus_id>` is the bus ID of the DASD. This sysfs directory contains a number of attributes with information about the DASD.

Table 6. Attributes with DASD information

Attribute	Explanation
alias	1 if the DASD is a parallel access volume (PAV) alias device. 0 if the DASD is a PAV base device or has not been set up as a PAV device. For an example of how to use PAV see <i>How to Improve Performance with PAV</i> , SC33-8414 on developerWorks at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_red_hat.html This attribute is read-only.
discipline	Indicates the base discipline, ECKD or FBA, that is used to access the DASD. If DIAG is enabled, this attribute might read DIAG instead of the base discipline. This attribute is read-only.
eer_enabled	1 if the DASD is enabled for extended error reporting, 0 if it is not enabled (see “ Using extended error reporting for ECKD type DASD ” on page 49).
erelog	1 if error recovery processing (ERP) logging is enabled, 0 if ERP logging is not enabled (see “ Enabling and disabling logging ” on page 51).
expires	Indicates the time, in seconds, that Linux waits for a response to an I/O request for the DASD. If this time expires, Linux considers a request as failed and cancels it (see “ Setting the timeout for I/O requests ” on page 53).
failfast	1 if I/O operations are returned as failed immediately when the last path to the DASD is lost. 0 if a wait period for a path to return expires before an I/O operation is returned as failed. (see “ Enabling and disabling immediate failure of I/O requests ” on page 52).
online	1 if the DASD is online, 0 if it is offline (see “ Setting a DASD online or offline ” on page 50).
raw_track_access	1 if the DASD is in raw-track access mode, 0 if it is in default access mode (see “ Accessing full ECKD tracks ” on page 57).
readonly	1 if the DASD is read-only, 0 if it can be written to. This attribute is a device driver setting and does not reflect any restrictions that are imposed by the device itself. This attribute is ignored for PAV alias devices.

Table 6. Attributes with DASD information (continued)

Attribute	Explanation
status	<p>Reflects the internal state of a DASD device. Values can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> unknown Device detection has not started yet. new Detection of basic device attributes is in progress. detected Detection of basic device attributes has finished. basic The device is ready for detecting the disk layout. Low-level tools can set a device to this state when changing the disk layout, for example, when formatting the device. unformatted The disk layout detection found no valid disk layout. The device is ready for use with low-level tools like dasdfmt. ready The device is in an intermediate state. online The device is ready for use.
uid	<p>A device identifier of the form <i><vendor>. <serial>. <subsystem_id>. <unit_address>. <minidisk_identifier></i></p> <p>where</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <vendor> is the specification from the vendor attribute. <serial> is the serial number of the storage system. <subsystem_id> is the ID of the logical subsystem to which the DASD belongs on the storage system. <unit_address> is the address that is used within the storage system to identify the DASD. <minidisk_identifier> is an identifier that the z/VM system assigns to distinguish between minidisks on the DASD. This part of the uid is only present for Linux on z/VM and if the z/VM version and service level support this identifier. <p>This attribute is read-only.</p>
use_diag	<p>1 if the DIAG access method is enabled, 0 if the DIAG access method is not enabled (see “Enabling the DASD device driver to use the DIAG access method” on page 48). Do not enable the DIAG access method for PAV alias devices.</p>
vendor	<p>Identifies the manufacturer of the storage system that contains the DASD.</p> <p>This attribute is read-only.</p>

There are some more attributes that are common to all CCW devices (see “Device directories” on page 8).

Procedure

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/<attribute>
```

where *<attribute>* is one of the attributes of Table 6 on page 62.

Example

The following sequence of commands reads the attributes for a DASD with a device bus-ID 0.0.b100:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/alias
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/discipline
ECKD
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/eer_enabled
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/erplog
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/expires
30
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/failfast
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/online
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/raw_track_access
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/readonly
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/status
online
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/uid
IBM.7500000092461.e900.8a
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/use_diag
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/vendor
IBM
```

Chapter 5. SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver

The SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver for Linux on System z (zfcp device driver) supports virtual QDIO-based System z SCSI-over-Fibre Channel adapters (FCP devices) and attached SCSI devices (LUNs).

System z adapter hardware typically provides multiple channels, with one port each. You can configure a channel to use the Fibre Channel Protocol (FCP). This *FCP channel* is then virtualized into multiple FCP devices. Thus, an FCP device is a virtual QDIO-based System z SCSI-over-Fibre Channel adapter with a single port.

A single physical port supports multiple FCP devices. Using N_Port ID virtualization (NPIV) you can define virtual ports and establish a one-to-one mapping between your FCP devices and virtual ports (see “N_Port ID Virtualization for FCP channels” on page 70).

On Linux, an FCP device is represented by a CCW device that is listed under /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp. Do not confuse FCP devices with SCSI devices. A SCSI device is identified by a LUN.

Features

The zfcp device driver supports a wide range of SCSI devices, various hardware adapters, specific topologies, and specific features that depend on the System z hardware.

- Linux on System z can use various SAN-attached SCSI device types, including SCSI disks, tapes, CD-ROMs, and DVDs. For a list of supported SCSI devices, see
www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity
- SAN access through the following FCP adapters:
 - FICON Express4
 - FICON Express8
 - FICON Express8S

You can order hardware adapters as features for mainframe systems.

See *Fibre Channel Protocol for Linux and z/VM on IBM System z*, SG24-7266 for more details about using FCP with Linux on System z.

- The zfcp device driver supports switched fabric and point-to-point topologies.
- The zfcp device driver supports end-to-end data consistency checking.
- As of FICON Express8S, the zfcp device driver supports the data router hardware feature to improve performance by reducing the path length.

For information about SCSI-3, the Fibre Channel Protocol, and Fibre Channel related information, see www.t10.org and www.t11.org

What you should know about zfcp

The zfcp device driver is a low-level driver or host-bus adapter driver that supplements the Linux SCSI stack.

Figure 11 illustrates how the device drivers work together.

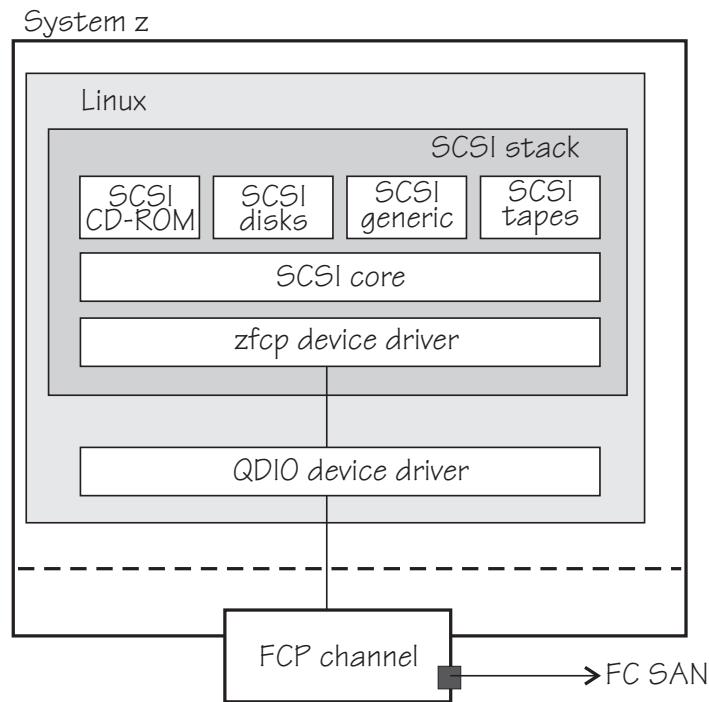


Figure 11. Device drivers that support the FCP environment

sysfs structures for FCP devices and SCSI devices

FCP devices are CCW devices. In the sysfs device driver view, remote target ports with their LUNs are nested below the FCP devices.

When Linux is booted, it senses the available FCP devices and creates directories of the form:

`/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>`

where `<device_bus_id>` is the device bus-ID that corresponds to an FCP device. You use the attributes in this directory to work with the FCP device.

Example: `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c`

The zfcp device driver automatically adds port information when the FCP device is set online and when remote storage ports (*target ports*) are added. Each added target port extends this structure with a directory of the form:

`/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>`

where `<wwpn>` is the worldwide port name (WWPN) of the target port. You use the attributes of this directory to work with the port.

Example: `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562`

With NPIV-enabled FCP devices, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses automatic LUN scanning by default. The zfcp sysfs branch ends with the target port entries. For FCP devices that are not NPIV-enabled, or if automatic LUN scanning is disabled, see “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 84.

Information about zfcp objects and their associated objects in the SCSI stack is distributed over the sysfs tree. To ease the burden of collecting information about zfcp devices, ports, units, and their associated SCSI stack objects, a command that is called **lszfcp** is provided with the s390utils RPM. See “[lszfcp - List zfcp devices](#)” on page 522 for more details about the command.

See also “[Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs](#)” on page 86.

SCSI device nodes

User space programs access SCSI devices through device nodes.

SCSI device names are assigned in the order in which the devices are detected. In a typical SAN environment, this can mean a seemingly arbitrary mapping of names to actual devices that can change between boots. Therefore, using standard device nodes of the form `/dev/<device_name>` where `<device_name>` is the device name that the SCSI stack assigns to a device, can be a challenge.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 provides udev to create device nodes for you. Use the device nodes to identify the corresponding actual device.

Device nodes that are based on device names

udev creates device nodes that match the device names used by the kernel. These standard device nodes have the form `/dev/<name>`.

The examples in this section use standard device nodes as assigned by the SCSI stack. These nodes have the form `/dev/sd<x>` for entire disks and `/dev/sd<x><n>` for partitions. In these node names `<x>` represents one or more letters and `<n>` is an integer. See `Documentation/devices.txt` in the Linux source tree for more information about the SCSI device naming scheme.

To help you identify a particular device, udev creates additional device nodes that are based on the device's bus ID, the device label, and information about the file system on the device. The file system information can be a universally unique identifier (UUID) and, if available, the file system label.

Device nodes that are based on bus IDs

udev creates device nodes of the form

`/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>-zfcp-<wwpn>:<lun>`

for whole SCSI device and

`/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>-zfcp-<wwpn>:<lun>-part<n>`

for the `<n>`th partition, where WWPN is the world wide port number of the target port and LUN is the logical unit number representing the target SCSI device.

Device nodes that are based on file system information

udev creates device nodes of the form

`/dev/disk/by-uuid/<uuid>`

where `<uuid>` is a unique file-system identifier (UUID) for the file system in a partition.

If a file system label has been assigned, udev also creates a node of the form

`/dev/disk/by-label/<label>`

There are no device nodes for the whole SCSI device that are based on file system information.

Additional device nodes

/dev/disk/by-id contains additional device nodes for the SCSI device and partitions, that are all based on a unique SCSI identifier generated by querying the device.

Example

For a SCSI device that is assigned the device name sda, has two partitions labeled boot and SWAP-sda2, a device bus-ID 0.0.3c1b (device number 0x3c1b), and a UUID 7eaf9c95-55ac-4e5e-8f18-065b313e63ca for the first and b4a818c8-747c-40a2-bfa2-acaa3ef70ead for the second partition, udev creates the following device nodes:

For the whole SCSI device:

- /dev/sda (standard device node according to the SCSI device naming scheme)
- /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.3c1b-zfc-p-0x500507630300c562:0x401040ea000000000
- /dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303ffc562000000000000010ea
- /dev/disk/by-id/wwn-0x6005076303ffc562000000000000010ea

For the first partition:

- /dev/sda1 (standard device node according to the SCSI device naming scheme)
- /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.3c1b-zfc-p-0x500507630300c562:0x401040ea00000000-part1
- /dev/disk/by-uuid/7eaf9c95-55ac-4e5e-8f18-065b313e63ca
- /dev/disk/by-label/boot
- /dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303ffc56200000000000010ea-part1
- /dev/disk/by-id/wwn-0x6005076303ffc56200000000000010ea-part1

For the second partition:

- /dev/sda2 (standard device node according to the SCSI device naming scheme)
- /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.3c1b-zfc-p-0x500507630300c562:0x401040ea00000000-part2
- /dev/disk/by-uuid/b4a818c8-747c-40a2-bfa2-acaa3ef70ead
- /dev/disk/by-label/SWAP-sda2
- /dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303ffc56200000000000010ea-part2
- /dev/disk/by-id/wwn-0x6005076303ffc56200000000000010ea-part2

Device nodes by-uuid use a unique file-system identifier that does not relate to the partition number.

Multipath

Users of SCSI-over-Fibre Channel attached devices should always consider setting up and using redundant paths through their Fibre Channel storage area network.

Path redundancy improves the availability of the LUNs. In Linux, you can set up path redundancy with the device-mapper multipath tool. For information about multipath devices and multipath partitions, see the chapter about multipathing in *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413.

Partitioning a SCSI device

You can partition SCSI devices that are attached through an FCP channel in the same way that you can partition SCSI attached devices on other platforms.

About this task

Use the **fdisk** command to partition a SCSI disk, not **fdasd**.

udev creates device nodes for partitions automatically. For the SCSI disk /dev/sda, the partition device nodes are called /dev/sda1, /dev/sda2, /dev/sda3, and so on.

Example

To partition a SCSI disk with a device node /dev/sda issue:

```
# fdisk /dev/sda
```

zfcp HBA API (FC-HBA) support

The zfcp host bus adapter API (HBA API) provides an interface for SAN management clients that run on System z.

As shown in Figure 12, the zfcp HBA API support includes a user space library.

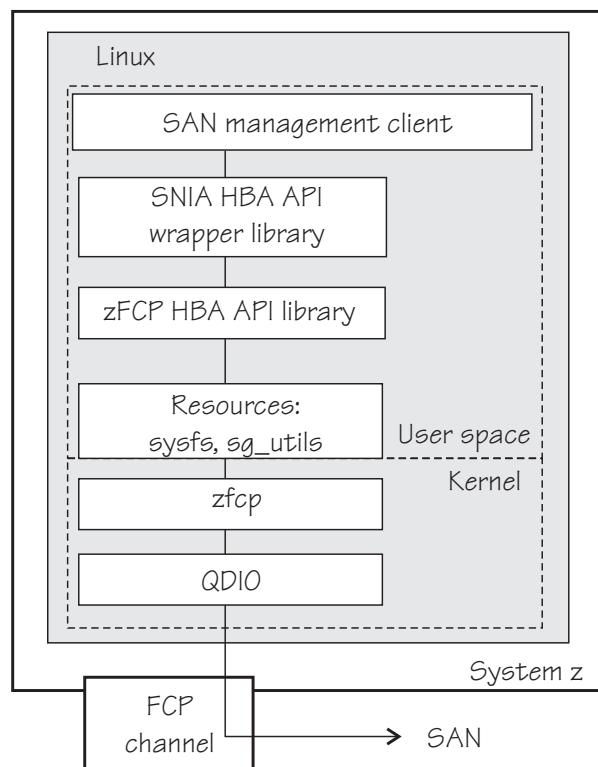


Figure 12. zfcp HBA API support modules

The SNIA (Storage Networking Industry Association) library can interface with the zFCP HBA API. The SNIA library is part of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7. It is

available as software package libhbaapi, which is automatically installed when installing the zfcp HBA API, see “Getting ready to run applications” on page 99.

The default method in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 is for applications to use the zFCP HBA API library indirectly through the SNIA HBA API. If you develop applications yourself, see “Developing applications” on page 98.

In a Linux on System z environment HBAs are usually virtualized and are shown as *FCP devices*. FCP devices are represented by CCW devices that are listed in /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp. Do not confuse FCP devices with SCSI devices. A SCSI device is a disk device that is identified by a LUN.

For information about setting up the HBA API support, see “zfcp HBA API support” on page 97.

N_Port ID Virtualization for FCP channels

Through N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV), the sole port of an FCP channel appears as multiple, distinct ports with separate port identification.

NPIV support can be configured on the SE per CHPID and LPAR for an FCP channel. The zfcp device driver supports NPIV error messages and adapter attributes. See “Displaying FCP channel and device information” on page 74 for the Fibre Channel adapter attributes.

For more information, see the connectivity page at
www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity

See also the chapter on NPIV in *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413.

Setting up the zfcp device driver

Configure the zfcp device driver through module parameters. You might also need to install the zfcp HBA API library.

zfcp module parameters

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 loads the zfcp device driver for you when an FCP channel becomes available.

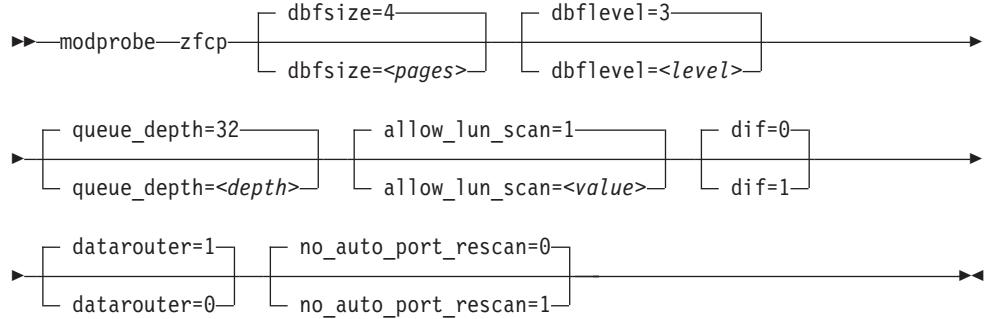
You have the following options for configuring FCP LUNs to attach SCSI devices:

- During installation, use the **anaconda** GUI, the **dracut** boot parameter rd.fcp=, or the **kickstart** parameter zfcp.
- On an installed system, use the **dracut** boot parameter rd.fcp= only for SCSI disks that are required for the root file system. Use the configuration file /etc/zfcp.conf for all other SCSI devices, such as data volumes or tape libraries.

For details, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*

You can always specify additional zfcp module parameters as explained in Chapter 3, “Kernel and module parameters,” on page 21.

zfcp module parameter syntax



where:

dbfsize=<pages>

specifies the number of pages to be used for the debug feature.

The debug feature is available for each FCP device and the following areas:

hba FCP device

san Storage Area Network

rec Error Recovery Process

scsi SCSI

The value given is used for all areas. The default is 4, that is, four pages are used for each area and FCP device. In the following example the dbfsizE is increased to 6 pages:

`zfcp.dbfsize=6`

This results in six pages being used for each area and FCP device.

dbflevel=<level>

sets the initial log level of the debug feature. The value is an integer in the range 0 - 6, where greater numbers generate more detailed information. The default is 3.

queue_depth=<depth>

specifies the number of commands that can be issued simultaneously to a SCSI device. The default is 32. The value you set here is used as the default queue depth for new SCSI devices. You can set the queue depth for each SCSI device using the queue_depth sysfs attribute, see "Setting the queue depth" on page 90.

allow_lun_scan=<value>

disables the automatic LUN scan for FCP devices that run in NPIV mode if set to 0, n, or N. To enable the LUN scanning set the parameter to 1, y, or Y. When the LUN scan is disabled, all LUNs must be configured through the unit_add zfcp attribute in sysfs. LUN scan is enabled by default.

dif=

turns end-to-end data consistency checking on if set to 1, y, or Y and off if set to 0, n, or N. The default is 0.

datarouter=

enables (if set to 1, y, or Y) or disables (if set to 0, n, or N) support for the hardware data routing feature. The default is 1.

Note: The hardware data routing feature becomes active only for FCP devices that are based on adapter hardware with hardware data routing support.

no_auto_port_rescan=

turns the automatic port rescan feature off (if set to 1, y, or Y) or on (if set to 0, n, or N). The default is 0. Automatic rescan is always performed when setting an adapter online and when user-triggered writes to the sysfs attribute port_rescan occur.

device=<device_bus_id>, <wwpn>, <fcplun>

Attention: The device= module parameter is reserved for internal use. Do not use.

<device_bus_id>

specifies the FCP device through which the SCSI device is attached.

<wwpn>

specifies the target port through which the SCSI device is attached.

<fcplun>

specifies the LUN of the SCSI device.

Working with FCP devices

Set an FCP device online before you attempt to perform any other tasks.

Working with FCP devices comprises the following tasks:

- “Setting an FCP device online or offline”
- “Displaying FCP channel and device information” on page 74
- “Recovering a failed FCP device” on page 77
- “Finding out whether NPIV is in use” on page 78
- “Logging I/O subchannel status information” on page 79

Most of these tasks involve writing to and reading from device attributes in sysfs. This is useful on a running system where you want to make dynamic changes. If you want to make the changes persistent across IPLs, use the configuration file /etc/zipl.conf for FCP devices that are part of the root file system and /etc/zfcp.conf for data disks. An example of how to define an FCP device persistently is in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*. For a general discussion of configuration files, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

You have the following options for configuring FCP LUNs to attach SCSI devices:

- During installation, use the **anaconda** GUI, the **dracut** boot parameter rd.fcp=, or the **kickstart** parameter zfcp.
- On an installed system, use the **dracut** boot parameter rd.fcp= only for SCSI disks that are required for the root file system. Use the configuration file /etc/zfcp.conf for all other SCSI devices, such as data volumes or tape libraries.

For details, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*

You can always specify additional zfcp module parameters as explained in Chapter 3, “Kernel and module parameters,” on page 21

Setting an FCP device online or offline

By default, FCP devices are offline. Set an FCP device online before you perform any other tasks.

About this task

See “Working with newly available devices” on page 10 to avoid errors when you work with devices that have become available to a running Linux instance.

Setting an FCP device online registers it with the Linux SCSI stack. It also automatically runs the scan for ports in the SAN and waits for this port scan to complete. To check if setting the FCP device online was successful, you can use a script that first sets the FCP device online and after this operation completes checks if the WWPN of a remote storage port has appeared in sysfs.

When you set an FCP device offline, the port and LUN subdirectories are preserved. Setting an FCP device offline in sysfs interrupts the communication between Linux and the FCP channel. After a timeout has expired, the port and LUN attributes indicate that the ports and LUNs are no longer accessible. The transition of the FCP device to the offline state is synchronous, unless the device is disconnected.

For disconnected devices, writing 0 to the online sysfs attribute triggers an asynchronous deregistration process. When this process is completed, the device with its ports and LUNs is no longer represented in sysfs.

When the FCP device is set back online, the SCSI device names and minor numbers are freshly assigned. The mapping of devices to names and numbers might be different from what they were before the FCP device was set offline.

Procedure

There are two methods for setting an FCP device online or offline:

- Use the **chccwdev** command (“**chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes**” on page 436).
- Alternatively, you can write 1 to an FCP device's online attribute to set it online, or 0 to set it offline.

Examples

- To set an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c online issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.3d0c
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/online
```

- To set an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c offline issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.3d0c
```

or

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/online
```

Displaying FCP channel and device information

For each online FCP device, there is a number of read-only attributes in sysfs that provide information about the corresponding FCP channel and FCP device.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online for the FCP channel information to be valid.

About this task

The following tables summarize the relevant attributes.

Table 7. Attributes with Fibre Channel adapter hardware information

Attribute	Explanation
card_version	Version number that identifies a particular hardware feature.
hardware_version	Number that identifies a hardware version for a particular feature. The initial hardware version of a feature is zero. This version indicator is increased only for hardware modifications of the same feature. Appending hardware_version to card_version results in a hierarchical version indication for a physical adapter.
lic_version	Microcode level.
in_recovery	Shows if the FCP channel is in recovery (0 or 1).
peer_wwnn	WWNN of peer for a point-to-point connection.
peer_wwpn	WWPN of peer for a point-to-point connection.
peer_d_id	Destination ID of the peer for a point-to-point connection.

Table 8. Attributes with FCP device information

Attribute	Explanation
in_recovery	Shows if the FCP channel is in recovery (0 or 1).

For the attributes availability, cmb_enable, and cutype, see “Device directories” on page 8. The status attribute is reserved.

Table 9. Relevant transport class attributes, fc_host attributes

Attribute	Explanation
maxframe_size	Maximum frame size of adapter.
node_name	Worldwide node name (WWNN) of adapter.
permanent_port_name	WWPN associated with the physical port of the FCP channel.
port_id	A unique ID (N_Port_ID) assigned by the fabric. In an NPIV setup, each virtual port is assigned a different port_id.
port_name	WWPN associated with the FCP device. If N_Port ID Virtualization is not available, the WWPN of the physical port (see permanent_port_name).
port_type	The port type indicates the topology of the port.
serial_number	The 32-byte serial number of the adapter hardware that provides the FCP channel.
speed	Speed of FC link.

Table 9. Relevant transport class attributes, fc_host attributes (continued)

Attribute	Explanation
supported_classes	Supported FC service class.
supported_speeds	Supported speeds.
tgid_bind_type	Target binding type.

Table 10. Relevant transport class attributes, fc_host statistics

Attribute	Explanation
reset_statistics	Writable attribute to reset statistic counters.
seconds_since_last_reset	Seconds since last reset of statistic counters.
tx_frames	Transmitted FC frames.
tx_words	Transmitted FC words.
rx_frames	Received FC frames.
rx_words	Received FC words.
lip_count	Number of LIP sequences.
nos_count	Number of NOS sequences.
error_frames	Number of frames that are received in error.
dumped_frames	Number of frames that are lost because of lack of host resources.
link_failure_count	Link failure count.
loss_of_sync_count	Loss of synchronization count.
loss_of_signal_count	Loss of signal count.
prim_seq_protocol_err_count	Primitive sequence protocol error count.
invalid_tx_word_count	Invalid transmission word count.
invalid_crc_count	Invalid CRC count.
fcp_input_requests	Number of FCP operations with data input.
fcp_output_requests	Number of FCP operations with data output.
fcp_control_requests	Number of FCP operations without data movement.
fcp_input_megabytes	Megabytes of FCP data input.
fcp_output_megabytes	Megabytes of FCP data output.

Procedure

Use the **cat** command to read an attribute.

- Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<attribute>
```

where:

<*device_bus_id*>

specifies an FCP device that corresponds to the FCP channel.

<*attribute*>

is one of the attributes in Table 7 on page 74 or Table 8 on page 74.

- To read attributes of the associated SCSI host use:

```
# cat /sys/class/fc_host/<host_name>/<attribute>
```

where:

<host_name>

is the ID of the SCSI host.

<attribute>

is one of the attributes in Table 9 on page 74.

- To read the statistics' attributes:

```
# cat /sys/class/fc_host/<host_name>/statistics/<attribute>
```

where:

<host_name>

is the ID of the SCSI host.

<attribute>

is one of the attributes in Table 10 on page 75.

Examples

- In this example, information is displayed about an FCP channel that corresponds to an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/hardware_version  
0x00000000  
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/lic_version  
0x00009111
```

- Alternatively you can use **lszfcp** (see “**lszfcp - List zfcp devices**” on page 522) to display attributes of an FCP channel:

```

# lszfcp -b 0.0.3d0c -a
0.0.3d0c host0
Bus = "ccw"
    availability      = "good"
    card_version     = "0x0005"
    cmb_enable        = "0"
    cutype            = "1731/03"
    devtype           = "1732/03"
    failed             = "0"
    hardware_version = "0x00000000"
    in_recovery       = "0"
    lic_version       = "0x00009111"
    modalias          = "ccw:t1731m03dt1732dm03"
    online             = "1"
    peer_d_id         = "0x000000"
    peer_wwn          = "0x0000000000000000"
    peer_wwpn         = "0x0000000000000000"
    status             = "0x5400000a"
    uevent             = "DRIVER=zfcf"
Class = "fc_host"
    active_fc4s      = "0x00 0x00 ... 0x00"
    dev_loss_tmo     = "60"
    maxframe_size    = "2112 bytes"
    node_name         = "0x5005076400c89f25"
    permanent_port_name = "0xc05076ffe5005611"
    port_id           = "0x656e00"
    port_name          = "0xc05076ffe5005611"
    port_state         = "Online"
    port_type          = "NPort (fabric via point-to-point)"
    serial_number     = "IBM02000000089F25"
    speed              = "8 Gbit"
    supported_classes = "Class 2, Class 3"
    supported_fc4s    = "0x00 0x00 ... 0x00"
    supported_speeds  = "1 Gbit, 4 Gbit"
    symbolic_name      = "IBM 2817 020000000EA14 PCHID: 0391"
    tgtid_bind_type   = "wwpn (World Wide Port Name)"
Class = "scsi_host"
    active_mode        = "Initiator"
    can_queue          = "4096"
    cmd_per_lun        = "1"
    host_busy          = "0"
    megabytes          = "28 0"
    proc_name          = "zfcf"
    prot_capabilities = "0"
    prot_guard_type    = "0"
    queue_full         = "0 33333510"
    requests            = "184085 4 302"
    seconds_active     = "143"
    sg_tablesize        = "0"
    state               = "running"
    supported_mode     = "Initiator"
    unchecked_isa_dma  = "0"
    unique_id          = "5906"
    utilization         = "6 0 0"

```

Recovering a failed FCP device

Failed FCP devices are automatically recovered by the zfcf device driver. You can read the `in_recovery` attribute to check whether recovery is under way.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

Procedure

Perform these steps to find out the recovery status of an FCP device and, if needed, start or restart recovery:

1. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/in_recovery
```

The value is 1 if recovery is under way and 0 otherwise. If the value is 0 for a non-operational FCP device, recovery might have failed. Alternatively, the device driver might have failed to detect that the FCP device is malfunctioning.

2. To find out whether recovery failed, read the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/failed
```

The value is 1 if recovery failed and 0 otherwise.

3. You can start or restart the recovery process for the FCP device by writing 0 to the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/failed
```

Example

In the following example, an FCP device with a device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c is malfunctioning. The first command reveals that recovery is not already under way. The second command manually starts recovery for the FCP device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/in_recovery  
0  
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/failed
```

Finding out whether NPIV is in use

An FCP device runs in NPIV mode if the `port_type` attribute of the FCP device attribute contains the string "NPIV". Alternatively, if the applicable `permanent_port_name` and `port_name` are not the same and are not NULL.

Procedure

Read the `port_type` attribute of the FCP device.

For example:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.1940/host0/fc_host/host0/port_type  
NPIV VPORT
```

Alternatively, compare the values of the `permanent_port_name` attribute and the `port_name`.

Tip: You can use `lszfcp` (see “`lszfcp - List zfcp devices`” on page 522) to list the FCP device attributes.

Example

```
# lszfc -b 0.0.1940 -a
0.0.1940 host0
Bus = "ccw"
    availability      = "good"
    ...
Class = "fc_host"
    maxframe_size     = "2112 bytes"
    node_name         = "0x50050764001e0bae"
    permanent_port_name = "0x50050764016219a0"
    port_id           = "0x65ee01"
    port_name          = "0xc05076ffef805388"
    port_state         = "Online"
    port_type          = "NPIV VPORT"
    serial_number      = "IBM0200000001EBAE"
    ...
```

The `port_type` attribute directly indicates that NPIV is used. The example also shows that `permanent_port_name` is different from `port_name`.

Logging I/O subchannel status information

When severe errors occur for an FCP device, the FCP device driver triggers a set of log entries with I/O subchannel status information.

The log entries are available through the SE Console Actions Work Area with the View Console Logs function. In the list of logs, these entries have the prefix 1F00. The content of the entries is intended for support specialists.

Working with target ports

You can scan for ports, display port information, recover a port, or remove a port.

Working with target ports comprises the following tasks:

- “Scanning for ports”
- “Displaying port information” on page 80
- “Recovering a failed port” on page 82
- “Removing ports” on page 83

Scanning for ports

Newly available target ports are discovered. However, you might want to trigger a port scan to re-create accidentally removed port information or to assure that all ports are present.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

About this task

The zfcp device driver automatically adds port information to sysfs when:

- The FCP device is set online
- Target ports are added to the Fibre Channel fabric, unless the module parameter `no_auto_port_rescan` is set to 1. See “zfcp module parameters” on page 70.

Scanning for ports might take some time to complete. Commands that you issue against ports or LUNs while scanning is in progress are delayed and processed when port scanning is completed.

Use the `port_rescan` attribute if a remote storage port was accidentally deleted from the adapter configuration or if you are unsure whether all ports were added to sysfs.

Procedure

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/port_rescan
```

where `<device_bus_id>` specifies the FCP device through which the target ports are attached.

Tip: List the contents of `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>` to find out which ports are currently configured for the FCP device.

Example

In this example, a port with WWPN 0x500507630303c562 is already configured for an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c. An additional target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 is automatically configured by triggering a port scan.

```
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x*
0x500507630303c562
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/port_rescan
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x*
0x500507630303c562
0x500507630300c562
```

Displaying port information

For each target port, there is a number of read-only sysfs attributes with port information.

About this task

Table 11 summarizes the relevant attributes.

Table 11. Attributes with port information

Attribute	Explanation
access_denied	This attribute is obsolete. The value is always 0.
in_recovery	Shows if port is in recovery (0 or 1).

Table 12. Transport class attributes with port information

Attribute	Explanation
node_name	WWNN of the remote port (target port).
port_name	WWPN of remote port.
port_id	Destination ID of remote port.
port_state	State of remote port.

Table 12. Transport class attributes with port information (continued)

Attribute	Explanation
roles	Role of remote port (usually FCP target).
scsi_target_id	Linux SCSI ID of remote port.
supported_classes	Supported classes of service.

Procedure

Use the **cat** command to read an attribute.

- Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<attribute>
```

where:

<device_bus_id>
specifies the FCP device.

<wwpn>
is the WWPN of the target port.

<attribute>
is one of the attributes in Table 11 on page 80.

- To read attributes of the associated target port, use a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/class/fc_remote_port/<rport_name>/<attribute>
```

where:

<rport_name>
is the name of the remote port.

<attribute>
is one of the attributes in Table 12 on page 80.

Tip: With the HBA API package installed, you can also use the **zfcp_ping** and **zfcp_show** commands to find out more about your ports. See “Tools for investigating your SAN configuration” on page 100.

Examples

- In this example, information is displayed for a target port 0x500507630300c562 that is attached through an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/in_recovery  
0
```

- To display transport class attributes of a target port you can use **lszfcp**:

```
# lszfcp -p 0x500507630300c562 -a
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562 rport-0:0-0
Class = "fc_remote_ports"
  dev_loss_tmo      = "60"
  fast_io_fail_tmo  = "off"
  maxframe_size     = "2048 bytes"
  node_name         = "0x5005076303ffc562"
  port_id           = "0x652113"
  port_name         = "0x500507630300c562"
  port_state        = "Online"
  roles              = "FCP Target"
  scsi_target_id    = "0"
  supported_classes = "Class 2, Class 3"
```

Recovering a failed port

Failed target ports are automatically recovered by the zfcp device driver. You can read the `in_recovery` attribute to check whether recovery is under way.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

Procedure

Perform these steps to find out the recovery status of a port and, if needed, start or restart recovery:

1. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/in_recovery
```

where:

`<device_bus_id>`
specifies the FCP device.

`<wwpn>`
is the WWPN of the target port.

The value is 1 if recovery is under way and 0 otherwise. If the value is 0 for a non-operational port, recovery might have failed or the device driver might have failed to detect that the port is malfunctioning.

2. To find out whether recovery failed, read the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/failed
```

The value is 1 if recovery has failed and 0 otherwise.

3. You can start or restart the recovery process for the port by writing 0 to the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/failed
```

Example

In the following example, a port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 that is attached through an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c is malfunctioning. The first command reveals that recovery is not already under way. The second command manually starts recovery for the port:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/in_recovery  
0  
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/failed
```

Removing ports

Removing unused ports can save FCP channel resources. Additionally setting the `no_auto_port_rescan` attribute avoids unnecessary attempts to recover unused remote ports.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

About this task

List the contents of `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>` to find out which ports are currently configured for the FCP device.

You cannot remove a port while SCSI devices are configured for it (see “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 84) or if the port is in use, for example, by error recovery.

Note: The next port scan will attach all available ports, including any previously removed ports. To prevent removed ports from being reattached automatically, use zoning or the `no_auto_port_rescan` module parameter, see “zfcp module parameters” on page 70.

Procedure

To remove a port from an FCP device, write the WWPN of the port to the `port_remove` attribute of the FCP device.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <wwpn> > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/port_remove
```

where:

`<device_bus_id>`
specifies the FCP device.

`<wwpn>`
is the WWPN of the port to be removed.

Example

In this example, two ports with WWPN 0x500507630303c562 and 0x500507630300c562 are configured for an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c. The port with WWPN 0x500507630303c562 is then removed.

```
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0*x  
0x500507630303c562  
0x500507630300c562  
# echo 0x500507630303c562 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/port_remove  
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0*x  
0x500507630300c562
```

Working with SCSI devices

In an NPIV setup with auto lun scan, the SCSI devices are configured automatically. Otherwise, you must configure FCP LUNs to obtain SCSI devices. In both cases, you can configure SCSI devices, display information, and remove SCSI devices.

Working with SCSI devices comprises the following tasks:

- “Configuring SCSI devices”
- “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 86
- “Displaying information about SCSI devices” on page 87
- “Setting the queue depth” on page 90
- “Recovering failed SCSI devices” on page 90
- “Updating the information about SCSI devices” on page 91
- “Setting the SCSI command timeout” on page 92
- “Controlling the SCSI device state” on page 93
- “Removing SCSI devices” on page 94

Configuring SCSI devices

FCP devices that use NPIV mode detect the LUNs automatically and no configuring is necessary. If needed, write the LUN to be configured to the sysfs `unit_add` attribute of the applicable target port.

For each FCP device that uses NPIV mode and if you did not disable automatic LUN scanning (see “zfcp module parameters” on page 70), the LUNs are configured for you. In this case, *no* FCP LUN entries are created under `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>`.

To find out whether an FCP device is using NPIV mode, check the `port_type` attribute, for example:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.1901/host0/fc_host/host0/port_type
NPIV VPORT
```

To find out whether automatic LUN scanning is enabled, check the current setting of the module parameter `zfcp.allow_lun_scan`. The example below shows automatic LUN scanning as turned on.

```
# cat /sys/module/zfcp/parameters/allow_lun_scan
Y
```

Automatically attached SCSI devices

FCP devices that use NPIV mode detect the LUNs automatically and no configuring is necessary.

In this case, *no* FCP LUN entries are created under `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>`.

What to do next

To check whether a SCSI device is registered for the configured LUN, check for a directory with the name of the LUN in `/sys/bus/scsi/devices`. If there is no SCSI

device for this LUN, the LUN is not valid in the storage system, or the FCP device is offline in Linux.

Manually configured FCP LUNs and their SCSI devices

For FCP devices that do not use NPIV mode, or if automatic LUN scanning is disabled, FCP LUNs and their SCSI devices must be configured manually to obtain SCSI devices.

Before you begin

Attention: Use this procedure only to dynamically test configuration settings.

You have the following options for configuring FCP LUNs to attach SCSI devices:

- During installation, use the **anaconda** GUI, the **dracut** boot parameter `rd.fcp=`, or the **kickstart** parameter `zfcp`.
- On an installed system, use the **dracut** boot parameter `rd.fcp=` only for SCSI disks that are required for the root file system. Use the configuration file `/etc/zfcp.conf` for all other SCSI devices, such as data volumes or tape libraries.

For details, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*

You can always specify additional `zfcp` module parameters as explained in Chapter 3, “Kernel and module parameters,” on page 21

Procedure

If your FCP device does not use NPIV mode, or if you have disabled automatic LUN scanning, proceed as follows:

To configure a SCSI device for a target port, write the device's LUN to the port's `unit_add` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <fcp_lun> > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/unit_add
```

where:

`<fcp_lun>`

is the LUN of the SCSI device to be configured. The LUN is a 16 digit hexadecimal value padded with zeroes, for example `0x4010403300000000`.

`<device_bus_id>`

specifies the FCP device.

`<wwpn>`

is the WWPN of the target port.

This command starts a process with multiple steps:

1. It creates a directory in `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>` with the LUN as the directory name. The directory is part of the list of all LUNs to configure. Without NPIV or with auto LUN scanning disabled, zfcp registers only FCP LUNs contained in this list with the Linux SCSI stack in the next step.
2. It initiates the registration of the SCSI device with the Linux SCSI stack. The FCP device must be online for this step.

3. It waits until the Linux SCSI stack registration completes successfully or returns an error. It then returns control to the shell. A successful registration creates a sysfs entry in the SCSI branch (see “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs”).

Example

In this example, a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 is attached through an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c. A SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000 is already configured for the port. An additional SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403300000000 is added to the port.

```
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x*
0x4010403200000000
# echo 0x4010403300000000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/unit_add
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x*
0x4010403200000000
0x4010403300000000
```

What to do next

To check whether a SCSI device is registered for the configured LUN, check for a directory with the name of the LUN in `/sys/bus/scsi/devices`. If there is no SCSI device for this LUN, the LUN is not valid in the storage system, or the FCP device is offline in Linux.

To see which LUNs are currently configured for the port, list the contents of `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>`.

Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs

Each SCSI device that is configured is represented by multiple directories in sysfs, in particular, within the SCSI branch. Only manually configured LUNs are also represented within the zfcp branch.

About this task

The directory in the sysfs SCSI branch has the following form:

`/sys/bus/scsi/devices/<scsi_host_no>:0:<scsi_id>:<scsi_lun>`

where:

`<scsi_host_no>`

is the SCSI host number that corresponds to the FCP device.

`<scsi_id>`

is the SCSI ID of the target port.

`<scsi_lun>`

is the LUN of the SCSI device.

The values for `<scsi_id>` and `<scsi_lun>` depend on the storage device. Often, they are single-digit numbers but for some storage devices they have numerous digits.

For manually configured FCP LUNs, see “Manually configured FCP LUNs and their SCSI devices” on page 85 for details about the directory in the zfcp branch.

Figure 13 on page 87 shows how the directory name is composed in the sysfs SCSI branch. The sysfs zfcp branch only exists for manually configured FCP LUNs. For manually configured FCP LUNs, the directory name is composed of attributes of

consecutive directories and you can find the name of the directory in the sysfs SCSI branch by reading the corresponding attributes in the zfcp branch.

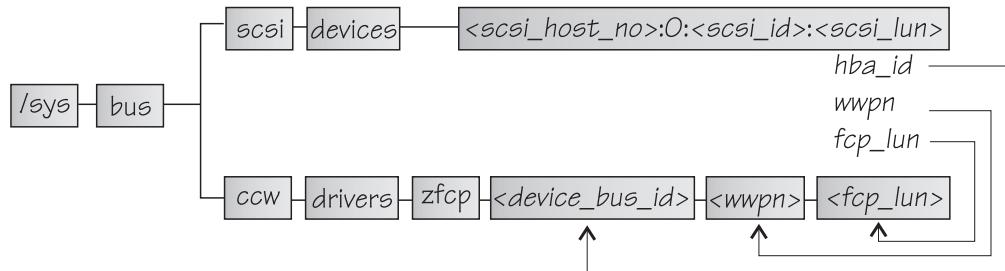


Figure 13. SCSI devices in sysfs

The `hba_id`, `wwpn`, and `fcp_lun` attributes of the SCSI device in the SCSI branch match the names of the `<device_bus_id>`, `<wwpn>`, and `<fcplun>` directories for the same SCSI device in the zfcp branch.

Procedure

Use **lszfcp** (see “**lszfcp - List zfcp devices**” on page 522) to map the two representations of a SCSI device.

Example

This example shows how you can use **lszfcp** to display the name of the SCSI device that corresponds to a zfcp unit, for example:

```
# lszfcp -l 0x4010403200000000
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
```

In the example, the output informs you that the unit with the LUN 0x4010403200000000, which is configured on a port with the WWPN 0x500507630300c562 for an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c, maps to SCSI device "0:0:0:0".

To confirm that the SCSI device belongs to the zfcp unit:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:0:0/hba_id
0.0.3d0c
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:0:0/wwpn
0x500507630300c562
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:0:0/fcp_lun
0x4010403200000000
```

Displaying information about SCSI devices

For each SCSI device, there is a number of read-only attributes in sysfs that provide information for the device.

About this task

Table 13 on page 88 summarizes the read-only attributes for manually configured FCP LUNs, including those attributes that indicate whether the device access is restricted by access control software on the FCP channel.

Table 13. Attributes of manually configured FCP LUNs with device access information

Attribute	Explanation
access_denied	Flag that indicates whether access to the device is restricted by the FCP channel. The value is 1 if access is denied and 0 if access is permitted.
	If access is denied to your Linux instance, confirm that your SCSI devices are configured as intended. Also, be sure that you really want to share a SCSI device. For shared access to a SCSI device, preferably use NPIV (see “N_Port ID Virtualization for FCP channels” on page 70). You might also use different FCP channels or target ports.
access_shared	This attribute is obsolete. The value is always 0.
access_READONLY	This attribute is obsolete. The value is always 0.
in_recovery	Shows if unit is in recovery (0 or 1)

Table 14 lists further read-only attributes with information about the SCSI device.

Table 14. SCSI device class attributes

Attribute	Explanation
device_blocked	Flag that indicates whether the device is in blocked state (0 or 1).
iocounterbits	The number of bits used for I/O counters.
iodone_cnt	The number of completed or rejected SCSI commands.
ioerr_cnt	The number of SCSI commands that completed with an error.
iorequest_cnt	The number of issued SCSI commands.
queue_type	The type of queue for the SCSI device. The value can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• none• simple• ordered
model	The model of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data.
rev	The revision of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data.
scsi_level	The SCSI revision level, received from inquiry data.
type	The type of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data.
vendor	The vendor of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data.
fcp_lun	The LUN of the SCSI device in 64-bit format.
hba_id	The bus ID of the SCSI device.
wwpn	The WWPN of the remote port.

Procedure

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute of a manually configured FCP LUN:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<fcp_lun>/<attribute>
```

where:

<device_bus_id>
 specifies the FCP device.
<wwpn>
 is the WWPN of the target port.
<fcp_lun>
 is the FCP LUN of the SCSI device.
<attribute>
 is one of the attributes in Table 13 on page 88.

Use the **lszfc** command (see “**lszfc - List zfc devices**” on page 522) to display information about the associated SCSI device.

Alternatively, you can use sysfs to read the information. To read attributes of the associated SCSI device, use a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/class/scsi_device/<device_name>/<attribute>
```

where:

<device_name>
 is the name of the associated SCSI device.
<attribute>
 is one of the attributes in Table 14 on page 88.

Tip: For SCSI tape devices you can display a summary of this information by using the **lstable** command (see “**lstable - List tape devices**” on page 515).

Examples

- In this example, information is displayed for a manually configured FCP LUN with LUN 0x4010403200000000 that is accessed through a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 and is attached through an FCP device 0.0.3d0c. For the device, access is permitted.

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/access_denied
0
```

For the device to be accessible, the access_denied attribute of the target port, 0x500507630300c562, must also be 0 (see “**Displaying port information**” on page 80).

- You can use **lszfc** to display attributes of a SCSI device:

```
# lszfc -l 0x4010403200000000 -a
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
Class = "scsi_device"
  device_blocked      = "0"
  fcp_lun             = "0x4010403200000000"
  hba_id              = "0.0.3d0c"
  iocounterbits       = "32"
  iodone_cnt          = "0x111"
  ioerr_cnt            = "0x1"
  iorequest_cnt        = "0x111"
  model               = "2107900"
  queue_depth          = "32"
  queue_type           = "simple"
  rev                 = ".203"
  scsi_level           = "6"
  state                = "running"
  timeout              = "30"
  type                 = "0"
  vendor               = "IBM"
  wwpn                = "0x500507630300c562"
```

Setting the queue depth

The Linux SCSI code automatically adjusts the queue depth as necessary. Changing the queue depth is usually a storage server requirement.

Before you begin

Check the documentation of the storage server used or contact your storage server support group to establish if there is a need to change this setting.

About this task

The value of the queue_depth kernel parameter (see “zfcp module parameters” on page 70) is used as the default queue depth of new SCSI devices. You can query the queue depth by issuing a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<SCSI device>/queue_depth
```

Example:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:19:1086537744/queue_depth  
16
```

You can change the queue depth of each SCSI device by writing to the queue_depth attribute, for example:

```
# echo 8 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:19:1086537744/queue_depth  
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:19:1086537744/queue_depth  
8
```

This is useful on a running system where you want to make dynamic changes. If you want to make the changes persistent across IPLs, you can:

- Use the kernel or module parameter.
- Write a udev rule to change the setting for each new SCSI device.

Linux forwards SCSI commands to the storage server until the number of pending commands exceeds the queue depth. If the server lacks the resources to process a SCSI command, Linux queues the command for a later retry and decreases the queue depth counter. Linux then waits for a defined ramp-up period. If no indications of resource problems occur within this period, Linux increases the queue depth counter until reaching the previously set maximum value. To query the current value for the queue ramp-up period in milliseconds:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:13:1086537744/queue_ramp_up_period  
120000
```

To set a new value for the queue ramp-up period in milliseconds:

```
# echo 1000 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:13:1086537744/queue_ramp_up_period
```

Recovering failed SCSI devices

Failed SCSI devices are automatically recovered by the zfcp device driver. You can read the in_recovery attribute to check whether recovery is under way.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

Procedure

Perform the following steps:

1. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<fc Lun>/in_recovery
```

where the variables have the same meaning as in “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 84.

The value is 1 if recovery is under way and 0 otherwise. If the value is 0 for a non-operational SCSI device, recovery might have failed. Alternatively, the device driver might have failed to detect that the SCSI device is malfunctioning.

2. To find out whether recovery failed, read the failed attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<fc Lun>/failed
```

The value is 1 if recovery has failed, and 0 otherwise.

3. You can start or restart the recovery process for the SCSI device by writing 0 to the failed attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<fc Lun>/failed
```

Example

In the following example, SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000 is malfunctioning. The SCSI device is accessed through a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 and attached through an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c. The first command reveals that recovery is not already under way. The second command manually starts recovery for the SCSI device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/in_recovery  
0  
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/failed
```

Updating the information about SCSI devices

Use the rescan attribute of the SCSI device to detect changes to a storage device on the storage server that are made after the device was discovered.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

About this task

The initial information about the available SCSI devices is discovered automatically when LUNs first become available.

Procedure

To update the information about a SCSI device issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <string> > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<scsi_host_no>:0:<scsi_id>:<scsi_lun>/rescan
```

where *<string>* is any alphanumeric string and the other variables have the same meaning as in “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 86.

Example

In the following example, the information about a SCSI device 1:0:18:1086537744 is updated:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/1:0:18:1086537744/rescan
```

Setting the SCSI command timeout

You can change the timeout if the default is not suitable for your storage system.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

About this task

There is a timeout for SCSI commands. If the timeout expires before a SCSI command completes, error recovery starts. The default timeout is 30 seconds.

To find out the current timeout, read the `timeout` attribute of the SCSI device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<scsi_host_no>:0:<scsi_id>:<scsi_lun>/timeout
```

where the variables have the same meaning as in “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 86.

The attribute value specifies the timeout in seconds.

Procedure

To set a different timeout, enter a command of this form:

```
# echo <timeout> > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<scsi_host_no>:0:<scsi_id>:<scsi_lun>/timeout
```

where *<timeout>* is the new timeout in seconds.

Example

In the following example, the timeout of a SCSI device 1:0:18:1086537744 is first read and then set to 45 seconds:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/1:0:18:1086537744/timeout  
30  
# echo 45 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/1:0:18:1086537744/timeout
```

Controlling the SCSI device state

You can use the state attribute of the SCSI device to set a SCSI device back online if it was set offline by error recovery.

Before you begin

The FCP device must be online.

About this task

If the connection to a storage system is working but the storage system has a problem, the error recovery might set the SCSI device offline. This condition is indicated by a message like “Device offlined - not ready after error recovery”.

To find out the current state of the device, read the state attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<scsi_host_no>:0:<scsi_id>:<scsi_lun>/state
```

where the variables have the same meaning as in “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 86. The state can be:

running

The SCSI device can be used for running regular I/O requests.

cancel

The data structure for the device is being removed.

deleted

Follows the cancel state when the data structure for the device is being removed.

quiesce

No I/O requests are sent to the device, only special requests for managing the device. This state is used when the system is suspended.

offline

Error recovery for the SCSI device has failed.

blocked

Error recovery is in progress and the device cannot be used until the recovery process is completed.

Procedure

To set an offline device online again, write running to the state attribute.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo running > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<scsi_host_no>:0:<scsi_id>:<scsi_lun>/state
```

Example

In the following example, SCSI device 1:0:18:1086537744 is offline and is then set online again:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/1:0:18:1086537744/state  
offline  
# echo running > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/1:0:18:1086537744/state
```

Removing SCSI devices

How to remove a SCSI device depends on whether your environment is set up to use NPIV.

Removing automatically attached SCSI devices

When running with NPIV and automatic LUN scan, you can temporarily delete a SCSI device by writing 1 to the delete attribute of the directory that represents the device in the sysfs SCSI branch.

About this task

See “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 86 about how to find this directory.

Note: These steps delete the SCSI device only temporarily, until the next automatic or user triggered Linux SCSI target scan. The scan automatically adds the SCSI devices again, unless the LUNs were deconfigured on the storage target. To permanently delete SCSI devices, you must disable automatic LUN scanning and configure all LUNs manually, see “Manually configured FCP LUNs and their SCSI devices” on page 85.

Procedure

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<device>/delete
```

Example

In this example, an NPIV SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403700000000 is to be removed. Before the device is deleted, the corresponding device in the sysfs SCSI branch is found with an **lszfc** command.

```
# lszfc -l 0x4010403700000000  
0.0.3d0f/0x500507630300c567/0x4010403700000000 0:0:3:1  
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:3:1/delete
```

Removing manually configured FCP LUNs and their SCSI device

Use the `unit_remove` attribute of the appropriate target port to remove a SCSI device if your environment is not set up to use NPIV or if you disabled automatic LUN scan.

For details about disabling automatic LUN scan, see “zfcp module parameters” on page 70.

Attention: Use this procedure only to dynamically test configuration settings.

Procedure

Follow these steps to remove a manually configured FCP LUN and its SCSI device:

1. Optional: To manually unregister the SCSI device, write 1 to the `delete` attribute of the directory that represents the device in the sysfs SCSI branch. See “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 86 for information about how to find this directory. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<device>/delete
```

2. Remove the SCSI device from the target port by writing the LUN of the device to the `unit_remove` attribute of the port. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <fcp_lun> > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/unit_remove
```

where the variables have the same meaning as in “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 84. Removing a LUN with `unit_remove` automatically unregisters the SCSI device first.

Example

The following example removes a SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000, accessed through a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 and is attached through an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c. The corresponding directory in the sysfs SCSI branch is assumed to be `/sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1`.

1. Optionally, unregister the device:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1/delete
```

2. Remove the device (if not done in previous step) and the LUN:

```
# echo 0x4010403200000000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/unit_remove
```

Confirming end-to-end data consistency checking

There are different types of end-to-end data consistency checking, with dependencies on hardware and software.

About this task

End-to-end data consistency checking is based on a data integrity field (DIF) that is added to transferred data blocks. DIF data is used to confirm that a data block originates from the expected source and was not modified during the transfer between the storage system and the FCP device. The SCSI standard defines several types of DIF. Data integrity extension (DIX) builds on DIF to extend consistency checking, for example, to the operating system, middleware, or an application.

If the zfcp device driver is loaded with the `dif=1` module parameter, Linux automatically discovers which FCP devices and which SCSI devices support end-to-end data consistency checking. No further setup is required.

Note: SCSI devices for which end-to-end data consistency checking is enabled must be accessed with direct I/O. Direct I/O requires direct access through the block device or through a file system that fully supports end-to-end data consistency checking. For example, XFS provides this support. Expect error messages about invalid checksums when using other access methods.

The zfcp device driver supports the following modes:

- The FCP device calculates and checks a DIF checksum (DIF type 1)
- The Linux block integrity layer calculates and checks a TCP/IP checksum, which the FCP device then translates to a DIF checksum (DIX type 1 with DIF type 1)

For SCSI devices for which end-to-end data consistency checking is used, there is a sysfs directory

```
/sys/block/sd<x>/integrity
```

In the path, sd<x> is the standard name of the SCSI device.

End-to-end data consistency checking is used only if all of the following components support it:

SCSI disk

Check your storage server documentation about T10 DIF support and any restrictions.

System z hardware

System z FCP adapter hardware supports end-to-end data consistency checking as of FICON Express8.

Hypervisor

For Linux on z/VM, you require a z/VM version with guest support for end-to-end data consistency checking.

FCP device

Check your FCP adapter hardware documentation about the support and any restrictions. For example, end-to-end data consistency checking might be supported only for disks with 512-byte block size.

Read the prot_capabilities sysfs attribute of the SCSI host associated with an FCP device to find out about its end-to-end data consistency checking support. The following values are possible:

- 0 The FCP device does not support end-to-end data consistency checking.
- 1 The FCP device supports DIF type 1.
- 16 The FCP device supports DIX type 1.
- 17 The FCP device supports DIX type 1 with DIF type 1.

Procedure

Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/host<n>/scsi_host/host<n>/prot_capabilities
```

where <device_bus_id> identifies the FCP device and <n> is an integer that identifies the corresponding SCSI host.

Example

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.1940/host0/scsi_host/host0/prot_capabilities  
17
```

Scenario for finding available LUNs

There are several steps from setting an FCP device online to listing the available LUNs.

Procedure

1. Check for available FCP devices of type 1732/03:

```
# lscss -t 1732/03
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.3c02 0.0.0015 1732/03 1731/03     80 80 ff 36000000 00000000
```

Another possible type would be, for example, 1732/04.

2. Set the FCP device online:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.3c02
```

A port scan is performed automatically when the FCP device is set online.

3. Optional: Confirm that the FCP device is available and online:

```
# lszfcp -b 0.0.3c02 -a
0.0.3c02 host0
Bus = "ccw"
    availability      = "good"
...
    failed            = "0"
...
    in_recovery       = "0"
...
    online            = "1"
...
```

4. Optional: List the available ports:

```
# lszfcp -P
0.0.3c02/0x50050763030bc562 rport-0:0-0
0.0.3c02/0x500507630310c562 rport-0:0-1
0.0.3c02/0x500507630040727b rport-0:0-10
0.0.3c02/0x500507630e060521 rport-0:0-11
...
```

5. Scan for available LUNs on FCP device 0.0.3c02, port 0x50050763030bc562:

```
# lsluns -c 0.0.3c02 -p 0x50050763030bc562
Scanning for LUNs on adapter 0.0.3c02
at port 0x50050763030bc562:
0x4010400000000000
0x4010400100000000
0x4010400200000000
0x4010400300000000
0x4010400400000000
0x4010400500000000
0x4010400600000000
...
```

zfcp HBA API support

You require different libraries for developing and running SAN management client applications. To develop applications, you need the development version of the SNIA HBA API library. To run applications, you need the zFCP HBA API library.

Developing applications

To develop applications, you must install the development version of the SNIA HBA API provided by the `libhbaapi-devel` RPM, link your application against the library, and load the library.

Procedure

1. Install the development RPM for the SNIA HBA API. Use, for example, yum:

```
# yum install libhbaapi-devel
```

The development RPM `libhbaapi-devel` provides the necessary header files and .so symbolic links needed to program against the SNIA HBA API.

2. Add the command line option `-lHBAPI` during the linker step of the build process to link your application against the SNIA HBA API library.
3. In the application, issue the **HBA_LoadLibrary()** call as the first call to load the library. The vendor-specific library `libzfcphbaapi`, in turn, supplies the function **HBA_RegisterLibrary** that returns all function pointers to the common library and thus makes them available to the application.

Functions provided

The zfcp HBA API implements Fibre Channel - HBA API (FC-HBA) functions as defined in the FC-HBA specification.

You can find the FC-HBA specification at www.t11.org. The following functions are available:

- `HBA_GetVersion()`
- `HBA_LoadLibrary()`
- `HBA_FreeLibrary()`
- `HBA_RegisterLibrary()`
- `HBA_RegisterLibraryV2()`
- `HBA_GetNumberOfAdapters()`
- `HBA_GetAdapterName()`
- `HBA_OpenAdapter()`
- `HBA_CloseAdapter()`
- `HBA_RefreshInformation()`
- `HBA_RefreshAdapterConfiguration()`
- `HBA_GetAdapterAttributes()`
- `HBA_GetAdapterPortAttributes()`
- `HBA_GetDiscoveredPortAttributes()`
- `HBA_GetFcpTargetMapping()`
- `HBA_GetFcpTargetMappingV2()`
- `HBA_SendScsiInquiry()`
- `HBA_SendReadCapacity()`
- `HBA_SendReportLUNs()`
- `HBA_SendReportLUNsV2()`
- `HBA_SendCTPassThru()`
- `HBA_SendCTPassThruV2()`
- `HBA_SetRNIDMgmtInfo()`
- `HBA_GetRNIDMgmtInfo()`
- `HBA_SendRNID()`
- `HBA_SendRNIDV()`
- `HBA_SendRPL()`
- `HBA_SendRPS()`
- `HBA_SendSRL()`
- `HBA_SendLIRR()`

- HBA_GetEventBuffer()
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterAddEvents()
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterEvents()
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterPortEvents()
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterPortStatEvents()
- HBA_RegisterForTargetEvents()
- HBA_RegisterForLinkEvents()
- HBA_RemoveCallback()

All other FC-HBA functions return status code
HBA_STATUS_ERROR_NOT_SUPPORTED where possible.

Note: ZFCP HBA API for Linux 3.10 can access only FCP devices, ports, and units that are configured in the operating system.

Getting ready to run applications

To run an application, you must install the zFCP HBA API library that is provided by the libzfcphbaapi RPM. You can set environment variables to log any errors in the library, and use tools to investigate the SAN configuration.

Before you begin

To use the HBA API support, you need the following packages:

- The zFCP HBA API library RPM, libzfcphbaapi.
- The SNIA HBA API library RPM, libhbaapi.

The application must be developed to use the SNIA HBA API library, see “Developing applications” on page 98.

Procedure

Follow these steps to access the library from a client application:

1. Install the libzfcphbaapi RPM with **yum**. Yum automatically installs all dependent packages such as libhbaapi. For example:

```
# yum install libzfcphbaapi
```

2. Ensure that the /etc/hba.conf file exists and contains a line of the form:

```
<library name> <library pathname>
```

For example:

```
libzfcphbaapi /usr/lib64/libzfcphbaapi-2.1.so
```

The SNIA library requires a configuration file called /etc/hba.conf that contains the path to the vendor-specific library libzfcphbaapi.so.

3. Optional: Set the environment variables for logging errors. The zfcp HBA API support uses the following environment variables to log errors in the zfcp HBA API library:

LIB_ZFCP_HBAAPI_LOG_LEVEL

specifies the log level. If not set or set to zero, there is no logging (default). If set to an integer value greater than 1, logging is enabled.

LIB_ZFCP_HBAAPI_LOG_FILE

specifies a file for the logging output. If not specified, stderr is used.

What to do next

You can use the **zfcp_ping** and **zfcp_show** commands to investigate your SAN configuration.

Tools for investigating your SAN configuration

As of version 2.1, the HBA API package includes tools that can help you to investigate your SAN configuration and to solve configuration problems.

zfcp_ping

to probe a port in the SAN.

zfcp_show

to retrieve information about the SAN topology and details about the SAN components.

See *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413 for details.

Chapter 6. Storage-class memory device driver supporting Flash Express

The storage-class memory device driver provides support of Flash Express.

The Flash Express memory is accessed as storage-class memory increments through extended asynchronous data mover (EADM) subchannels. Each increment is represented in Linux by a block device.

What you should know about storage-class memory

Storage-class memory (SCM) is a class of data storage devices that combines properties of both storage and memory.

To access storage-class memory from within an LPAR, you must add one or more increments to the I/O configuration of the LPAR. At least one EADM subchannel must be available to this LPAR. Because SCM supports multiple concurrent I/O requests, it is advantageous to configure multiple EADM subchannels. A typical number of EADM subchannels is 64.

Each increment is available for use through a device node as a block device. You can use the block device with standard Linux tools as you would use any other block device. Commonly used tools that work with block devices include: **fdisk**, **mkfs**, and **mount**.

Storage-class memory is useful for workloads with large write operations, that is, with a block size of 256 KB or more of data. Write operations with a block size of less than 256 KB of data might not perform optimally. Read operations can be of any size.

Storage-class memory device nodes

Applications access storage-class memory devices by device nodes. Red Hat Enterprise Linux creates a device node for each storage increment.

The device driver uses a device name of the form `/dev/scm<x>` for an entire block device. In the name, `<x>` is one or two lowercase letters.

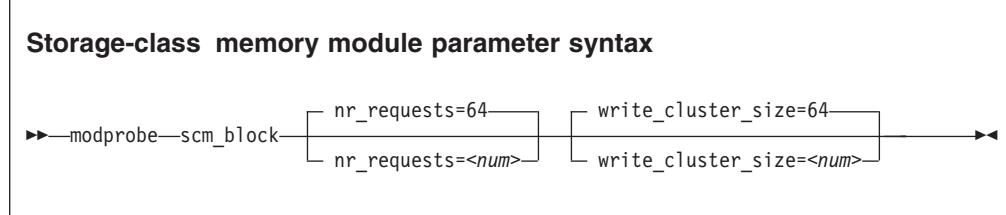
You can partition a block device into up to seven partitions. If you use partitions, the device driver numbers them from 1 - 7. The partitions then have device nodes of the form `/dev/scm<x><n>`, where `<n>` is a number in the range 1 - 7, for example, `/dev/scma1`.

The following example shows two block devices, `scma` and `scmb`, where `scma` has one partition, `scma1`.

```
# lsblk
NAME      MAJ:MIN RM  SIZE RO MOUNTPOINT
scma     252:0    0   16G  0
`-scma1  252:1    0   16G  0
scmb     252:8    0   16G  0
```

Setting up the storage-class memory device driver

Configure the storage-class memory device driver by using the module parameters.



where

nr_requests

specifies the number of parallel I/O requests. Set this number to the number of EADM subchannels. The default is 64.

write_cluster_size

specifies the number of pages that are used by the read-modify-write algorithm. The default is 64, resulting in that all write requests smaller than 256 KiB are translated to 256 KiB writes. (1 KiB is 1024 bytes.) 64 is the optimal setting; changing it might have a negative impact on flash adapter performance.

Working with storage-class memory increments

You can list storage-class memory increments and EADM devices.

- “Displaying EADM subchannels”
- “Listing storage-class memory increments” on page 103
- “Combining SCM devices with LVM” on page 103

Displaying EADM subchannels

Use the `lscss` command to list EADM subchannels.

About this task

The extended asynchronous data mover (EADM) subchannels are used to transfer data to and from the storage-class memory. At least one EADM subchannel must be available to the LPAR.

Procedure

To list EADM subchannels, issue:

```
# lscss --eadm
Device Subchan.
-----
n/a 0.0.ff00
n/a 0.0.ff01
n/a 0.0.ff02
n/a 0.0.ff03
n/a 0.0.ff04
n/a 0.0.ff05
n/a 0.0.ff06
n/a 0.0.ff07
```

For more information about the **lscss** command, see “[lscss - List subchannels](#)” on page 499.

Listing storage-class memory increments

Use the **lsscm** command to see the status and attributes of storage-class memory increments.

About this task

Each storage-class memory increment can be accessed as a block device through a device node `/dev/scm<x>`. Optionally, you can partition a storage-class memory increment in up to seven partitions.

You can also use the **lsblk** command to list all block devices.

Procedure

To list all storage-class memory increments, their status, and attributes, issue:

```
# lsscm
SCM Increment      Size     Name   Rank D_state O_state Pers ResID
-----
0000000000000000 16384MB scma      1       2       1       2       1
0000000400000000 16384MB scmb      1       2       1       2       1
```

See “[lsscm - List storage-class memory increments](#)” on page 512 for details about the **lsscm** command.

Combining SCM devices with LVM

You can use LVM to combine multiple SCM block devices into an arbitrary sized LVM device.

Example

Configure SCM as any other block devices in LVM. If your version of LVM does not accept SCM devices as valid LVM device types and issues an error message, add the SCM devices to the LVM configuration file `/etc/lvm/lvm.conf`. Add the following line to the section labeled “devices”:

```
types = [ "scm", 8 ]
```

Chapter 7. Channel-attached tape device driver

The tape device driver supports channel-attached tape devices on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

SCSI tape devices that are attached through an FCP channel are handled by the zfcp device driver (see Chapter 5, “SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver,” on page 65).

Features

The tape device driver supports a range of channel-attached tape devices and functions of these devices.

- The tape device driver supports channel-attached tape drives that are compatible with IBM 3480, 3490, 3590, and 3592 magnetic tape subsystems. Various models of these device types are handled (for example, the 3490/10).
3592 devices that emulate 3590 devices are recognized and treated as 3590 devices.
- Logical character devices for non-rewinding and rewinding modes of operation (see “Tape device modes and logical devices”).
- Control operations through **mt** (see “Using the mt command” on page 107).
- Message display support (see “tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes” on page 550).
- Encryption support (see “tape390_crypt - Manage tape encryption” on page 546).
- Up to 128 physical tape devices.

What you should know about channel-attached tape devices

A naming scheme helps you to keep track of your tape devices, their modes of operation, and the corresponding device nodes.

Tape device modes and logical devices

The tape device driver supports up to 128 physical tape devices. Each physical tape device can be used as a character device in non-rewinding or in rewinding mode.

In non-rewinding mode, the tape remains at the current position when the device is closed. In rewinding mode, the tape is rewound when the device is closed. The tape device driver treats each mode as a separate logical device.

Both modes provide sequential (traditional) tape access without any caching done in the kernel.

You can use a channel-attached tape device in the same way as any other Linux tape device. You can write to it and read from it using standard Linux facilities such as GNU **tar**. You can perform control operations (such as rewinding the tape or skipping a file) with the standard tool **mt**.

Tape naming scheme

The tape device driver assigns minor numbers along with an index number when a physical tape device comes online.

The naming scheme for tape devices is summarized in Table 15:

Table 15. Tape device names and minor numbers

Device	Names	Minor numbers
Non-rewinding character devices	ntibm< n >	2×< n >
Rewinding character devices	rtibm< n >	2×< n >+1

where < n > is the index number that is assigned by the device driver. The index starts from 0 for the first physical tape device, 1 for the second, and so on. The name space is restricted to 128 physical tape devices, so the maximum index number is 127 for the 128th physical tape device.

The index number and corresponding minor numbers and device names are not permanently associated with a specific physical tape device. When a tape device goes offline, it surrenders its index number. The device driver assigns the lowest free index number when a physical tape device comes online. An index number with its corresponding device names and minor numbers can be reassigned to different physical tape devices as devices go offline and come online.

Tip: Use the **1stape** command (see “**1stape - List tape devices**” on page 515) to determine the current mapping of index numbers to physical tape devices.

When the tape device driver is loaded, it dynamically allocates a major number to channel-attached character tape devices. A different major number might be used when the device driver is reloaded, for example when Linux is rebooted.

For online tape devices directories provide information about the major/minor assignments. The directories have the form:

- /sys/class/tape390/ntibm< n >
- /sys/class/tape390/rtibm< n >

Each of these directories has a dev attribute. The value of the dev attribute has the form <major>:<minor>, where <major> is the major number of the device and <minor> is the minor number specific to the logical device.

Example

In this example, four physical tape devices are present, with three of them online. The TapeNo column shows the index number and the BusID indicates the associated physical tape device. In the example, no index number is allocated to the tape device in the first row. The device is offline and, currently, no names and minor numbers are assigned to it.

```
# 1stape --ccw-only
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model DevType/DevMod BlkSize State   Op     MedState
0       0.0.01a1    3490/10     3490/40      auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
1       0.0.01a0    3480/01     3480/04      auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
2       0.0.0172    3590/50     3590/11      auto    IN_USE  ---    LOADED
N/A    0.0.01ac    3490/10     3490/40      N/A    OFFLINE ---    N/A
```

Table 16 on page 107 summarizes the resulting names and minor numbers.

Table 16. Example names and minor numbers

Bus ID	Index (TapeNo)	Device	Device name	Minor number
0.0.01a1	0	non-rewind	ntibm0	0
		rewind	rtibm0	1
0.0.01a0	1	non-rewind	ntibm1	2
		rewind	rtibm1	3
0.0.0172	2	non-rewind	ntibm2	4
		rewind	rtibm2	5
0.0.01ac	not assigned	n/a	n/a	not assigned

For the online character devices, the major/minor assignments can be read from their respective representations in /sys/class:

```
# cat /sys/class/tape390/ntibm0/dev  
254:0  
# cat /sys/class/tape390/rtibm0/dev  
254:1  
# cat /sys/class/tape390/ntibm1/dev  
254:2  
# cat /sys/class/tape390/rtibm1/dev  
254:3  
# cat /sys/class/tape390/ntibm2/dev  
254:4  
# cat /sys/class/tape390/rtibm2/dev  
254:5
```

In the example, the major number that is used for character devices is 254. The minor numbers are as expected for the respective device names.

Tape device nodes

Applications access tape devices by device nodes. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 uses udev to create two device nodes for each tape device.

The device nodes have the form /dev/<name>, where <name> is the device name according to “Tape naming scheme” on page 106.

For example, if you have two tape devices, udev creates the device nodes that are shown in Table 17:

Table 17. Tape device nodes

Node for	non-rewind device	rewind device
First tape device	/dev/ntibm0	/dev/rtibm0
Second tape device	/dev/ntibm1	/dev/rtibm1

Using the mt command

There are differences between the MTIO interface for channel-attached tapes and other tape drives. Correspondingly, some operations of the **mt** command are different for channel-attached tapes.

The **mt** command handles basic tape control in Linux. See the man page for general information about **mt**.

Basic Linux tape control is handled by the **mt** utility. See the man page for general information about **mt**.

setdensity

has no effect because the recording density is automatically detected on channel-attached tape hardware.

drvbuffer

has no effect because channel-attached tape hardware automatically switches to unbuffered mode if buffering is unavailable.

lock / unlock

have no effect because channel-attached tape hardware does not support media locking.

setpartition / mkpartition

have no effect because channel-attached tape hardware does not support partitioning.

status returns a structure that, aside from the block number, contains mostly SCSI-related data that does not apply to the tape device driver.

load does not automatically load a tape but waits for a tape to be loaded manually.

offline or rewoffl or eject

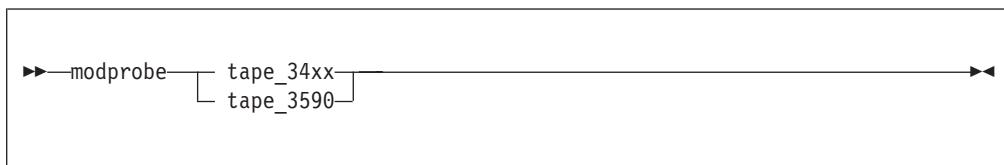
all include expelling the currently loaded tape. Depending on the stacker mode, it might attempt to load the next tape (see “Loading and unloading tapes” on page 112 for details).

Loading the tape device driver

You must load the appropriate tape device driver module before you can work with tape devices.

Use the **modprobe** command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order.

Tape module syntax



See the **modprobe** man page for details about **modprobe**.

To load the tape device driver module automatically at boot time, see the section on persistent module loading in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

Working with tape devices

Typical tasks for working with tape devices include displaying tape information, controlling compression, and loading and unloading tapes.

For information about working with the channel measurement facility, see Chapter 38, “Channel measurement facility,” on page 407.

For information about displaying messages on a tape device's display unit, see "tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes" on page 550.

See "Working with newly available devices" on page 10 to avoid errors when working with devices that have become available to a running Linux instance.

- "Setting a tape device online or offline"
- "Displaying tape information" on page 110
- "Enabling compression" on page 112
- "Loading and unloading tapes" on page 112

Setting a tape device online or offline

Set a tape device online or offline with the **chccwdev** command or through the **online** sysfs attribute of the device.

About this task

Setting a physical tape device online makes both corresponding logical devices accessible:

- The non-rewind character device
- The rewind character device

At any time, the device can be online to a single Linux instance only. You must set the tape device offline to make it accessible to other Linux instances in a shared environment.

Procedure

Use the **chccwdev** command (see "chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes" on page 436) to set a tape online or offline.

Alternatively, you can write 1 to the device's **online** attribute to set it online or 0 to set it offline.

Results

When a physical tape device is set online, the device driver assigns an index number to it. This index number is used in the standard device nodes (see "Tape device nodes" on page 107) to identify the corresponding logical devices. The index number is in the range 0 - 127. A maximum of 128 physical tape devices can be online concurrently.

If you are using the standard device nodes, you must find out which index number the tape device driver has assigned to your tape device. This index number, and consequently the associated standard device node, can change after a tape device was set offline and back online.

If you need to know the index number, issue a command of this form:

```
# lstable --ccw-only <device_bus_id>
```

where *<device_bus_id>* is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the physical tape device. The index number is the value in the TapeNo column of the command output. For more information about the **lstable** command, see "lstable - List tape devices" on page 515.

Examples

- To set a physical tape device with device bus-ID 0.0.015f online, issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.015f
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/online
```

To find the index number that the tape device driver assigned to the device, issue:

```
# lstable 0.0.015f --ccw-only
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/Model BlkSize State Op MedState
2      0.0.015f  3480/01   3480/04    auto    UNUSED --- LOADED
```

In the example, the assigned index number is 2. The standard device nodes for working with the device until it is set offline are then:

- /dev/ntibm2 for the non-rewinding device
- /dev/rtibm2 for the rewinding device

- To set a physical tape device with device bus-ID 0.0.015f offline, issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.015f
```

or

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/online
```

Displaying tape information

Use the **lstable** command to display summary information about your tape devices, or read tape information from sysfs.

Alternatively, you can read tape information from sysfs. Each physical tape device is represented in a sysfs directory of the form

`/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>`

where `<device_bus_id>` is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the physical tape device. This directory contains a number of attributes with information about the physical device. The attributes: blocksize, state, operation, and medium_state, might not show the current values if the device is offline.

Table 18. Tape device attributes

Attribute	Explanation
online	1 if the device is online or 0 if it is offline (see “Setting a tape device online or offline” on page 109)
cmb_enable	1 if channel measurement block is enabled for the physical device or 0 if it is not enabled (see Chapter 38, “Channel measurement facility,” on page 407)
cutype	Type and model of the control unit
devtype	Type and model of the physical tape device

Table 18. Tape device attributes (continued)

Attribute	Explanation
blocksize	Currently used block size in bytes or 0 for auto
state	State of the physical tape device, either of: UNUSED Device is not in use and is available to any operating system image in a shared environment IN_USE Device is being used as a character device by a process on this Linux image OFFLINE The device is offline. NOT_OP Device is not operational
operation	The current tape operation, for example: --- No operation WRI Write operation RFO Read operation MSN Medium sense Several other operation codes exist, for example, for rewind and seek.
medium_state	The current state of the tape cartridge: 1 Cartridge is loaded into the tape device 2 No cartridge is loaded 0 The tape device driver does not have information about the current cartridge state

Procedure

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/<attribute>
```

where *<attribute>* is one of the attributes of Table 18 on page 110.

Example

The following **ltape** command displays information about a tape device with bus ID 0.0.015f:

```
# ltape 0.0.015f --ccw-only
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/Model BlkSize State Op MedState
2      0.0.015f 3480/01   3480/04    auto   UNUSED  --- LOADED
```

This sequence of commands reads the same information from sysfs:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/online
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/cmb_enable
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/cutype
3480/01
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/devtype
3480/04
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/blocksize
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/state
UNUSED
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/operation
---
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/medium_state
1
```

Enabling compression

Control Improved Data Recording Capability (IDRC) compression with the **mt** command provided by the RPM mt-st.

About this task

Compression is off after the tape device driver is loaded.

Procedure

To enable compression, issue:

```
# mt -f <node> compression
```

or

```
# mt -f <node> compression 1
```

where *<node>* is the device node for a character device, for example, /dev/ntibm0.

To disable compression, issue:

```
# mt -f <tape> compression 0
```

Any other numeric value has no effect, and any other argument disables compression.

Example

To turn on compression for a tape device with a device node /dev/ntibm0 issue:

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm0 compression 1
```

Loading and unloading tapes

Unload tapes with the **mt** command. How to load tapes depends on the stacker mode of your tape hardware.

Procedure

Unload tapes by issuing a command of this form:

```
# mt -f <node> unload
```

where *<node>* is one of the character device nodes.

Whether or not you can load tapes from your Linux instance depends on the stacker mode of your tape hardware. There are three possible modes:

manual

Tapes must always be loaded manually by an operator. You can use the **tape390_display** command (see “*tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes*” on page 550) to display a short message on the tape device’s display unit when a new tape is required.

automatic

If there is another tape present in the stacker, the tape device automatically loads a new tape when the current tape is expelled. You can load a new tape from Linux by expelling the current tape with the **mt** command.

system

The tape device loads a tape when instructed from the operating system. From Linux, you can load a tape with the **tape390_display** command (see “*tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes*” on page 550). You cannot use the **mt** command to load a tape.

Example

To expel a tape from a tape device that can be accessed through a device node */dev/ntibm0*, issue:

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm0 unload
```

Assuming that the stacker mode of the tape device is “system” and that a tape is present in the stacker, you can load a new tape by issuing:

```
# tape390_display -l "NEW TAPE" /dev/ntibm0
```

“*NEW TAPE*” is a message that is displayed on the tape devices display unit until the tape device receives the next tape movement command.

Chapter 8. XPRAM device driver

With the XPRAM block device driver Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z can access expanded storage. XPRAM can be used as a basis for fast swap devices or for fast file systems.

Expanded storage can be swapped in or out of the main storage in 4 KB blocks. All XPRAM devices provide a block size of 4096 bytes.

XPRAM features

The XPRAM device driver automatically detects expanded storage and supports expanded storage partitions.

- If expanded storage is not available, XPRAM fails gracefully with a log message that reports the absence of expanded storage.
- The expanded storage can be divided into up to 32 partitions.

What you should know about XPRAM

There is a device node for each XPRAM partition. Expanded storage persists across reboots and, with suitable boot parameters, the stored data can be accessed by the rebooted Linux instance.

XPRAM partitions and device nodes

The XPRAM device driver uses major number 35. The standard device names are of the form `slram<n>`, where `<n>` is the corresponding minor number.

You can use the entire available expanded storage as a single XPRAM device or divide it into up to 32 partitions. Each partition is treated as a separate XPRAM device.

If the entire expanded storage is used a single device, the device name is `slram0`. For partitioned expanded storage, the `<n>` in the device name denotes the $(n+1)$ th partition. For example, the first partition is called `slram0`, the second `slram1`, and the 32nd partition is called `slram31`.

Table 19. XPRAM device names, minor numbers, and partitions

Minor	Name	To access
0	<code>slram0</code>	the first partition or the entire expanded storage if there are no partitions
1	<code>slram1</code>	the second partition
2	<code>slram2</code>	the third partition
...
<code><n></code>	<code>slram<n></code>	the $(<n>+1)$ th partition
...
31	<code>slram31</code>	the 32nd partition

The device nodes that you need to access these partitions are created by udev when you load the XPRAM device driver module. The nodes are of the form

`/dev/s1ram<n>`, where `<n>` is the index number of the partition. In addition, to the device nodes udev creates a symbolic link of the form `/dev/xpram<n>` that points to the respective device node.

XPRAM use for diagnosis

Expanded storage persists across reboots, which makes it suitable for storing diagnostic information.

Issuing an IPL command to reboot Linux does not reset expanded storage. Expanded storage is persistent across IPLs and can be used, for example, to store diagnostic information. The expanded storage is reset when the z/VM guest virtual machine is logged off or when the LPAR is activated.

Reusing XPRAM partitions

You might be able to reuse existing file systems or swap devices on an XPRAM device or partition after reloading the XPRAM device driver (for example, after rebooting Linux).

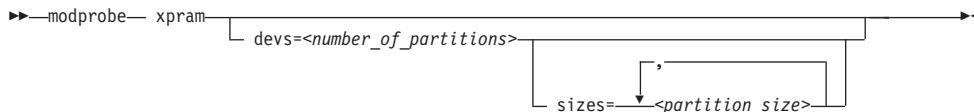
For file systems or swap devices to be reusable, the XPRAM kernel or module parameters for the new device or partition must match the parameters of the previous use of XPRAM.

If you change the XPRAM parameters, you must create a new file system (for example with `mke2fs`) or a new swap device for each changed partition. A device or partition is considered changed if its size has changed. All partitions that follow a changed partition are also considered changed even if their sizes are unchanged.

Setting up the XPRAM device driver

You can optionally partition the available expanded storage by using the `devs` and `sizes` module parameters when you load the `xpram` module.

XPRAM module parameter syntax



where:

`<number_of_partitions>`

is an integer in the range 1 - 32 that defines how many partitions the expanded storage is split into.

`<partition_size>`

specifies the size of a partition. The i-th value defines the size of the i-th partition.

Each size is a non-negative integer that defines the size of the partition in KB or a blank. Only decimal values are allowed and no magnitudes are accepted.

You can specify up to `<number_of_partitions>` values. If you specify fewer values than `<number_of_partitions>`, the missing values are interpreted as blanks. Blanks are treated like zeros.

Any partition that is defined with a non-zero size is allocated the amount of memory that is specified by its size parameter.

Any remaining memory is divided as equally as possible among any partitions with a zero or blank size parameter. Dividing the remaining memory is subject to the following constraints:

- Blocks must be allocated in multiples of 4 KB.
- Addressing constraints might leave un-allocated areas of memory between partitions.

See the **modprobe** man page for details about **modprobe**.

To load the XPRAM device driver module automatically at boot time, see the section on persistent module loading in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*

Examples

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into four partitions. Partition 1 has 2 GB (2097152 KB), partition 4 has 4 GB (4194304 KB), and partitions 2 and 3 use equal parts of the remaining storage. If the total amount of extended storage was 16 GB, then partitions 3 and 4 would each have approximately 5 GB.

```
# modprobe xram devs=4 sizes=2097152,0,0,4194304
```

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into three partitions. The partition 2 has 512 KB and the partitions 1 and 3 use equal parts of the remaining extended storage.

```
# modprobe xram devs=3 sizes=,512
```

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into two partitions of equal size.

```
# modprobe xram devs=2
```

Part 3. Networking

Chapter 9. qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets	123
Device driver functions	126
What you should know about the qeth device driver	129
Setting up the qeth device driver	135
Working with qeth devices	136
Working with qeth devices in layer 3 mode	154
Scenario: VIPA – minimize outage due to adapter failure	165
Scenario: Virtual LAN (VLAN) support	171
HiperSockets Network Concentrator	175
Setting up for DHCP with IPv4	180
Setting up Linux as a LAN sniffer	181
Chapter 10. OSA-Express SNMP subagent support	185
What you should know about osasnmpd	185
Setting up osasnmpd	186
Working with the osasnmpd subagent	190
Chapter 11. LAN channel station device driver	193
What you should know about LCS	193
Setting up the LCS device driver	193
Working with LCS devices	194
Chapter 12. CTCM device driver	199
Features	199
What you should know about CTCM	199
Setting up the CTCM device driver	201
Working with CTCM devices	201
CTCM scenarios	208
Chapter 13. AF_IUCV address family support	213
Features	213
Setting up the AF_IUCV address family support	214
Addressing AF_IUCV sockets in applications	215

There are several System z specific network device drivers for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at
ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html

Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at
https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

Example

An example network setup that uses some available network setup types is shown in Figure 14 on page 120.

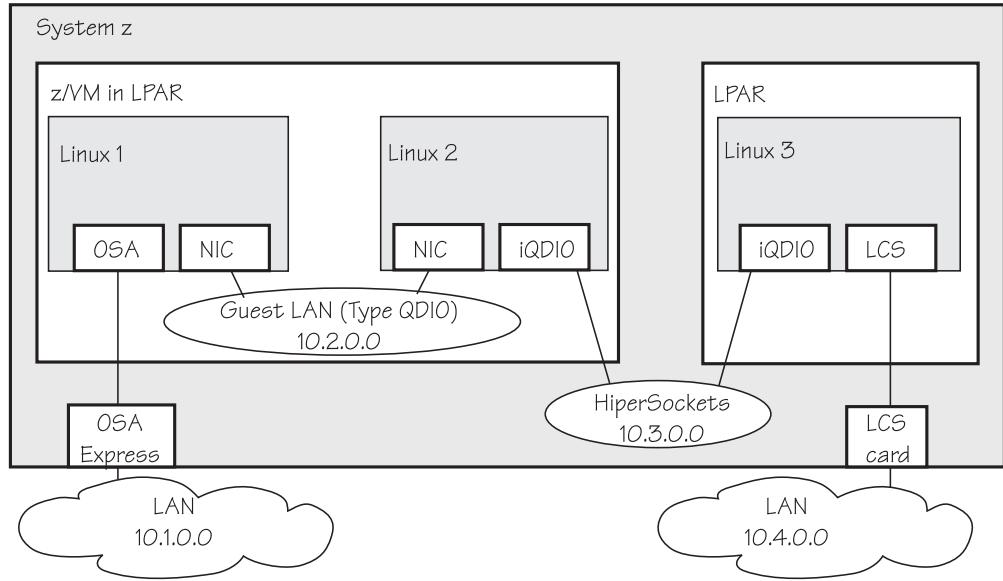


Figure 14. Networking example

In the example there are three Linux instances; two of them run as z/VM guests in one LPAR and a third Linux instance runs in another LPAR. Within z/VM, Linux instances can be connected through a guest LAN or VSWITCH. Within and between LPARs, you can connect Linux instances through HiperSockets. OSA-Express cards running in either non-QDIO mode (called LCS here) or in QDIO mode can connect the System z mainframe to an external network.

Table 20 lists which control units and device type combinations are supported by the network device drivers.

Table 20. Supported device types, control units, and corresponding device drivers

Device type	Control unit	Device driver	Comment
1732/01	1731/01	qeth	OSA configured as OSD
1732/02	1731/02	qeth	OSA configured as OSX
1732/03	1731/02	qeth	OSA configured as OSM
1732/05	1731/05	qeth	HiperSockets
1732/06	1731/06	qeth	OSA configured as OSN
0000/00	3088/01	lcs	P/390
0000/00	3088/08	ctcm	Virtual CTC under z/VM
0000/00	3088/1e	ctcm	FICON channel
0000/00	3088/1f	lcs	2216 Nways Multiaccess Connector
0000/00	3088/1f	ctcm	ESCON® channel
0000/00	3088/60	lcs	OSA configured as OSE (non-QDIO)

Chapter 9. qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets

The qeth device driver supports a multitude of network connections, for example, connections through Open Systems Adapters (OSA), HiperSockets, guest LANs, and virtual switches.

Real connections that use OSA-Express

A System z mainframe offers OSA-Express adapters, which are real LAN-adapter hardware, see Figure 15. These adapters provide connections to the outside world, but can also connect virtual systems (between LPARs or between z/VM guest virtual machines) within the mainframe. The qeth driver supports these adapters if they are defined to run in queued direct I/O (QDIO) mode (defined as OSD or OSN in the hardware configuration). OSD-devices are the standard System z LAN-adapters, while OSN-devices serve as NCP-adapters. For details about OSA-Express in QDIO mode, see *OSA-Express Customer's Guide and Reference*, SA22-7935.

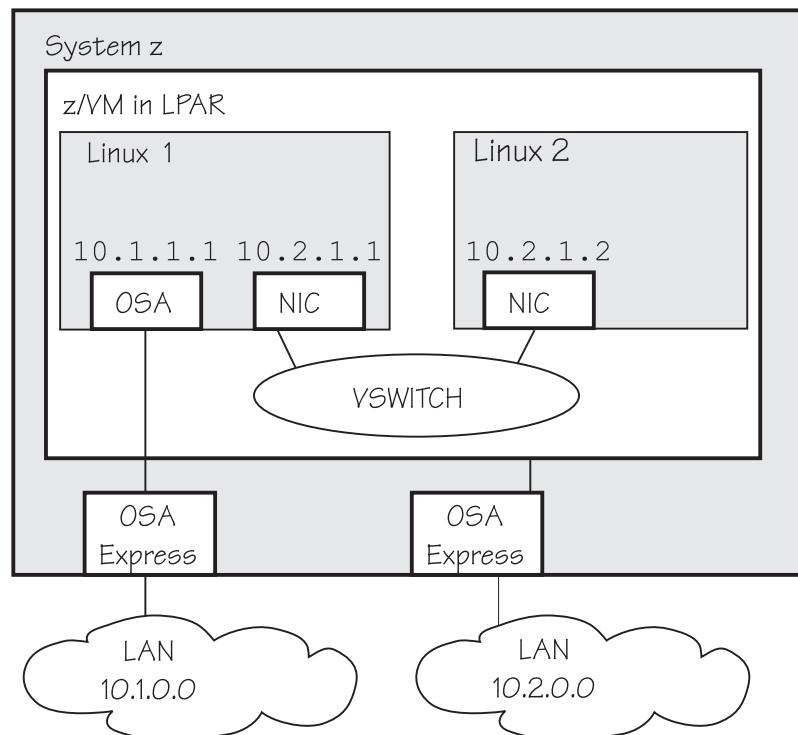


Figure 15. OSA-Express adapters are real LAN-adapter hardware

The OSA-Express LAN adapter can serve as a Network Control Program (NCP) adapter for an internal ESCON/CDLC interface to another mainframe operating system. This feature is used by the IBM Communication Controller for Linux (CCL). The OSA CHPID type does not support any additional network functions and its only purpose is to provide a bridge between the CDLC and QDIO interfaces to connect to the Linux NCP. For more details, see the *IBM Communication Controller Migration Guide*, SG24-6298.

The qeth device driver supports OSA-Express features for the System z mainframes that are relevant to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 as shown in Table 21:

Table 21. The qeth device driver support for OSA-Express features

Feature	zEC12 and zBC12	z196 and z114
OSA-Express5S	Gigabit Ethernet 10 Gigabit Ethernet 1000Base-T Ethernet	Not supported
OSA-Express4S	Gigabit Ethernet 10 Gigabit Ethernet 1000Base-T Ethernet	Gigabit Ethernet 10 Gigabit Ethernet
OSA-Express3	Gigabit Ethernet 10 Gigabit Ethernet 1000Base-T Ethernet	Gigabit Ethernet 10 Gigabit Ethernet 1000Base-T Ethernet
OSA-Express2	Not supported	Gigabit Ethernet 1000Base-T Ethernet

Note: Unless otherwise indicated, OSA-Express refers to the OSA-express features as shown in Table 21.

The qeth device driver supports CHPIDs of type OSM and OSX:

OSM provides connectivity to the intranode management network (INMN) from Unified Resource Manager functions to a zEnterprise CPC.

OSX provides connectivity to and access control for the intraensemble data network (IEDN), which is managed by Unified Resource Manager functions. A zEnterprise CPC and zBX within an ensemble are connected through the IEDN. See *zEnterprise System Introduction to Ensembles*, GC27-2609 and *zEnterprise System Ensemble Planning and Configuring Guide*, GC27-2608 for more details.

HiperSockets

A System z mainframe offers internal connections that are called *HiperSockets*. These simulate QDIO network adapters and provide high-speed TCP/IP communication for operating system instances within and across LPARs. For details about HiperSockets, see *HiperSockets Implementation Guide*, SG24-6816.

Virtual connections for Linux on z/VM

z/VM offers virtualized LAN-adapters that enable connections between z/VM guest virtual machines and the outside world. It allows definitions of simulated network interface cards (NICs) attached to certain z/VM guest virtual machines. The NICs can be connected to a simulated LAN segment called *guest LAN* for z/VM internal communication between z/VM guest virtual machines, or they can be connected to a virtual switch called *VSWITCH* for external LAN connectivity.

Guest LAN

Guest LANs represent a simulated LAN segment that can be connected to simulated network interface cards. There are three types of guest LANs:

- Simulated OSA-Express in layer 3 mode
- Simulated HiperSockets (layer 3) mode

- Simulated Ethernet in layer 2 mode

Each guest LAN is isolated from other guest LANs on the same system (unless some member of one LAN group acts as a router to other groups). See Figure 16.

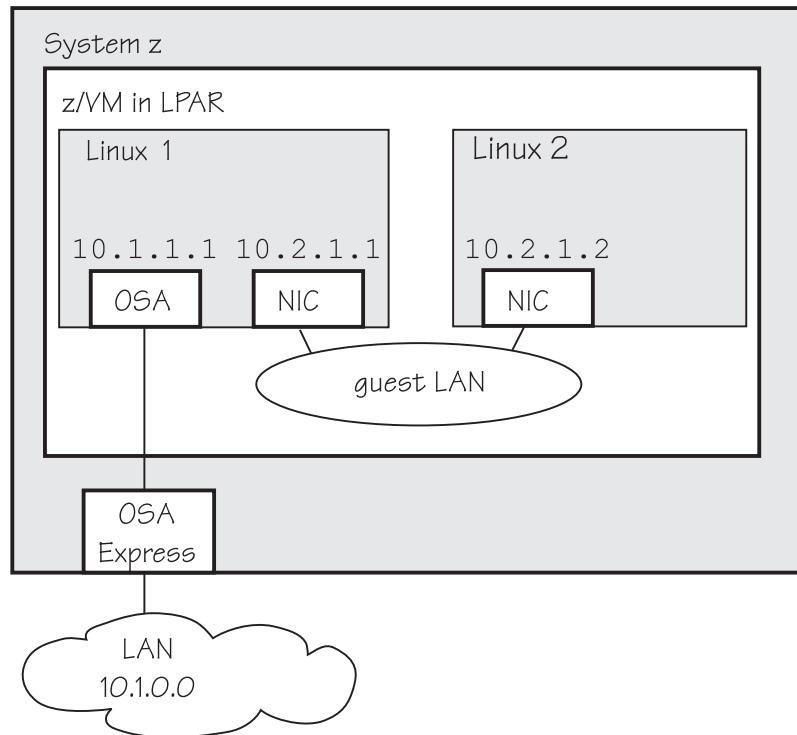


Figure 16. Guest LAN

Virtual switch

A virtual switch (VSWITCH) is a special-purpose guest LAN that provides external LAN connectivity through an additional OSA-Express device served by z/VM without the need for a routing virtual machine, see Figure 17 on page 126.

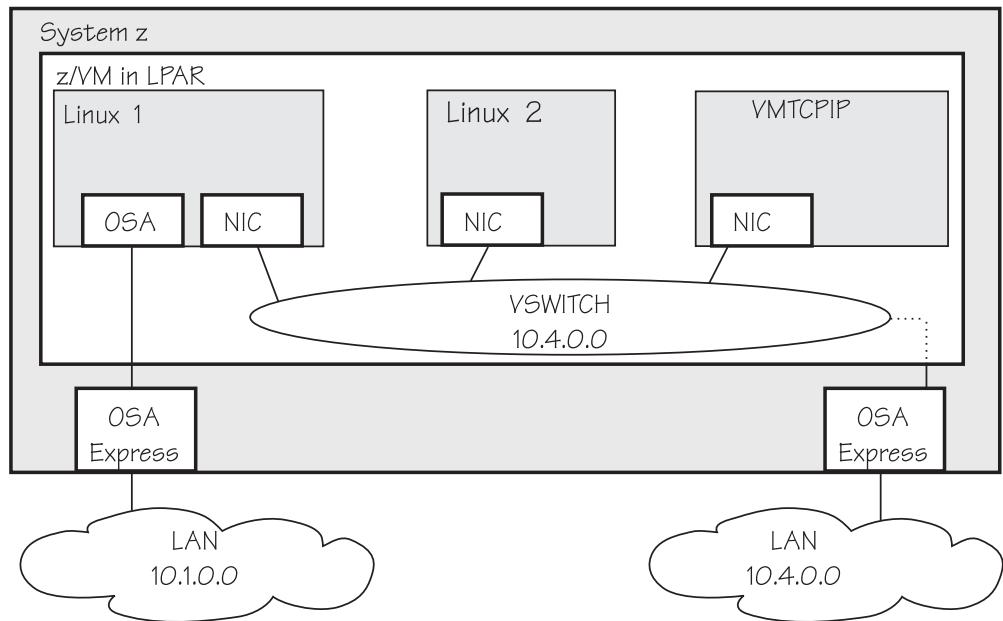


Figure 17. Virtual switch

A dedicated OSA adapter can be an option, but is not required for a VSWITCH.

From a Linux point of view there is no difference between guest LAN- and VSWITCH-devices; thus Linux talks about guest LAN-devices independently of their z/VM-attachment to a guest LAN or VSWITCH.

For information about guest LANs, virtual switches, and virtual HiperSockets, see *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6174.

Device driver functions

The qeth device driver supports many networking transport protocol functions, as well as offload functions and problem determination functions.

The qeth device driver supports functions listed in Table 22 and Table 23 on page 128.

Table 22. Real connections

Function	OSA Layer 2	OSA Layer 3	HiperSockets Layer 2 Ethernet	HiperSockets Layer 3 Ethernet
Basic device or protocol functions				
IPv4/multicast/broadcast	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes
IPv6/multicast	Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes
Non-IP traffic	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
VLAN IPv4/IPv6/non IP	sw/sw/sw	hw/sw/sw	sw/sw/sw	hw/sw/No
Linux ARP	Yes	No (hw ARP)	Yes	No
Linux neighbor solicitation	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Unique MAC address	Yes (random)	No	Yes	Yes

Table 22. Real connections (continued)

Function	OSA Layer 2	OSA Layer 3	HiperSockets Layer 2 Ethernet	HiperSockets Layer 3 Ethernet
Change MAC address	Yes	No	Yes	No
Promiscuous mode	No	No	No	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes (for sniffer=1) • No (for sniffer=0)
MAC headers send/receive	Yes/Yes	faked/faked	Yes/Yes	faked/faked
ethtool support	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Bonding	Yes	No	Yes	No
Priority queueing	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Secondary unicast MAC address	Yes	No	Yes	No
Offload features				
TCP segmentation offload (TSO)	No	Yes	No	No
Inbound (rx) checksum	No	Yes	No	No
Outbound (tx) checksum	No	Yes	No	No
OSA/QETH specific features				
Special device driver setup for VIPA	No	required	No	Yes
Special device driver setup for proxy ARP	No	required	No	Yes
Special device driver setup for IP takeover	No	required	No	Yes
Special device driver setup for routing IPv4/IPv6	No/No	required/ required	No/No	Yes/Yes
Receive buffer count	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Direct connectivity to z/OS	Yes by HW	Yes	No	Yes
SNMP support	Yes	Yes	No	No
Multiport support	Yes	Yes	No	No
Data connection isolation	Yes	Yes	No	No
Problem determination				
Hardware trace	No	Yes	No	No
Legend:				
No	Function not supported or not required.			
Yes	Function supported.			
hw	Function performed by hardware.			
sw	Function performed by software.			
faked	Function will be simulated.			
required	Function requires special setup.			

Table 23. z/VM VSWITCH or Guest LAN connections

Function	Emulated OSA Layer 2	Emulated OSA Layer 3	Emulated HiperSockets Layer 3
Basic device or protocol features			
IPv4/multicast/broadcast	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes
IPv6/multicast	Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes	No/No
Non-IP traffic	Yes	No	No
VLAN IPv4/IPv6/non IP	sw/sw/sw	hw/sw/No	hw/No/No
Linux ARP	Yes	No (hw ARP)	No
Linux neighbor solicitation	Yes	Yes	No
Unique MAC address	Yes	No	Yes
Change MAC address	Yes	No	No
Promiscuous mode	Yes	Yes	No
MAC headers send/receive	Yes/Yes	faked/faked	faked/faked
ethtool support	Yes	Yes	Yes
Bonding	Yes	No	No
Priority queueing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Secondary unicast MAC address	Yes	No	No
Offload features	No	No	No
OSA/QETH specific features			
Special device driver setup for VIPA	No	required	required
Special device driver setup for proxy ARP	No	required	required
Special device driver setup for IP takeover	No	required	required
Special device driver setup for routing IPv4/IPv6	No/No	required/required	required/required
Receive buffer count	Yes	Yes	Yes
Direct connectivity to z/OS	No	Yes	Yes
SNMP support	No	No	No
Multiport support	No	No	No
Data connection isolation	No	No	No
Problem determination			
Hardware trace	No	No	No
Legend:			
No	Function not supported or not required.		
Yes	Function supported.		
hw	Function performed by hardware.		
sw	Function performed by software.		
faked	Function will be simulated.		
required	Function requires special setup.		

What you should know about the qeth device driver

Interface names are assigned to qeth group devices, which map to subchannels and their corresponding device numbers and device bus-IDs. An OSA-Express adapter can handle both IPv4 and IPv6 packets.

Layer 2 and layer 3

The qeth device driver consists of a common core and two device disciplines: layer 2 and layer 3.

In layer 2 mode, OSA routing to the destination Linux instance is based on MAC addresses. A local MAC address is assigned to each interface of a Linux instance and registered in the OSA Address Table. These MAC addresses are unique and different from the MAC address of the OSA adapter. See “MAC headers in layer 2 mode” on page 131 for details.

In layer 3 mode, all interfaces of all Linux instances share the MAC address of the OSA adapter. OSA routing to the destination Linux instance is based on IP addresses. See “MAC headers in layer 3 mode” on page 133 for details.

The layer 2 discipline (qeth_l2)

The layer 2 discipline supports:

- OSA devices and z/VM virtual NICs that couple to VSWITCHes or QDIO guest LANs
- OSA for NCP devices
- HiperSockets devices
- OSM (OSA-Express for Unified Resource Manager) devices
- OSX (OSA-Express for zBX) devices for IEDN

The layer 2 discipline is the default setup for OSA. On HiperSockets the default continues to be layer 3. OSA guest LANs are layer 2 by default, while HiperSockets guest LANs are always layer 3. See “Setting the layer2 attribute” on page 140 for details.

The layer 3 discipline (qeth_l3)

The layer 3 discipline supports:

- OSA devices and z/VM virtual NICs that couple to VSWITCHes or QDIO guest LANs that are running in layer 3 mode (with faked link layer headers)
- HiperSockets and HiperSockets guest LAN devices that are running in layer 3 mode (with faked link layer headers)
- OSX (OSA-Express for zBX) devices for IEDN

This discipline supports those devices that are not capable of running in layer 2 mode. Not all Linux networking features are supported and others need special setup or configuration. See Table 28 on page 138. Some performance-critical applications might benefit from being layer 3.

Layer 2 and layer 3 interfaces cannot communicate within a HiperSockets LAN or within a VSWITCH or guest LAN. However, a shared OSA adapter can convert traffic between layer 2 and layer 3 networks.

qeth group devices

The qeth device driver requires three I/O subchannels for each HiperSockets CHPID or OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode. One subchannel is for control reads, one for control writes, and the third is for data.

The qeth device driver uses the QDIO protocol to communicate with the HiperSockets and OSA-Express adapter.

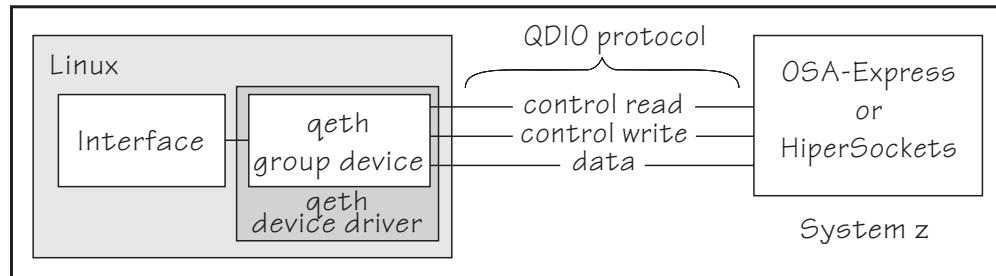


Figure 18. I/O subchannel interface

The three device bus-IDs that correspond to the subchannel triplet are grouped as one qeth group device. The following rules apply for the device bus-IDs:

- read** no specific rules.
- write** must be the device bus-ID of the read subchannel plus one.
- data** can be any free device bus-ID on the same CHPID.

You can configure different triplets of device bus-IDs on the same CHPID differently. For example, if you have two triplets on the same CHPID they can have different attribute values for priority queueing.

Overview of the steps for setting up a qeth group device

You need to perform several steps before user-space applications on your Linux instance can use a qeth group device.

Before you begin

Find out how the hardware is configured and which qeth device bus-IDs are on which CHPID, for example by looking at the IOCDS. Identify the device bus-IDs that you want to group into a qeth group device. The three device bus-IDs must be on the same CHPID.

Procedure

Perform these steps to allow user-space applications on your Linux instance to use a qeth group device:

1. Create the qeth group device.

After booting Linux, each qeth device bus-ID is represented by a subdirectory in `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/`. These subdirectories are then named with the bus IDs of the devices. For example, a qeth device with bus IDs 0.0.fc00, 0.0.fc01, and 0.0.fc02 is represented as `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/qeth/0.0.fc00`.

2. Configure the device.
3. Set the device online.

4. Activate the device and assign an IP address to it.

What to do next

These tasks and the configuration options are described in detail in “Working with qeth devices” on page 136.

qeth interface names and device directories

Red Hat Enterprise Linux automatically assigns interface names to the qeth group devices. The qeth device driver creates the corresponding sysfs structures.

While an interface is online, it is represented in sysfs as:

`/sys/class/net/<interface>`

The mapping between interface names and the device bus-ID that represents the qeth group device in sysfs is preserved when a device is set offline and back online.

“Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device” on page 146 and “Finding out the bus ID of a qeth interface” on page 146 provide information about mapping device bus-IDs and interface names.

Support for IP Version 6 (IPv6)

The qeth device driver supports IPv6 in many network setups.

IPv6 is supported on:

- Ethernet interfaces of the OSA-Express adapter that runs in QDIO mode.
- HiperSockets layer 2 and layer 3 interfaces.
- z/VM guest LAN interfaces running in QDIO or HiperSockets layer 3 mode.
- z/VM guest LAN and VSWITCH interfaces in layer 2.

There are noticeable differences between the IP stacks for versions 4 and 6. Some concepts in IPv6 are different from IPv4, such as neighbor discovery, broadcast, and Internet Protocol security (IPsec). IPv6 uses a 16-byte address field, while the addresses under IPv4 are 4 bytes in length.

Stateless autoconfiguration generates unique IP addresses for all Linux instances, even if they share an OSA-Express adapter with other operating systems.

Be aware of the IP version when you specify IP addresses and when you use commands that return IP version-specific output (such as `qetharp`).

MAC headers in layer 2 mode

In LAN environments, data packets find their destination through Media Access Control (MAC) addresses in their MAC header.

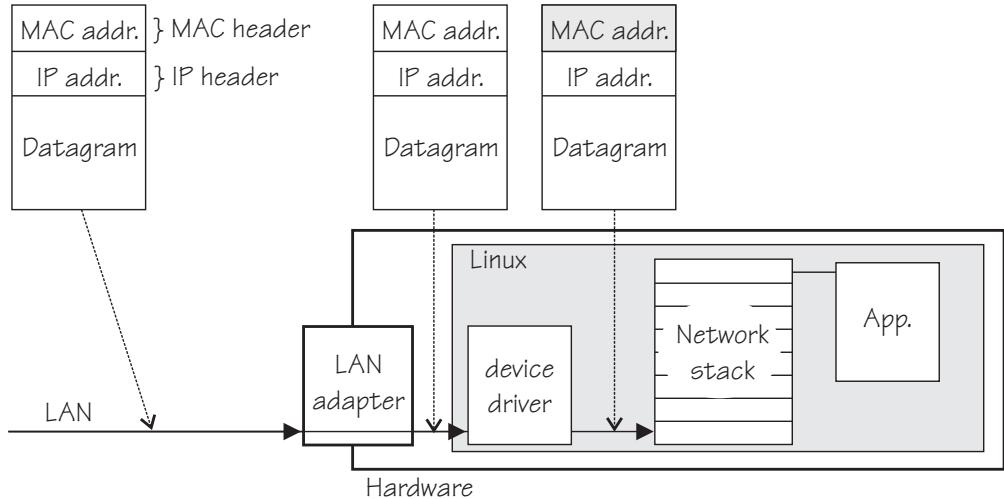


Figure 19. Standard IPv4 processing

MAC address handling as shown in Figure 19) applies to non-mainframe environments and a mainframe environment with an OSA-Express adapter where the layer2 option is enabled.

The layer2 option keeps the MAC addresses on incoming packets. Incoming and outgoing packets are complete with a MAC header at all stages between the Linux network stack and the LAN as shown in Figure 19. This layer2-based forwarding requires unique MAC addresses for all concerned Linux instances.

In layer 2 mode, the Linux TCP/IP stack has full control over the MAC headers and the neighbor lookup. The Linux TCP/IP stack does not configure IPv4 or IPv6 addresses into the hardware, but requires a unique MAC address for the card. Users working with a directly attached OSA-card should assign a unique MAC-address themselves.

For Linux instances that are directly attached to an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode, you should assign the MAC addresses yourself. You can add a line `MACADDR='<MAC address>'` to the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-<if-name>`. Alternatively, you can change the MAC address by issuing the command:

```
ip link set addr <MAC address> dev <interface>
```

Note: Be sure not to assign the MAC address of the OSA-Express adapter to your Linux instance.

For OSX and OSM CHPIDs, you cannot set your own MAC addresses. Linux uses the MAC addresses defined by the Unified Resource Manager.

For HiperSockets connections, a MAC address is generated. For most purposes the generated address is adequate. However, you can change the address by using the `ip` command if you need to.

For connections within a QDIO-based z/VM guest LAN environment, z/VM assigns the necessary MAC addresses to its guests.

MAC headers in layer 3 mode

A qeth layer 3 mode device driver is an Ethernet offload engine for IPv4 and a partial Ethernet offload engine for IPv6. Hence, there are some special things to understand about the layer 3 mode.

To support IPv6 and protocols other than IPv4, the device driver registers a layer 3 card as an Ethernet device to the Linux TCP/IP stack.

In layer 3 mode, the OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode removes the MAC header with the MAC address from incoming IPv4 packets. It uses the registered IP addresses to forward a packet to the recipient TCP/IP stack. See Figure 20. Thus the OSA-Express adapter is able to deliver IPv4 packets to the correct Linux images. Apart from broadcast packets, a Linux image can get only packets for IP addresses it configured in the stack and registered with the OSA-Express adapter.

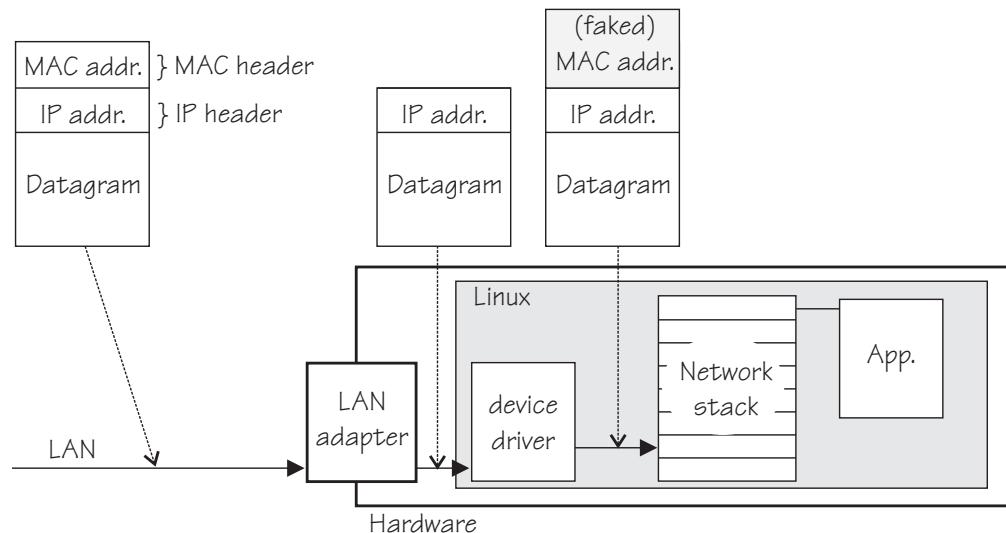


Figure 20. MAC address handling in layer3 mode

The OSA-Express QDIO microcode builds MAC headers for outgoing IPv4 packets and removes them from incoming IPv4 packets. Hence, the operating systems' network stacks send and receive only IPv4 packets without MAC headers.

This lack of MAC headers can be a problem for applications that expect MAC headers. For examples of how such problems can be resolved, see "Setting up for DHCP with IPv4" on page 180.

Outgoing frames

The qeth device driver registers the layer 3 card as an Ethernet device. Therefore, the Linux TCP/IP stack will provide complete Ethernet frames to the device driver.

If the hardware does not require the Ethernet frame (for example, for IPv4) the driver removes the Ethernet header prior to sending the frame to the hardware. If necessary information like the Ethernet target address is not available (because of the offload functionality) the value is filled with the hardcoded address FAKELL.

Table 24. Ethernet addresses of outgoing frames

Frame	Destination address	Source address
IPv4	FAKELL	Real device address
IPv6	Real destination address	Real device address
Other packets	Real destination address	Real device address

Incoming frames

The device driver provides Ethernet headers for all incoming frames.

If necessary information like the Ethernet source address is not available (because of the offload functionality) the value is filled with the hardcoded address FAKELL.

Table 25. Ethernet addresses of incoming frames

Frame	Destination address	Source address
IPv4	Real device address	FAKELL
IPv6	Real device address	FAKELL
Other packets	Real device address	Real source address

Note that if a source or destination address is a multicast or broadcast address the device driver can provide the corresponding (real) Ethernet multicast or broadcast address even when the packet was delivered or sent through the offload engine. Always providing the link layer headers enables packet socket applications like **tcpdump** to work properly on a qeth layer 3 device without any changes in the application itself (the patch for libpcap is no longer required).

While the faked headers are syntactically correct, the addresses are not authentic, and hence applications requiring authentic addresses will not work. Some examples are given in Table 26.

Table 26. Applications that react differently to faked headers

Application	Support	Reason
tcpdump	Yes	Displays only frames, fake Ethernet information is displayed.
iptables	Partially	As long as the rule does not deal with Ethernet information of an IPv4 frame.
dhcpc	Yes	Is non-IPv4 traffic.

IP addresses

The network stack of each operating system that shares an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode registers all its IP addresses with the adapter.

Whenever IP addresses are deleted from or added to a network stack, the device drivers download the resulting IP address list changes to the OSA-Express adapter.

For the registered IP addresses, the OSA-Express adapter off-loads various functions, in particular also:

- Handling MAC addresses and MAC headers
- ARP processing

ARP:

The OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode responds to Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) requests for all registered IPv4 addresses.

ARP is a TCP/IP protocol that translates 32-bit IPv4 addresses into the corresponding hardware addresses. For example, for an Ethernet device, the hardware addresses are 48-bit Ethernet Media Access Control (MAC) addresses. The mapping of IPv4 addresses to the corresponding hardware addresses is defined in the ARP cache. When it needs to send a packet, a host consults the ARP cache of its network adapter to find the MAC address of the target host.

If there is an entry for the destination IPv4 address, the corresponding MAC address is copied into the MAC header and the packet is added to the appropriate interface's output queue. If the entry is not found, the ARP functions retain the IPv4 packet, and broadcast an ARP request asking the destination host for its MAC address. When a reply is received, the packet is sent to its destination.

Notes:

1. On an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode, do not set the NO_ARP flag on the Linux Ethernet device. The device driver disables the ARP resolution for IPv4. Because the hardware requires no neighbor lookup for IPv4, but neighbor solicitation for IPv6, the NO_ARP flag is not allowed on the Linux Ethernet device.
2. On HiperSockets, which is a full Ethernet offload engine for IPv4 and IPv6 and supports no other traffic, the device driver sets the NO_ARP flag on the Linux Ethernet interface. Do not remove this flag from the interface.

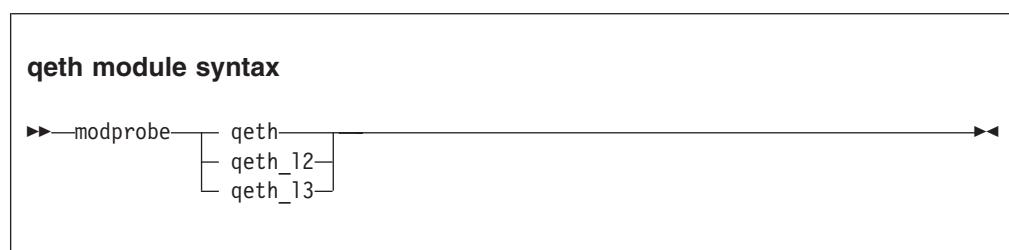
Setting up the qeth device driver

No module parameters exist for the qeth device driver. qeth devices are set up using sysfs.

Loading the qeth device driver modules

You must load the qeth device driver before you can work with qeth devices.

Use the **modprobe** command to load the qeth device driver, and to automatically load all required additional modules in the correct order:



where:

qeth is the core module that contains common functions that are used for both layer 2 and layer 3 disciplines.

qeth_l2

is the module that contains layer 2 discipline-specific code.

qeth_l3

is the module that contains layer 3 discipline-specific code.

When a qeth device is configured for a particular discipline, the driver tries to automatically load the corresponding discipline module.

Switching the discipline of a qeth device

To switch the discipline of a device, the network interface must be shut down and the device must be offline.

If the new discipline is accepted by the device driver, the old network interface is deleted. When the new discipline is set online the first time, the new network interface is created.

Removing the modules

Removing a module is not possible if there are cross dependencies between the discipline modules and the core module.

To release the dependencies from the core module to the discipline module, all devices of this discipline must be ungrouped. Now the discipline module can be removed. If all discipline modules are removed, the core module can be removed.

Working with qeth devices

Typical tasks that you need to perform when working with qeth devices include creating group devices, finding out the type of a network adapter, and setting a device online or offline.

About this task

Most of these tasks involve writing to and reading from attributes of qeth group devices in sysfs. This is useful on a running system where you want to make dynamic changes. If you want to make the changes persistent across IPLs, use the interface configuration files. Network configuration parameters are defined in `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-<if_name>`. An example of how to define a qeth device persistently is in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*. For a general discussion of network configuration files, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

Table 27 on page 137 and Table 28 on page 138 serve as both a task overview and a summary of the attributes and the possible values you can write to them.
Underlined values are defaults.

Tip: Use the **znetconf** command to configure devices instead of using the attributes directly (see “*znetconf - List and configure network devices*” on page 565).

Not all attributes are applicable to each device. Some attributes apply only to HiperSockets or only to OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode, other attributes are applicable to IPv4 interfaces only. See the task descriptions for the applicability of each attribute.

OSA for NCP handles NCP-related packets. Most of the attributes do not apply to OSA for NCP devices. The attributes that apply are:

- `if_name`
- `card_type`
- `buffer_count`
- `recover`

Table 27. qeth tasks and attributes common to layer2 and layer3

Task	Corresponding attributes	Possible attribute values
"Creating a qeth group device" on page 139	<code>group</code>	n/a
"Removing a qeth group device" on page 140	<code>ungroup</code>	0 or 1
"Setting the layer2 attribute" on page 140	<code>layer2</code>	0 or 1, see "Layer 2 and layer 3" on page 129 ¹
"Enabling and disabling TCP segmentation offload" on page 158	<code>large_send</code>	<u>no</u> TSO
"Using priority queueing" on page 142	<code>priority_queueing</code>	<u>prio_queueing_prec</u> <u>prio_queueing_tos</u> <u>no_prio_queueing</u>
"Specifying the number of inbound buffers" on page 143	<code>buffer_count</code>	integer in the range 8 - 128. The default is 64 for OSA devices and <u>128</u> for HiperSockets devices
"Specifying the relative port number" on page 143	<code>portno</code>	integer, either 0 or 1, the default is <u>0</u>
"Configuring a HiperSockets device for AF_IUCV addressing" on page 144	<code>hsuid</code>	1 to 8 characters
"Finding out the type of your network adapter" on page 144	<code>card_type</code>	n/a, read-only
"Setting a device online or offline" on page 145	<code>online</code>	<u>0</u> or 1
"Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device" on page 146	<code>if_name</code>	n/a, read-only
"Finding out the bus ID of a qeth interface" on page 146	<code>none</code>	n/a
"Activating an interface" on page 147	<code>none</code>	n/a
"Deactivating an interface" on page 149	<code>none</code>	n/a
"Recovering a device" on page 149	<code>recover</code>	1
"Isolating data connections" on page 150	<code>isolation</code>	none, drop, forward
"Starting and stopping collection of QETH performance statistics" on page 152	<code>performance_stats</code>	<u>0</u> or 1
"Capturing a hardware trace" on page 153	<code>hw_trap</code>	<u>arm</u> <u>disarm</u>

¹A value of -1 means that the layer has not been set and that the default layer setting is used when the device is set online.

Table 28. qeth tasks and attributes in layer 3 mode

Task	Corresponding attributes	Possible attribute values
"Setting up a Linux router in layer 3" on page 154	route4 route6	primary_router secondary_router primary_connector secondary_connector multicast_router <u>no_router</u>
"Turning inbound checksum calculations on and off" on page 157	checksumming	hw_checksumming <u>sw_checksumming</u> no_checksumming
"Turning outbound checksum calculations on and off" on page 158	none	n/a
"Faking broadcast capability" on page 159	fake_broadcast ¹	<u>0</u> or 1
"Taking over IP addresses" on page 160	ipa_takeover/enable ipa_takeover/add4 ipa_takeover/add6 ipa_takeover/del4 ipa_takeover/del6 ipa_takeover/invert4 ipa_takeover/invert6	<u>0</u> or 1 or toggle IPv4 or IPv6 IP address and mask bits
"Configuring a device for proxy ARP" on page 163	rxip/add4 rxip/add6 rxip/del4 rxip/del6	IPv4 or IPv6 IP address
"Configuring a device for virtual IP address (VIPA)" on page 165	vipa/add4 vipa/add6 vipa/del4 vipa/del6	IPv4 or IPv6 IP address
"Setting up a HiperSockets network traffic analyzer" on page 181	sniffer	<u>0</u> or 1

¹ not valid for HiperSockets

Tip: Use the **qethconf** command instead of using the attributes for IPA, proxy ARP, and VIPA directly (see “qethconf - Configure qeth devices” on page 537).

sysfs provides multiple paths through which you can access the qeth group device attributes. For example, if a device with bus ID 0.0.a100 corresponds to interface enccw0.0.a100:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.a100
/sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a100
/sys/class/net/enccw0.0.a100/device
```

all lead to the attributes for the same device. For example, the following commands are all equivalent and return the same value:

```

# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/if_name
enccw0.0.a100
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.a100/if_name
enccw0.0.a100
# cat /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a100/if_name
enccw0.0.a100
# cat /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.a100/device/if_name
enccw0.0.a100

```

However, the path through `/sys/class/net` is available only while the device is online.

Tip: Work through one of the paths that are based on the device bus-ID.

The following sections describe the tasks in detail.

Creating a qeth group device

Use the `znetconf` command to configure network devices. Alternatively, you can use sysfs.

Before you begin

You must know the device bus-IDs that correspond to the read, write, and data subchannel of your OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode or HiperSockets CHPID as defined in the IOCDS of your mainframe.

Procedure

To create a qeth group device, either:

- Issue the `znetconf` command to create and configure a group device. The command groups the correct bus-IDs for you and sets the device online. For information about the `znetconf` command, see “`znetconf - List and configure network devices`” on page 565.
- Write the device numbers of the subchannel triplet to the sysfs group attribute to only define a group device. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <read_device_bus_id>,<write_device_bus_id>,<data_device_bus_id> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

Results

The qeth device driver uses the device bus-ID of the read subchannel to create a directory for a group device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<read_device_bus_id>
```

This directory contains a number of attributes that determine the settings of the qeth group device. The following sections describe how to use these attributes to configure a qeth group device.

Example

In this example (see Figure 21 on page 140), a single OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode is used to connect a Linux instance to a network.

Mainframe configuration:

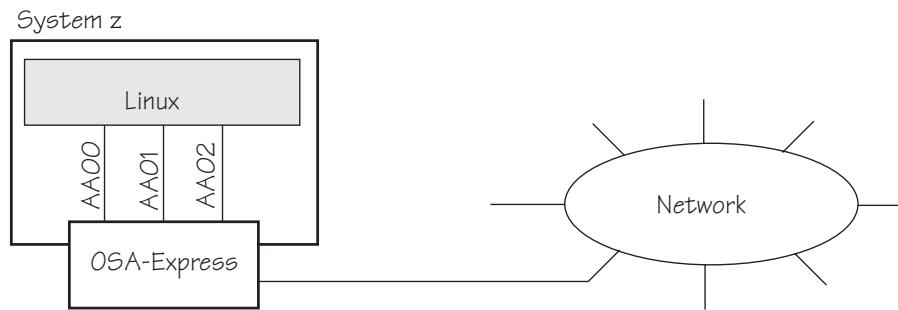


Figure 21. Mainframe configuration

Linux configuration:

Assuming that 0.0.aa00 is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the read subchannel:

```
# echo 0.0.aa00,0.0.aa01,0.0.aa02 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

This command results in the creation of the following directories in sysfs:

- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.aa00
- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.aa00
- /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.aa00

Both the command and the resulting directories would be the same for a HiperSockets CHPID.

Removing a qeth group device

Use the ungroup sysfs attribute to remove a qeth group device.

Before you begin

The device must be set offline before you can remove it.

Procedure

To remove a qeth group device, write 1 to the ungroup attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/ungroup
```

Example

This command removes device 0.0.aa00:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.aa00/ungroup
```

Setting the layer2 attribute

If the detected hardware is known to be exclusively run in a discipline (for example, OSN needs the layer 2 discipline) the corresponding discipline module is automatically requested.

Before you begin

- To change a configured layer2 attribute, the network interface must be shut down and the device must be set offline.
- If you are using the layer2 option within a QDIO-based guest LAN environment, you cannot define a VLAN with ID 1, because ID 1 is reserved for z/VM use.

About this task

The qeth device driver attempts to load the layer 3 discipline for HiperSockets devices and layer 2 for non-HiperSockets devices.

You can use the layer 2 mode for almost all device types, however, note the following about layer 2 to layer 3 conversion:

real OSA-Express

Hardware is able to convert layer 2 to layer 3 traffic and vice versa and thus there are no restrictions.

HiperSockets

There is no support for layer 2 to layer 3 conversion and, thus, no communication is possible between HiperSockets layer 2 interfaces and HiperSockets layer 3 interfaces. Do not include HiperSockets layer 2 interfaces and HiperSockets layer 3 interfaces in the same LAN.

z/VM guest LAN

Linux must configure the same mode as the underlying z/VM virtual LAN definition. The z/VM definition "Ethernet mode" is available for VSWITCHes and for guest LANs of type QDIO.

Procedure

The qeth device driver separates the configuration options in sysfs according to the device discipline. Hence the first configuration action after you group the device must be the configuration of the discipline. To set the discipline, issue a command of the form:

```
echo <integer> > /sys/devices/qeth/<device_bus_id>/layer2
```

where <integer> is

- 0 to turn off the layer2 attribute; this results in the layer 3 discipline.
- 1 to turn on the layer2 attribute; this results in the layer 2 discipline (default).

If the layer2 attribute has a value of -1, the layer was not set. The default layer setting is used when the device is set online.

Results

If you configured the discipline successfully, more configuration attributes are shown (for example route4 for the layer 3 discipline) and can be configured. If an OSA device is not configured for a discipline but is set online, the device driver assumes that it is a layer 2 device. It then tries to load the layer 2 discipline.

For more information about layer2, see:

- *OSA-Express Customer's Guide and Reference*, SA22-7935
- *OSA-Express Implementation Guide*, SG25-5848
- *Networking Overview for Linux on zSeries*, REDP-3901
- *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6174

Using priority queueing

An OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode has up to four output queues (queues 0 - 3). The priority queueing feature gives these queues different priorities (queue 0 having the highest priority).

Before you begin

- Priority queueing applies to OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode only.
- The device must be offline while you set the queueing options.

About this task

Queueing is relevant mainly to high-traffic situations. When there is little traffic, queueing has no impact on processing. The qeth device driver can put data on one or more of the queues. By default, the driver uses queue 2 for all data.

Procedure

You can determine how outgoing IP packages are assigned to queues by setting a value for the priority_queueing attribute of your qeth device.

Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <method> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/priority_queueing
```

where *<method>* can be any of these values:

prio_queueing_prec

to base the queue assignment on the two most significant bits of each packet's IP header precedence field.

prio_queueing_tos

to select a queue according to the IP type of service that is assigned to packets by some applications. The service type is a field in the IP datagram header that can be set with a setsockopt call. Table 29 shows how the qeth device driver maps service types to the available queues:

Table 29. IP service types and queue assignment for type of service queueing

Service type	Queue
Low latency	0
High throughput	1
High reliability	2
Not important	3

no_prio_queueing

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 2 for all packets. This value is the default.

no_prio_queueing:0

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 0 for all packets.

no_prio_queueing:1

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 1 for all packets.

no_prio_queueing:2

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 2 for all packets. This value is equivalent to the default.

no_prio_queueing:3

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 3 for all packets.

Example

To configure queueing by type of service for device 0.0.a110 issue:

```
# echo prio_queueing_tos > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a110/priority_queueing
```

Specifying the number of inbound buffers

Depending on the amount of available storage and the amount of traffic, you can assign 8 - 128 inbound buffers for each qeth group device.

Before you begin

The device must be offline while you specify the number of inbound buffers.

About this task

By default, the qeth device driver assigns 64 inbound buffers to OSA devices and 128 to HiperSockets devices.

The Linux memory usage for inbound data buffers for the devices is (number of buffers) × (buffer size).

The buffer size is equivalent to the frame size, which depends on the type of CHPID:

- For an OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode or an OSA-Express CHPID in OSN mode: 64 KB
- For HiperSockets: depending on the HiperSockets CHPID definition, 16 KB, 24 KB, 40 KB, or 64 KB

Procedure

Set the buffer_count attribute to the number of inbound buffers you want to assign. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <number> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/buffer_count
```

Example

In this example, 64 inbound buffers are assigned to device 0.0.a000.

```
# echo 64 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a000/buffer_count
```

Specifying the relative port number

Use the portno sysfs attribute to specify the relative port number.

Before you begin

- This description applies to adapters that, per CHPID, show more than one port to Linux.
- The device must be offline while you specify the relative port number.

Procedure

By default, the qeth group device uses port 0. To use a different port, issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <integer> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/portno
```

Where *<integer>* is either 0 or 1.

Example

In this example, port 1 is assigned to the qeth group device.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a000/portno
```

Configuring a HiperSockets device for AF_IUCV addressing

Use the hsuid attribute of a HiperSockets device to identify it to the AF_IUCV addressing family support.

Before you begin

- Support for AF_IUCV based connections through real HiperSockets requires Completion Queue Support.
- The device must be set up for AF_IUCV addressing (see “Setting up HiperSockets devices for AF_IUCV addressing” on page 214).

Procedure

To set an identifier, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a007/hsuid
```

The identifier is case-sensitive and must adhere to these rules:

- It must be 1 - 8 characters.
- It must be unique across your environment.
- It must not match any z/VM user ID in your environment. The AF_IUCV addressing family support also supports z/VM IUCV connections.

Example

In this example, MYHOST01 is set as the identifier for a HiperSockets device with bus ID 0.0.a007.

```
# echo MYHOST01 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a007/hsuid
```

Finding out the type of your network adapter

Use the card_type attribute to find out the type of the network adapter through which your device is connected.

Procedure

You can find out the type of the network adapter through which your device is connected. To find out the type, read the device's card_type attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/card_type
```

The card_type attribute gives information about both the type of network adapter and the type of network link (if applicable) available at the card's ports. See Table 30 for details.

Table 30. Possible values of card_type and what they mean

Value of card_type	Adapter type	Link type
OSD_10GIG	OSA card in OSD mode	10 Gigabit Ethernet
OSD_1000		Gigabit Ethernet, 1000BASE-T
OSD_Gbe_LANE		Gigabit Ethernet, LAN Emulation
OSD_FE_LANE		Unknown
OSD_Express		
OSN	OSA for NCP	ESCON/CDLC bridge or N/A
OSM	OSA-Express for Unified Resource Manager	1000BASE-T
OSX	OSA-Express for zBX	10 Gigabit Ethernet
HiperSockets	HiperSockets, CHPID type IQD	N/A
Virtual NIC QDIO	VSWITCH or guest LAN based on OSA	N/A
Virtual NIC Hiper	Guest LAN based on HiperSockets	N/A
Unknown		Other

Example

To find the card_type of a device 0.0.a100 issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/card_type  
OSD_100
```

Setting a device online or offline

Use the online device group attribute to set a device online or offline.

Procedure

To set a qeth group device online, set the online device group attribute to 1. To set a qeth group device offline, set the online device group attribute to 0. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Setting a device online associates it with an interface name (see “[Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device](#)”).

Setting a device offline closes this network device. If IPv6 is active, you lose any IPv6 addresses set for this device. After you set the device online, you can restore lost IPv6 addresses only by issuing the **ip** or **ifconfig** commands again.

Example

To set a qeth device with bus ID 0.0.a100 online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/online
```

To set the same device offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/online
```

Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device

When a qeth group device is set online, an interface name is assigned to it.

Procedure

To find the interface name of a qeth group device, either:

- Obtain a mapping for all qeth interfaces and devices by issuing the **lsqeth -p** command.
- Find out the interface name of a qeth group device for which you know the device bus-ID by reading the group device's `if_name` attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/if_name
```

Example

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/if_name  
enccw0.0.a100
```

Finding out the bus ID of a qeth interface

Use the **lsqeth -p** command to obtain a mapping for all qeth interfaces and devices. Alternatively, you can use sysfs.

Procedure

To find the device bus-ID that corresponds to an interface, either:

- Use the **lsqeth -p** command.
- Use the `readlink` command. For each network interface, there is a directory in sysfs under `/sys/class/net/`, for example, `/sys/class/net/enccw0.0.f500` for interface `enccw0.0.f500`. This directory contains a symbolic link “`device`” to the corresponding device in `/sys/devices`. Read this link to find the device bus-ID of the device that corresponds to the interface.

Example

To find out which device bus-ID corresponds to an interface enccw0.0.a100 issue, for example:

```
# readlink /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.a100/device  
.../.../0.0.a100
```

In this example, enccw0.0.a100 corresponds to the device bus-ID 0.0.a100.

Activating an interface

Use the **ip** command or equivalent to activate an interface.

Before you begin

- You must know the interface name of the qeth group device (see “Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device” on page 146).
- You must know the IP address that you want to assign to the device.

About this task

The MTU size defaults to the correct settings for HiperSockets and to 1492 bytes for OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode.

In most cases, 1492 bytes is well suited for OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode. If your network is laid out for jumbo frames, increase the MTU size to a maximum of 8992 bytes.

For HiperSockets, the maximum MTU size is restricted by the maximum frame size as announced by the Licensed Internal Code (LIC). The maximum MTU is equal to the frame size minus 8 KB. Hence, the possible frame sizes of 16 KB, 24 KB, 40 KB, or 64 KB result in maximum corresponding MTU sizes of 8 KB, 16 KB, 32 KB, or 56 KB.

The MTU size defaults to the correct settings for both HiperSockets and OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode. As a result, you do not need to specify the MTU size when you activate the interface.

On heavily loaded systems, MTU sizes that exceed 8 KB can lead to memory allocation failures for packets due to memory fragmentation. A symptom of this problem are messages of the form "order-N allocation failed" in the system log. In addition, network connections drop packets, possibly so frequently as to make the network interface unusable.

As a workaround, use MTU sizes at most of 8 KB (minus header size), even if the network hardware allows larger sizes. For example, HiperSockets or 10 Gigabit Ethernet allow larger sizes.

Procedure

You activate or deactivate network devices with **ip** or an equivalent command. For details of the **ip** command, see the **ip** man page.

Examples

- This example activates a HiperSockets CHPID with broadcast address 192.168.100.255:

```
# ip addr add 192.168.100.10/24 dev enccw0.0.a1c0
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.a1c0 up
```

- This example activates an OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode with broadcast address 192.168.100.255:

```
# ip addr add 192.168.100.11/24 dev enccw0.0.f500
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f500 up
```

- This example reactivates an interface that was already activated and subsequently deactivated:

```
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f500 up
```

- This example activates an OSA-Express2 CHPID defined as an OSN type CHPID for OSA NCP:

```
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.b100 up
```

Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3

There may be circumstances that prevent an IP address from being set, most commonly if another system in the network has set that IP address already.

About this task

The Linux network stack design does not allow feedback about IP address changes. If `ip` or an equivalent command fails to set an IP address on an OSA-Express network CHPID, a query with `ip` shows the address as being set on the interface although the address is not actually set on the CHPID.

There are usually failure messages about not being able to set the IP address or duplicate IP addresses in the kernel messages. You can find these messages in the output of the `dmesg` command. In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, you can also find the messages in `/var/log/messages`.

If you are not sure whether an IP address was set properly or experience a networking problem, check the messages or logs to see if an error was encountered when setting the address. This also applies in the context of HiperSockets and to both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. It also applies to whether an IP address has been set for IP takeover, for VIPA, or for proxy ARP.

Duplicate IP addresses

The OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode recognizes duplicate IP addresses on the same OSA-Express adapter or in the network using ARP and prevents duplicates.

About this task

Several setups require duplicate addresses:

- To perform IP takeover you need to be able to set the IP address to be taken over. This address exists prior to the takeover. See “Taking over IP addresses” on page 160 for details.

- For proxy ARP you need to register an IP address for ARP that belongs to another Linux instance. See “Configuring a device for proxy ARP” on page 163 for details.
- For VIPA you need to assign the same virtual IP address to multiple devices. See “Configuring a device for virtual IP address (VIPA)” on page 165 for details.

You can use the **qethconf** command (see “qethconf - Configure qeth devices” on page 537) to maintain a list of IP addresses that your device can take over, a list of IP addresses for which your device can handle ARP, and a list of IP addresses that can be used as virtual IP addresses, regardless of any duplicates on the same OSA-Express adapter or in the LAN.

Deactivating an interface

You can deactivate an interface with **ip** or an equivalent command or by setting the network device offline.

About this task

Setting a device offline involves actions on the attached device, but deactivating a device only stops the interface logically within Linux.

Procedure

To deactivate an interface with **ip**, issue a command of the form:

```
# ip link set dev <interface_name> down
```

Example

To deactivate enccw0.0.f500 issue:

```
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f500 down
```

Recovering a device

You can use the recover attribute of a qeth group device to recover it in case of failure.

About this task

For example, error messages in /var/log/messages might inform you of a malfunctioning device.

Procedure

Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/recover
```

Example

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/recover
```

Isolating data connections

You can restrict communications between operating system instances that share an OSA port on an OSA adapter.

About this task

A Linux instance can configure the OSA adapter to prevent any direct package exchange between itself and other operating system instances that share an OSA adapter. This configuration ensures a higher degree of isolation than VLANs.

QDIO data connection isolation is configured as a policy. The policy is implemented as a sysfs attribute called `isolation`. The attribute appears in sysfs regardless of whether the hardware supports the feature. The policy can take the following values:

none No isolation. This is the default.

drop Specifies the ISOLATION_DROP policy. All packets from guests sharing the same OSA adapter to the guest having this policy configured are dropped automatically. The same holds for all packets sent by the guest having this policy configured to guests on the same OSA card. All packets to or from the isolated guest need to have a target that is not hosted on the OSA card. You can accomplish this by a router hosted on a separate machine or a separate OSA adapter.

For example, assume that three Linux instances share an OSA adapter, but only one instance (Linux A) needs to be isolated. Then Linux A declares its OSA adapter (QDIO Data Connection to the OSA adapter) to be isolated. Any packet being sent to or from Linux A must pass at least the physical switch to which the shared OSA adapter is connected. Linux A cannot communicate with other instances that share the OSA adapter, here B or C. The two other instances could still communicate directly through the OSA adapter without the external switch in the network path (see Figure 22).

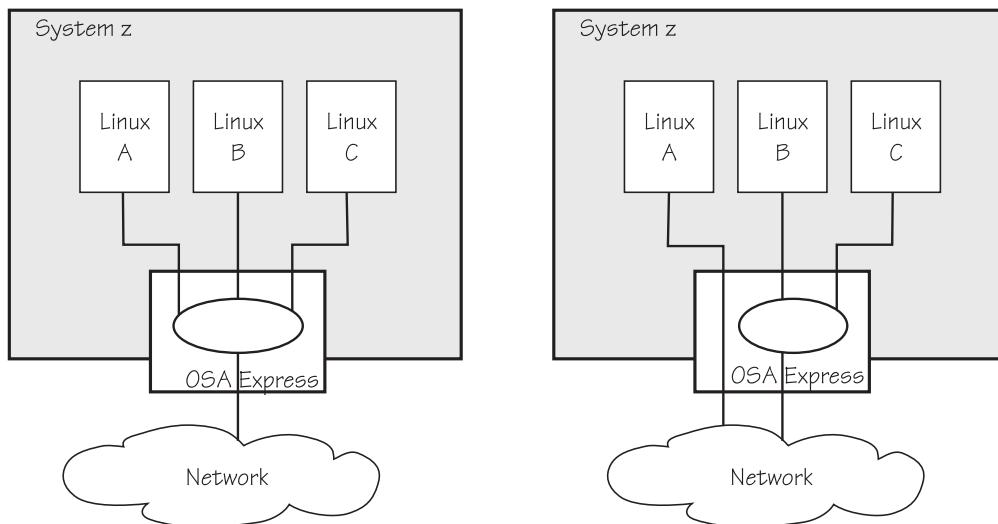


Figure 22. Linux instance A is isolated from instances B and C

forward

Specifies the ISOLATION_FORWARD policy. All packets are passed through a switch. The ISOLATION_FORWARD policy requires a network

adapter in Virtual Ethernet Port Aggregator (VEPA) mode with an adjacent switch port configured for reflective relay mode.

Using a network adapter in VEPA mode achieves further isolation. VEPA mode forces traffic from the Linux guests to be handled by the external switch. For example, Figure 23 shows instances A and B with ISOLATION_FORWARD specified for the policy. All traffic between A and B goes through the external switch. The rule set of the switch now determines which connections are possible. The graphic assumes that A can communicate with B, but not with C.

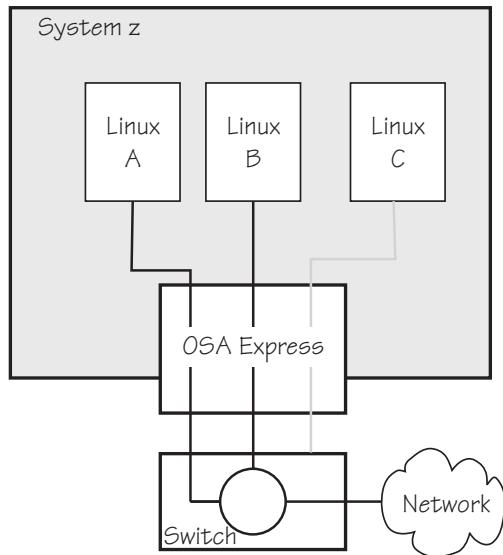


Figure 23. Traffic from Linux instance A and B is forced through an external switch

If the ISOLATION_FORWARD policy was enforced successfully, but the switch port later loses the reflective-relay capability, the device is set offline to prevent damage.

You can configure the policy regardless of whether the device is online. If the device is online, the policy is configured immediately. If the device is offline, the policy is configured when the device comes online.

Examples

- To check the current isolation policy:

```
# cat /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.f5f0/isolation
```

- To set the isolation policy to ISOLATION_DROP:

```
# echo "drop" > /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.f5f0/isolation
```

- To set the isolation policy to ISOLATION_FORWARD:

```
# echo "forward" > /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.f5f0/isolation
```

If the switch is not capable of VEPA support, or VEPA support is not configured on the switch, then you cannot set the isolation attribute value to 'forward' while the device is online. If the switch does not support VEPA and you set the

isolation value 'forward' while the device is offline, then the device cannot be set online until the isolation value is set back to 'drop' or 'none'.

- To set the isolation policy to none:

```
# echo "none" > /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.f5f0/isolation
```

When using vNICs, VEPA mode needs to be enabled on the respective VSWITCH. See *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6174 for information about setting up data connection isolation on a VSWITCH.

Starting and stopping collection of QETH performance statistics

Use the performance_stats attribute to start and stop collection of QETH performance statistics.

About this task

For QETH performance statistics, there is a device group attribute called /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/performance_stats.

This attribute is initially set to 0, that is, QETH performance data is not collected.

Procedure

To start collection for a specific QETH device, write 1 to the attribute. For example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/performance_stats
```

To stop collection write 0 to the attribute, for example:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/performance_stats
```

Stopping QETH performance data collection for a specific QETH device is accompanied by a reset of current statistic values to zero.

To display QETH performance statistics, use the **ethtool** command. See the **ethtool** man page for details.

Example

The following example shows statistic and device driver information:

```
# ethtool -S enccw0.0.f500
NIC statistics:
    rx skbs: 86
    rx buffers: 85
    tx skbs: 86
    tx buffers: 86
    tx skbs no packing: 86
    tx buffers no packing: 86
    tx skbs packing: 0
    tx buffers packing: 0
    tx sg skbs: 0
    tx sg frags: 0
    rx sg skbs: 0
    rx sg frags: 0
    rx sg page allocs: 0
    tx large kbytes: 0
    tx large count: 0
    tx pk state ch n->p: 0
    tx pk state ch p->n: 0
    tx pk watermark low: 2
    tx pk watermark high: 5
    queue 0 buffer usage: 0
    queue 1 buffer usage: 0
    queue 2 buffer usage: 0
    queue 3 buffer usage: 0
    rx handler time: 856
    rx handler count: 84
    rx do_QDIO time: 16
    rx do_QDIO count: 11
    tx handler time: 330
    tx handler count: 87
    tx time: 1236
    tx count: 86
    tx do_QDIO time: 997
    tx do_QDIO count: 86

# ethtool -i enccw0.0.f500
driver: qeth_13
version: 1.0
firmware-version: 087a
bus-info: 0.0.f5f0/0.0.f5f1/0.0.f5f2
```

Capturing a hardware trace

Hardware traces are intended for use by the IBM service organization. Hardware tracing is turned off by default. Turn on the hardware-tracing feature only when instructed to do so by IBM service.

Before you begin

- The OSA-Express adapter must support the hardware-tracing feature.
- The qeth device must be online to return valid values of the `hw_trap` attribute.

About this task

When errors occur on an OSA-Express adapter, both software and hardware traces must be collected. The hardware-tracing feature requests a hardware trace if an error is detected. This feature makes it possible to correlate the hardware trace with the device driver trace. If the hardware-tracing feature is activated, traces are captured automatically, but you can also start the capturing yourself.

Procedure

To activate or deactivate the hardware-tracing feature, issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/devices/qeth/<device_bus_id>/hw_trap
```

Where *<value>* can be:

arm If the hardware-tracing feature is supported, write arm to the hw_trap sysfs attribute to activate it. If the hardware-tracing feature is present and activated, the hw_trap sysfs attribute has the value arm.

disarm

Write disarm to the hw_trap sysfs attribute to turn off the hardware-tracing feature. If the hardware-tracing feature is not present or is turned off, the hw_trap sysfs attribute has the value disarm. This setting is the default.

trap

(Write only) Capture a hardware trace. Hardware traces are captured automatically, but if asked to do so by IBM service, you can start the capturing yourself by writing trap to the hw_trap sysfs attribute. The hardware trap function must be set to arm.

Examples

In this example the hardware-tracing feature is activated for qeth device 0.0.a000:

```
# echo arm > /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a000/hw_trap
```

In this example a trace capture is started on qeth device 0.0.a000:

1. Check that the hw_trap sysfs attribute is set to arm:

```
# cat /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a000/hw_trap  
arm
```

2. Start the capture:

```
# echo trap > /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a000/hw_trap
```

Working with qeth devices in layer 3 mode

Tasks you can perform on qeth devices in layer 3 mode include setting up a router, configuring offload operations, and taking over IP addresses.

Use the layer 2 attribute to set the mode. See “Setting the layer2 attribute” on page 140 about setting the mode. See “Layer 2 and layer 3” on page 129 for general information about the layer 2 and layer 3 disciplines.

Setting up a Linux router in layer 3

By default, your Linux instance is not a router. Depending on your IP version, IPv4 or IPv6 you can use the route4 or route6 attribute of your qeth device to define it as a router.

Before you begin

- A suitable hardware setup must be in place that enables your Linux instance to act as a router.
- The Linux instance is set up as a router. To configure Linux running in a z/VM guest virtual machine or in an LPAR as a router, IP forwarding must be enabled in addition to setting the route4 or route6 attribute.

For IPv4, enable IP forwarding by issuing:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv4.conf.all.forwarding=1
```

For IPv6, enable IP forwarding by issuing:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv6.conf.all.forwarding=1
```

About this task

You can set the route4 or route6 attribute dynamically, while the qeth device is online.

The same values are possible for route4 and route6 but depend on the type of CHPID:

Table 31. Summary of router setup values

Router specification	OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode	HiperSockets CHPID
primary_router	Yes	No
secondary_router	Yes	No
primary_connector	No	Yes
secondary_connector	No	Yes
multicast_router	Yes	Yes
no_router	Yes	Yes

Both types of CHPIDs accept:

multicast_router

causes the qeth driver to receive all multicast packets of the CHPID. For a unicast function for HiperSockets see “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 175.

no_router

is the default. You can use this value to reset a router setting to the default.

An OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode accepts the following values:

primary_router

to make your Linux instance the principal connection between two networks.

secondary_router

to make your Linux instance a backup connection between two networks.

A HiperSockets CHPID accepts the following values, if the microcode level supports the feature:

primary_connector

to make your Linux instance the principal connection between a HiperSockets network and an external network (see “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 175).

secondary_connector

to make your Linux instance a backup connection between a HiperSockets network and an external network (see “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 175).

Example

In this example, two Linux instances, “Linux P” and “Linux S”, running on an IBM mainframe use OSA-Express to act as primary and secondary routers between two networks. IP forwarding must be enabled for Linux in an LPAR or as a z/VM guest to act as a router. In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 you can set IP forwarding permanently in /etc/sysctl.conf or dynamically with the sysctl command.

Mainframe configuration:

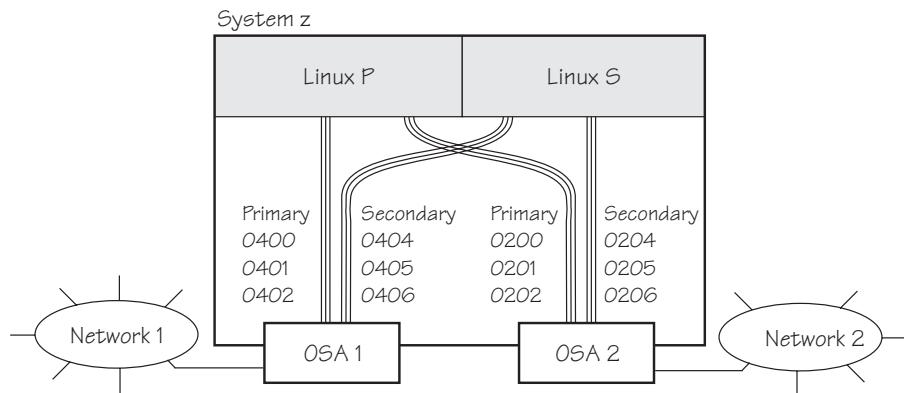


Figure 24. Mainframe configuration

It is assumed that both Linux instances are configured as routers in their LPARs or in z/VM.

Linux P configuration:

To create the qeth group devices:

```
# echo 0.0.0400,0.0.0401,0.0.0402 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group  
# echo 0.0.0200,0.0.0201,0.0.0202 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

To make Linux P a primary router for IPv4:

```
# echo primary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0400/route4  
# echo primary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0200/route4
```

Linux S configuration:

To create the qeth group devices:

```
# echo 0.0.0404,0.0.0405,0.0.0406 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group  
# echo 0.0.0204,0.0.0205,0.0.0206 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

To make Linux S a secondary router for IPv4:

```
# echo secondary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0404/route4  
# echo secondary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0204/route4
```

In this example, qeth device 0.01510 is defined as a primary router for IPv6:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth # cd 0.0.1510  
# echo 1 > online  
# echo primary_router > route6  
# cat route6  
primary router
```

See “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 175 for further examples.

Configuring offload operations

Some operations can be offloaded to the OSA adapter, thus relieving the burden on the host CPU.

The qeth device driver supports offloading the following operations:

- Inbound (receive) checksum calculations
- Outbound (send) checksum calculations
- Large send (TCP segmentation offload)

Offload operations are supported for OSA connections on layer 3 only. VLAN interfaces inherit offload settings from their base interface.

The offload operations can be set with the Linux **ethtool** command. See the **ethtool** man page for details. The following example shows the default offload settings:

```
# ethtool -k enccw0.0.f500  
Offload parameters for enccw0.0.f500:  
rx-checksumming: on  
tx-checksumming: off  
scatter-gather: off  
tcp-segmentation-offload: off  
udp-fragmentation-offload: off  
generic-segmentation-offload: off  
generic-receive-offload: on  
large-receive-offload: off
```

Note: With Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.2, the defaults for rx-checksumming and for generic-receive-offload changed from off to on.

Turning inbound checksum calculations on and off

A checksum calculation is a form of redundancy check to protect the integrity of data. In general, checksum calculations are used for network data.

Procedure

The qeth device driver supports offloading checksum calculations on inbound packets to the OSA feature. To enable or disable checksum calculations by the OSA feature, issue a command of this form:

```
# ethtool -K <interface_name> rx <value>
```

where *<value>* is on or off.

Examples

- To let the OSA feature calculate the inbound checksum for network device enccw0.0.f500, issue

```
# ethtool -K enccw0.0.f500 rx on
```

- To let the host CPU calculate the inbound checksum for network device enccw0.0.f500, issue

```
# ethtool -K enccw0.0.f500 rx off
```

Turning outbound checksum calculations on and off

The qeth device driver supports offloading outbound (send) checksum calculations to the OSA feature.

About this task

You can enable or disable the OSA feature calculating the outbound checksums by using the **ethtool** command.

Attention: When outbound checksum calculations are offloaded, the OSA feature performs the checksum calculations. Offloaded checksum calculations only applies to packets that go out to the LAN or come in from the LAN. Linux instances that share an OSA port exchange packages directly. The packages are forwarded by the OSA adapter but do not go out on the LAN and no checksum offload is performed. The qeth device driver cannot detect this, and so cannot issue any warning about it.

Procedure

Issue a command of the form:

```
# ethtool -K <interface_name> tx <value>
```

where *<value>* is on or off.

Example

- To let the OSA feature calculate the outbound checksum for network device enccw0.0.f500, issue

```
# ethtool -K enccw0.0.f500 tx on
```

- To let the host CPU calculate the outbound checksum for network device enccw0.0.f500, issue

```
# ethtool -K enccw0.0.f500 tx off
```

Enabling and disabling TCP segmentation offload

Offloading the TCP segmentation operation from the Linux network stack to the adapter can lead to enhanced performance for interfaces with predominately large outgoing packets.

Procedure

To support TCP segmentation offload (TSO), a network device must support outbound (TX) checksumming and scatter gather. For this reason, you must turn on scatter gather and outbound checksumming prior to configuring TSO. All three options can be turned on or off with a single **ethtool** command of the form:

```
# ethtool -K <interface_name> tx <value> sg <value> tso <value>
```

where *<value>* is either on or off.

Note: When TCP segmentation is offloaded, the OSA feature performs the calculations. Offloaded calculations apply only to packets that go out to the LAN or come in from the LAN. Linux instances that share an OSA port exchange packages directly. The packages are forwarded by the OSA adapter but do not go out on the LAN and no TCP segmentation calculation is performed. The qeth device driver cannot detect this, and so cannot issue any warning about it.

Examples

- To offload the TCP segmentation operation for a network device enccw0.0.f500 issue:

```
# ethtool -K enccw0.0.f500 tx on sg on tso on
```

- To disable offloading the TCP segmentation operation for a network device enccw0.0.f500 issue:

```
# ethtool -K enccw0.0.f500 tx off sg off tso off
```

Faking broadcast capability

It is possible to fake the broadcast capability for devices that do not support broadcasting.

Before you begin

- You can fake the broadcast capability only on devices that do not support broadcast.
- The device must be offline while you enable faking broadcasts.

About this task

For devices that support broadcast, the broadcast capability is enabled automatically.

To find out whether a device supports broadcasting, use the **ip** command. If the resulting list shows the BROADCAST flag, the device supports broadcast. This example shows that the device enccw0.0.f500 supports broadcast:

```
# ip -s link show dev enccw0.0.f500
3: enccw0.0.f500: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1492 qdisc pfifo_fast qlen 1000
    link/ether 00:11:25:bd:da:66 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
            236350      2974       0        0         9
        TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
            374443      1791       0        0         0
```

Some processes, for example, the *gated* routing daemon, require the devices' broadcast capable flag to be set in the Linux network stack.

Procedure

To set the broadcast capable flag for devices that do not support broadcast, set the fake_broadcast attribute of the qeth group device to 1. To reset the flag, set it to 0. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/fake_broadcast
```

Example

In this example, a device 0.0.a100 is instructed to pretend that it can broadcast.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/fake_broadcast
```

Taking over IP addresses

You can configure IP takeover if the layer2 option is not enabled. If you enabled the layer2 option, you can configure for IP takeover as you would in a distributed server environment.

About this task

For information about the layer2 option, see “MAC headers in layer 2 mode” on page 131.

Taking over an IP address overrides any previous allocation of this address to another LPAR. If another LPAR on the same CHPID already registered for that IP address, this association is removed.

An OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode can take over IP addresses from any System z operating system. IP takeover for HiperSockets CHPIDs is restricted to taking over addresses from other Linux instances in the same Central Electronics Complex (CEC).

IP address takeover between multiple CHPIDs requires ARP for IPv4 and Neighbor Discovery for IPv6. OSA-Express handles ARP transparently, but not Neighbor Discovery.

There are three stages to taking over an IP address:

- Stage 1: Ensure that your qeth group device is enabled for IP takeover
- Stage 2: Activate the address to be taken over for IP takeover
- Stage 3: Issue a command to take over the address

Stage 1: Enabling a qeth group device for IP takeover

For OSA-Express and HiperSockets CHPIDs, both the qeth group device that is to take over an IP address and the device that surrenders the address must be enabled for IP takeover.

Procedure

By default, qeth devices are not enabled for IP takeover. To enable a qeth group device for IP address takeover set the enable device group attribute to 1. To switch

off the takeover capability set the enable device group attribute to 0. In sysfs, the enable attribute is located in a subdirectory `ipa_takeover`. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/ipa_takeover/enable
```

Example

In this example, a device 0.0.a500 is enabled for IP takeover:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a500/ipa_takeover/enable
```

Stage 2: Activating and deactivating IP addresses for takeover

The qeth device driver maintains a list of IP addresses that qeth group devices can take over or surrender. To enable Linux to take over an IP-address or to surrender an address, the address must be added to this list.

Procedure

Use the `qethconf` command to add IP addresses to the list.

- To display the list of IP addresses that are activated for IP takeover issue:

```
# qethconf ipa list
```

- To activate an IP address for IP takeover, add it to the list. Issue a command of the form:

```
# qethconf ipa add <ip_address>/<mask_bits> <interface_name>
```

- To deactivate an IP address delete it from the list. Issue a command of the form:

```
# qethconf ipa del <ip_address>/<mask_bits> <interface_name>
```

In these commands, `<ip_address>/<mask_bits>` is the range of IP addresses to be activated or deactivated. See “`qethconf - Configure qeth devices`” on page 537 for more details about the `qethconf` command.

IPv4 example:

In this example, there is only one range of IP addresses (192.168.10.0 to 192.168.10.255) that can be taken over by HiperSockets device `enccw0.0.a1c0`.

List the range of IP addresses (192.168.10.0 to 192.168.10.255) that can be taken over by HiperSockets device `enccw0.0.a1c0`.

```
# qethconf ipa list  
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 enccw0.0.a1c0
```

The following command adds a range of IP addresses that can be taken over by OSA device `enccw0.0.f500`.

```
# qethconf ipa add 192.168.11.0/24 enccw0.0.f500  
qethconf: Added 192.168.11.0/24 to /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.f500/device/ipa_takeover/add4.  
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
```

Listing the activated IP addresses now shows both ranges of addresses.

```
# qethconf ipa list
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 enccw0.0.alc0
ipa add 192.168.11.0/24 enccw0.0.f500
```

The following command deletes the range of IP addresses that can be taken over by OSA device enccw0.0.f500.

```
# qethconf ipa del 192.168.11.0/24 enccw0.0.f500
qethconf: Deleted 192.168.11.0/24 from
          sysfs entry /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.f500/device/ipa_takeover/del4.
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
```

IPv6 example:

The following command adds one range of IPv6 addresses, fec0:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000 to fec0:0000:0000:0000:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF, that can be taken over by device enccw0.0.d300.

Add a range of IP addresses:

```
qethconf ipa add fec0::/64 enccw0.0.d300
qethconf: Added fec0:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000/64 to
          sysfs entry /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.d300/device/ipa_takeover/add6.
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
```

Listing the activated IP addresses now shows the range of addresses:

```
qethconf ipa list
...
ipa add fec0:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000/64 enccw0.0.d300
```

The following command deletes the IPv6 address range that can be taken over by enccw0.0.d300:

```
qethconf ipa del fec0:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000/64 enccw0.0.d300:
qethconf: Deleted fec0:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000/64 from
          sysfs entry /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.d300/device/ipa_takeover/del6.
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
```

Stage 3: Issuing a command to take over the address

To complete taking over a specific IP address and remove it from the CHPID or LPAR that previously held it, issue an **ip addr** or equivalent command.

Before you begin

- Both the device that is to take over the IP address and the device that is to surrender the IP address must be enabled for IP takeover. This rule applies to the devices on both OSA-Express and HiperSockets CHPIDs. (See “Stage 1: Enabling a qeth group device for IP takeover” on page 160).
- The IP address to be taken over must have been activated for IP takeover (see “Stage 2: Activating and deactivating IP addresses for takeover” on page 161).

About this task

Be aware of the information in “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 148 when using IP takeover.

Examples

IPv4 example:

To make a HiperSockets device enccw0.0.a1c0 take over IP address 192.168.10.22 issue:

```
# ip addr add 192.168.10.22/24 dev enccw0.0.a1c0
```

For IPv4, the IP address you are taking over must be different from the one that is already set for your device. If your device already has the IP address it is to take over, you must issue two commands: First remove the address to be taken over if it is already there. Then add the IP address to be taken over.

For example, to make a HiperSockets device enccw0.0.a1c0 take over IP address 192.168.10.22 if enccw0.0.a1c0 is already configured to have IP address 192.168.10.22 issue:

```
# ip addr del 192.168.10.22/24 dev enccw0.0.a1c0  
# ip addr add 192.168.10.22/24 dev enccw0.0.a1c0
```

IPv6 example:

To make a device enccw0.0.d300 take over fec0::111:25ff:febd:d9da/64 issue:

```
ip addr add fec0::111:25ff:febd:d9da/64 nodad dev enccw0.0.d300
```

For IPv6, setting the **nodad** (no duplicate address detection) option ensures that the enccw0.0.d300 interface uses the IP address fec0::111:25ff:febd:d9da/64. Without the **nodad** option, the previous owner of the IP address might prevent the takeover by responding to a duplicate address detection test.

The IP address you are taking over must be different from the one that is already set for your device. If your device already has the IP address it is to take over you must issue two commands: First remove the address to be taken over if it is already there. Then add the IP address to be taken over.

For example, to make a device enccw0.0.d300 take over IP address fec0::111:25ff:febd:d9da/64 when enccw0.0.d300 is already configured to have that particular IP address issue:

```
ip addr del fec0::111:25ff:febd:d9da/64 nodad dev enccw0.0.d300  
ip addr add fec0::111:25ff:febd:d9da/64 nodad dev enccw0.0.d300
```

Configuring a device for proxy ARP

You can configure a device for proxy ARP if the layer2 option is not enabled. If you enabled the layer2 option, you can configure for proxy ARP as you would in a distributed server environment.

Before you begin

Configure only qeth group devices that are set up as routers for proxy ARP.

About this task

For information about the layer2 option, see “MAC headers in layer 2 mode” on page 131.

The qeth device driver maintains a list of IP addresses for which a qeth group device handles ARP and issues gratuitous ARP packets. For more information about proxy ARP, see

www.sjdwies.com/linux/proxyarp

Use the **qethconf** command to display this list or to change the list by adding and removing IP addresses (see “**qethconf - Configure qeth devices**” on page 537).

Be aware of the information in “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 148 when you work with proxy ARP.

Example

Figure 25 shows an environment where proxy ARP is used.

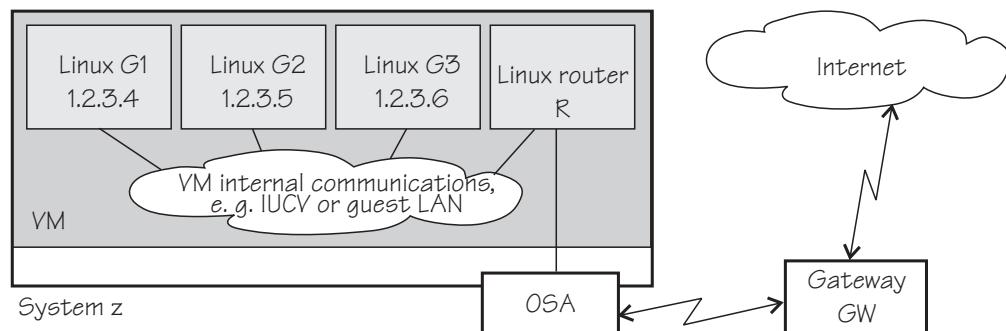


Figure 25. Example of proxy ARP usage

G1, G2, and G3 are instances of Linux on z/VM (connected, for example, through a guest LAN to a Linux router R), reached from GW (or the outside world) through R. R is the ARP proxy for G1, G2, and G3. That is, R agrees to take care of packets that are destined for G1, G2, and G3. The advantage of using proxy ARP is that GW does not need to know that G1, G2, and G3 are behind a router.

To receive packets for 1.2.3.4, so that it can forward them to G1 1.2.3.4, R would add 1.2.3.4 to its list of IP addresses for proxy ARP for the interface that connects it to the OSA adapter.

```
# qethconf parp add 1.2.3.4 encww0.0.f500
qethconf: Added 1.2.3.4 to /sys/class/net/encww0.0.f500/device/rxip/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf parp list" to check for the result
```

After issuing similar commands for the IP addresses 1.2.3.5 and 1.2.3.6 the proxy ARP configuration of R would be:

```
# qethconf parp list  
parp add 1.2.3.4 enccw0.0.f500  
parp add 1.2.3.5 enccw0.0.f500  
parp add 1.2.3.6 enccw0.0.f500
```

Configuring a device for virtual IP address (VIPA)

You can configure a device for VIPA if the layer2 option is not enabled. If you enabled the layer2 option, you can configure for VIPA as you would in a distributed server environment.

About this task

For information about the layer2 option, see “MAC headers in layer 2 mode” on page 131.

System z use VIPAs to protect against certain types of hardware connection failure. You can assign VIPAs that are independent from particular adapter. VIPAs can be built under Linux using *dummy* devices (for example, “*dummy0*” or “*dummy1*”).

The qeth device driver maintains a list of VIPAs that the OSA-Express adapter accepts for each qeth group device. Use the **qethconf** utility to add or remove VIPAs (see “*qethconf - Configure qeth devices*” on page 537).

For an example of how to use VIPA, see “Scenario: VIPA – minimize outage due to adapter failure.”

Be aware of “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 148 when you work with VIPAs.

Scenario: VIPA – minimize outage due to adapter failure

Using VIPA you can assign IP addresses that are not associated with a particular adapter. VIPA thus minimizes outage that is caused by adapter failure.

This scenario describes how to use:

- Standard VIPA
- Source VIPA (version 2.0.0 and later)

Standard VIPA is sufficient for applications, such as web servers, that do *not* open connections to other nodes. Source VIPA is used for applications that open connections to other nodes. Use Source VIPA Extensions to work with multiple VIPAs per destination in order to achieve multipath load balancing.

Note:

1. See the information in “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 148 concerning possible failure when you set IP addresses for OSA-Express features in QDIO mode (qeth driver).
2. The configuration file layout for Source VIPA changed since the 1.x versions. In the 2.0.0 version a policy is included. For details, see the *readme* file and the man pages that are provided with the package.

Standard VIPA

VIPA is a facility for assigning an IP address to a system, instead of to individual adapters. It is supported by the Linux kernel. The addresses can be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.

Setting up standard VIPA

To set up VIPA you must create a dummy device, ensure that your service listens to the IP address, and set up routing to it.

Procedure

Follow these main steps to set up VIPA in Linux:

1. Create a dummy device with a virtual IP address.
2. Ensure that your service (for example, the Apache web server) listens to the virtual IP address assigned in step 1.
3. Set up routes to the virtual IP address, on clients or gateways. To do so, you can use either:
 - Static routing (shown in “Example of how to set up standard VIPA”).
 - Dynamic routing. For details of how to configure routes, you must see the documentation that is delivered with your routing daemon (for example, zebra or gated).

Adapter outage

If outage of an adapter occurs, you must switch adapters.

Procedure

- Under static routing:
 1. Delete the route that was set previously.
 2. Create an alternative route to the virtual IP address.
- Under dynamic routing, see the documentation that is delivered with your routing daemon for details.

Example of how to set up standard VIPA

This example shows you how to configure VIPA under static routing, and how to switch adapters when an adapter outage occurs.

About this task

Figure 26 on page 167 shows the network adapter configuration that is used in the example.

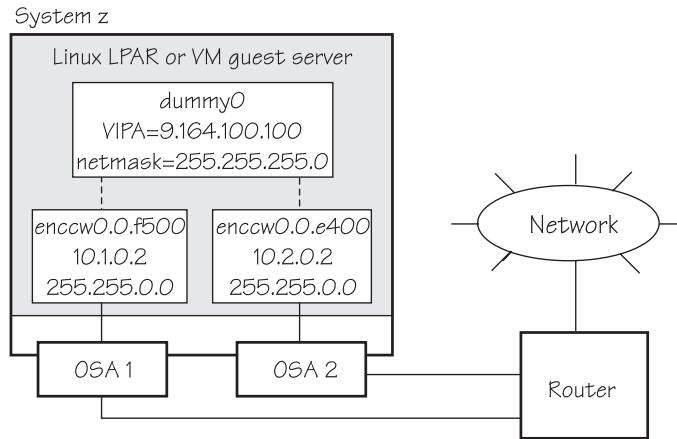


Figure 26. Example of using Virtual IP Address (VIPA)

Procedure

1. Define the real interfaces.

```
[server]# ip addr add 10.1.0.2/16 dev enccw0.0.f500
[server]# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f500 up
[server]# ip addr add 10.2.0.2/16 dev enccw0.0.e400
[server]# ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400 up
```

2. If the dummy component was not compiled into the kernel, ensure that the dummy module was loaded. If necessary, load it by issuing:

```
[server]# modprobe dummy
```

3. Create a dummy interface with a virtual IP address 9.164.100.100 and a netmask 255.255.255.0:

```
[server]# ip addr add 9.164.100.100/24 dev dummy0
[server]# ip link set dev dummy0 up
```

4. Enable the network devices for this VIPA so that it accepts packets for this IP address.

- IPv4 example:

```
[server]# qethconf vipa add 9.164.100.100 enccw0.0.f500
qethconf: Added 9.164.100.100 to /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.f500/device/vipa/add4.
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
[server]# qethconf vipa add 9.164.100.100 enccw0.0.e400
qethconf: Added 9.164.100.100 to /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.e400/device/vipa/add4.
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
```

- For IPv6, the address is specified in IPv6 format:

```
[server]# qethconf vipa add 2002::1234:5678 enccw0.0.f500
qethconf: Added 2002:0000:0000:0000:0000:1234:5678 to
          /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.f500/device/vipa/add6.
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
[server]# qethconf vipa add 2002::1235:5678 enccw0.0.e400
qethconf: Added 2002:0000:0000:0000:0000:1235:5678 to
          /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.e400/device/vipa/add6.
qethconf: For verification please use "qethconf ipa list"
```

5. Ensure that the addresses are set:

```
[server]# qethconf vipa list  
vipa add 9.164.100.100 enccw0.0.f500  
vipa add 9.164.100.100 enccw0.0.e400
```

6. Ensure that your service (such as the Apache web server) listens to the virtual IP address.
7. Set up a route to the virtual IP address (static routing) so that VIPA can be reached through the gateway with address 10.1.0.2.

```
[router]# ip route add 9.164.100.100 via 10.1.0.2
```

What to do next

Now assume that an adapter outage occurs. You must then:

1. Delete the previously created route.

```
[router]# ip route del 9.164.100.100
```

2. Create the alternative route to the virtual IP address.

```
[router]# ip route add 9.164.100.100 via 10.2.0.2
```

Source VIPA

Source VIPA is particularly suitable for high-performance environments. It selects one source address out of a range of source addresses when it replaces the source address of a socket.

Some operating system kernels cannot do load balancing among several connections with the same source and destination address over several interfaces. The solution is to use several source addresses.

To achieve load balancing, a policy must be selected in the policy section of the configuration file of Source VIPA (/etc/src_vipa.conf). In this policy section, you can also specify several source addresses that are used for one destination. Source VIPA then applies the source address selection according to the rules of the policy that is selected in the configuration file.

This Source VIPA solution does not affect kernel stability. Source VIPA is controlled by a configuration file that contains flexible rules for when to use Source VIPA based on destination IP address ranges.

Note: This implementation of Source VIPA applies to IPv4 only.

Setting up source VIPA

To set up source VIPA, define your address ranges in the configuration file.

Usage

To install:

Source VIPA is delivered as part of the s390utils package. Install the package as usual.

Configuration

With Source VIPA version 2.0.0 the configuration file changed: the policy section was added. The default configuration file is `/etc/src_vipa.conf`.

`/etc/src_vipa.conf` or the file pointed to by the environment variable `SRC_VIPA_CONFIG_FILE`, contains lines such as the following:

```
# comment  
D1.D2.D3.D4/MASK POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 [T1.T2.T3.T4 [...]]  
.INADDR_ANY P1-P2 POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 [T1.T2.T3.T4 [...]]  
.INADDR_ANY P POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 [T1.T2.T3.T4 [...]]
```

`D1.D2.D3.D4/MASK` specifies a range of destination addresses and the number of bits set in the subnet mask (MASK). As soon as a socket is opened and connected to these destination addresses and the application does not do an explicit bind to a source address, Source VIPA does a bind to one of the source addresses specified (`S, T, [...]`). It uses the policy that is selected in the configuration file to distribute the source addresses. See “Policies” for available load distribution policies. Instead of IP addresses in dotted notation, host names can also be used and are resolved using DNS.

`.INADDR_ANY P1-P2 POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4` or `.INADDR_ANY P POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4` causes bind calls with `.INADDR_ANY` as a local address to be intercepted if the port the socket is bound to is between `P1` and `P2` (inclusive). In this case, `.INADDR_ANY` is replaced by one of the source addresses specified (`S, T, [...]`), which can be `0.0.0.0`.

All `.INADDR_ANY` statements are read and evaluated in order of appearance. This method means that multiple `.INADDR_ANY` statements can be used to have bind calls intercepted for every port outside a certain range. This is useful, for example, for `rlogin`, which uses the `bind` command to bind to a local port but with `.INADDR_ANY` as a source address to use automatic source address selection. See “Policies” for available load distribution policies.

The default behavior for all ports is that the kind of bind calls is not modified.

Policies

With Source VIPA Extensions, you provide a range of dummy source addresses for replacing the source addresses of a socket. The policy that is selected determines which method is used for selecting the source addresses from the range of dummy addresses.

onevipa

Only the first address of all source addresses specified is used as source address.

random

The source address that is used is selected randomly from all the specified source addresses.

lrr (local round robin)

The source address that is used is selected in a round robin manner from all the specified source addresses. The round robin takes place on a per-invocation base: each process is assigned the source addresses round robin independently from other processes.

rr:ABC

Stands for round robin and implements a global round robin over all

Source VIPA instances that share a configuration file. All processes that use Source VIPA access an IPC shared memory segment to fulfil a global round robin algorithm. This shared memory segment is destroyed when the last running Source VIPA ends. However, if this process does not end gracefully (for example, is ended by a `kill` command), the shared memory segment (size: 4 bytes) can stay in the memory until it is removed by `ipcrm`. The tool `ipcs` can be used to display all IPC resources and to get the key or id used for `ipcrm`. ABC are UNIX permissions in octal writing (for example, 700) that are used to create the shared memory segment. Make this permission mask as restrictive as possible. A process that has access to this mask can cause an imbalance of the round robin distribution in the worst case.

- lc** Attempts to balance the number of connections per source address. This policy always associates the socket with the VIPA that is least in use. If the policy cannot be parsed correctly, the policy is set to round robin per default.

Enabling an application

The command:

```
src_vipa.sh <application and parameters>
```

enables the Source VIPA function for the application. The configuration file is read when the application is started. It is also possible to change the starter script and run multiple applications with different Source VIPA settings in separate files. To do this, define and export a `SRC_VIPA_CONFIG_FILE` environment variable that points to the separate file before you start an application.

Note:

1. LD_PRELOAD security prevents setuid programs to be run under Source VIPA; programs of this kind can be run only when the real UID is 0. The `ping` utility is usually installed with setuid permissions.
2. The maximum number of VIPAs per destination is 8.

Example of how to set up source VIPA

An example shows how to set up source VIPA.

Figure 27 on page 171 shows a configuration where two applications with VIPA 9.164.100.100 and 9.164.100.200 are to be set up for Source VIPA with a local round robin policy.

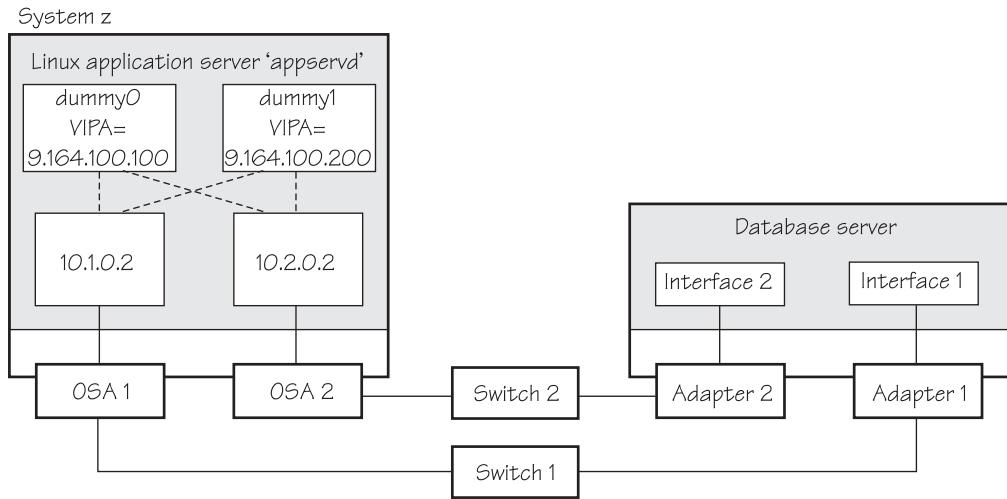


Figure 27. Example of using source VIPA

The required entry in the Source VIPA configuration file is:

9.0.0.0/8 lrr 9.164.100.100 9.164.100.200

Scenario: Virtual LAN (VLAN) support

VLAN technology works according to IEEE Standard 802.1Q by logically segmenting the network into different broadcast domains. Thus packets are switched only between ports that are designated for the same VLAN.

By containing traffic that originates on a particular LAN to other LANs within the same VLAN, switched virtual networks avoid wasting bandwidth. Wasted bandwidth is a drawback inherent in traditional bridged/switched networks where packets are often forwarded to LANs that do not require them.

The qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets supports priority tags as specified by IEEE Standard 802.1Q for both layer 2 and layer 3.

Introduction to VLANs

Use VLANs to increase traffic flow and reduce latency. With VLANs, you can organize your network by traffic patterns rather than by physical location.

In a conventional network topology, such as that shown in the following figure, devices communicate across LAN segments in different broadcast domains by using routers. Although routers add latency by delaying transmission of data while they are using more of the data packet to determine destinations, they are preferable to building a single broadcast domain. A single domain can easily be flooded with traffic.

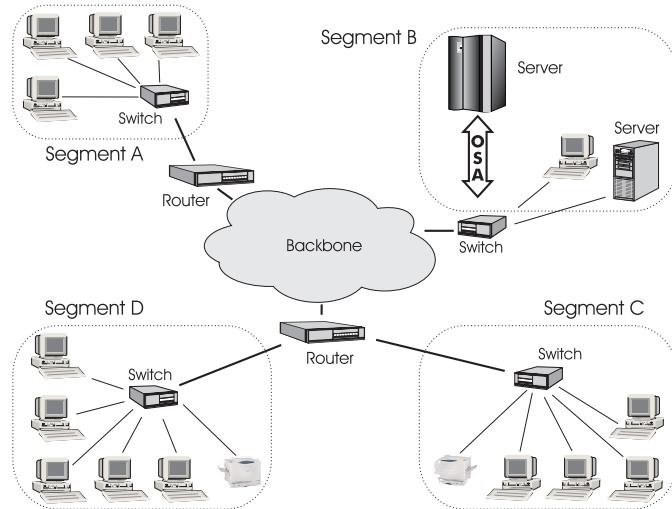


Figure 28. Conventional routed network

By organizing the network into VLANs by using Ethernet switches, distinct broadcast domains can be maintained without the latency that is introduced by multiple routers. As the following figure shows, a single router can provide the interfaces for all VLANs that appeared as separate LAN segments in the previous figure.

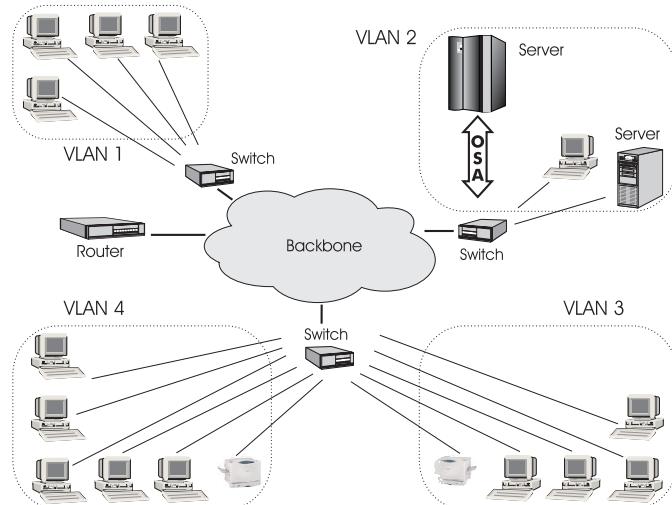


Figure 29. Switched VLAN network

The following figure shows how VLANs can be organized logically, according to traffic flow, rather than being restricted by physical location. If workstations 1-3 communicate mainly with the small server, VLANs can be used to organize only these devices in a single broadcast domain that keeps broadcast traffic within the group. This setup reduces traffic both inside the domain and outside, on the rest of the network.

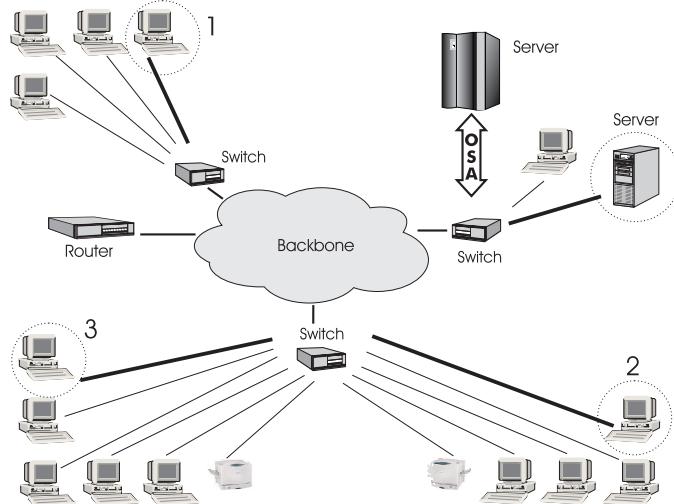


Figure 30. VLAN network organized for traffic flow

Configuring VLAN devices

Configure VLANs with the **ip link add** command. See the **ip-link** man page for details.

About this task

Information about the current VLAN configuration is available by listing the files in `/proc/net/vlan/*` with **cat** or **more**. For example:

```
# cat /proc/net/vlan/config
VLAN Dev name      | VLAN ID
Name-Type: VLAN_NAME_TYPE_RAW_PLUS_VID_NO_PAD  bad_proto_recvd: 0
enccwd300.100      | 100 | enccw0.0.d300
enccwd300.200      | 200 | enccw0.0.d300
enccwd300.300      | 300 | enccw0.0.d300

# cat /proc/net/vlan/enccwd300.300
enccw0.0.d300.300  VID: 300      REORDER_HDR: 1  dev->priv_flags: 1
                  total frames received: 10914061
                  total bytes received: 1291041929
                  Broadcast/Multicast Rcvd: 6
                  total frames transmitted: 10471684
                  total bytes transmitted: 4170258240
                  total headroom inc: 0
                  total encap on xmit: 10471684
Device: enccw0.0.d300
INGRESS priority mappings: 0:0 1:0 2:0 3:0 4:0 5:0 6:0 7:0
EGRESS priority Mappings:
#
```

Example: Creating two VLANs

VLANs are allocated in an existing interface that represents a physical Ethernet LAN.

The following example creates two VLANs, one with ID 3 and one with ID 5.

```
ip addr add 9.164.160.23/19 dev enccw0.0.e400
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400 up
ip link add dev enccw0.0.e400.3 link enccw0.0.e400 type vlan id 3
ip link add dev enccw0.0.e400.3 link enccw0.0.e400 type vlan id 5
```

The **ip link add** commands added interfaces “enccw0.0.e400.3” and “enccw0.0.e400.5”, which you can then configure:

```
ip addr add 1.2.3.4/24 dev enccw0.0.e400.3
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.3 up
ip addr add 10.100.2.3/16 dev enccw0.0.e400.5
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.5 up
```

The traffic that flows out of enccw0.0.e400.3 is in the VLAN with ID=3. This traffic is not received by other stacks that listen to VLANs with ID=4.

The internal routing table ensures that every packet to 1.2.3.x goes out through enccw0.0.e400.3 and everything to 10.100.x.x through enccw0.0.e400.5. Traffic to 9.164.1xx.x flows through enccw0.0.e400 (without a VLAN tag).

To remove one of the VLAN interfaces:

```
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.3 down
ip link delete enccw0.0.e400.3 type vlan
```

Example: Creating a VLAN with five Linux instances

An example of how to set up a VLAN with five Linux instances.

The following example illustrates the definition and connectivity test for a VLAN comprising five different Linux systems (two LPARs, two z/VM guest virtual machines, and one x86 system), each connected to a physical Ethernet LAN through enccw0.0.e400:

- LINUX1: LPAR

```
ip link add dev enccw0.0.e400.3 link enccw0.0.e400 type vlan id 5
ip addr add 10.100.100.1/24 dev enccw0.0.e400.5
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.5 up
```

- LINUX2: LPAR

```
ip link add dev enccw0.0.e400.3 link enccw0.0.e400 type vlan id 5
ip addr add 10.100.100.2/24 dev enccw0.0.e400.5
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.5 up
```

- LINUX3: z/VM guest

```
ip link add dev enccw0.0.e400.3 link enccw0.0.e400 type vlan id 5
ip addr add 10.100.100.3/24 dev enccw0.0.e400.5
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.5 up
```

- LINUX4: z/VM guest

```
ip link add dev enccw0.0.e400.3 link enccw0.0.e400 type vlan id 5
ip addr add 10.100.100.4/24 dev enccw0.0.e400.5
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.5 up
```

- LINUX5: x86

```
ip link add dev enccw0.0.e400.3 link enccw0.0.e400 type vlan id 5
ip addr add 10.100.100.5/24 dev enccw0.0.e400.5
ip link set dev enccw0.0.e400.5 up
```

Test the connections:

```
ping 10.100.100.1          // Unicast-PING
...
ping 10.100.100.5
ping -I enccw0.0.e400.5 224.0.0.1    // Multicast-PING
ping -b 10.100.100.255           // Broadcast-PING
```

HiperSockets Network Concentrator

You can configure a HiperSockets Network Concentrator on a QETH device in layer 3 mode.

Before you begin: The instructions that are given apply to IPv4 only. The HiperSockets Network Concentrator connector settings are available in layer 3 mode only.

The HiperSockets Network Concentrator connects systems to an external LAN within one IP subnet using HiperSockets. HiperSockets Network Concentrator connected systems look as if they were directly connected to the LAN. This simplification helps to reduce the complexity of network topologies that result from server consolidation.

Without changing the network setup, you can use HiperSockets Network Concentrator to port systems:

- From the LAN into a System z Server environment
- From systems that are connected by a different HiperSockets Network Concentrator into a System z Server environment

Thus, HiperSockets Network Concentrator helps to simplify network configuration and administration.

Design

A connector Linux system forwards traffic between the external OSA interface and one or more internal HiperSockets interfaces. The forwarding is done via IPv4 forwarding for unicast traffic and via a particular bridging code (`xcec_bridge`) for multicast traffic.

A script named `ip_watcher.pl` observes all IP addresses registered in the HiperSockets network and configures them as proxy ARP entries (see “Configuring a device for proxy ARP” on page 163) on the OSA interfaces. The script also establishes routes for all internal systems to enable IP forwarding between the interfaces.

All unicast packets that cannot be delivered in the HiperSockets network are handed over to the connector by HiperSockets. The connector also receives all multicast packets to bridge them.

Setup

The setup principles for configuring the HiperSockets Network Concentrator are as follows:

leaf nodes

The leaf nodes do not require a special setup. To attach them to the HiperSockets network, their setup should be as if they were directly attached to the LAN. They do not have to be Linux systems.

connector systems

In the following, HiperSockets Network Concentrator IP refers to the subnet of the LAN that is extended into the HiperSockets net.

- If you want to support forwarding of all packet types, define the OSA interface for traffic into the LAN as a multicast router (see “Setting up a Linux router in layer 3” on page 154).
- All HiperSockets interfaces that are involved must be set up as connectors: set the route4 attributes of the corresponding devices to “primary_connector” or to “secondary_connector”. Alternatively, you can add the OSA interface name to the start script as a parameter. This option results in HiperSockets Network Concentrator ignoring multicast packets, which are then not forwarded to the HiperSockets interfaces.
- IP forwarding must be enabled for the connector partition. Enable the forwarding either manually with the command

```
sysctl -w net.ipv4.ip_forward=1
```

Alternatively, you can enable IP forwarding in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` configuration file to activate IP forwarding for the connector partition automatically after booting.

- The network routes for the HiperSockets interface must be removed. A network route for the HiperSockets Network Concentrator IP subnet must be established through the OSA interface. To establish a route, assign the IP address 0.0.0.0 to the HiperSockets interface. At the same time, assign an address used in the HiperSockets Network Concentrator IP subnet to the OSA interface. These assignments set up the network routes correctly for HiperSockets Network Concentrator.
- To start HiperSockets Network Concentrator, run the script `start_hsnc.sh`. You can specify an interface name as optional parameter. The interface name makes HiperSockets Network Concentrator use the specified interface to access the LAN. There is no multicast forwarding in that case.
- To stop HiperSockets Network Concentrator, use the command `killall ip_watcher.pl` to remove changes that are caused by running HiperSockets Network Concentrator.

Availability setups

If a connector system fails during operation, it can simply be restarted. If all the startup commands are run automatically, it will instantaneously be operational again after booting. Two common availability setups are mentioned here:

One connector partition and one monitoring system

As soon as the monitoring system cannot reach the connector for a specific timeout (for example, 5 seconds), it restarts the connector. The connector itself monitors the monitoring system. If it detects (with a longer timeout

than the monitoring system, for example, 15 seconds) a monitor system failure, it restarts the monitoring system.

Two connector systems monitoring each other

In this setup, there is an active and a passive system. As soon as the passive system detects a failure of the active connector, it takes over operation. To take over operation, it must reset the other system to release all OSA resources for the multicast_router operation. The failed system can then be restarted manually or automatically, depending on the configuration. The passive backup HiperSockets interface can either switch into primary_connector mode during the failover, or it can be set up as secondary_connector. A secondary_connector takes over the connecting function, as soon as there is no active primary_connector. This setup has a faster failover time than the first one.

Hints

- The MTU of the OSA and HiperSockets link should be of the same size. Otherwise, multicast packets that do not fit in the link's MTU are discarded as there is no IP fragmentation for multicast bridging. Warnings are printed to /var/log/messages or a corresponding syslog destination.
- The script ip_watcher.pl prints error messages to the standard error descriptor of the process.
- xcec-bridge logs messages and errors to syslog. On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, you can find these messages in /var/log/messages.
- Registering all internal addresses with the OSA adapter can take several seconds for each address.
- To shut down the HiperSockets Network Concentrator function, issue killall ip_watcher.pl. This script removes all routing table and Proxy ARP entries added during the use of HiperSockets Network Concentrator.

Note:

1. Broadcast bridging is active only on OSA or HiperSockets hardware that can handle broadcast traffic without causing a bridge loop. If you see the message "Setting up broadcast echo filtering for ... failed" in the message log when you set the qeth device online, broadcast bridging is not available.
2. Unicast packets are routed by the common Linux IPv4 forwarding mechanisms. As bridging and forwarding are done at the IP Level, the IEEE 802.1q VLAN and the IPv6 protocol are not supported.

Examples for setting up a network concentrator

An example of a network environment with a network concentrator.

Figure 31 on page 178 shows a network environment where a Linux instance C acts as a network concentrator that connects other operating system instances on a HiperSockets LAN to an external LAN.

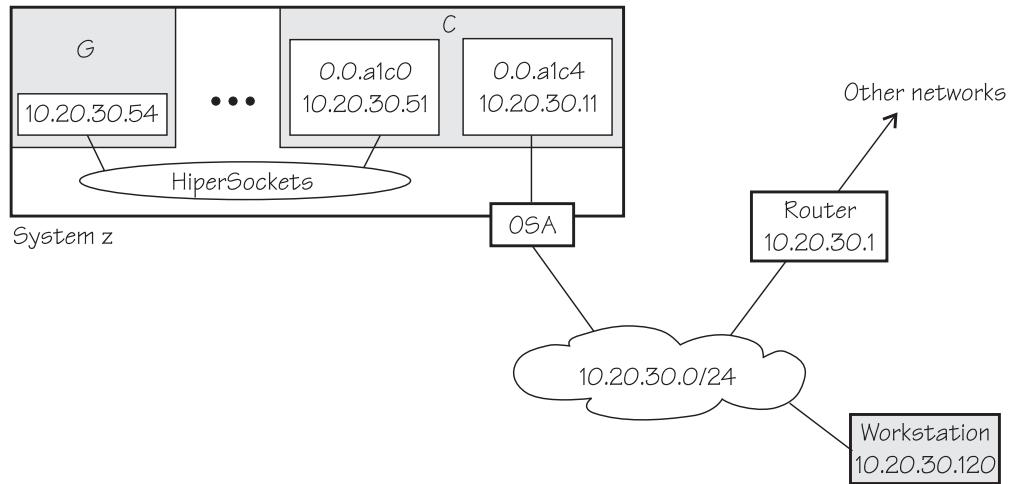


Figure 31. HiperSockets network concentrator setup

Setup for the network concentrator C:

The HiperSockets interface enccw0.0.a1c0 (you can infer the interface name from the device bus-ID 0.0.a1c0) has IP address 10.20.30.51, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Issue:

```
# echo primary_connector > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a1c0/route4
```

The OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode interface enccw0.0.a1c4 has IP address 10.20.30.11, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Issue:

```
# echo multicast_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a1c4/route4
```

To enable IP forwarding issue:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv4.ip_forward=1
```

To remove the network routes for the HiperSockets interface issue:

```
# ip route del 10.20.30/24
```

To start the HiperSockets network concentrator, run the script `start_hsnc.sh`. Issue:

```
# start_hsnc.sh &
```

Setup for G:

No special setup required. The HiperSockets interface has IP address 10.20.30.54, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Setup for workstation:

No special setup required. The network interface IP address is 10.20.30.120, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Figure 32 shows the example of Figure 31 on page 178 with an additional mainframe. On the second mainframe a Linux instance D acts as a HiperSockets network concentrator.

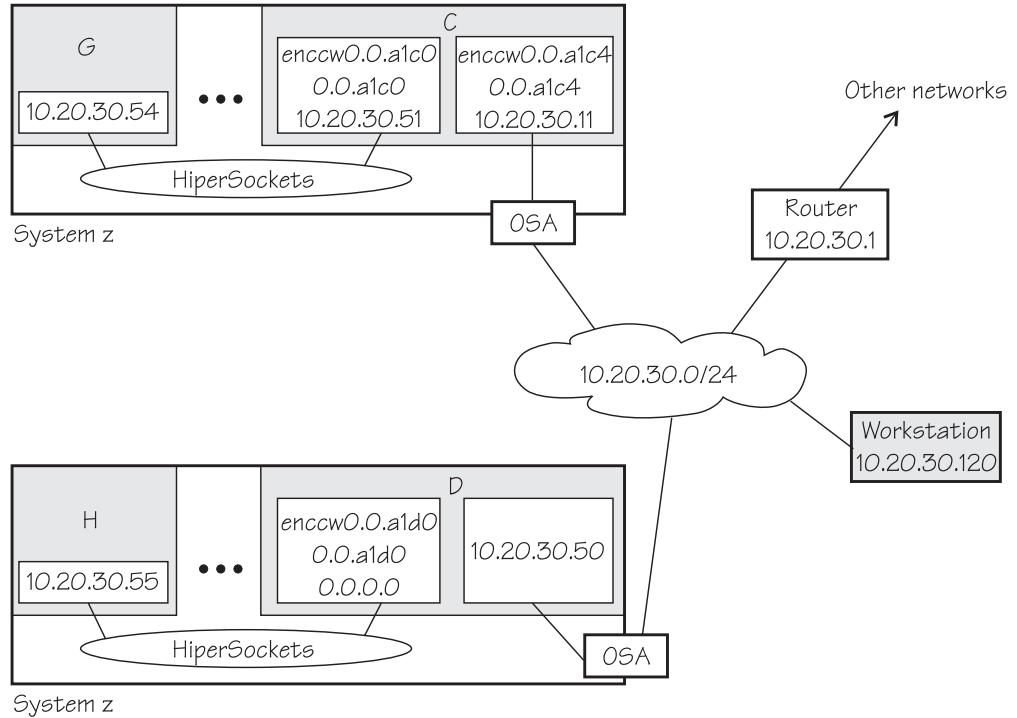


Figure 32. Expanded HiperSockets network concentrator setup

The configuration of C, G, and the workstation remain the same as for Figure 31 on page 178.

Setup for the network concentrator D:

The HiperSockets interface enccw0.0.a1c0 has IP address 0.0.0.0.

Assuming that the device bus-ID of the HiperSockets interface is 0.0.a1d0, issue:

```
# echo primary_connector > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a1d0/route4
```

The OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode interface enccw0.0.a1d0 has IP address 10.20.30.50, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

D is not configured as a multicast router, it therefore only forwards unicast packets.

To enable IP forwarding issue:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv4.ip_forward=1
```

Tip: See *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide* for information about using configuration files to automatically enable IP forwarding when Linux boots.

To start the HiperSockets network concentrator, run the script `start_hsnc.sh`. Issue:

```
# start_hsnc.sh &
```

Setup for H:

No special setup required. The HiperSockets interface has IP address 10.20.30.55, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Setting up for DHCP with IPv4

For connections through an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode, the OSA-Express adapter offloads ARP, MAC header, and MAC address handling.

For information about MAC headers, see “MAC headers in layer 3 mode” on page 133.

Because a HiperSockets connection does not go out on a physical network, there are no ARP, MAC headers, and MAC addresses for packets in a HiperSockets LAN. The resulting problems for DHCP are the same in both cases and the fixes for connections through the OSA-Express adapter also apply to HiperSockets.

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a TCP/IP protocol that allows clients to obtain IP network configuration information (including an IP address) from a central DHCP server. The DHCP server controls whether the address it provides to a client is allocated permanently or is leased temporarily. DHCP specifications are described by RFC 2131 “Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol” and RFC 2132 “DHCP options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions”, which are available at

www.ietf.org

Two types of DHCP environments must be taken into account:

- DHCP that uses OSA-Express adapters in QDIO mode
- DHCP in a z/VM VSWITCH or guest LAN

For information about setting up DHCP for a Linux instance in a z/VM guest LAN environment, see Redpaper™ *Linux on IBM eServer™ zSeries and S/390: TCP/IP Broadcast on z/VM Guest LAN*, REDP-3596 at

www.ibm.com/redbooks

The programs *dhclient* and *dhcp* are examples of a DHCP client and a DHCP server you can use.

Required options for using dhclient with layer3

You must configure the DHCP client program *dhclient* to use it on Linux on System z with layer3.

- Run the DHCP client with an option that instructs the DHCP server to broadcast its response to the client.

Because the OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode forwards packets to Linux based on IP addresses, a DHCP client that requests an IP address cannot receive the response from the DHCP server without this option.

- Run the DHCP client with an option that specifies the client identifier string.

By default, the client uses the MAC address of the network interface. Hence, without this option, all Linux instances that share the OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode would also have the same client identifier.

See the documentation for `dhclient` about how to select these options.

You need no special options for the DHCP server program, `dhcp`. You need no special options for using `dhcp`.

Setting up Linux as a LAN sniffer

You can set up a Linux instance to act as a LAN sniffer, for example, to make data on LAN traffic available to tools like `tcpdump` or Wireshark.

The LAN sniffer can be:

- A HiperSockets Network Traffic Analyzer for LAN traffic between LPARs
- A LAN sniffer for LAN traffic between z/VM guest virtual machines, for example, through a z/VM virtual switch (VSWITCH)

Setting up a HiperSockets network traffic analyzer

A HiperSockets network traffic analyzer (NTA) runs in an LPAR and monitors LAN traffic between LPARs.

Before you begin

- Your Linux instance must not be a z/VM guest.
- On the SE, the LPARs must be authorized for analyzing and being analyzed.

Tip: SE authorization changes for the HiperSockets network traffic analyzer require re-creating the device by ungrouping and regrouping (see “Removing a qeth group device” on page 140 and “Creating a qeth group device” on page 139). Do any authorization changes before you configure the NTA device.

- You need a traffic-dumping tool such as `tcpdump`.

About this task

HiperSockets NTA is available to trace both layer 3 and layer 2 network traffic, but the analyzing device itself must be configured as a layer 3 device. The analyzing device is a dedicated NTA device and cannot be used as a regular network interface.

Linux setup:

Ensure that the qeth device driver module was loaded.

Procedure

Perform the following steps:

1. Configure a HiperSockets interface dedicated to analyzing with the `layer2 sysfs` attribute set to 0 and the `sniffer sysfs` attribute set to 1.

For example, assuming the HiperSockets interface is `enccw0.0.a1c0` with device bus-ID `0.0.a1c0`:

```
# znetconf -a a1c0 -o layer2=0 -o sniffer=1
```

The **znetconf** command also sets the device online. For more information about **znetconf**, see “**znetconf - List and configure network devices**” on page 565. The qeth device driver automatically sets the buffer_count attribute to 128 for the analyzing device.

2. Activate the device (no IP address is needed):

```
# ip link set enccw0.0.a1c0 up
```

3. Switch the interface into promiscuous mode:

```
# tcpdump -i enccw0.0.a1c0
```

Results

The device is now set up as a HiperSockets network traffic analyzer.

Hint: A HiperSockets network traffic analyzer with no free empty inbound buffers might have to drop packets. Dropped packets are reflected in the "dropped counter" of the HiperSockets network traffic analyzer interface and reported by **tcpdump**.

Example:

```
# ip -s link show dev enccw0.0.a1c0
...
RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
 223242      6789       0        5       0      176
...
# tcpdump -i enccw0.0.a1c0
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol decode
listening on enccw0.0.a1c1, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 96 bytes
...
5 packets dropped by kernel
```

Setting up a z/VM guest LAN sniffer

You can set up a guest LAN sniffer on a virtual NIC that is coupled to a z/VM VSWITCH or guest LAN.

Before you begin

- You need class B authorization on z/VM.
- The Linux instance to be set up as a guest LAN sniffer must run as a guest of the same z/VM system as the guest LAN you want to investigate.

About this task

If a virtual switch connects to a VLAN that includes nodes outside the z/VM system, these external nodes are beyond the scope of the sniffer.

For information about VLANs and z/VM virtual switches, see *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6174.

Procedure

- Set up Linux.
Ensure that the qeth device driver is loaded.
- Set up z/VM.

Ensure that the z/VM guest virtual machine on which you want to set up the guest LAN sniffer is authorized for the switch or guest LAN and for promiscuous mode. For example, if your virtual NIC is coupled to a z/VM virtual switch, perform the following steps on your z/VM system:

1. Check whether the z/VM guest virtual machine already has the requisite authorizations. Enter a CP command of this form:

```
q vswitch <switchname> promisc
```

where *<switchname>* is the name of the virtual switch. If the output lists the z/VM guest virtual machine as authorized for promiscuous mode, no further setup is needed.

2. If the output from step 1 does not list the guest virtual machine, check if the guest is authorized for the virtual switch. Enter a CP command of this form:

```
q vswitch <switchname> acc
```

where *<switchname>* is the name of the virtual switch.

If the output lists the z/VM guest virtual machine as authorized, you must temporarily revoke the authorization for the switch before you can grant authorization for promiscuous mode. Enter a CP command of this form:

```
set vswitch <switchname> revoke <userid>
```

where *<switchname>* is the name of the virtual switch and *<userid>* identifies the z/VM guest virtual machine.

3. Authorize the Linux instance for the switch and for promiscuous mode. Enter a CP command of this form:

```
set vswitch <switchname> grant <userid> promisc
```

where *<switchname>* is the name of the virtual switch and *<userid>* identifies the z/VM guest virtual machine.

For details about the CP commands that are used here and for commands you can use to check and assign authorizations for other types of guest LANs, see *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175.

Chapter 10. OSA-Express SNMP subagent support

The OSA-Express Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) subagent (`osasnmpd`) supports management information bases (MIBs) for the OSA-Express features.

The subagent supports OSA-Express features as shown in Table 21 on page 124.

This subagent capability through the OSA-Express features is also called *Direct SNMP* to distinguish it from another method of accessing OSA SNMP data through OSA/SF, a package for monitoring and managing OSA features that does not run on Linux.

To use the `osasnmpd` subagent, you need:

- An OSA-Express feature running in QDIO mode with the latest textual MIB file for the appropriate LIC level (recommended)
- The `qeth` device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO)
- The `osasnmpd` subagent from the `s390utils` RPM
- The `net-snmp` package delivered with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6

What you should know about `osasnmpd`

The `osasnmpd` subagent requires a master agent to be installed on a Linux system.

You get the master agent from the `net-snmp` package. The subagent uses the Agent eXtensibility (AgentX) protocol to communicate with the master agent.

`net-snmp` is an open source project that is owned by the Open Source Development Network, Inc. (OSDN). For more information about `net-snmp` visit: net-snmp.sourceforge.net

When the master agent (`snmpd`) is started on a Linux system, it binds to a port (default 161) and awaits requests from SNMP management software. Subagents can connect to the master agent to support MIBs of special interest (for example, OSA-Express MIB). When the `osasnmpd` subagent is started, it retrieves the MIB objects of the OSA-Express features currently present on the Linux system. It then registers with the master agent the object IDs (OIDs) for which it can provide information.

An OID is a unique sequence of dot-separated numbers (for example, `.1.3.6.1.4.1.2`) that represents a particular information. OIDs form a hierarchical structure. The longer the OID, that is the more numbers it is made up of, the more specific is the information that is represented by the OID. For example, `.1.3.6.1.4.1.2` represents all IBM-related network information while `..1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188` represents all OSA-Express-related information.

A MIB corresponds to a number of OIDs. MIBs provide information about their OIDs including textual representations the OIDs. For example, the textual representation of `.1.3.6.1.4.1.2` is `.iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.ibm`.

The structure of the MIBs might change when updating the OSA-Express Licensed Internal Code (LIC) to a newer level. If MIB changes are introduced by a new LIC

level, you must download the appropriate MIB file for the LIC level (see “Downloading the IBM OSA-Express MIB”). You do not need to update the subagent. Place the updated MIB file in a directory that is searched by the master agent.

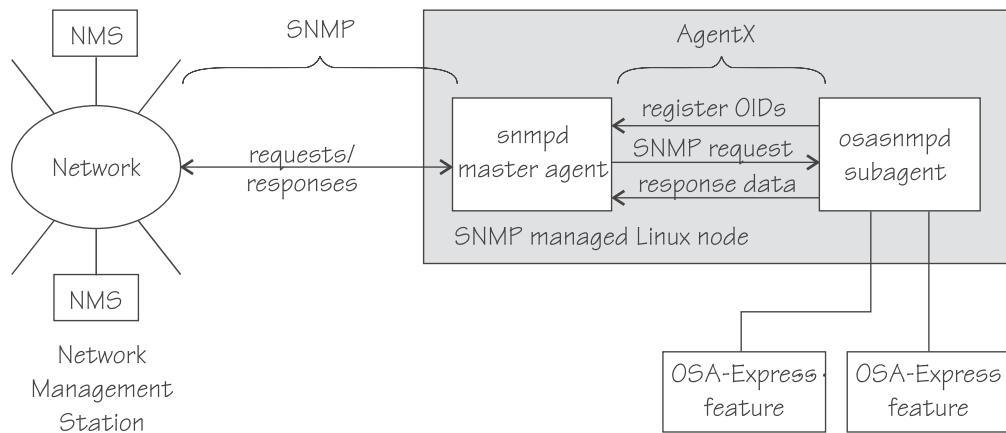


Figure 33. OSA-Express SNMP agent flow

Figure 33 illustrates the interaction between the snmpd master agent and the osasnmpd subagent.

Example: This example shows the processes that run after the snmpd master agent and the osasnmpd subagent are started. When you start osasnmpd, a daemon called osasnmpd starts. In the example, PID 687 is the SNMP master agent and PID 729 is the OSA-Express SNMP subagent process:

```

ps -ef | grep snmp
USER      PID
root      687
root      729
          659
          0 11:57 pts/1    00:00:00 snmpd
          0 13:22 pts/1    00:00:00 osasnmpd

```

When the master agent receives an SNMP request for an OID that is registered by a subagent, the master agent uses the subagent to collect any requested information and to perform any requested operations. The subagent returns any requested information to the master agent. Finally, the master agent returns the information to the originator of the request.

Setting up osasnmpd

You must download the IBM OSA-Express MIB and configure access control before you use can the osasnmpd subagent.

Downloading the IBM OSA-Express MIB

Keep your MIB file up to date by downloading the latest version.

About this task

Perform the following steps to download the IBM OSA-Express MIB. The MIB file is valid only for hardware that supports the OSA-Express adapter.

Procedure

1. Go to www.ibm.com/servers/resourcelink
A user ID and password are required. If you do not yet have one, you can apply for a user ID.
2. Sign in.
3. Select **Library** from the navigation area.
4. Under **Library shortcuts**, select **Open Systems Adapter (OSA) Library**.
5. Follow the link for **OSA-Express Direct SNMP MIB module**.
6. Select and download the MIB for your LIC level.
7. Rename the MIB file to the name specified in the MIBs definition line and use the extension .txt.

Example: If the definition line in the MIB looks like this:

```
==>IBM-OSA-MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN
```

Rename the MIB to IBM-OSA-MIB.txt.

8. Place the MIB into /usr/share/snmp/mibs.

If you want to use a different directory, be sure to specify the directory in the snmp.conf configuration file (see step 10 on page 189).

Results

You can now make the OID information from the MIB file available to the master agent. You can then use textual OIDs instead of numeric OIDs when you use master agent commands.

See also the FAQ (How do I add a MIB to the tools?) for the master agent package at
net-snmp.sourceforge.net/FAQ.html

Configuring access control

To start successfully, the subagent requires at least read access to the standard MIB-II on the local node.

About this task

During subagent startup or when network interfaces are added or removed, the subagent must query OIDs from the interfaces group of the standard MIB-II.

Given here is an example of how you can use the snmpd.conf and snmp.conf configuration files to assign access rights with the View-Based Access Control Mechanism (VACM). The following access rights are assigned on the local node:

- General read access for the scope of the standard MIB-II
- Write access for the scope of the OSA-Express MIB
- Public local read access for the scope of the interfaces MIB

The example is intended for illustration purposes only. Depending on the security requirements of your installation, you might need to define your access differently. See the snmpd man page for a more information about assigning access rights to snmpd.

Procedure

1. See the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 documentation to find out where you must place the snmpd.conf file. Some of the possible locations are:
 - /etc
 - /etc/snmp
2. Open snmpd.conf with your preferred text editor. There might be a sample in `/usr/share/doc/packages/net-snmp/EXAMPLE.conf`
3. Find the security name section and include a line of this form to map a community name to a security name:
`com2sec <security-name> <source> <community-name>`

where:

<security-name>

is given access rights through further specifications within snmpd.conf.

<source>

is the IP-address or DNS-name of the accessing system, typically a Network Management Station.

<community-name>

is the community string used for basic SNMP password protection.

Example:

```
#      sec.name    source      community
com2sec osasec      default    osacom
com2sec pubsec     localhost  public
```

4. Find the group section. Use the security name to define a group with different versions of the master agent for which you want to grant access rights. Include a line of this form for each master agent version:

```
group <group-name> <security-model> <security-name>
```

where:

<group-name>

is a group name of your choice.

<security-model>

is the security model of the SNMP version.

<security-name>

is the same as in step 3.

Example:

```
#      groupName   securityModel  securityName
group  osagroup    v1          osasec
group  osagroup    v2c         osasec
group  osagroup    usm         osasec
group  osasnmpd   v2c         pubsec
```

Group “osasnmpd” with community “public” is required by osasnmpd to determine the number of network interfaces.

5. Find the view section and define your views. A view is a subset of all OIDs. Include lines of this form:

```
view <view-name> <included|excluded> <scope>
```

where:

<view-name>
 is a view name of your choice.
<included | excluded>
 indicates whether the following scope is an inclusion or an exclusion statement.
<scope>
 specifies a subtree in the OID tree.

Example:

```

#   name      incl/excl    subtree          mask(optional)
view allview  included     .1
view osaview  included     .1.3.6.1.4.1.2
view ifmibview included    interfaces
view ifmibview included    system
  
```

View “allview” encompasses all OIDs while “osaview” is limited to IBM OIDs. The numeric OID provided for the subtree is equivalent to the textual OID “.iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.ibm” View “ifmibview” is required by osasnmpd to determine the number of network interfaces.

Tip: Specifying the subtree with a numeric OID leads to better performance than using the corresponding textual OID.

- Find the access section and define access rights. Include lines of this form:

```
access <group-name> "" any noauth exact <read-view> <write-view> none
```

where:

<group-name>
 is the group you defined in step 4 on page 188.

<read-view>
 is a view for which you want to assign read-only rights.

<write-view>
 is a view for which you want to assign read-write rights.

Example:

```

#   group      context sec.model sec.level prefix read      write      notif
access osagroup  ""      any       noauth    exact    allview   osaview  none
access osasnmpd ""      v2c      noauth    exact    ifmibview none    none
  
```

The access line of the example gives read access to the “allview” view and write access to the “osaview”. The second access line gives read access to the “ifmibview”.

- Also include the following line to enable the AgentX support:

```
master agentx
```

 AgentX support is compiled into the net-snmp master agent.
- Save and close snmpd.conf.
- Open snmp.conf with your preferred text editor.
- Include a line of this form to specify the directory to be searched for MIBs:

```
mibdirs +<mib-path>
```

Example: mibdirs +/usr/share/snmp/mibs

- Include a line of this form to make the OSA-Express MIB available to the master agent:

```
mibs +<mib-name>
```

where *<mib-name>* is the stem of the MIB file name you assigned in “Downloading the IBM OSA-Express MIB” on page 186.

Example: mibs +IBM-OSA-MIB

12. Define defaults for the version and community to be used by the snmp commands. Add lines of this form:

```
defVersion <version>
defCommunity <community-name>
```

where *<version>* is the SNMP protocol version and *<community-name>* is the community you defined in step 3 on page 188.

Example:

```
defVersion 2c
defCommunity osacom
```

These default specifications simplify issuing master agent commands.

13. Save and close snmp.conf.

Working with the osasnmpd subagent

Working with the osasnmpd subagent includes starting it, checking the log file, issuing queries, and stopping the subagent.

Working with osasnmpd comprises the following tasks:

- “Starting the osasnmpd subagent”
- “Checking the log file”
- “Issuing queries” on page 191
- “Stopping osasnmpd” on page 192

Starting the osasnmpd subagent

Use the **osasnmpd** command to start the osasnmpd subagent.

Procedure

After you download the osasnmpd package and set up the osasnmpd subagent, start the subagent with the command:

```
# osasnmpd
```

The osasnmpd subagent, in turn, starts a daemon that is called osasnmpd.

For command options see the **osasnmpd** command man page.

If you restart the master agent, you must also restart the subagent. When the master agent is started, it does not look for already running subagents. Any running subagents must also be restarted to be register with the master agent.

Checking the log file

Warnings and messages are written to the log file of either the master agent or the OSA-Express subagent. It is good practice to check these files at regular intervals.

Example

This example assumes that the default subagent log file is used. The lines in the log file show the messages after a successful OSA-Express subagent initialization.

```
# cat /var/log/osasnmpd.log
IBM OSA-E NET-SNMP 5.1.x subagent version 1.3.0
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.2.1.10.7.2.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.3.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.4.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.8.
OSA-E microcode level is 611 for interface enccw0.0.f500
Initialization of OSA-E subagent successful...
```

Issuing queries

You can issue queries against your SNMP setup.

About this task

Examples of what SNMP queries might look like are given here. For more comprehensive information about the master agent commands, see the **snmpcmd** man page.

The commands can use either numeric or textual OIDs. While the numeric OIDs might provide better performance, the textual OIDs are more meaningful and give a hint about which information is requested.

Examples

The query examples assume an interface, enccw0.0.f500, for which the CHPID is 6B. You can use the **lsgeth** command to find the mapping of interface names to CHPIDs.

- To list the ifIndex and interface description relation (on one line):

```
# snmpget -v 2c -c osacom localhost interfaces.ifTable.ifEntry.ifDescr.6
interfaces.ifTable.ifEntry.ifDescr.6 = enccw0.0.f500
```

Using this GET request you can see that enccw0.0.f500 has the ifIndex 6 assigned.

- To find the CHPID numbers for your OSA devices:

```
# snmpwalk -OS -v 2c -c osacom localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.1.1
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.6 = Hex-STRING: 00 6B
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.7 = Hex-STRING: 00 7A
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.8 = Hex-STRING: 00 7D
```

The first line of the command output, with index number 6, corresponds to CHPID 0x6B of the enccw0.0.f500 example. The example assumes that the community osacom is authorized as described in “Configuring access control” on page 187.

If you provided defaults for the SNMP version and the community (see step 12 on page 190), you can omit the **-v** and **-c** options:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.1.1  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.6 = Hex-STRING: 00 6B  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.7 = Hex-STRING: 00 7A  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.8 = Hex-STRING: 00 7D
```

You can obtain the same output by substituting the numeric OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.1 with its textual equivalent:

.iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.ibm.ibmProd.ibmOSAMib.ibmOSAMibObjects.ibmOSAExpChannelTable.ibmOSAExpChannelEntry.ibmOSAExpChannelNumber

You can shorten this unwieldy OID to the last element, ibmOsaExpChannelNumber:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost ibmOsaExpChannelNumber  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.6 = Hex-STRING: 00 6B  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.7 = Hex-STRING: 00 7A  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.8 = Hex-STRING: 00 7D
```

- To find the port type for the interface with index number 6:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.4.1.2.6  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOsaExpEthPortType.6 = INTEGER: fastEthernet(81)
```

fastEthernet(81) corresponds to card type OSD_100.

Using the short form of the textual OID:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost ibmOsaExpEthPortType.6  
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOsaExpEthPortType.6 = INTEGER: fastEthernet(81)
```

Specifying the index, 6 in the example, limits the output to the interface of interest.

Stopping osasnmpd

The subagent can be stopped by sending either a SIGINT or SIGTERM signal to the thread.

About this task

Avoid stopping the subagent with **kill -9** or with **kill -SIGKILL**. These commands do not allow the subagent to unregister the OSA-Express MIB objects from the SNMP master agent. This can cause problems when restarting the subagent.

If you saved the subagent PID to a file when you started it, you can consult this file for the PID. Otherwise, you can issue a **ps** command to find it out.

Example

The osasnmpd subagent starts a daemon that is called osasnmpd. To stop osasnmpd, issue the **kill** command for either the daemon or its PID:

```
# ps -ef | grep snmp  
USER          PID  
root        687      1  0 11:57 pts/1    00:00:00 snmpd  
root        729     659  0 13:22 pts/1    00:00:00 osasnmpd  
# killall osasnmpd
```

Chapter 11. LAN channel station device driver

The LAN channel station device driver (LCS device driver) supports Open Systems Adapters (OSA) features in non-QDIO mode.

Table 32 shows the supported OSA-Express features.

Table 32. The LCS device driver supported OSA-Express features

Feature	zEC12 and zBC12	z196 and z114
OSA-Express3	1000Base-T Ethernet	1000Base-T Ethernet
OSA-Express2	Not supported	1000Base-T Ethernet

The LCS device driver supports automatic detection of Ethernet connections. The LCS device driver can be used for Internet Protocol, version 4 (IPv4) only.

What you should know about LCS

Interface names are assigned to LCS group devices, which map to subchannels and their corresponding device numbers and device bus-IDs.

LCS group devices

The LCS device driver requires two I/O subchannels for each LCS interface, a read subchannel and a write subchannel. The corresponding bus IDs must be configured for control unit type 3088.

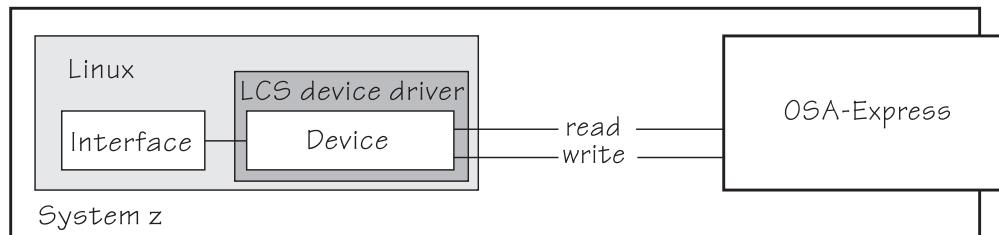


Figure 34. I/O subchannel interface

The device bus-IDs that correspond to the subchannel pair are grouped as one LCS group device. The following rules apply for the device bus-IDs:

read must be even.

write must be the device bus-ID of the read subchannel plus one.

Setting up the LCS device driver

There are no module parameters for the LCS device driver.

You must load the lcs module before you can work with LCS devices. Load the lcs module with the **modprobe** command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order:

```
# modprobe lcs
```

Working with LCS devices

Working with LCS devices includes tasks such as creating an LCS group device, specifying a timeout, or activating an interface.

- “Creating an LCS group device”
- “Removing an LCS group device” on page 195
- “Specifying a timeout for LCS LAN commands” on page 195
- “Setting an LCS group device online or offline” on page 196
- “Activating and deactivating an interface” on page 197
- “Recovering an LCS group device” on page 197

Most of these tasks involve writing to and reading from device attributes in sysfs. Using attributes is useful on a running system where you want to make dynamic changes. If you want to make persistent changes across IPLs, use the interface configuration files. Network configuration parameters are defined in `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-<if_name>`. An example of how to define an LCS device persistently is in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*. For a general discussion of network configuration files, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

Creating an LCS group device

Use the `group` attribute to create an LCS group device.

Before you begin

You must know the device bus-IDs that correspond to the read and write subchannel of your OSA card. The subchannel is defined in the IOCDS of your mainframe.

Procedure

To define an LCS group device, write the device bus-IDs of the subchannel pair to `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/group`. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <read_device_bus_id>,<write_device_bus_id> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/group
```

Results

The `lcs` device driver uses the device bus-ID of the read subchannel to create a directory for a group device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<read_device_bus_id>
```

This directory contains a number of attributes that determine the settings of the LCS group device. The following sections describe how to use these attributes to configure an LCS group device.

Example

Assuming that 0.0.d000 is the device bus-ID that corresponds to a read subchannel:

```
# echo 0.0.d000,0.0.d001 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/group
```

This command results in the creation of the following directories in sysfs:

- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000
- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.d000
- /sys/devices/lcs/0.0.d000

Note: When the device subchannels are added, device types 3088/08 and 3088/1f can be assigned to either the CTCM or the LCS device driver.

To check which devices are assigned to which device driver, issue the following commands:

```
# ls -l /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/ctcm  
# ls -l /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/lcs
```

To change a faulty assignment, use the unbind and bind attributes of the device. For example, to change the assignment for device bus-IDs 0.0.2000 and 0.0.2001 issue the following commands:

```
# echo 0.0.2000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/ctcm.unbind  
# echo 0.0.2000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/lcs/bind  
# echo 0.0.2001 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/ctcm.unbind  
# echo 0.0.2001 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/lcs/bind
```

Removing an LCS group device

Use the ungroup attribute to remove an LCS group device.

Before you begin

The device must be set offline before you can remove it.

Procedure

To remove an LCS group device, write 1 to the ungroup attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/ungroup
```

Example

This command removes device 0.0.d000:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/ungroup
```

Specifying a timeout for LCS LAN commands

Use the lancmd_timeout attribute to set a timeout for an LCS LAN command.

About this task

You can specify a timeout for the interval that the LCS device driver waits for a reply after issuing a LAN command to the LAN adapter. For older hardware, the replies can take a longer time. The default is 5 s.

Procedure

To set a timeout, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <timeout> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/lancmd_timeout
```

where *<timeout>* is the timeout interval in seconds in the range 1 - 60.

Example

In this example, the timeout for a device 0.0.d000 is set to 10 s.

```
# echo 10 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/lancmd_timeout
```

Setting an LCS group device online or offline

Use the `online` device group attribute to set an LCS device online or offline.

About this task

Setting a device online associates it with an interface name. Setting the device offline preserves the interface name.

Read `/var/log/messages` or issue `dmesg` to determine the assigned interface name. You must know the interface name to activate the network interface.

For each online interface, there is a symbolic link of the form `/sys/class/net/<interface_name>/device` in sysfs. You can confirm that you found the correct interface name by reading the link.

Procedure

To set an LCS group device online, set the `online` device group attribute to 1. To set an LCS group device offline, set the `online` device group attribute to 0. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Example

To set an LCS device with bus ID 0.0.d000 online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/online
# dmesg
...
lcs: LCS device enccw0.0.d000 without IPv6 support
lcs: LCS device enccw0.0.d000 with Multicast support
...
```

The interface name that was assigned to the LCS group device in the example is enccw0.0.d000. To confirm that this name is correct for the group device issue:

```
# readlink /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.d000/device  
../../../../devices/lcs/0.0.d000
```

If an error occurs when you set the device online, ensure that the physical connection from the port to the network is in place. If the error persists, note the return code from the error message and contact IBM support.

To set the device offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/online
```

Activating and deactivating an interface

Use the **ip** command or equivalent to activate or deactivate an interface.

About this task

Before you can activate an interface, you must set the group device online and find out the interface name that is assigned by the LCS device driver. See “Setting an LCS group device online or offline” on page 196.

You activate or deactivate network devices with **ip** or an equivalent command. For details of the **ip** command, see the **ip** man page.

Examples

- This example activates an Ethernet interface:

```
# ip addr add 192.168.100.10/24 dev enccw0.0.f500  
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f500 up
```

- This example deactivates the Ethernet interface:

```
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f500 down
```

- This example reactivates an interface that was already activated and subsequently deactivated:

```
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f500 up
```

Recovering an LCS group device

You can use the recover attribute of an LCS group device to recover it in case of failure. For example, error messages in `/var/log/messages` might inform you of a malfunctioning device.

Procedure

Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/recover
```

Example

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d100/recover
```

Chapter 12. CTCM device driver

The CTCM device driver provides Channel-to-Channel (CTC) connections and CTC-based Multi-Path Channel (MPC) connections. The CTCM device driver is required by Communications Server for Linux.

Deprecated connection type: CTC connections are deprecated. Do not use for new network setups.

This does not apply to MPC connections to VTAM®, which are not deprecated.

CTC connections are high-speed point-to-point connections between two operating system instances on System z.

Communications Server for Linux uses MPC connections to connect Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 to VTAM on traditional mainframe operating systems.

Features

The CTCM device driver provides different kinds of CTC connections between mainframes, z/VM guests, and LPARs.

The CTCM device driver provides:

- MPC connections to VTAM on traditional mainframe operating systems.
- ESCON or FICON CTC connections (standard CTC and basic CTC) between mainframes in basic mode, LPARs or z/VM guests.
For more information about FICON, see Redpaper *FICON CTC Implementation*, REDP-0158.
- Virtual CTCA connections between guests of the same z/VM system.
- CTC connections to other Linux instances or other mainframe operating systems.

What you should know about CTCM

The CTCM device driver assigns network interface names to CTCM group devices.

CTCM group devices

The CTCM device driver requires two I/O subchannels for each interface, a read subchannel and a write subchannel.

The CTCM device driver requires two I/O subchannels for each interface, a read subchannel and a write subchannel (see Figure 35 on page 200). The device bus-IDs that correspond to the two subchannels must be configured for control unit type 3088.

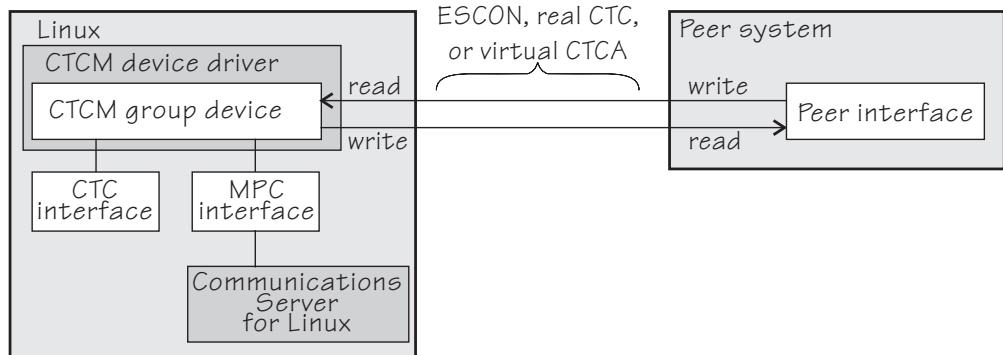


Figure 35. I/O subchannel interface

The device bus-IDs that correspond to the subchannel pair are grouped as one CTCM group device. There are no constraints on the device bus-IDs of read subchannel and write subchannel. In particular, it is possible to group non-consecutive device bus-IDs.

On the communication-peer operating system instance, read and write subchannels are reversed. That is, the write subchannel of the local interface is connected to the read subchannel of the remote interface and vice versa.

Depending on the protocol, the interfaces can be CTC interfaces or MPC interfaces. MPC interfaces are used by Communications Server for Linux and connect to peer interfaces that run under VTAM. For more information about Communications Server for Linux and on using MPC connections, go to www.ibm.com/software/network/commserver/linux.

Interface names assigned by the CTCM device driver

When a CTCM group device is set online, the CTCM device driver automatically assigns an interface name to it. The interface name depends on the protocol.

If the protocol is set to 4, you get an MPC connection and the interface names are of the form `mpc<n>`.

If the protocol is set to 0, 1, or 3, you get a CTC connection and the interface name is of the form `ctc<n>`.

`<n>` is an integer that identifies the device. When the first device is set online it is assigned 0, the second is assigned 1, the third 2, and so on. The devices are counted separately for CTC and MPC.

Network connections

If your CTC connection is to a router or z/VM TCP/IP service machine, you can connect CTC interfaces to an external network.

Figure 36 on page 201 shows a CTC interface that is connected to a network.

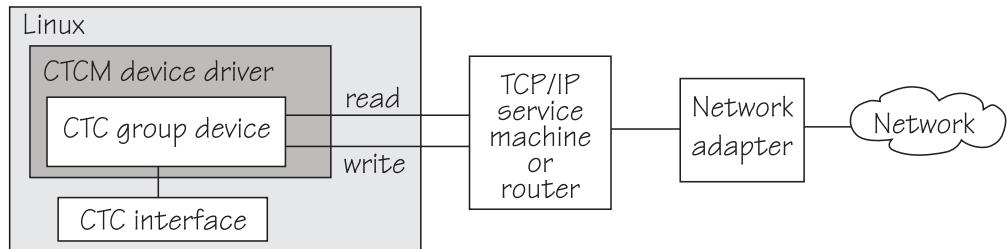


Figure 36. Network connection

Setting up the CTCM device driver

There are no module parameters for the CTCM device driver. Load the `ctcm` module before you use it.

Load the `ctcm` module with the `modprobe` command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded:

```
# modprobe ctcm
```

Working with CTCM devices

When you work with CTCM devices you might create a CTCM group device, set the protocol, and activate an interface.

The following sections describe typical tasks that you need when you work with CTCM devices.

- “Creating a CTCM group device”
- “Removing a CTCM group device” on page 202
- “Displaying the channel type” on page 203
- “Setting the protocol” on page 203
- “Setting a device online or offline” on page 204
- “Setting the maximum buffer size” on page 205 (CTC only)
- “Activating and deactivating a CTC interface” on page 205 (CTC only)
- “Recovering a lost CTC connection” on page 207 (CTC only)

See the Communications Server for Linux documentation for information about configuring and activating MPC interfaces.

Creating a CTCM group device

Use the `group` attribute to create a CTCM group device.

Before you begin

You must know the device bus-IDs that correspond to the local read and write subchannel of your CTCM connection as defined in your IOCDs.

Procedure

To define a CTCM group device, write the device bus-IDs of the subchannel pair to /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <read_device_bus_id>,<write_device_bus_id> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

Results

The CTCM device driver uses the device bus-ID of the read subchannel to create a directory for a group device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<read_device_bus_id>
```

This directory contains a number of attributes that determine the settings of the CTCM group device.

Example

Assuming that device bus-ID 0.0.2000 corresponds to a read subchannel:

```
# echo 0.0.2000,0.0.2001 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

This command results in the creation of the following directories in sysfs:

- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000
- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.2000
- /sys/devices/ctcm/0.0.2000

Note: When the device subchannels are added, device types 3088/08 and 3088/1f can be assigned to either the CTCM or the LCS device driver.

To check which devices are assigned to which device driver, issue the following commands:

```
# ls -l /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/ctcm  
# ls -l /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/lcs
```

To change a faulty assignment, use the unbind and bind attributes of the device. For example, to change the assignment for device bus-IDs 0.0.2000 and 0.0.2001 issue the following commands:

```
# echo 0.0.2000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/lcs/unbind  
# echo 0.0.2000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/ctcm/bind  
# echo 0.0.2001 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/lcs/unbind  
# echo 0.0.2001 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/ctcm/bind
```

Removing a CTCM group device

Use the ungroup attribute to remove a CTCM group device.

Before you begin

The device must be set offline before you can remove it.

Procedure

To remove a CTCM group device, write 1 to the ungroup attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/ungroup
```

Example

This command removes device 0.0.2000:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/ungroup
```

Displaying the channel type

Use the type attribute to display the channel type of a CTCM group device.

Procedure

Issue a command of this form to display the channel type of a CTCM group device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/type
```

where *<device_bus_id>* is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the CTCM read channel. Possible values are: CTC/A, ESCON, and FICON.

Example

In this example, the channel type is displayed for a CTCM group device with device bus-ID 0.0.f000:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f000/type  
ESCON
```

Setting the protocol

Use the protocol attribute to set the protocol.

Before you begin

The device must be offline while you set the protocol.

About this task

The type of interface depends on the protocol. Protocol 4 results in MPC interfaces with interface names `mpc<n>`. Protocols 0, 1, or 3 result in CTC interfaces with interface names of the form `ctc<n>`.

To choose a protocol, set the protocol attribute to one of the following values:

- 0 This protocol provides compatibility with peers other than OS/390®, or z/OS, for example, a z/VM TCP service machine. This value is the default.
- 1 This protocol provides enhanced package checking for Linux peers.

- 3 This protocol provides for compatibility with OS/390 or z/OS peers.
- 4 This protocol provides for MPC connections to VTAM on traditional mainframe operating systems.

Procedure

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/protocol
```

Example

In this example, the protocol is set for a CTCM group device 0.0.2000:

```
# echo 4 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/protocol
```

Setting a device online or offline

Use the `online` device group attribute to set a CTCM device online or offline.

About this task

Setting a group device online associates it with an interface name. Setting the group device offline and back online with the same protocol preserves the association with the interface name. If you change the protocol before you set the group device back online, the interface name can change as described in “Interface names assigned by the CTCM device driver” on page 200.

You must know the interface name to access the CTCM group device. To determine the assigned interface name, use the `znetconf -c` command. For each online interface, the interface name is shown in the Name column. Alternatively, to determine the assigned interface name issue a command of the form:

```
# ls /sys/devices/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/net/
```

For each online interface, there is a symbolic link of the form `/sys/class/net/<interface_name>/device` in sysfs. You can confirm that you found the correct interface name by reading the link.

Procedure

To set a CTCM group device online, set the `online` device group attribute to 1. To set a CTCM group device offline, set the `online` device group attribute to 0. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Example

To set a CTCM device with bus ID 0.0.2000 online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/online
```

To determine the interface name issue:

```
# znetconf -c
Device IDs          Type   Card Type   CHPID  Drv.   Name           State
-----              -----  -----       -----  -----  -----
0.0.2000,0.0.2001  3088/08 CTC/A          ctcm  enccw0.0.2000  online
```

or

```
# ls /sys/devices/ctcm/0.0.2000/net/
enccw0.0.2000
```

To set group device 0.0.2000 offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/online
```

Setting the maximum buffer size

Use the buffer device group attribute to set a maximum buffer size for a CTCM group device.

Before you begin

- Set the maximum buffer size for CTC interfaces only. MPC interfaces automatically use the highest possible maximum buffer size.
- The device must be online when you set the buffer size.

About this task

You can set the maximum buffer size for a CTC interface. The permissible range of values depends on the MTU settings. It must be in the range *<minimum MTU + header size>* to *<maximum MTU + header size>*. The header space is typically 8 byte. The default for the maximum buffer size is 32768 byte (32 KB).

Changing the buffer size is accompanied by an MTU size change to the value *<buffer size - header size>*.

Procedure

To set the maximum buffer size, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/buffer
```

where *<value>* is the number of bytes you want to set. If you specify a value outside the valid range, the command is ignored.

Example

In this example, the maximum buffer size of a CTCM group device 0.0.f000 is set to 16384 byte.

```
# echo 16384 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f000/buffer
```

Activating and deactivating a CTC interface

Use **ip** or an equivalent command to activate or deactivate an interface.

Before you begin

- Activate and deactivate a CTC interfaces only. For information about how to activate MPC interfaces, see the Communications Server for Linux documentation.
- You must know the interface name. See “Setting a device online or offline” on page 204.

About this task

Syntax for setting an IP address for a CTC interface with the ip command

```
►—ip address— add <ip_address>— dev <interface>—  
  └── peer <peer_ip_address>
```

Syntax for activating a CTC interface with the ip command

```
►—ip link set— dev <interface>— up — mtu 32760  
  └── mtu <max_transfer_unit>
```

Where:

<interface>

is the interface name that was assigned when the CTCM group device was set online.

<ip_address>

is the IP address that you want to assign to the interface.

<peer_ip_address>

is the IP address of the remote side.

<max_transfer_unit>

is the size of the largest IP packet that might be transmitted. Be sure to use the same MTU size on both sides of the connection. The MTU must be in the range of 576 byte to 65,536 byte (64 KB).

Syntax for deactivating a CTC interface with the ip command

```
►—ip link set— dev <interface>— down—
```

Where:

<interface>

is the interface name that was assigned when the CTCM group device was set online.

Procedure

- Use **ip** or an equivalent command to activate the interface.
- To deactivate an interface, issue a command of this form:

```
# ip link set dev <interface> down
```

Examples

- This example activates a CTC interface enccw0.0.2000 with an IP address 10.0.51.3 for a peer with address 10.0.50.1 and an MTU of 32760.

```
# ip addr add 10.0.51.3 dev enccw0.0.2000 peer 10.0.50.1  
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.2000 up mtu 32760
```

- This example deactivates enccw0.0.2000:

```
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.2000 down
```

Recovering a lost CTC connection

If one side of a CTC connection crashes, you cannot simply reconnect after a reboot. You must also deactivate the interface of the peer of the crashed side.

Before you begin

These instructions apply to CTC interfaces only.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to recover a lost CTC connection:

1. Reboot the crashed side.
2. Deactivate the interface on the peer. See “Activating and deactivating a CTC interface” on page 205.
3. Activate the interface on the crashed side and on the peer. For details, see “Activating and deactivating a CTC interface” on page 205.

If the connection is between a Linux instance and a non-Linux instance, activate the interface on the Linux instance first. Otherwise, you can activate the interfaces in any order.

Results

If the CTC connection is uncoupled, you must couple it again and reconfigure the interface of both peers with the **ip** command. See “Activating and deactivating a CTC interface” on page 205.

CTCM scenarios

Typical use cases of CTC connections include connecting to a peer in a different LPAR and connecting Linux instances running as z/VM guests to each other.

This section provides some typical scenarios for CTC connections:

- “Connecting to a peer in a different LPAR”
- “Connecting Linux on z/VM to another guest of the same z/VM system” on page 209

Connecting to a peer in a different LPAR

A Linux instance and a peer run in LPAR mode on the same or on different mainframes and are to be connected with a CTC FICON or CTC ESCON network interface.

Assumptions:

- Locally, the read and write channels have been configured for type 3088 and use device bus-IDs 0.0.f008 and 0.0.f009.
- IP address 10.0.50.4 is to be used locally and 10.0.50.5 for the peer.

Figure 37 illustrates a CTC setup with a peer in a different LPAR.

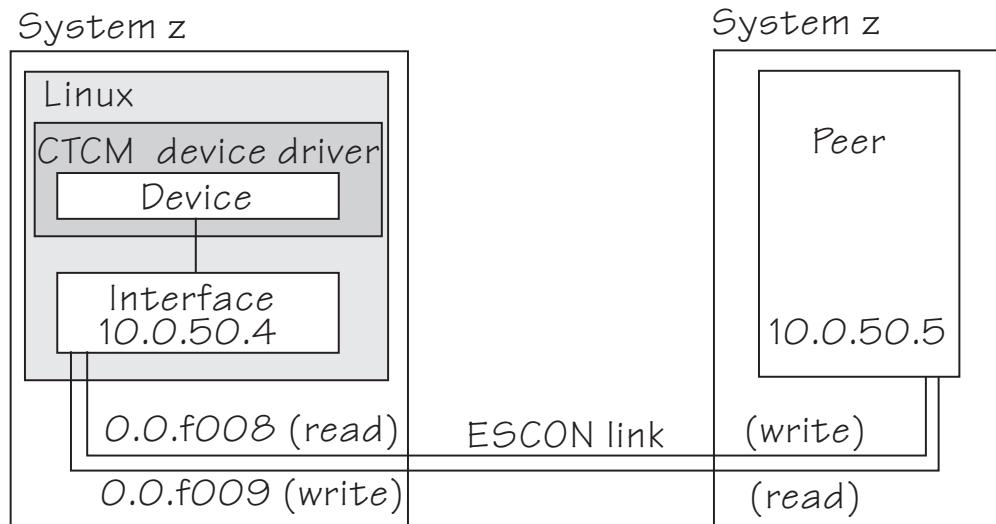


Figure 37. CTC scenario with peer in a different LPAR

Procedure

1. Create a CTCM group device. Issue:

```
# echo 0.0.f008,0.0.f009 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

2. Confirm that the device uses CTC FICON or CTC ESCON:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f008/type  
ESCON
```

In this example, ESCON is used. You would proceed the same for FICON.

3. Select a protocol. The choice depends on the peer.

If the peer is ...	Choose ...
Linux	1
z/OS or OS/390	3
Any other operating system	0

Assuming that the peer is Linux:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f008/protocol
```

- Set the CTCM group device online and find out the assigned interface name:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f008/online
# ls /sys/devices/ctcm/0.0.f008/net/
enccw0.0.f008
```

In the example, the interface name is enccw0.0.f008.

- Assure that the peer interface is configured.
- Activate the interface locally and on the peer. If you are connecting two Linux instances, either instance can be activated first. If the peer is not Linux, activate the interface on Linux first. To activate the local interface:

```
# ip addr add 10.0.50.4 dev enccw0.0.f008 peer 10.0.50.5
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f008 up
```

Connecting Linux on z/VM to another guest of the same z/VM system

A virtual CTCA connection is to be set up between an instance of Linux on z/VM and another guest of the same z/VM system.

Assumptions:

- The guest ID of the peer is “guestp”.
- A separate subnet has been obtained from the TCP/IP network administrator. The Linux instance will use IP address 10.0.100.100 and the peer will use IP address 10.0.100.101.

Figure 38 illustrates a CTC setup with a peer in the same z/VM.

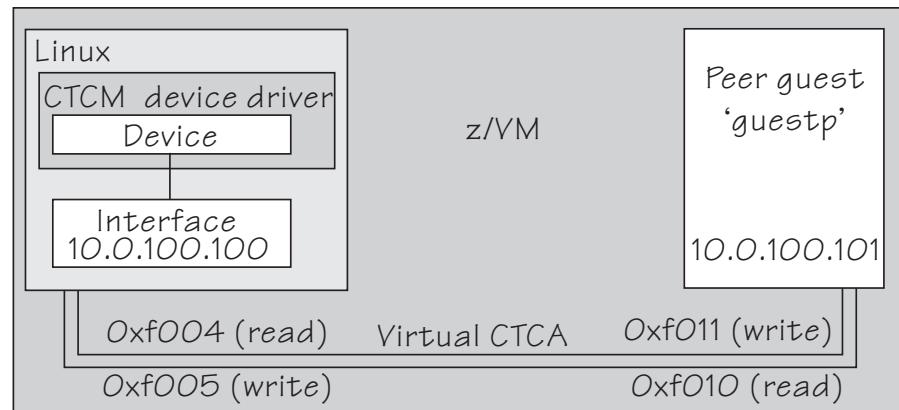


Figure 38. CTC scenario with peer in the same z/VM

Procedure

1. Define two virtual channels to your user ID. The channels can be defined in the z/VM user directory using directory control SPECIAL statements, for example:

```
special f004 ctca  
special f005 ctca
```

Alternatively, you can use the CP commands:

```
define ctca as f004  
define ctca as f005
```

2. Assure that the peer interface is configured.
3. Connect the virtual channels. Assuming that the read channel on the peer corresponds to device number 0xf010 and the write channel to 0xf011 issue:

```
couple f004 to guestp f011  
couple f005 to guestp f010
```

Be sure that you couple the read channel to the peers write channel and vice versa.

4. From your booted Linux instance, create a CTCM group device. Issue:

```
# echo 0.0.f004,0.0.f005 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

5. Confirm that the group device is a virtual CTCA device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f004/type  
CTC/A
```

6. Select a protocol. The choice depends on the peer.

If the peer is ...	Choose ...
Linux	1
z/OS or OS/390	3
Any other operating system	0

Assuming that the peer is Linux:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f004/protocol
```

7. Set the CTCM group device online and find out the assigned interface name:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f004/online  
# ls /sys/devices/ctcm/0.0.f004/net/  
enccw0.0.f004
```

In the example, the interface name is enccw0.0.f004.

8. Activate the interface locally and on the peer. If you are connecting two Linux instances, either can be activated first. If the peer is not Linux, activate the local interface first. To activate the local interface:

```
# ip addr add 10.0.100.100 dev enccw0.0.f004 peer 10.0.100.101  
# ip link set dev enccw0.0.f004 up
```

Be sure that the MTU on both sides of the connection is the same. If necessary change the default MTU (see “Activating and deactivating a CTC interface” on page 205).

9. Ensure that the buffer size on both sides of the connection is the same. For the Linux side see “Setting the maximum buffer size” on page 205. If the peer is not Linux, see the operating system documentation of the peer.

Chapter 13. AF_IUCV address family support

The AF_IUCV address family provides an addressing mode for communications between applications that run on System z mainframes.

This addressing mode can be used for connections through real HiperSockets and through the z/VM Inter-User Communication Vehicle (IUCV).

Support for AF_IUCV based connections through real HiperSockets requires Completion Queue Support.

HiperSockets devices facilitate connections between applications across LPARs within a System z mainframe. In particular, an application that runs on an instance of Linux on System z can communicate with:

- Itself
- Other applications that run on the same Linux instance
- An application on an instance of Linux on System z in another LPAR

IUCV facilitates connections between applications across z/VM guest virtual machines within a z/VM system. In particular, an application that runs on Linux on z/VM can communicate with:

- Itself
- Other applications that run on the same Linux instance
- Applications running on other instances of Linux on z/VM, within the same z/VM system
- Applications running on a z/VM guest other than Linux, within the same z/VM system
- The z/VM control program (CP)

The AF_IUCV address family supports stream-oriented sockets (SOCK_STREAM) and connection-oriented datagram sockets (SOCK_SEQPACKET). Stream-oriented sockets can fragment data over several packets. Sockets of type SOCK_SEQPACKET always map a particular socket write or read operation to a single packet.

Features

The AF_IUCV address family provides socket connections for HiperSockets and IUCV.

For all instances of Linux on System z, the AF_IUCV address family provides the following features:

- Multiple outgoing socket connections for real HiperSockets
- Multiple incoming socket connections for real HiperSockets

For instances of Linux on z/VM, the AF_IUCV address family also provides the following features:

- Multiple outgoing socket connections for IUCV
- Multiple incoming socket connections for IUCV

- Socket communication with applications that use the CMS AF_IUCV support

Setting up the AF_IUCV address family support

You must authorize your z/VM guest virtual machine and load those components that were compiled as separate modules.

There are no module parameters for the AF_IUCV address family support.

Setting up HiperSockets devices for AF_IUCV addressing

In AF_IUCV addressing mode, HiperSockets devices are identified through their hsuid sysfs attribute.

You set up a HiperSockets device for AF_IUCV by assigning a value to this attribute (see “Configuring a HiperSockets device for AF_IUCV addressing” on page 144).

Setting up your z/VM guest virtual machine for IUCV

You must specify suitable IUCV statements for your z/VM guest virtual machine.

For details and for general IUCV setup information for z/VM guest virtual machines, see *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6179 and *z/VM CP Planning and Administration*, SC24-6178.

Granting IUCV authorizations

Use the IUCV statement to grant the necessary authorizations.

IUCV ALLOW

allows any other z/VM virtual machine to establish a communication path with this z/VM virtual machine. With this statement, no further authorization is required in the z/VM virtual machine that initiates the communication.

IUCV ANY

allows this z/VM guest virtual machine to establish a communication path with any other z/VM guest virtual machine.

IUCV <user ID>

allows this z/VM guest virtual machine to establish a communication path to the z/VM guest virtual machine with the z/VM user ID <user ID>.

You can specify multiple IUCV statements. To any of these IUCV statements you can append the MSGLIMIT <limit> parameter. <limit> specifies the maximum number of outstanding messages that are allowed for each connection that is authorized by the statement. If no value is specified for MSGLIMIT, AF_IUCV requests 65 535, which is the maximum that is supported by IUCV.

Setting a connection limit

Use the OPTION statement to limit the number of concurrent connections.

OPTION MAXCONN <maxno>

<maxno> specifies the maximum number of IUCV connections that are allowed for this virtual machine. The default is 64. The maximum is 65 535.

Example

These sample statements allow any z/VM guest virtual machine to connect to your z/VM guest virtual machine with a maximum of 10 000 outstanding messages for each incoming connection. Your z/VM guest virtual machine is permitted to connect to all other z/VM guest virtual machines. The total number of connections for your z/VM guest virtual machine cannot exceed 100.

```
IUCV ALLOW MSGLIMIT 10000  
IUCV ANY  
OPTION MAXCONN 100
```

Loading the IUCV modules

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 loads the af_iucv module when an application requests a socket in the AF_IUCV domain.

You can also use the **modprobe** command to load the AF_IUCV address family support module af_iucv:

```
# modprobe af_iucv
```

Addressing AF_IUCV sockets in applications

To use AF_IUCV sockets in applications, you must code a special AF_IUCV sockaddr structure.

Application programmers: This information is intended for programmers who want to use connections that are based on AF_IUCV addressing in their applications.

The primary difference between AF_IUCV sockets and TCP/IP sockets is how communication partners are identified (for example, how they are named). To use the AF_IUCV support in an application, code a sockaddr structure with AF_IUCV as the socket address family and with AF_IUCV address information.

For details, see the af_iucv man page.

Part 4. z/VM virtual server integration

Chapter 14. z/VM concepts	219	What you should know about the z/VM unit record device driver	247
Performance monitoring for z/VM guest virtual machines	219	Working with z/VM unit record devices	247
Cooperative memory management background	221		
Linux guest relocation	222		
Chapter 15. Writing kernel APPLDATA records	223	Chapter 20. z/VM DCSS device driver	249
Setting up the APPLDATA record support	223	What you should know about DCSS	249
Generating APPLDATA monitor records	223	Setting up the DCSS device driver	250
APPLDATA monitor record layout	225	Avoiding overlaps with your guest storage	251
Programming interfaces	228	Working with DCSS devices	252
		Scenario: Changing the contents of a DCSS	258
Chapter 16. Writing z/VM monitor records	229	Chapter 21. Watchdog device driver	261
Setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record writer device driver	229	What you should know about the watchdog device driver	261
Working with the z/VM *MONITOR record writer	230	Loading and configuring the watchdog device driver	262
		External programming interfaces	263
Chapter 17. Reading z/VM monitor records	233	Chapter 22. z/VM CP interface device driver	265
What you should know about the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver	233	What you should know about the z/VM CP interface	265
Setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver	234	Using the device node	266
Working with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader	236		
Chapter 18. z/VM recording device driver	239	Chapter 23. z/VM special messages uevent support	267
Features	239	Setting up the CP special message device driver	267
What you should know about the z/VM recording device driver	239	Working with CP special messages	268
Setting up the z/VM recording device driver	240		
Working with z/VM recording devices	240	Chapter 24. Cooperative memory management	273
Scenario: Connecting to the *ACCOUNT service	243	Setting up cooperative memory management	273
		Working with cooperative memory management	274
Chapter 19. z/VM unit record device driver	247		

These device drivers and features help you to effectively run and manage a z/VM-based virtual Linux server farm.

Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at
ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html

Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at
https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

Chapter 14. z/VM concepts

The z/VM performance monitoring and cooperative memory management concepts help you to understand how the different components interact with Linux.

Performance monitoring for z/VM guest virtual machines

You can monitor the performance of z/VM guest virtual machines and their guest operating systems with performance monitoring tools on z/VM or on Linux.

These tools can be your own, IBM tools such as the Performance Toolkit for VM, or third-party tools. The guests being monitored require agents that write monitor data.

Monitoring on z/VM

z/VM monitoring tools must read performance data. For monitoring Linux instances, this data is APPLDATA monitor records.

Linux instances must write these records for the tool to read, as shown in Figure 39.

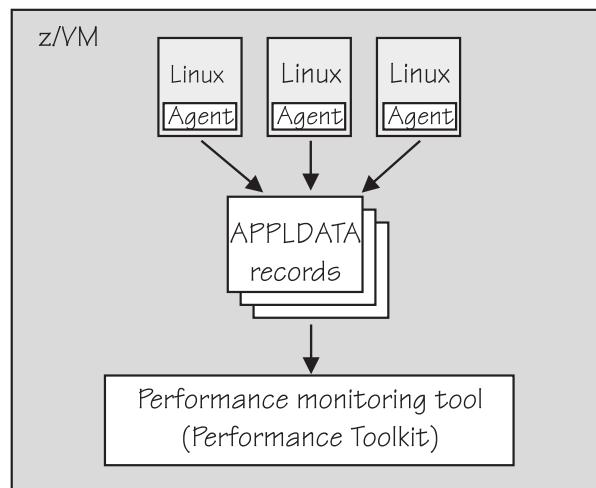


Figure 39. Linux instances write APPLDATA records for performance monitoring tools

Both user space applications and the Linux kernel can write performance data to APPLDATA records. Applications use the monwriter device driver to write APPLDATA records. The Linux kernel can be configured to collect system level data such as memory, CPU usage, and network-related data, and write it to data records.

For file system size data, there is a command, **mon_fsstatd**. This user space tool uses the monwriter device driver to write file system size information as defined records.

For process data, there is a command, **mon_procd**. This user space tool uses the monwriter device driver to write system information as defined records.

In summary, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z supports writing and collecting performance data as follows:

- The Linux kernel can write z/VM monitor data for Linux instances, see Chapter 15, “Writing kernel APPLDATA records,” on page 223.
- Linux applications that run on z/VM guests can write z/VM monitor data, see Chapter 16, “Writing z/VM monitor records,” on page 229.
- You can collect monitor file system size information, see “mon_fsstatd – Monitor z/VM guest file system size” on page 524.
- You can collect system information about up to 100 concurrently running processes, see “mon_procd – Monitor Linux on z/VM” on page 528.

Monitoring on Linux

A Linux instance can read the monitor data by using the monreader device driver.

Figure 40 illustrates a Linux instance that is set up to read the monitor data. You can use an existing monitoring tool or write your own software.

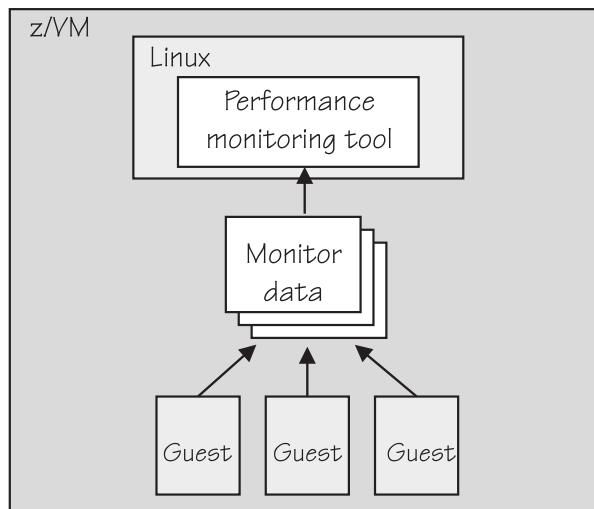


Figure 40. Performance monitoring using monitor DCSS data

In summary, Linux on System z supports reading performance data in the form of read access to z/VM monitor data for Linux instances. See Chapter 17, “Reading z/VM monitor records,” on page 233 or more details.

Further information

Several z/VM publications include information about monitoring.

- See *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6194, the chapter about monitoring performance for information about using the CP Monitor and the Performance Toolkit for VM.
- See *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6229 for general information about DCSSs (z/VM keeps monitor records in a DCSS).
- See *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for information about creating a monitor DCSS.
- See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about the CP commands that are used in the context of DCSSs and for controlling the z/VM monitor system service.
- For the layout of the monitor records, see Chapter 15, “Writing kernel APPLDATA records,” on page 223 and visit

- For more information about performance monitoring on z/VM, visit
www.ibm.com/vm/perf

Cooperative memory management background

Cooperative memory management (CMM, or "cmm1") dynamically adjusts the memory available to Linux.

For information about setting up CMM, see Chapter 24, "Cooperative memory management," on page 273.

In a virtualized environment it is common practice to give the virtual machines more memory than is actually available to the hypervisor. Linux tends to use all of its available memory. As a result, the hypervisor (z/VM) might start swapping.

To avoid excessive z/VM swapping, the memory available to Linux can be reduced. CMM allocates pages to page pools that make the pages unusable to Linux. There are two such page pools as shown in Figure 41.

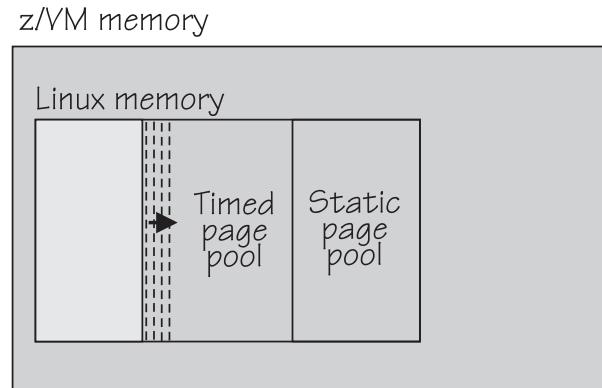


Figure 41. Page pools

There are two page pools:

A static page pool

The page pool is controlled by a resource manager that changes the pool size at intervals according to guest activity and overall memory usage on z/VM (see Figure 42 on page 222).

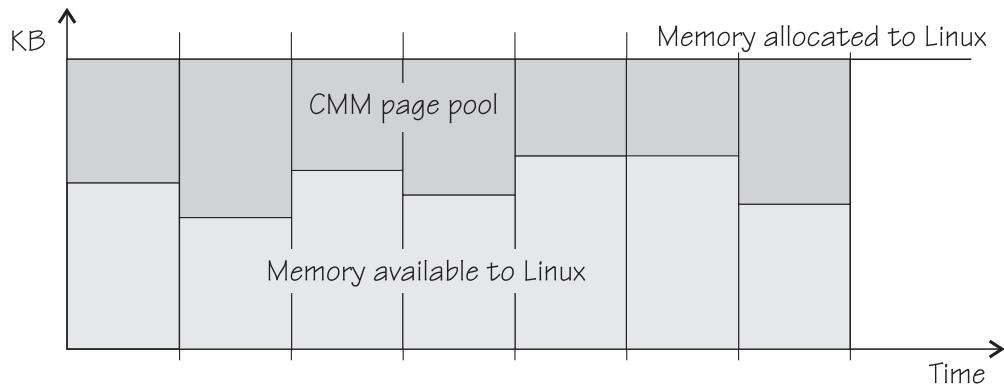


Figure 42. *Static page pool*. The size of the pool is static during an interval.

A timed page pool

Pages are released from this pool at a speed that is set in the *release rate* (see Figure 43). According to guest activity and overall memory usage on z/VM, a resource manager adds pages at intervals. If no pages are added and the release rate is not zero, the pool empties.

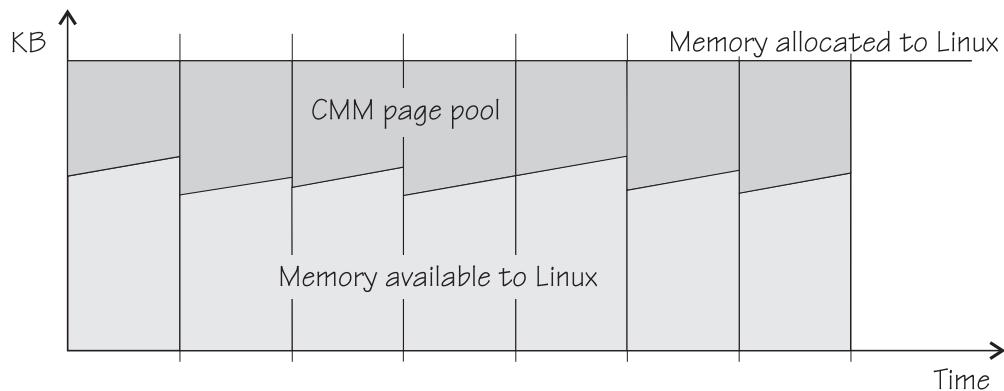


Figure 43. *Timed page pool*. Pages are freed at a set release rate.

The external resource manager that controls the pools can be the z/VM resource monitor (VMRM) or a third-party systems management tool.

VMRM controls the pools over a message interface. Setting up the external resource manager is beyond the scope of this information. For more details, see the chapter on VMRM in *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208.

Third-party tools can provide a Linux deamon that receives commands for the memory allocation through TCP/IP. The deamon, in turn, uses the procfs-based interface. You can use the procfs interface to read the pool sizes. These values are useful diagnostic data.

Linux guest relocation

Information about guest relocations is stored in the s390 debug feature (s390dbf).

You can access this information in a kernel dump or from a running Linux instance. For more information, see *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711.

Chapter 15. Writing kernel APPLDATA records

z/VM is a convenient point for collecting z/VM guest performance data and statistics for an entire server farm. Linux instances can export such data to z/VM by using APPLDATA monitor records.

z/VM regularly collects these records. The records are then available to z/VM performance monitoring tools.

A virtual CPU timer on the Linux instance to be monitored controls when data is collected. The timer accounts for only busy time to avoid unnecessarily waking up an idle guest. The APPLDATA record support comprises several modules. A base module provides an intra-kernel interface and the timer function. The intra-kernel interface is used by *data gathering modules* that collect actual data and determine the layout of a corresponding APPLDATA monitor record (see “APPLDATA monitor record layout” on page 225).

For an overview of performance monitoring support, see “Performance monitoring for z/VM guest virtual machines” on page 219.

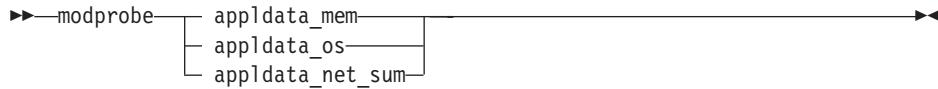
Setting up the APPLDATA record support

You must enable your z/VM guest virtual machine for data gathering and load the APPLDATA record support modules.

Procedure

1. On z/VM, ensure that the user directory of the guest virtual machine includes the option APPLMON.
2. On Linux, use the **modprobe** command to load any required modules.

APPLDATA record support module parameter syntax



where `appldata_mem`, `appldata_os`, and `appldata_net_sum` are the modules for gathering memory-related data, operating system-related data, and network-related data.

See the **modprobe** man page for command details.

Generating APPLDATA monitor records

You can set the timer interval and enable or disable data collection.

You control the monitor stream support through the procfs. APPLDATA monitor records are produced if both a particular data gathering module and the monitoring support in general are enabled.

Enabling or disabling the support

Use the procfs timer attribute to enable or disable the monitoring support.

Procedure

To read the current setting, issue:

```
# cat /proc/sys/appldata/timer
```

To enable the monitoring support issue:

```
# echo 1 > /proc/sys/appldata/timer
```

To disable the monitoring support issue:

```
# echo 0 > /proc/sys/appldata/timer
```

Activating or deactivating individual data-gathering modules

Each data-gathering module has a procfs entry that contains a value 1 if the module is active and 0 if the module is inactive.

About this task

The following procfs entries control the data-gathering modules:

- /proc/sys/appldata/mem for the memory data-gathering module
- /proc/sys/appldata/os for the CPU data-gathering module
- /proc/sys/appldata/net_sum for the net data-gathering module

To check whether a module is active look at the content of the corresponding procfs entry.

Procedure

To activate a data-gathering module write 1 to the corresponding procfs entry. To deactivate a data-gathering module write 0 to the corresponding procfs entry.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /proc/sys/appldata/<data_type>
```

where *<data_type>* is one of mem, os, or net_sum.

Note: An active data-gathering module produces APPLDATA monitor records only if the monitoring support is enabled (see “Enabling or disabling the support”).

Example

To find out whether memory data-gathering is active, issue:

```
# cat /proc/sys/appldata/mem
```

In the example, memory data-gathering is off. To activate memory data-gathering, issue:

```
# echo 1 > /proc/sys/appldata/mem
```

To deactivate the memory data-gathering module, issue:

```
# echo 0 > /proc/sys/appldata/mem
```

Setting the sampling interval

You can set the time that lapses between consecutive data samples.

About this task

The time that you set is measured by the virtual CPU timer. Because the virtual timer slows down as the guest idles, the sampling interval in real time can be considerably longer than the value you set.

The value in `/proc/sys/appldata/interval` is the sample interval in milliseconds. The default sample interval is 10 000 ms.

Procedure

To read the current value, issue:

```
# cat /proc/sys/appldata/interval
```

To set the sample interval to a different value, write the new value (in milliseconds) to `/proc/sys/appldata/interval`. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <interval> > /proc/sys/appldata/interval
```

where `<interval>` is the new sample interval in milliseconds. Valid input must be greater than 0 and less than $2^{31} - 1$. Input values greater than $2^{31} - 1$ produce unpredictable results.

Example

To set the sampling interval to 20 s (20000 ms), issue:

```
# echo 20000 > /proc/sys/appldata/interval
```

APPLDATA monitor record layout

Each of the data gathering modules writes a different type of record.

- Memory data (see Table 33 on page 226)
- Processor data (see Table 34 on page 226)
- Networking (see Table 35 on page 227)

z/VM can identify the records by their unique product ID. The product ID is an EBCDIC string of this form: "LINUXKRNL<record ID>260100". The `<record ID>` is treated as a byte value, not a string.

The records contain data of the following types:

u32 unsigned 4 byte integer

u64 unsigned 8 byte integer

Table 33. APPLDATA_MEM_DATA record (Record ID 0x01)

Offset (Decimal)	Offset (Hex)	Type	Name	Description
0	0x0	u64	timestamp	TOD time stamp that is generated on the Linux side after record update
8	0x8	u32	sync_count_1	After z/VM collected the record data, sync_count_1 and sync_count_2 must be the same. Otherwise, the record was updated on the Linux side while z/VM was collecting the data. As a result, the data might be inconsistent.
12	0xC	u32	sync_count_2	See sync_count_1.
16	0x10	u64	pgpgin	Data that was read from disk (in KB)
24	0x18	u64	pgpgout	Data that was written to disk (in KB)
32	0x20	u64	pswpin	Pages that were swapped in
40	0x28	u64	pswpout	Pages that were swapped out
48	0x30	u64	sharedram	Shared RAM in KB, set to 0
56	0x38	u64	totalram	Total usable main memory size in KB
64	0x40	u64	freeram	Available memory size in KB
72	0x48	u64	totalhigh	Total high memory size in KB
80	0x50	u64	freehigh	Available high memory size in KB
88	0x58	u64	bufferram	Memory that was reserved for raw disk blocks, corresponding to "Buffers" from /proc/meminfo, in KB
96	0x60	u64	cached	Size of used cache, including "Cached" and "SwapCached" from /proc/meminfo, in KB
104	0x68	u64	totalswap	Total swap space size in KB
112	0x70	u64	freeswap	Free swap space in KB
120	0x78	u64	pgalloc	Page allocations
128	0x80	u64	pgfault	Page faults (major+minor)
136	0x88	u64	pgmajfault	Page faults (major only)

Table 34. APPLDATA_OS_DATA record (Record ID 0x02)

Offset (Decimal)	Offset (Hex)	Type (size)	Name	Description
0	0x0	u64	timestamp	TOD time stamp that is generated on the Linux side after record update
8	0x8	u32	sync_count_1	After z/VM collected the record data, sync_count_1 and sync_count_2 must be the same. Otherwise, the record was updated on the Linux side while z/VM was collecting the data. As a result, the data might be inconsistent.
12	0xC	u32	sync_count_2	See sync_count_1.
16	0x10	u32	nr_cpus	Number of virtual CPUs.

Table 34. APPLDATA_OS_DATA record (Record ID 0x02) (continued)

Offset (Decimal)	Offset (Hex)	Type (size)	Name	Description
20	0x14	u32	per_cpu_size	Size of the per_cpu_data for each CPU (= 36).
24	0x18	u32	cpu_offset	Offset of the first per_cpu_data (= 52).
28	0x1C	u32	nr_running	Number of runnable threads.
32	0x20	u32	nr_threads	Number of threads.
36	0x24	3 × u32	avenrun[3]	Average number of running processes during the last 1 (1st value), 5 (2nd value) and 15 (3rd value) minutes. These values are "fake fix-point", each value is composed of a 10-bit integer and an 11-bit fractional part. See note 1 at the end of this table.
48	0x30	u32	nr_iowait	Number of blocked threads (waiting for I/O).
52	0x34	See note 2.	per_cpu_data	Time that is spent in user, kernel, idle, nice, etc for every CPU. See note 3 at the end of this table.
52	0x34	u32	per_cpu_user	Timer ticks that were spent in user mode.
56	0x38	u32	per_cpu_nice	Timer ticks that were spent with modified priority.
60	0x3C	u32	per_cpu_system	Timer ticks that were spent in kernel mode.
64	0x40	u32	per_cpu_idle	Timer ticks that were spent in idle mode.
68	0x44	u32	per_cpu_irq	Timer ticks that were spent in interrupts.
72	0x48	u32	per_cpu_softirq	Timer ticks that were spent in softirqs.
76	0x4C	u32	per_cpu_iowait	Timer ticks that were spent while waiting for I/O.
80	0x50	u32	per_cpu_stole	Timer ticks "stolen" by hypervisor.
84	0x54	u32	cpu_id	The number of this CPU.

Note:

1. The following C-Macros are used inside Linux to transform these into values with two decimal places:

```
#define LOAD_INT(x) ((x) >> 11)
#define LOAD_FRAC(x) LOAD_INT(((x) & ((1 << 11) - 1)) * 100)
```
2. nr_cpus * per_cpu_size
3. per_cpu_user through cpu_id are repeated for each CPU

Table 35. APPLDATA_NET_SUM_DATA record (Record ID 0x03)

Offset (Decimal)	Offset (Hex)	Type	Name	Description
0	0x0	u64	timestamp	TOD time stamp that is generated on the Linux side after record update

Table 35. APPLDATA_NET_SUM_DATA record (Record ID 0x03) (continued)

Offset (Decimal)	Offset (Hex)	Type	Name	Description
8	0x8	u32	sync_count_1	After z/VM collected the record data, sync_count_1 and sync_count_2 must be the same. Otherwise, the record was updated on the Linux side while z/VM was collecting the data. As a result, the data might be inconsistent.
12	0xC	u32	sync_count_2	See sync_count_1.
16	0x10	u32	nr_interfaces	Number of interfaces being monitored
20	0x14	u32	padding	Unused. The next value is 64-bit aligned, so these 4 byte would be padded out by compiler
24	0x18	u64	rx_packets	Total packets that were received
32	0x20	u64	tx_packets	Total packets that were transmitted
40	0x28	u64	rx_bytes	Total bytes that were received
48	0x30	u64	tx_bytes	Total bytes that were transmitted
56	0x38	u64	rx_errors	Number of bad packets that were received
64	0x40	u64	tx_errors	Number of packet transmit problems
72	0x48	u64	rx_dropped	Number of incoming packets that were dropped because of insufficient space in Linux buffers
80	0x50	u64	tx_dropped	Number of outgoing packets that were dropped because of insufficient space in Linux buffers
88	0x58	u64	collisions	Number of collisions while transmitting

Programming interfaces

The monitor stream support base module exports two functions.

Application programmers: This information is intended for those who want to program against the monitor stream.

- `appldata_register_ops()` to register data-gathering modules
- `appldata_unregister_ops()` to undo the registration of data-gathering modules

Both functions receive a pointer to a struct `appldata_ops` as parameter. Additional data-gathering modules that want to plug into the base module must provide this data structure. You can find the definition of the structure and the functions in `arch/s390/appldata/appldata.h` in the Linux source tree.

See “APPLDATA monitor record layout” on page 225 for an example of APPLDATA data records that are to be sent to z/VM.

Tip: Include the timestamp, sync_count_1, and sync_count_2 fields at the beginning of the record as shown for the existing APPLDATA record formats.

Chapter 16. Writing z/VM monitor records

Applications can use the monitor stream application device driver to write z/VM monitor APPLDATA records to the z/VM *MONITOR stream.

For an overview of performance monitoring support, see “Performance monitoring for z/VM guest virtual machines” on page 219.

The monitor stream application device driver interacts with the z/VM monitor APPLDATA facilities for performance monitoring. A better understanding of these z/VM facilities might help when you are using this device driver. See *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for information about monitor APPLDATA.

The monitor stream application device driver provides the following functions:

- An interface to the z/VM monitor stream.
- A means of writing z/VM monitor APPLDATA records.

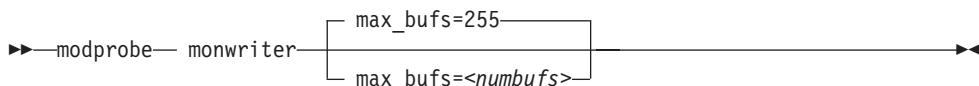
Setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record writer device driver

You must load the monwriter module on Linux and set up your guest virtual machine for monitor records on z/VM.

Module parameters

You can configure the monitor stream application device driver when you are loading the device driver module, monwriter.

Monitor stream application device driver module parameter syntax



where <numbufs> is the maximum number of monitor sample and configuration data buffers that can exist in the Linux guest at one time. The default is 255.

Example

To load the monwriter module and set the maximum number of buffers to 400, use the following command:

```
# modprobe monwriter max_bufs=400
```

Setting up the z/VM guest virtual machine

You must enable your z/VM guest virtual machine to write monitor records and configure the z/VM system to collect these records.

Procedure

Perform these steps:

1. Set this option in the z/VM user directory entry of the virtual machine in which the application that uses this device driver is to run:
 - OPTION APPLMON
2. Issue the following CP commands to have CP collect the respective types of monitor data:
 - MONITOR SAMPLE ENABLE APPLDATA ALL
 - MONITOR EVENT ENABLE APPLDATA ALL

You can log in to the z/VM console to issue the CP commands. These commands must be preceded with #CP. Alternatively, you can use the **vmcp** command for issuing CP commands from your Linux instance.

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about the CP MONITOR command.

Working with the z/VM *MONITOR record writer

The monitor stream application device driver uses the z/VM CP instruction DIAG X'DC' to write to the z/VM monitor stream. Monitor data must be preceded by a data structure, monwrite_hdr.

See *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6179 for more information about the DIAG X'DC' instruction and the different monitor record types (sample, config, event).

The application writes monitor data by passing a monwrite_hdr structure that is followed by monitor data. The only exception is the STOP function, which requires no monitor data. The monwrite_hdr structure, as described in monwriter.h, is filled in by the application. The structure includes the DIAG X'DC' function to be performed, the product identifier, the header length, and the data length.

All records that are written to the z/VM monitor stream begin with a product identifier. This device driver uses the product ID. The product ID is a 16-byte structure of the form ppppppffffnnvrrmm, where:

ppppppp

is a fixed ASCII string, for example, LNXAPPL.

ff is the application number (hexadecimal number). This number can be chosen by the application. You can reduce the chance of conflicts with other applications, by requesting an application number from the IBM z/VM Performance team at

www.ibm.com/vm/perf

n is the record number as specified by the application

vv, rr, and mm

can also be specified by the application. A possible use is to specify version, release, and modification level information, allowing changes to a certain record number when the layout is changed, without changing the record number itself.

The first 7 bytes of the structure (LNXAPPL) are filled in by the device driver when it writes the monitor data record to the CP buffer. The last 9 bytes contain information that is supplied by the application on the `write()` call when writing the data.

The `monwrite_hdr` structure that must be written before any monitor record data is defined as follows:

```
/* the header the app uses in its write() data */
struct monwrite_hdr {
    unsigned char mon_function;
    unsigned short applid;
    unsigned char record_num;
    unsigned short version;
    unsigned short release;
    unsigned short mod_level;
    unsigned short datalen;
    unsigned char hdrlen;
} __attribute__((packed));
```

The following function code values are defined:

```
/* mon_function values */
#define MONWRITE_START_INTERVAL 0x00 /* start interval recording */
#define MONWRITE_STOP_INTERVAL 0x01 /* stop interval or config recording */
#define MONWRITE_GEN_EVENT     0x02 /* generate event record */
#define MONWRITE_START_CONFIG   0x03 /* start configuration recording */
```

Writing data and stopping data writing

Applications use the `open()`, `write()`, and `close()` calls to work with the z/VM monitor stream.

Before an application can write monitor records, it must issue `open()` to open the device driver. Then, the application must issue `write()` calls to start or stop the collection of monitor data and to write any monitor records to buffers that CP can access.

When the application has finished writing monitor data, it must issue `close()` to close the device driver.

Using the `monwrite_hdr` structure

The structure `monwrite_hdr` is used to pass DIAG x'DC' functions and the application-defined product information to the device driver on `write()` calls.

When the application calls `write()`, the data it is writing consists of one or more `monwrite_hdr` structures. Each structure is followed by monitor data. The only exception is the STOP function, which is not followed by data.

The application can write to one or more monitor buffers. A new buffer is created by the device driver for each record with a unique product identifier. To write new data to an existing buffer, an identical `monwrite_hdr` structure must precede the new data on the `write()` call.

The `monwrite_hdr` structure also includes a field for the header length, which is useful for calculating the data offset from the beginning of the header. There is also a field for the data length, which is the length of any monitor data that follows. See `/usr/include/asm/monwriter.h` for the definition of the `monwrite_hdr` structure.

Chapter 17. Reading z/VM monitor records

Monitoring software on Linux can access z/VM guest data through the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver.

z/VM uses the z/VM monitor system service (*MONITOR) to collect monitor records from agents on its guests. z/VM writes the records to a discontiguous saved segment (DCSS). See *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6229 for general information about DCSSs.

The z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver uses IUCV to connect to *MONITOR and accesses the DCSS as a character device.

For an overview of performance monitoring support, see “Performance monitoring for z/VM guest virtual machines” on page 219.

The z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- Read access to the z/VM *MONITOR DCSS.
- Reading *MONITOR records for z/VM.
- Access to *MONITOR records as described on www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ct1blk.html
- Access to the kernel APPLDATA records from the Linux monitor stream (see Chapter 15, “Writing kernel APPLDATA records,” on page 223).

What you should know about the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver

The data that is collected by *MONITOR depends on the setup of the monitor stream service.

The z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver only reads data from the monitor DCSS; it does not control the system service.

z/VM supports only one monitor DCSS. All monitoring software that requires monitor records from z/VM uses the same DCSS to read *MONITOR data. Usually, a DCSS called MONDCSS is already defined and used by existing monitoring software.

If a monitor DCSS is already defined, you must use it. To find out whether a monitor DCSS exists, issue the following CP command from a z/VM guest virtual machine with privilege class E:

```
q monitor
```

The command output also shows the name of the DCSS.

Device node

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 creates a device node for you using udev. The device node is called `/dev/monreader` and is a miscellaneous character device that you can use to access the monitor DCSS.

Further information

- See *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6229 for general information about DCSSs.
- See *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for information about creating a monitor DCSS.
- See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about the CP commands that are used in the context of DCSSs and for controlling the z/VM monitor system service.
- For the layout of the monitor records, go to www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ctlblk.html and click the link to the monitor record format for your z/VM version. Also, see Chapter 15, "Writing kernel APPLDATA records," on page 223.

Setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver

You must set up Linux and the z/VM guest virtual machine for accessing an existing monitor DCSS with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver.

Before you begin

Some of the CP commands you use for setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver require class E authorization.

Setting up the monitor system service and the monitor DCSS on z/VM is beyond the scope of this information. See *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for information about creating a monitor DCSS.

Providing the required user directory entries for your z/VM guest

The z/VM guest where your Linux instance is to run must be permitted to establish an IUCV connection to the z/VM *MONITOR system service.

About this task

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about the CP commands that are used in the context of DCSSs and for controlling the z/VM monitor system service.

Procedure

Ensure that the guest entry in the user directory includes the following statement:
IUCV *MONITOR

If the DCSS is restricted, you also need this statement:

NAMESAVE <dcss>

where `<dcss>` is the name of the DCSS that is used for the monitor records. You can find out the name of an existing monitor DCSS by issuing the following CP command from a z/VM guest virtual machine with privilege class E:

```
q monitor
```

Assuring that the DCSS is addressable for your Linux instance

The DCSS address range must not overlap with the storage of your z/VM guest virtual machine.

Procedure

To find out the start and end address of the DCSS, issue the following CP command from a z/VM guest virtual machine with privilege class E:

```
q nss map
```

The output gives you the start and end addresses of all defined DCSSs in units of 4-kilobyte pages. For example:

```
00: FILE FILENAME FILETYPE MINSIZE BEGPAG ENDPAG TYPE CL #USERS PARMREGS VMGROUP
...
00: 0011 MONDCSS CPDCSS N/A 09000 097FF SC R 00003 N/A N/A
...
```

What to do next

If the DCSS overlaps with the guest storage, follow the procedure in “Avoiding overlaps with your guest storage” on page 251.

Specifying the monitor DCSS name

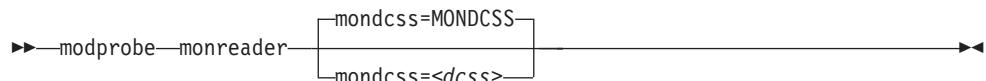
Specify the DCSS name as a module parameter when you load the module.

About this task

By default, the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver assumes that the monitor DCSS on z/VM is called MONDCSS. If you want to use a different DCSS name, you must specify it.

Load the monitor read support module with **modprobe** to assure that any other required modules are also loaded. You need IUCV support if you want to use the monitor read support.

monitor stream support module parameter syntax



where *<dcss>* is the name of the DCSS that z/VM uses for the monitor records.

Example

To load the monitor read support module and specify MYDCSS as the DCSS issue:

```
modprobe monreader mondcss=mydcss
```

Working with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader

You can open the z/VM *MONITOR record character device to read records from it.

This section describes how to work with the monitor read support.

- “Opening and closing the character device”
- “Reading monitor records”

Opening and closing the character device

Only one user can open the character device at any one time. Once you have opened the device, you must close it to make it accessible to other users.

About this task

The open function can fail (return a negative value) with one of the following values for errno:

EBUSY

The device has already been opened by another user.

EIO No IUCV connection to the z/VM MONITOR system service could be established. An error message with an IPUSER SEVER code is printed into syslog. See *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for details about the codes.

Once the device is opened, incoming messages are accepted and account for the message limit. If you keep the device open indefinitely, expect to eventually reach the message limit (with error code EOVERRLOW).

Reading monitor records

You can either read in non-blocking mode with polling, or you can read in blocking mode without polling.

About this task

Reading from the device provides a 12-byte monitor control element (MCE), followed by a set of one or more contiguous monitor records (similar to the output of the CMS utility MONWRITE without the 4 K control blocks). The MCE contains information about:

- The type of the following record set (sample/event data)
- The monitor domains contained within it
- The start and end address of the record set in the monitor DCSS

The start and end address can be used to determine the size of the record set. The end address is the address of the last byte of data. The start address is needed to handle "end-of-frame" records correctly (domain 1, record 13), that is, it can be used to determine the record start offset relative to a 4 K page (frame) boundary.

See "Appendix A: *MONITOR" in *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for a description of the monitor control element layout. For the layout of the monitor records go to www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ctlblk.html and click the link to the monitor record format for your z/VM version. Also see Chapter 15, "Writing kernel APPLDATA records," on page 223.

The layout of the data stream that is provided by the monreader device is as follows:

```
...
<0 byte read>
<first MCE>           \
<first set of records> | ...
...                   | - data set
<last MCE>           |
<last set of records> / 
<0 byte read>
...
...
```

There might be more than one combination of MCE and a corresponding record set within one data set. The end of each data set is indicated by a successful read with a return value of 0 (0 byte read). Received data is not to be considered valid unless a complete record set is read successfully, including the closing 0-Byte read. You are advised to always read the complete set into a user space buffer before processing the data.

When designing a buffer, allow for record sizes up to the size of the entire monitor DCSS, or use dynamic memory allocation. The size of the monitor DCSS will be printed into syslog after loading the module. You can also use the (Class E privileged) CP command **Q NSS MAP** to list all available segments and information about them (see "Assuring that the DCSS is addressable for your Linux instance" on page 235).

Error conditions are indicated by returning a negative value for the number of bytes read. For an error condition, the errno variable can be:

EIO Reply failed. All data that was read since the last successful read with 0 size is not valid. Data is missing. The application must decide whether to continue reading subsequent data or to exit.

EFAULT

Copy to user failed. All data that was read since the last successful read with 0 size is not valid. Data is missing. The application must decide whether to continue reading subsequent data or to exit.

EAGAIN

Occurs on a non-blocking read if there is no data available at the moment. No data is missing or damaged. Retry or use polling for non-blocking reads.

EOVERFLOW

The message limit is reached. The data that was read since the last successful read with 0 size is valid, but subsequent records might be missing. The application must decide whether to continue reading subsequent data or to exit.

Chapter 18. z/VM recording device driver

The z/VM recording device driver enables Linux on z/VM to read from the CP recording services and, thus, act as a z/VM wide control point.

The z/VM recording device driver uses the z/VM CP RECORDING command to collect records and IUCV to transmit them to the Linux instance.

For general information about CP recording system services, see *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6179.

Features

With the z/VM recording device driver, you can read from several CP services and collect records.

In particular, the z/VM recording device driver supports:

- Reading records from the CP error logging service, *LOGREC.
- Reading records from the CP accounting service, *ACCOUNT.
- Reading records from the CP diagnostic service, *SYMPTOM.
- Automatic and explicit record collection (see “Starting and stopping record collection” on page 241).

What you should know about the z/VM recording device driver

You can read records from different recording services, one record at a time.

The z/VM recording device driver is a character device driver that is grouped under the IUCV category of device drivers (see “Device categories” on page 7). There is one device for each recording service. The devices are created for you when the z/VM recording device driver module is loaded.

z/VM recording device nodes

Each recording service has a name that corresponds to the name of the service.

Table 36 summarizes the names:

Table 36. z/VM recording device names

z/VM recording service	Standard device name
*LOGREC	logrec
*ACCOUNT	account
*SYMPTOM	symptom

About records

Records for different services are different in details, but follow the same overall structure.

The read function returns one record at a time. If there is no record, the read function waits until a record becomes available.

Each record begins with a 4-byte field that contains the length of the remaining record. The remaining record contains the binary z/VM data followed by the four bytes X'454f5200' to mark the end of the record. These bytes build the zero-terminated ASCII string "EOR", which is useful as an eye catcher.

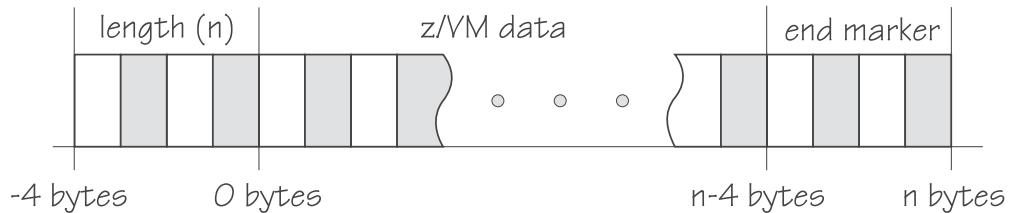


Figure 44. Record structure

Figure 44 illustrates the structure of a complete record as returned by the device. If the buffer assigned to the read function is smaller than the overall record size, multiple reads are required to obtain the complete record.

The format of the z/VM data (*LOGREC) depends on the record type that is described in the common header for error records HDRREC.

For more information about the z/VM record layout, see the *CMS and CP Data Areas and Control Blocks* documentation at
www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ctlblk.html

Setting up the z/VM recording device driver

Before you can collect records, you must authorize your z/VM guest virtual machine and load the device driver module.

Procedure

1. Authorize the z/VM guest virtual machine on which your Linux instance runs to:
 - Use the z/VM CP RECORDING command.
 - Connect to the IUCV services to be used: one or more of *LOGREC, *ACCOUNT, and *SYMPTOM.
2. Load the z/VM recording device driver.

You must load the z/VM recording device driver module before you can work with z/VM recording devices. Load the vmlogrdr module with the **modprobe** command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order:

```
# modprobe vmlogrdr
```

There are no module parameters for the z/VM recording device driver.

Working with z/VM recording devices

Typical tasks that you perform with z/VM recording devices include starting and stopping record collection, purging records, and opening and closing devices.

- “Starting and stopping record collection” on page 241
- “Purging existing records” on page 242
- “Querying the z/VM recording status” on page 242

- “Opening and closing devices” on page 243

Starting and stopping record collection

By default, record collection for a particular z/VM recording service begins when the corresponding device is opened and stops when the device is closed.

About this task

You can use a device's autorecording attribute to be able to open and close a device without also starting or stopping record collection. You can use a device's recording attribute to start and stop record collection regardless of whether the device is opened or not.

You cannot start record collection if a device is open and records already exist. Before you can start record collection for an open device, you must read or purge any existing records for this device (see “Purging existing records” on page 242).

Procedure

To be able to open a device without starting record collection and to close a device without stopping record collection, write 0 to the device's autorecording attribute. To restore the automatic starting and stopping of record collection, write 1 to the device's autorecording attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/autorecording
```

where *<flag>* is either 0 or 1, and *<device>* is one of: logrec, symptom, or account. To explicitly turn on record collection write 1 to the device's recording attribute. To explicitly turn off record collection write 0 to the device's recording attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/recording
```

where *<flag>* is either 0 or 1, and *<device>* is one of: logrec, symptom, or account. You can read both the autorecording and the recording attribute to find the current settings.

Examples

- In this example, first the current setting of the autorecording attribute of the logrec device is checked, then automatic recording is turned off:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autorecording
1
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autorecording
```

- In this example record collection is started explicitly and later stopped for the account device:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
...
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

To confirm whether recording is on or off, read the *recording_status* attribute as described in “Querying the z/VM recording status” on page 242.

Purging existing records

By default, existing records for a particular z/VM recording service are purged automatically when the corresponding device is opened or closed.

About this task

You can use a device's autopurge attribute to prevent records from being purged when a device is opened or closed. You can use a device's purge attribute to purge records for a particular device at any time without having to open or close the device.

Procedure

To be able to open or close a device without purging existing records write 0 to the device's autopurge attribute. To restore automatic purging of existing records, write 1 to the device's autopurge attribute. You can read the autopurge attribute to find the current setting. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/autopurge
```

where *<flag>* is either 0 or 1, and *<device>* is one of: logrec, symptom, or account. To purge existing records for a particular device without opening or closing the device, write 1 to the device's purge attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/purge
```

where *<device>* is one of: logrec, symptom, or account.

Examples

- In this example, the setting of the autopurge attribute for the logrec device is checked first, then automatic purging is switched off:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autopurge  
1  
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autopurge
```

- In this example, the existing records for the symptom device are purged:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/symptom/purge
```

Querying the z/VM recording status

Use the recording_status attribute of the z/VM recording device driver representation in sysfs to query the z/VM recording status.

Example

This example runs the z/VM CP command QUERY RECORDING and returns the complete output of that command. This list does not necessarily have an entry for all three services and there might also be entries for other guests.

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

This command results in output similar to the following example:

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001774	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF	00000000	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

where the lines represent:

- The service
- The recording status
- The number of queued records
- The number of records that result in a message to the operator
- The guest that is or was connected to that service and the status of that connection

A detailed description of the QUERY RECORDING command can be found in the *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175.

Opening and closing devices

You can open, read, and release the device. You cannot open the device multiple times. Each time the device is opened it must be released before it can be opened again.

About this task

You can use a device's autorecord attribute (see “Starting and stopping record collection” on page 241) to enable automatic record collection while a device is open.

You can use a device's autopurge attribute (see “Purging existing records” on page 242) to enable automatic purging of existing records when a device is opened and closed.

Scenario: Connecting to the *ACCOUNT service

A typical sequence of tasks is autorecording, turning autorecording off, purging records, and starting recording.

Procedure

1. Query the status of z/VM recording. As root, issue the following command:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

The results depend on the system, and look similar to the following example:

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001812	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF	00000000	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

2. Open /dev/account with an appropriate application. This action connects the guest to the *ACCOUNT service and starts recording. The entry for *ACCOUNT on guest LINUX31 changes to ACTIVE and ON:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING      COUNT      LMT      USERID      COMMUNICATION
EREP ON        00000000  002      EREP        ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00001812  020      DISKACNT    INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON    00000000  002      OPERSYMP    ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00000000  020      LINUX31     ACTIVE
```

3. Switch autopurge and autorecord off:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/autopurge
```

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/autorecording
```

4. Close the device by ending the application that reads from it and check the recording status. While the connection is INACTIVE, RECORDING is still ON:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING      COUNT      LMT      USERID      COMMUNICATION
EREP ON        00000000  002      EREP        ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00001812  020      DISKACNT    INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON    00000000  002      OPERSYMP    ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00000000  020      LINUX31     INACTIVE
```

5. The next status check shows that some event created records on the *ACCOUNT queue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING      COUNT      LMT      USERID      COMMUNICATION
EREP ON        00000000  002      EREP        ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00001821  020      DISKACNT    INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON    00000000  002      OPERSYMP    ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00000009  020      LINUX31     INACTIVE
```

6. Switch recording off:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING      COUNT      LMT      USERID      COMMUNICATION
EREP ON        00000000  002      EREP        ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00001821  020      DISKACNT    INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON    00000000  002      OPERSYMP    ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF   00000009  020      LINUX31     INACTIVE
```

7. Try to switch it on again, and check whether it worked by checking the recording status:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING      COUNT      LMT      USERID      COMMUNICATION
EREP ON        00000000  002      EREP        ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON    00001821  020      DISKACNT    INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON    00000000  002      OPERSYMP    ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF   00000009  020      LINUX31     INACTIVE
```

Recording did not start, in the message logs you might find a message:

vmlogrdr: recording response: HCP CRC8087I Records are queued for user LINUX31 on the *ACCOUNT recording queue and must be purged or retrieved before recording can be turned on.

This kernel message has priority 'debug' so it might not be written to any of your log files.

8. Now remove all the records on your *ACCOUNT queue either by starting an application that reads them from /dev/account or by explicitly purging them:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/purge
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING      COUNT      LMT      USERID      COMMUNICATION
EREP ON        00000000  002       EREP        ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON     00001821  020       DISKACNT    INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON     00000000  002       OPERSYMP   ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF    00000000  020       LINUX31    INACTIVE
```

9. Now start recording and check status again:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING      COUNT      LMT      USERID      COMMUNICATION
EREP ON        00000000  002       EREP        ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON     00001821  020       DISKACNT    INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON     00000000  002       OPERSYMP   ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON     00000000  020       LINUX31    INACTIVE
```

Chapter 19. z/VM unit record device driver

The z/VM unit record device driver provides Linux on z/VM with access to virtual unit record devices. Unit record devices comprise punch card readers, card punches, and line printers.

Linux access is limited to virtual unit record devices with default device types (2540 for reader and punch, 1403 for printer).

To write Linux files to the virtual punch or printer (that is, to the corresponding spool file queues) or to receive z/VM reader files (for example CONSOLE files) to Linux files, use the **vmur** command that is part of the s390utils RPM (see “**vmur - Work with z/VM spool file queues**” on page 557).

What you should know about the z/VM unit record device driver

The z/VM unit record device driver is compiled as a separate module, **vmur**.

To load the **vmur** module automatically at boot time, see the section on persistent module loading in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*

When the **vmur** module is loaded, it registers a character device. The following device nodes are created for a unit record device when it is set online:

- Reader: /dev/vmrdr-0.0.<device_number>
- Punch: /dev/vmpun-0.0.<device_number>
- Printer: /dev/vmprt-0.0.<device_number>

Working with z/VM unit record devices

After loading the **vmur** module, the required virtual unit record devices must be set online.

Procedure

Set the virtual unit record devices online.

For example, to set the devices with device bus-IDs 0.0.000c, 0.0.000d, and 0.0.000e online, issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.000c-0.0.000e
```

What to do next

If you want to unload the **vmur** module, close all unit record device nodes. Attempting to unload the module while a device node is open results in error message **Module vmur is in use**. You can unload the **vmur** module, for example, by issuing **modprobe -r**.

Serialization is implemented per device; only one process can open a particular device node at any one time.

Chapter 20. z/VM DCSS device driver

The z/VM discontiguous saved segments (DCSS) device driver provides disk-like fixed block access to z/VM discontiguous saved segments.

In particular, the DCSS device driver facilitates implementing a read-write RAM disk that can be shared among multiple Linux instances that run as guests of the same z/VM system. For example, such a RAM disk can provide a shared file system.

For information about DCSS, see *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6229

What you should know about DCSS

The DCSS device names and nodes adhere to a naming scheme. There are different modes and options for mounting a DCSS.

Important: DCSSs occupy spool space. Be sure that you have enough spool space available (multiple times the DCSS size).

DCSS naming scheme

The standard device names are of the form `dcssblk<n>`, where `<n>` is the corresponding minor number.

The first DCSS device that is added is assigned the name `dcssblk0`, the second `dcssblk1`, and so on. When a DCSS device is removed, its device name and corresponding minor number are free and can be reassigned. A DCSS device that is added always receives the lowest free minor number.

DCSS device nodes

User space programs access DCSS devices by device nodes. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 creates standard DCSS device nodes for you.

Standard DCSS device nodes have the form `/dev/<device_name>`, for example:

```
/dev/dcssblk0  
/dev/dcssblk1  
...
```

Accessing a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode

You must access a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode, for example, to create or update the DCSS.

To access a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode at least one of the following conditions must apply:

- The DCSS fits below the maximum definable address space size of the z/VM guest virtual machine.

For large read-only DCSS, you can use suitable guest sizes to restrict exclusive-writable access to a specific z/VM guest virtual machine with a sufficient maximum definable address space size.

- The z/VM user directory entry for the z/VM guest virtual machine includes a NAMESAVE statement for the DCSS. See *z/VM CP Planning and Administration*, SC24-6178 for more information about the NAMESAVE statement.
- The DCSS has been defined with the LOADNSHR operand. See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about the LOADNSHR operand. See “DCSS options” about saving DCSSs with the LOADNSHR operand or with other optional properties.

DCSS options

The z/VM DCSS device driver always saves DCSSs with default properties. Any previously defined options are removed.

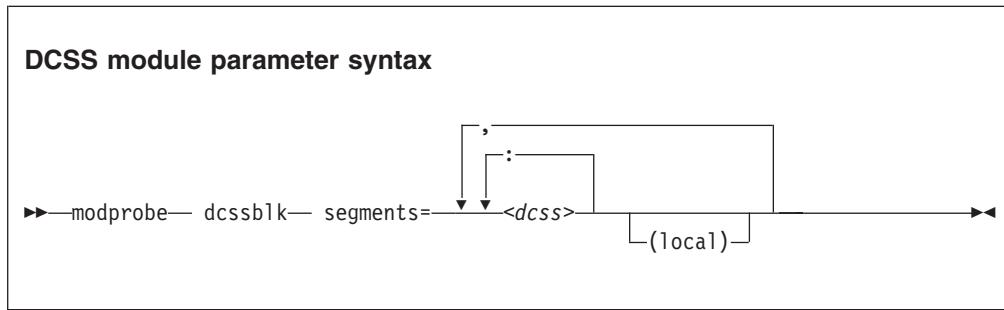
For example, a DCSS that was defined with the LOADNSHR operand loses this property when it is saved with the z/VM DCSS device driver.

To save a DCSS with optional properties, you must unmount the DCSS device, then use the CP DEFSEG and SAVESEG commands to save the DCSS. See “Workaround for saving DCSSs with optional properties” on page 256 for an example.

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about DCSS options.

Setting up the DCSS device driver

Before you can load and use DCSSs, you must load the DCSS block device driver. Use the segments module parameter to load one or more DCSSs when the DCSS device driver is loaded.



<dcss>

specifies the name of a DCSS as defined on the z/VM hypervisor. The specification for **<dcss>** is converted from ASCII to uppercase EBCDIC.

: the colon (:) separates DCSSs within a set of DCSSs to be mapped to a single DCSS device. You can map a set of DCSSs to a single DCSS device if the DCSSs in the set form a contiguous memory space.

You can specify the DCSSs in any order. The name of the first DCSS you specify is used to represent the device under /sys/devices/dcssblk.

(local)

sets the access mode to exclusive-writable after the DCSS or set of DCSSs are loaded.

, the comma (,) separates DCSS devices.

Examples

The following command loads the DCSS device driver and three DCSSs: DCSS1, DCSS2, and DCSS3. DCSS2 is accessed in exclusive-writable mode.

```
# modprobe dcssblk segments="dcss1,dcss2(local),dcss3"
```

The following command loads the DCSS device driver and four DCSSs: DCSS4, DCSS5, DCSS6, and DCSS7. The device driver creates two DCSS devices. One device maps to DCSS4 and the other maps to the combined storage space of DCSS5, DCSS6, and DCSS7 as a single device.

```
# modprobe dcssblk segments="dcss4,dcss5:dcss6:dcss7"
```

Avoiding overlaps with your guest storage

Ensure that your DCSSs do not overlap with the memory of your z/VM guest virtual machine (guest storage).

About this task

To find the start and end addresses of the DCSSs, enter the following CP command; this command requires privilege class E:

```
#cp q nss map
```

the output gives you the start and end addresses of all defined DCSSs in units of 4-kilobyte pages:

```
00: FILE FILENAME FILETYPE MINSIZE BEGPAG ENDPAG TYPE CL #USERS PARMREGS VMGROUP
...
00: 0011 MONDCSS CPDCSS N/A 09000 097FF SC R 00003 N/A N/A
...
```

If all DCSSs that you intend to access are located above the guest storage, you do not need to take any action.

Procedure

If any DCSS that you intend to access with your guest machine overlaps with the guest storage, redefine the guest storage. Define two or more discontiguous storage extents such that the storage gap with the lowest address range covers the address ranges of all your DCSSs.

Note:

- You cannot place a DCSS into a storage gap other than the storage gap with the lowest address range.
- A z/VM guest that was defined with one or more storage gaps cannot access a DCSS above the guest storage.

From a CMS session, use the DEF STORE command to define your guest storage as discontiguous storage extents. Ensure that the storage gap between the extents covers all your DCSSs' address ranges. Issue a command of this form:

```
DEF STOR CONFIG 0.<storage_gap_begin> <storage_gap_end>. <storage_above_gap>
```

where:

<*storage_gap_begin*>

is the lower limit of the storage gap. This limit must be at or below the lowest address of the DCSS with the lowest address range.

Because the lower address ranges are needed for memory management functions, make the lower limit at least 128 MB. The lower limit for the DCSS increases with the total memory size. Although 128 MB is not an exact value, it is an approximation that is sufficient for most cases.

<*storage_gap_end*>

is the upper limit of the storage gap. The upper limit must be above the upper limit of the DCSS with the highest address range.

<*storage_above_gap*>

is the amount of storage above the storage gap. The total guest storage is <*storage_gap_begin*> + <*storage_above_gap*>.

All values can be suffixed with M to provide the values in megabyte. See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for more information about the DEF STORE command.

Example

To make a DCSS that starts at 144 MB and ends at 152 MB accessible to a z/VM guest with 512 MB guest storage:

```
DEF STORE CONFIG 0.140M 160M.372M
```

This specification is one example of how a suitable storage gap can be defined. In this example, the storage gap covers 140 - 160 MB and, thus, the entire DCSS range. The total guest storage is 140 MB + 372 MB = 512 MB.

Working with DCSS devices

Typical tasks for working with DCSS devices include mapping DCSS representations in z/VM and Linux, adding and removing DCSSs, and accessing and updating DCSS contents.

- “Adding a DCSS device” on page 253
- “Listing the DCSSs that map to a particular device” on page 253
- “Finding the minor number for a DCSS device” on page 254
- “Setting the access mode” on page 254
- “Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs” on page 255
- “Workaround for saving DCSSs with optional properties” on page 256
- “Removing a DCSS device” on page 257

Adding a DCSS device

Storage gaps or overlapping storage ranges can prevent you from adding a DCSS.

Before you begin

- You must have set up one or more DCSSs on z/VM and know their names on z/VM.
- If you use the watchdog device driver, turn off the watchdog before adding a DCSS device. Adding a DCSS device can result in a watchdog timeout if the watchdog is active.
- You cannot concurrently access overlapping DCSSs.
- You cannot access a DCSS that overlaps with your z/VM guest virtual storage (see “[Avoiding overlaps with your guest storage](#)” on page 251).
- On z/VM guest virtual machines with one or more storage gaps, you cannot add a DCSS that is above the guest storage.
- On z/VM guest virtual machines with multiple storage gaps, you cannot add a DCSS unless it fits in the storage gap with the lowest address range.

Procedure

To add a DCSS device, enter a command of this form:

```
# echo <dcss-list> > /sys/devices/dcddb1k/add
```

<dcss-list>

the name, as defined on z/VM, of a single DCSS or a colon (:) separated list of names of DCSSs to be mapped to a single DCSS device. You can map a set of DCSSs to a single DCSS device if the DCSSs in the set form a contiguous memory space. You can specify the DCSSs in any order. The name of the first DCSS you specify is used to represent the device under /sys/devices/dcddb1k.

Examples

To add a DCSS called “MYDCSS” enter:

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcddb1k/add
```

To add three contiguous DCSSs “MYDCSS1”, “MYDCSS2”, and “MYDCSS3” as a single device, enter:

```
# echo MYDCSS2:MYDCSS1:MYDCSS3 > /sys/devices/dcddb1k/add
```

In sysfs, the resulting device is represented as /sys/devices/dcddb1k/MYDCSS2.

Listing the DCSSs that map to a particular device

Read the seglist sysfs attribute to find out how DCSS devices in Linux map to DCSSs as defined in z/VM.

Procedure

To list the DCSSs that map to a DCSS device, issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcddb1k/<dcss-name>/seglist
```

where *<dcss-name>* is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

Examples

In this example, DCSS device MYDCSS maps to a single DCSS, “MYDCSS”.

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcsselk/MYDCSS/seglist  
MYDCSS
```

In this example, DCSS device MYDCSS2 maps to three contiguous DCSSs, “MYDCSS1”, “MYDCSS2”, and “MYDCSS3”.

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcsselk/MYDCSS2/seglist  
MYDCSS2  
MYDCSS1  
MYDCSS3
```

Finding the minor number for a DCSS device

When you add a DCSS device, a minor number is assigned to it.

About this task

Unless you use dynamically created device nodes as provided by udev, you might need to know the minor device number that was assigned to the DCSS (see “DCSS naming scheme” on page 249).

When you add a DCSS device, a directory of this form is created in sysfs:
/sys/devices/dcsselk/<dcss-name>

where *<dcss-name>* is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

This directory contains a symbolic link, block, that helps you to find out the device name and minor number. The link is of the form *.../.../.../block/dcsselk<n>*, where *dcsselk<n>* is the device name and *<n>* is the minor number.

Example

To find out the minor number that is assigned to a DCSS device that is represented by the directory */sys/devices/dcsselk/MYDCSS* issue:

```
# readlink /sys/devices/dcsselk/MYDCSS/block  
.../.../block/dcsselk0
```

In the example, the assigned minor number is 0.

Setting the access mode

You might want to access the DCSS device with write access to change the content of the DCSS or set of DCSSs that map to the device.

About this task

There are two possible write access modes to the DCSS device:

shared

In the shared mode, changes to DCSSs are immediately visible to all z/VM guests that access them. Shared is the default.

Note: Writing to a shared DCSS device bears the same risks as writing to a shared disk.

exclusive-writable

In the exclusive-writable mode you write to private copies of DCSSs. A private copy is writable, even if the original DCSS is read-only. Changes that you make to a private copy are invisible to other guests until you save the changes (see “Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs”).

After saving the changes to a DCSS, all guests that open the DCSS access the changed copy. z/VM retains a copy of the original DCSS for those guests that continue accessing it, until the last guest stops using it.

To access a DCSS in the exclusive-writable mode the maximum definable storage size of your z/VM virtual machine must be above the upper limit of the DCSS. Alternatively, suitable authorizations must be in place (see “Accessing a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode” on page 249).

For either access mode the changes are volatile until they are saved (see “Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs”).

Procedure

Set the access mode before you open the DCSS device. To set the access mode to exclusive-writable, set the DCSS device's shared attribute to 0. To reset the access mode to shared set the DCSS device's shared attribute to 1.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/devices/dcssblk/<dcss-name>/shared
```

where <dcss-name> is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device. You can read the shared attribute to find out the current access mode.

Example

To find out the current access mode of a DCSS device represented by the DCSS name “MYDCSS”:

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/shared  
1
```

1 means that the current access mode is shared. To set the access mode to exclusive-writable issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/shared
```

Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs

Use the save sysfs attribute to save DCSSs that were defined without optional properties.

Before you begin

- Saving a DCSS as described in this section results in a default DCSS, without optional properties. For DCSSs that were defined with options (see “DCSS options” on page 250), see “Workaround for saving DCSSs with optional properties.”
- If you use the watchdog device driver, turn off the watchdog before saving updates to DCSSs. Saving updates to DCSSs can result in a watchdog timeout if the watchdog is active.
- Do not place save requests before you have accessed the DCSS device.

Procedure

To place a request for saving changes permanently on the spool disk write 1 to the DCSS device's save attribute. If a set of DCSSs has been mapped to the DCSS device, the save request applies to all DCSSs in the set.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/<dcss-name>/save
```

where *<dcss-name>* is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

Saving is delayed until you close the device.

You can check if a save request is waiting to be performed by reading the contents of the save attribute.

You can cancel a save request by writing 0 to the save attribute.

Example

To check if a save request exists for a DCSS device that is represented by the DCSS name “MYDCSS”:

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/save  
0
```

The 0 means that no save request exists. To place a save request issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/save
```

To purge an existing save request issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/save
```

Workaround for saving DCSSs with optional properties

If you need a DCSS that is defined with special options, you must use a workaround to save the DCSSs.

Before you begin

Important: This section applies to DCSSs with special options only. The workaround in this section is error-prone and requires utmost care. Erroneous parameter values for the described CP commands can render a DCSS unusable. Use this workaround only if you really need a DCSS with special options.

Procedure

Perform the following steps to save a DCSS with optional properties:

1. Unmount the DCSS.

Example: Enter this command to unmount a DCSS with the device node /dev/dcsselk0:

```
# umount /dev/dcsselk0
```

2. Use the CP DEFSEG command to newly define the DCSS with the required properties.

Example: Enter this command to newly define a DCSS, mydcss, with the range 80000-9ffff, segment type sr, and the loadnshr operand:

```
# vmcp defseg mydcss 80000-9ffff sr loadnshr
```

Note: If your DCSS device maps to multiple DCSSs as defined to z/VM, you must perform this step for each DCSS. Be sure to specify the command correctly with the correct address ranges and segment types. Incorrect specifications can render the DCSS unusable.

3. Use the CP SAVESEG command to save the DCSS.

Example: Enter this command to save a DCSS mydcss:

```
# vmcp saveseg mydcss
```

Note: If your DCSS device maps to multiple DCSSs as defined to z/VM, you must perform this step for each DCSS. Omitting this step for individual DCSSs can render the DCSS device unusable.

Reference

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for details about the DEFSEG and SAVESEG CP commands.

Removing a DCSS device

Use the remove sysfs attribute to remove a DCSS from Linux.

Before you begin

A DCSS device can only be removed when it is not in use.

Procedure

You can remove the DCSS or set of DCSSs that are represented by a DCSS device from your Linux system by issuing a command of this form:

```
# echo <dcss-name> > /sys/devices/dcsselk/remove
```

where <dcss-name> is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

Example

To remove a DCSS device that is represented by the DCSS name “MYDCSS” issue:

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcddb1k/remove
```

What to do next

If you have created your own device nodes, you can keep the nodes for reuse. Be aware that the major number of the device might change when you unload and reload the DCSS device driver. When the major number of your device has changed, existing nodes become unusable.

Scenario: Changing the contents of a DCSS

Before you can change the contents of a DCSS, you must add the DCSS to Linux, access it in a writable mode, and mount the file system on it.

About this task

The scenario that follows is based on these assumptions:

- The Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest with class E user privileges.
- A DCSS is set up and can be accessed in exclusive-writable mode by the Linux instance.
- The DCSS does not overlap with the guest's main storage.
- There is only a single DCSS named “MYDCSS”.
- The DCSS block device driver is set up and ready to be used.

The description in this scenario can readily be extended to changing the content of a set of DCSSs that form a contiguous memory space. The only change to the procedure would be mapping the DCSSs in the set to a single DCSS device in step 1. The assumptions about the set of DCSSs would be:

- The contiguous memory space that is formed by the set does not overlap with the guest storage.
- Only the DCSSs in the set are added to the Linux instance.

Procedure

Perform the following steps to change the contents of a DCSS:

1. Add the DCSS to the block device driver.

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcddb1k/add
```

2. Ensure that there is a device node for the DCSS block device. If it is not created for you, for example by udev, create it yourself.
 - a. Find out the major number that is used for DCSS block devices. Read /proc/devices:

```
# cat /proc/devices
...
Block devices
...
254 dcddb1k
...
```

The major number in the example is 254.

- b. Find out the minor number that is used for MYDCSS. If MYDCSS is the first DCSS to be added, the minor number is 0. To be sure, you can read a symbolic link that is created when the DCSS is added.

```
# readlink /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/block  
.../.../block/dcssblk0
```

The trailing 0 in the standard device name dcssblk0 indicates that the minor number is, indeed, 0.

- c. Create the node with the **mknod** command:

```
# mknod /dev/dcssblk0 b 254 0
```

3. Set the access mode to exclusive-write.

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/shared
```

4. Mount the file system in the DCSS on a spare mount point.

```
# mount /dev/dcssblk0 /mnt
```

5. Update the data in the DCSS.

6. Create a save request to save the changes.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/save
```

7. Unmount the file system.

```
# umount /mnt
```

The changes to the DCSS are now saved. When the last z/VM guest stops accessing the old version of the DCSS, the old version is discarded. Each guest that opens the DCSS accesses the updated copy.

8. Remove the device.

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcssblk/remove
```

9. Optional: If you have created your own device node, you can clean it up.

```
# rm -f /dev/dcssblk0
```

Chapter 21. Watchdog device driver

The watchdog device driver provides Linux watchdog applications with access to the z/VM watchdog timer.

The watchdog device driver provides the following features:

- Access to the z/VM watchdog timer.
- An API for watchdog applications (see “External programming interfaces” on page 263).

Watchdog applications can be used to set up automated restart mechanisms for Linux on z/VM. Watchdog-based restart mechanisms are an alternative to a networked heartbeat with STONITH.

A watchdog application that communicates directly with the z/VM control program (CP) does not require a third operating system to monitor a heartbeat. With the watchdog device driver, you can set up a restart mechanism of this form.

What you should know about the watchdog device driver

The watchdog function comprises the watchdog timer that runs on z/VM and a watchdog application that runs on the Linux instance being controlled.

While the Linux instance operates satisfactorily, the watchdog application reports a positive status to the z/VM watchdog timer at regular intervals. The watchdog application uses a character device, `/dev/watchdog`, to pass these status reports to the z/VM timer (Figure 45).

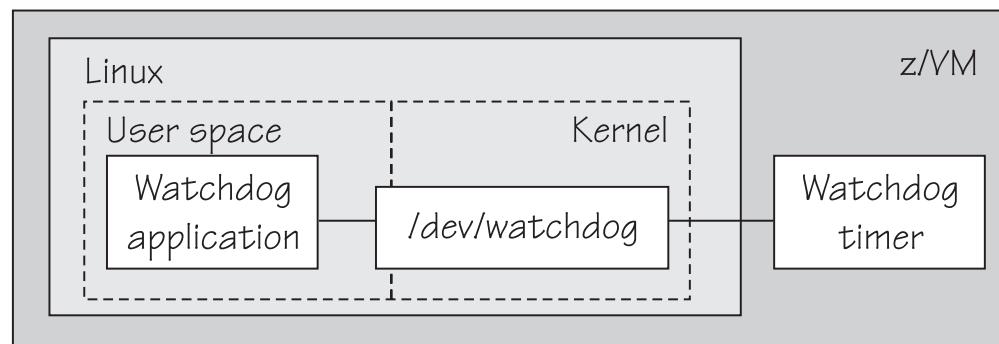


Figure 45. Watchdog application and timer

The watchdog application typically derives its status by monitoring, critical network connections, file systems, and processes on the Linux instance. If a specified time elapses without a positive report being received by the watchdog timer, the watchdog timer assumes that the Linux instance is in an error state. The watchdog timer then triggers a predefined action from CP against the Linux instance. For example, Linux might be shut down or rebooted, or a system dump might be initiated. For information about setting the default timer and performing other actions, see “External programming interfaces” on page 263.

Note: Loading or saving a DCSS can take a long time during which the virtual machine does not respond, depending on the size of the DCSS. As a result, a watchdog might time out and restart the guest. You are advised not to use the watchdog in combination with loading or saving DCSSs.

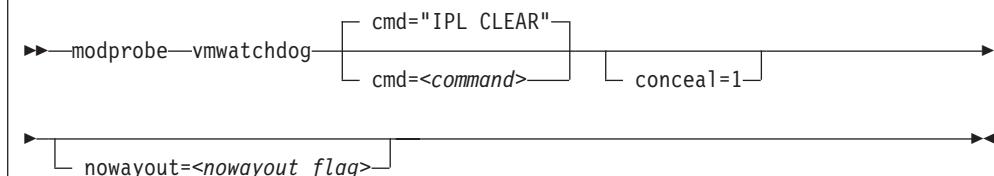
You can find an example watchdog application at
www.ibiblio.org/pub/linux/system/daemons/watchdog/!INDEX.html

See also the generic watchdog documentation in the Linux kernel source tree under Documentation/watchdog.

Loading and configuring the watchdog device driver

You configure the watchdog device driver when you load the module.

watchdog module parameter syntax



where:

<command>

is the command to be issued by CP if the Linux instance fails. The default “IPL” reboots the guest with the previous boot parameters. Instead of rebooting the same system, you could also boot from an alternate IPL device (for example, a dump device).

The specification for *<command>*:

- Must be a single valid CP command
- Can be up to 230 characters long
- Must be enclosed by quotation marks if it contains any blanks or newline characters
- Is converted from ASCII to uppercase EBCDIC

For details about CP commands see *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference, SC24-6175*.

You can write to `/sys/module/vmwatchdog/parameters/cmd` to replace the command you specify when loading the module. Through this sysfs interface, you can also specify multiple commands to be issued, see Examples for more details.

vmwatchdog.conceal=1

enables the protected application environment where the guest is protected from unexpectedly entering CP READ. Do not enable the protected environment for guests with multiprocessor configurations. The protected application facility supports only virtual uniprocessor systems.

For details, see the “SET CONCEAL” section of *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175.

`<nwayout_flag>`

determines what happens when the watchdog device node is closed by the watchdog application.

If the flag is set to 1 (default), the z/VM watchdog timer keeps running and triggers the command that is specified for `<command>` if no positive status report is received within the specified time interval. If the character "V" is written to the device and the flag is set to 0, the z/VM watchdog timer is stopped and the Linux instance continues without the watchdog support.

Examples

The following command loads the watchdog module and determines that, on failure, the Linux instance is to be IPLed from a device with devno 0xb1a0. The protected application environment is not enabled. The watchdog application can close the watchdog device node after writing "V" to it. As a result the watchdog timer becomes ineffective and does not IPL the guest.

```
modprobe vmwatchdog cmd="ipl b1a0" nwayout=0
```

The following example shows how to specify multiple commands to be issued.

```
/usr/bin/printf "cmd1\ncmd2\ncmd3" > /sys/module/vmwatchdog/parameters/cmd
```

Use the **printf** version at `/usr/bin/printf`. The built-in **printf** command from bash might not process the newline characters as intended.

To verify that your commands have been accepted, issue:

```
cat /sys/module/vmwatchdog/parameters/cmd
cmd1
cmd2
cmd3
```

You cannot specify multiple commands as module parameters while loading the module.

External programming interfaces

There is an API for applications that work with the watchdog device driver.

Application programmers: This information is intended for programmers who want to write watchdog applications that work with the watchdog device driver.

For information about the API see the following files in the Linux source tree:

- Documentation/watchdog/watchdog-api.txt
- include/linux/watchdog.h

The default watchdog timeout is 60 seconds, the minimum timeout that can be set through the IOCTL SETTIMEOUT is 15 seconds.

The following IOCTLs are supported:

- WDIOC_GETSUPPORT
- WDIOC_SETOPTIONS (WDIOS_DISABLECARD, WDIOS_ENABLECARD)
- WDIOC_GETTIMEOUT
- WDIOC_SETTIMEOUT
- WDIOC_KEEPALIVE

Chapter 22. z/VM CP interface device driver

Using the z/VM CP interface device driver (vmcp), you can send control program (CP) commands to the z/VM hypervisor and display the response.

The vmcp device driver works only for Linux on z/VM.

What you should know about the z/VM CP interface

The z/VM CP interface driver (vmcp) uses the CP diagnose X'08' to send commands to CP and to receive responses. The behavior is similar but not identical to #CP on a 3270 or 3215 console.

Using the z/VM CP interface

There are two ways of using the z/VM CP interface device driver:

- Through the /dev/vmcp device node
- Through a user space tool (see “[vmcp - Send CP commands to the z/VM hypervisor](#)” on page 555)

You must load the vmcp module before you can use vmcp. If your Linux guest runs under z/VM, you can configure the startup scripts to load the vmcp kernel module automatically during boot. See the section on persistent module loading in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide* for information about how to do this.

The vmcp device driver works only for Linux on z/VM and cannot be loaded if the Linux system runs in an LPAR.

Differences between vmcp and a 3270 or 3215 console

Most CP commands behave identically with vmcp and on a 3270 or 3215 console. However, some commands show a different behavior:

- Diagnose X'08' (see *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6179) requires you to specify a response buffer with the command. Because the response size is not known in advance, the default response buffer of vmcp might be too small and the response truncated.
- On a 3270 or 3215 console, the CP command is executed on virtual CPU 0. The vmcp device driver uses the CPU that is scheduled by the Linux kernel. For CP commands that depend on the CPU number (like trace), specify the CPU, for example: cpu 3 trace count.
- Some CP commands do not return specific error or status messages through diagnose X'08'. These messages are only returned on a 3270 or 3215 console. For example, the command vmcp link user1 1234 123 mw might return the message DASD 123 LINKED R/W in a 3270 or 3215 console. This message is not displayed if the CP command is issued with vmcp. For details, see the z/VM help system or *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175.

Using the device node

You can send a command to z/VM CP by writing to the vmcp device node.

Observe the following rules for writing to the device node:

- Omit the newline character at the end of the command string. For example, use `echo -n` if you are writing directly from a terminal session.
- Write the command in the same case as required on z/VM.
- Escape characters that need escaping in the environment where you issue the command.

Example

The following command attaches a device to your z/VM guest virtual machine. The asterisk (*) is escaped to prevent the command shell from interpreting it.

```
# echo -n ATTACH 1234 \* > /dev/vmcp
```

Application programmers

You can also use the vmcp device node directly from an application by using open, write (to issue the command), read (to get the response), ioctl (to get and set status), and close. The following ioctls are supported:

Table 37. The vmcp ioctls

Name	Code definition	Description
VMCP_GETCODE	_IOR (0x10, 1, int)	Queries the return code of z/VM.
VMCP_SETBUF	_IOW(0x10, 2, int)	Sets the buffer size (the device driver has a default of 4 KB; vmcp calls this ioctl to set it to 8 KB instead).
VMCP_GETSIZE	_IOR(0x10, 3, int)	Queries the size of the response.

Chapter 23. z/VM special messages uevent support

The smsgiucv_app kernel device driver receives z/VM CP special messages (SMSG) and delivers these messages to user space as udev events (uevents).

The device driver receives only messages that start with APP. The generated uevents contain the message sender and content as environment variables (see Figure 46).

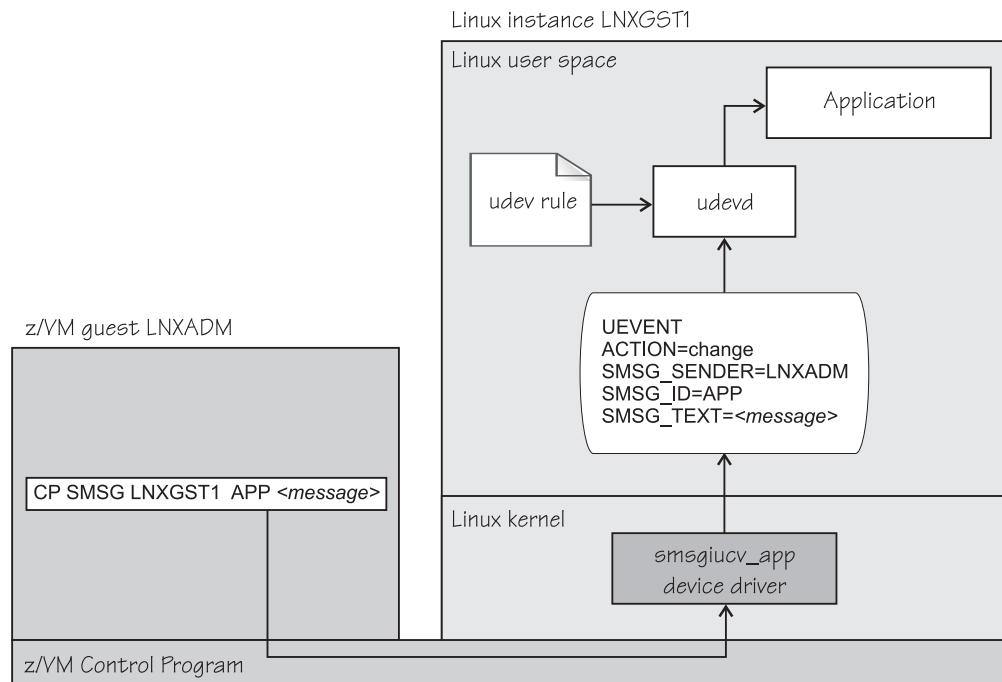


Figure 46. CP special messages as uevents in user space

You can restrict the received special messages to a particular z/VM user ID. CP special messages are discarded if the specified sender does not match the sender of the CP special message.

Setting up the CP special message device driver

Configure the CP special message device driver when you load the device driver module.

The z/VM user ID does not require special authorizations to receive CP special messages. CP special messages can be issued from the local z/VM guest virtual machine or from other guest virtual machines. You can issue special messages from Linux or from a CMS or CP session.

Load the device driver module with the **modprobe** command.

smsgiucv_app syntax

```
►►modprobe smsgiucv_app [sender=<user_ID>]►►
```

Where:

sender = <*user_ID*>

permits CP special messages from the specified z/VM user ID only. CP special messages are discarded if the specified sender does not match the sender of the CP special message. If the **sender=** option is empty or not set, CP special messages are accepted from any z/VM user ID.

Lowercase characters are converted to uppercase.

To receive messages from several user IDs leave the `sender=` parameter empty, or do not specify it, and then filter with udev rules (see “Example udev rule” on page 270).

To load the `smsgiucv_app` module automatically at boot time, see the section on persistent module loading in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

Working with CP special messages

You might have to send, access, or respond to CP special messages.

- “Sending CP special messages”
 - “Accessing CP special messages through uevent environment variables” on page 269
 - “Writing udev rules for handling CP special messages” on page 269

Sending CP special messages

Issue a CP SMSG command from a CP or CMS session or from Linux to send a CP special message.

Procedure

To send a CP special message to LXGUEST1 from Linux, enter a command of the following form:

To send a CP special message to LXGUEST1, enter the following command from a CP or CMS session:

#CP SMSG LXGUEST1 APP <message text>

The special messages cause uevents to be generated. See “Writing udev rules for handling CP special messages” on page 269 for information about handling the uevents.

Accessing CP special messages through uevent environment variables

A uevent for a CP special message contains environment variables that you can use to access the message.

SMSG_ID

Specifies the message prefix. The SMSG_ID environment variable is always set to APP, which is the prefix that is assigned to the smsgiucv_app device driver.

SMSG_SENDER

Specifies the z/VM user ID that sent the CP special message.

Use SMSG_SENDER in udev rules for filtering the z/VM user ID if you want to accept CP special messages from different senders. All alphabetic characters in the z/VM user ID are uppercase characters.

SMSG_TEXT

Contains the message text of the CP special message. The APP prefix and leading white spaces are removed.

Writing udev rules for handling CP special messages

When using the CP special messages device driver, CP special messages trigger uevents.

change events

The smsgiucv_app device driver generates change uevents for each CP special message that is received.

For example, the special message:

```
#CP SMSG LXQUEST1 APP THIS IS A TEST MESSAGE
```

might trigger the following uevent:

```
UEVENT[1263487666.708881] change /devices/iucv/smssgiucv_app (iucv)
ACTION=change
DEVPATH=/devices/iucv/smssgiucv_app
SUBSYSTEM=iucv
SMSG_SENDER=MAINT
SMSG_ID=APP
SMSG_TEXT=THIS IS A TEST MESSAGE
DRIVER=SMSGIUCV
SEQNUM=1493
```

add and remove events

In addition to the change event for received CP special messages, generic add and remove events are generated when the module is loaded or unloaded, for example:

```
UEVENT[1263487583.511146] add /module/smssgiucv_app (module)
ACTION=add
DEVPATH=/module/smssgiucv_app
SUBSYSTEM=module
SEQNUM=1487
```

```
UEVENT[1263487583.514622] add /devices/iucv/smssgiucv_app (iucv)
ACTION=add
DEVPATH=/devices/iucv/smssgiucv_app
SUBSYSTEM=iucv
DRIVER=SMSGIUCV
SEQNUM=1488
```

```

UEVENT[1263487628.955149] remove /devices/iucv/smsgiucv_app (iucv)
ACTION=remove
DEVPATH=/devices/iucv/smsgiucv_app
SUBSYSTEM=iucv
SEQNUM=1489

UEVENT[1263487628.957082] remove /module/smsgiucv_app (module)
ACTION=remove
DEVPATH=/module/smsgiucv_app
SUBSYSTEM=module
SEQNUM=1490

```

With the information from the uevents, you can create custom udev rules to trigger actions that depend on the settings of the `SMSG_*` environment variables (see “Accessing CP special messages through uevent environment variables” on page 269).

For your udev rules, use the `add` and `remove` uevents to initialize and clean up resources. To handle CP special messages, write udev rules that match change uevents. For more information about writing udev rules, see the `udev` man page.

Example udev rule

The udev rules that process CP special messages identify particular messages and define one or more specific actions as a response.

The following example shows how to process CP special messages by using udev rules. The example contains rules for actions, one for all senders and one for the MAINT, OPERATOR, and LNXADM senders only.

The rules are contained in a block that matches uevents from the `smsgiucv_app` device driver. If there is no match, processing ends:

```

#
# Sample udev rules for processing CP special messages.
#
#
DEVPATH!="*/smsgiucv_app", GOTO="smsgiucv_app_end"

# ----- Rules for CP messages go here -----

LABEL="smsgiucv_app_end"

```

The example first uses the `vmur` command to load the `vmur` kernel module. Then the z/VM virtual punch device, `000d`, is activated.

```

# --- Initialization ---

# load vmur and set the virtual punch device online
SUBSYSTEM=="module", ACTION=="add", RUN+="/sbin/modprobe --quiet vmur"
SUBSYSTEM=="module", ACTION=="add", RUN+="/sbin/chccwdev -e 000d"

```

The following rule accepts messages from all senders. The message text must match the string UNAME. If it does, the output of the **uname** command (the node name and kernel version of the Linux instance) is sent back to the sender.

```
# --- Rules for all senders ----

# UNAME: tell the sender which kernel is running
ACTION=="change", ENV{SMSG_TEXT}=="UNAME", \
    PROGRAM="/bin/uname -n -r", \
    RUN+="/sbin/vmcp msg $env{SMSG_SENDER} '$result'"
```

In the following example block rules are defined to accept messages from certain senders only. If no sender matches, processing ends. The message text must match the string DMESG. If it does, the environment variable PATH is set and the output of the **dmesg** command is sent into the z/VM reader of the sender. The name of the spool file is LINUX.DMESG.

```
# --- Special rules available for particular z/VM user IDs ---

ENV{SMSG_SENDER}!="MAINT|OPERATOR|LNXADM", GOTO="smsgiucv_app_end"

# DMESG: punch dmesg output to sender
ACTION=="change", ENV{SMSG_TEXT}=="DMESG", \
    ENV{PATH}="/bin:/sbin:/usr/bin:/usr/sbin", \
    RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'dmesg |fold -s -w 74 |vmur punch -r -t -N LINUX.DMESG -u $env{SMSG_SENDER}'"
```

Chapter 24. Cooperative memory management

Cooperative memory management (CMM, or "cmm1") can reduce the memory that is available to an instance of Linux on z/VM.

CMM allocates pages to page pools that are not available to Linux. A diagnose code indicates to z/VM that the pages in the page pools are out of use. z/VM can then immediately reuse these pages for other z/VM guests.

To set up CMM, you must perform these tasks:

1. Load the cmm module.
2. Set up a resource management tool that controls the page pool. This tool can be the z/VM resource monitor (VMRM) or a third-party systems management tool.

This chapter describes how to set up CMM. For background information about CMM, see “Cooperative memory management background” on page 221.

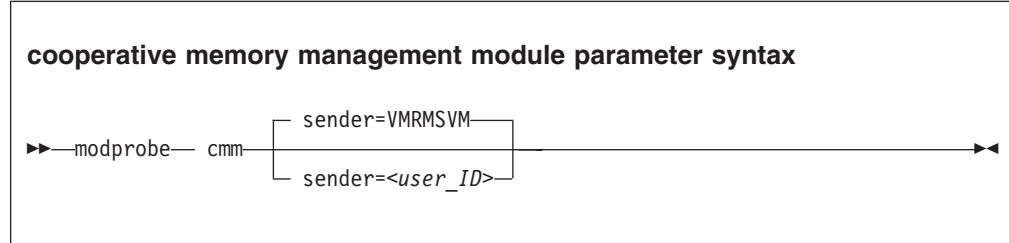
You can also use the **cpup1ugd** command to define rules for cmm behavior, see “Basic configuration file for memory control” on page 457.

For information about setting up the external resource manager, see the chapter on VMRM in *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208.

Setting up cooperative memory management

Set up Linux on z/VM to participate in the cooperative memory management by loading the cooperative memory management support module, cmm.

Use the **modprobe** command to load the module. See the **modprobe** man page for command details.



where *<user_ID>* specifies the z/VM guest virtual machine that is permitted to send messages to the module through the special messages interface. The default z/VM user ID is VMRMSVM, which is the default for the VMRM service machine.

To load the cmm module automatically at boot time, see the section on persistent module loading in *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*.

Example

To load the cooperative memory management module and allow the z/VM guest virtual machine TESTID to send messages:

```
# modprobe cmm sender=TESTID
```

Working with cooperative memory management

After it has been set up, CMM works through the resource manager. No further actions are necessary. You might want to read the sizes of the page pools for diagnostic purposes.

To reduce the Linux memory size, CMM allocates pages to page pools that make the pages unusable to Linux. There are two such page pools, a static pool and a timed pool. You can use the procfs interface to read the sizes of the page pools.

Reading the size of the static page pool

You can read the current size of the static page pool from procfs.

Procedure

Issue this command:

```
# cat /proc/sys/vm/cmm_pages
```

Reading the size of the timed page pool

You can read the current size of the timed page pool from procfs.

Procedure

Issue this command:

```
# cat /proc/sys/vm/cmm_timed_pages
```

Part 5. System resources

Chapter 25. Managing CPUs	277	Working with large page support	288
CPU capability change	277		
Activating standby CPUs and deactivating operating CPUs	277		
Examining the CPU topology	278		
CPU polarization	279		
Chapter 26. Managing hotplug memory	281		
What you should know about memory hotplug	281		
Setting up hotplug memory	282		
Performing memory management tasks	282		
Chapter 27. Large page support	287		
Setting up large page support	287		
Chapter 28. S/390 hypervisor file system	291		
Directory structure	291		
Setting up the S/390 hypervisor file system	294		
Working with the S/390 hypervisor file system	294		
Chapter 29. ETR- and STP-based clock synchronization	297		
Enabling clock synchronization when booting	297		
Enabling and disabling clock synchronization	299		
Chapter 30. Identifying the System z hardware	301		

These device drivers and features help you to manage the resources of your real or virtual hardware.

Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at
ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html

Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at
https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

Chapter 25. Managing CPUs

You can read CPU capability, activate standby CPUs, and examine the CPU topology by using the CPU attributes in sysfs.

The attributes that govern CPUs are available in sysfs under:
`/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>`

where `<N>` is the number of the CPU.

In addition to the sysfs interface described in this information, you can also use **lscpu** and **chcpu** to manage CPUs. These commands are part of the util-linux package. For details, see the man pages for these commands.

CPU capability change

When the CPUs of a mainframe heat or cool, the Linux kernel generates a uevent for all affected online CPUs.

You can read the CPU capability from the Capability and, if present, Secondary Capability fields in `/proc/sysinfo`.

The capability value is an unsigned integer as defined in the system information block (SYSIB) 1.2.2 (see *z/Architecture Principles of Operation*, SA22-7832). A smaller value indicates a proportionally greater CPU capacity. Beyond that, there is no formal description of the algorithm that is used to generate this value. The value is used as an indication of the capability of the CPU relative to the capability of other CPU models.

Activating standby CPUs and deactivating operating CPUs

A CPU on an LPAR can be in a configured, standby, or reserved state. You can change the state of standby CPUs to configured state and vice versa.

Before you begin

- To put a CPU into standby state, the underlying hypervisor must support this operation.
- Daemon processes like **cpuplugd** can change the state of any CPU at any time. Such changes can interfere with manual changes.

About this task

A CPU on an LPAR can be in a configured, standby, or reserved state. Under Linux, on IPL only CPUs that are in a configured state are brought online and used. The kernel operates only with configured CPUs. You can change the state of standby CPUs to configured state and vice versa.

Reserved CPUs cannot be used without manual intervention and therefore are not recognized.

To configure or deconfigure a CPU, its physical address must be known. Because the sysfs interface is used to configure a CPU by its sysfs entry, a static mapping of

physical to logical CPU numbers is needed. The physical address of a CPU can be found in the `address` attribute of a logical CPU:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/address
```

For example:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu0/address
0
```

Procedure

- To activate a standby CPU:
 1. Only present CPUs have a sysfs entry. If you add a CPU to the system, the kernel automatically detects it. You can force the detection of a CPU by using the `rescan` attribute. To rescan, write any string to the `rescan` attribute, for example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/rescan
```

When new CPUs are found, new sysfs entries are created. The new CPUs are in the configured or standby state, depending on how the hypervisor added them.

2. Change the state of the CPU to configured by writing 1 to its `configure` attribute.

```
echo 1 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/configure
```

where `<X>` is any CPU in standby state.

3. Bring the CPU online by writing 1 to its `online` attribute.

```
echo 1 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/online
```

- To deactivate an operating CPU:

1. Bring the CPU offline by writing 0 to its `online` attribute.

```
echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/online
```

2. Change the state of the CPU to standby by writing 0 to its `configure` attribute.

```
echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/configure
```

Examining the CPU topology

If supported by your hardware, an interface is available that you can use to get information about the CPU topology of an LPAR.

About this task

Use this information, for example, to optimize the Linux scheduler, which bases its decisions on which process gets scheduled to which CPU. Depending on the workload, this optimization might increase cache hits and therefore overall performance.

Note: By default CPU topology support is enabled in the Linux kernel. If it is not suitable for your workload, disable the support by specifying the kernel parameter `topology=off` in your `parmfile` or `zipl.conf`. See “Specifying kernel parameters” on page 21 for information about specifying kernel parameters.

The common code attributes `core_siblings` and `core_id` are visible for all online CPUs:

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/topology/core_siblings  
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/topology/core_id
```

The `core_siblings` attribute contains a CPU mask that indicates which CPUs, including the current one, are close to each other. If a machine reconfiguration causes the CPU topology to change, change uevents are created for each online CPU. All CPUs that have the same `core_siblings` CPU mask have the same `core_id`.

If the kernel also supports standby CPU activation and deactivation (see “Activating standby CPUs and deactivating operating CPUs” on page 277), the `core_siblings` CPU mask also contains the CPUs that are in a configured, but offline state. Updating the mask after a reconfiguration might take up to a minute.

With zEnterprise, the book topology level was added above the core level. The `book_siblings` and `book_id` attributes describe which CPUs on different cores belong to the same book.

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu1/topology/book_siblings  
00000000,0000001f  
# cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu1/topology/book_id  
2
```

The CPU masks contained in the `book_siblings` attribute are always a superset of the `core_siblings` attribute. All CPUs that have the same `book_siblings` CPU mask have the same `book_id`. If there are several books present in a configuration, the `core_ids` are only unique per book.

CPU polarization

You can optimize the operation of a vertical SMP environment by adjusting the SMP factor based on the workload demands.

About this task

During peak workloads the operating system might operate on a large n-way, with all CPUs busy, whereas at other times it might fall back to a single processor. This limits the performance effects of context switches, TLB flushes, cache poisoning, and dispatcher workload balancing and the like, by delivering better processor affinity for particular workloads.

Horizontal CPU polarization means that the underlying hypervisor dispatches each virtual CPU of all z/VM guest virtual machines for the same amount of time.

If vertical CPU polarization is active, the hypervisor dispatches certain CPUs for a longer time than others for maximum performance. For example, if a guest has three virtual CPUs, each of them with a share of 33%, then in case of vertical CPU polarization all of the processing time would be combined to a single CPU, which would run all the time, while the other two CPUs would get nearly no CPU time.

There are three types of vertical CPUs: high, medium, and low. Low CPUs hardly get any real CPU time, while high CPUs get a full real CPU. Medium CPUs get something in between.

Note: Running a system with different types of vertical CPUs can result in significant performance regressions. If possible, use only one type of vertical CPUs. Set all other CPUs offline and deconfigure them.

Procedure

Use the dispatching attribute to switch between horizontal and vertical CPU polarization. To switch between the two modes, write a 0 for horizontal polarization (the default) or a 1 for vertical polarization to the dispatching attribute.

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/dispatching
```

The polarization of each CPU can be seen from the polarization attribute of each CPU:

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/polarization
```

Its contents is one of:

- `horizontal` - each of the guests' virtual CPUs is dispatched for the same amount of time.
- `vertical:high` - full CPU time is allocated.
- `vertical:medium` - medium CPU time is allocated.
- `vertical:low` - very little CPU time is allocated.
- `unknown`

Results

When switching polarization, the polarization attribute might contain the value `unknown` until the configuration change is done and the kernel has established the new polarization of each CPU.

Chapter 26. Managing hotplug memory

You can dynamically increase or decrease the memory for your running Linux instance.

To make memory available as hotplug memory, you must define it to your LPAR or z/VM. Hotplug memory is supported by z/VM 5.4 with the PTF for APAR VM64524 and by later z/VM versions.

For more information about memory hotplug, see `Documentation/memory-hotplug.txt` in the Linux source tree.

What you should know about memory hotplug

Hotplug memory is represented in sysfs. After rebooting Linux, all hotplug memory is offline.

How memory is represented in sysfs

Both the core memory of a Linux instance and the available hotplug memory are represented by directories in sysfs.

The memory with which Linux is started is the *core memory*. On the running Linux system, additional memory can be added as *hotplug memory*. The Linux kernel requires core memory to allocate its own data structures.

In sysfs, both the core memory of a Linux instance and the available hotplug memory are represented in form of memory blocks of equal size. Each block is represented as a directory of the form `/sys/devices/system/memory/memory<n>`, where `<n>` is an integer. You can find out the block size by reading the `/sys/devices/system/memory/block_size_bytes` attribute.

In the naming scheme, the memory blocks with the lowest address ranges are assigned the lowest integer numbers. The core memory always begins with `memory0`. The hotplug memory blocks follow the core memory blocks.

You can calculate where the hotplug memory begins. To find the number of core memory blocks, divide the base memory by the block size.

Example:

- With a core memory of 512 MB and a block size of 128 MB, the core memory is represented by four blocks, `memory0` through `memory3`. Therefore, first hotplug memory block on this Linux instance is `memory4`.
- Another Linux instance with a core memory of 1024 MB and access to the same hotplug memory, represents this first hotplug memory block as `memory8`.

The hotplug memory is available to all operating system instances within the z/VM system or LPAR to which it was defined. The `state` sysfs attribute of a memory block indicates whether the block is in use by your own Linux system. The `state` attribute does not indicate whether a block is in use by another operating system instance. Attempts to add memory blocks that are already in use fail.

Hotplug memory and reboot

The original core memory is preserved as core memory and hotplug memory is freed when rebooting a Linux instance.

When you perform an IPL after shutting down Linux, always use **ipl clear** to preserve the original memory configuration.

Setting up hotplug memory

Before you can use hotplug memory on your Linux instance, you must define this memory as hotplug memory on your physical or virtual hardware.

Defining hotplug memory to an LPAR

You use the Hardware Management Console (HMC) to define hotplug memory as *reserved storage* on an LPAR.

For information about defining reserved storage for your LPAR, see the *Processor Resource/Systems Manager™ Planning Guide*, SB10-7041 for your mainframe.

Defining hotplug memory to z/VM

In z/VM, you define hotplug memory as *standby storage*.

There is also *reserved storage* in z/VM, but other than reserved memory defined for an LPAR, reserved storage that is defined in z/VM is not available as hotplug memory.

For information about defining standby memory for z/VM guests, see the “**DEFINE STORAGE**” section in *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175.

Performing memory management tasks

Typical memory management tasks include finding out the memory block size, adding memory, and removing memory.

- “**Finding out the memory block size**”
- “**Listing the available memory blocks**” on page 283
- “**Adding memory**” on page 284
- “**Removing memory**” on page 284

Finding out the memory block size

On a System z mainframe, memory is provided to Linux as memory blocks of equal size.

Procedure

- Use the **lsmem** command to find out the size of your memory blocks (see “**lsmem** - Show online status information about memory blocks” on page 507).

Example:

```

# lsmem
Address range          Size (MB)  State   Removable Device
=====
0x0000000000000000-0x000000000fffffff    256  online  no      0
0x0000000010000000-0x000000002fffffff    512  online  yes     1-2
0x0000000030000000-0x000000003fffffff    256  online  no      3
0x0000000040000000-0x000000006fffffff    768  online  yes     4-6
0x0000000070000000-0x000000007fffffff    2304 offline -       7-15

Memory device size : 256 MB
Memory block size  : 256 MB
Total online memory : 1792 MB
Total offline memory: 2304 MB

```

In the example, the block size is 256 MB.

- Alternatively, you can read `/sys/devices/system/memory/block_size_bytes`. This sysfs attribute contains the block size in byte in hexadecimal notation.

Example:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/memory/block_size_bytes
10000000
```

This hexadecimal value corresponds to 256 MB.

Listing the available memory blocks

List the available memory to find out how much memory is available and which memory blocks are online.

Procedure

- Use the `lsmem` command to list your memory blocks.

Example:

```

# lsmem -a
Address range          Size (MB)  State   Removable Device
=====
0x0000000000000000-0x000000000fffffff    256  online  no      0
0x0000000010000000-0x000000001fffffff    256  online  no      1
0x0000000020000000-0x000000002fffffff    256  online  no      2
0x0000000030000000-0x000000003fffffff    256  online  yes     3
0x0000000040000000-0x000000004fffffff    256  online  yes     4
0x0000000050000000-0x000000005fffffff    256  offline -       5
0x0000000060000000-0x000000006fffffff    256  offline -       6
0x0000000070000000-0x000000007fffffff    256  offline -       7

Memory device size : 256 MB
Memory block size  : 256 MB
Total online memory : 1280 MB
Total offline memory: 786 MB

```

For more information about the `lsmem` command, see “`lsmem - Show online status information about memory blocks`” on page 507.

- Alternatively, you can list the available memory blocks by listing the contents of `/sys/devices/system/memory`. Read the state attributes of each memory block to find out whether it is online or offline.

Example: The following command results in an overview for all available memory blocks.

```
# grep -r --include="state" "line" /sys/devices/system/memory/  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory0/state:online  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory1/state:online  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory2/state:online  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory3/state:online  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory4/state:online  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory5/state:offline  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory6/state:offline  
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory7/state:offline
```

Note

Online blocks are in use by your Linux instance. An offline block can be free to be added to your Linux instance but it might also be in use by another Linux instance.

Adding memory

You can add memory to your Linux instance by setting unused memory blocks online.

Suspend and resume:

Do not add hotplug memory if you intend to suspend the Linux instance before the next IPL. Any changes to the original memory configuration prevent suspension, even if you restore the original memory configuration by removing memory blocks that have been added. See Chapter 36, “Suspending and resuming Linux,” on page 395 for more information about suspending and resuming Linux.

Procedure

- Use the **chmem** command with the **-e** parameter to set memory online. You can specify the amount of memory you want to add with the command without specifying particular memory blocks. If there are enough eligible memory blocks to satisfy your request, the tool finds them for you and sets the most suitable blocks online. For information about the **chmem** command, see “**chmem - Set memory online or offline**” on page 440.
- Alternatively, you can write **online** to the sysfs state attribute of an unused memory block. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo online > /sys/devices/system/memory/<n>/state
```

where **<n>** is an integer that identifies the memory unit.

Results

Adding the memory block fails if the memory block is already in use. The **state** attribute changes to **online** when the memory block has been added successfully.

Removing memory

You can remove memory from your Linux instance by setting memory blocks offline.

About this task

Avoid removing core memory. The Linux kernel requires core memory to allocate its own data structures.

Procedure

- Use the **chmem** command with the **-d** parameter to set memory offline. You can specify the amount of memory you want to remove with the command without specifying particular memory blocks. The tool finds eligible memory blocks for you and sets the most suitable blocks offline. For information about the **chmem** command, see “**chmem - Set memory online or offline**” on page 440.
- Alternatively, you can write **offline** to the **sysfs** **state** attribute of an unused memory block. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo offline > /sys/devices/system/memory/memory<n>/state
```

where **<n>** is an integer that identifies the memory unit.

Results

The hotplug memory functions first relocate memory pages to free the memory block and then remove it. The **state** attribute changes to **offline** when the memory block has been removed successfully.

The memory block is not removed if it cannot be freed completely.

Chapter 27. Large page support

Large page support entails support for the Linux hugetlbfs file system.

The large page support virtual file system is backed by larger memory pages than the usual 4 K pages; for System z the hardware page size is 1 MB.

Applications that use large page memory save a considerable amount of page table memory. Another benefit from the support might be an acceleration in the address translation and overall memory access speed.

As of version 7, Red Hat Enterprise Linux also supports libhugetlbfs linking. For more information, see the libhugetlbfs package, `libhugetlbfs-<version>.s390x.rpm`, and the how-to document that is included in the package.

As of version 7, Red Hat Enterprise Linux supports transparent hugepages. For more information, see `Documentation/vm/transhuge.txt` in the Linux source tree.

Setting up large page support

You configure large page support by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.

Large page support kernel parameter syntax

►—hugepages=<number>—►

where:

number

is the number of large pages to be allocated at boot time.

Note: If you specify more pages than available, Linux reserves as many as possible. As a likely result, too few general pages remain for the boot process, and your system stops with an out-of-memory error.

Large pages and hotplug memory

Hotplug memory that is added to a running Linux instance is movable and can be allocated to movable resources only.

By default, large pages are not movable and cannot be allocated from movable memory. You can enable allocation from movable memory with the sysctl setting `hugepages_treat_as_movable`.

To enable allocation of large pages from movable hotplug memory, issue:

echo 1 > /proc/sys/vm/hugepages_treat_as_movable

Although this setting makes large pages eligible for allocation through movable memory, it does not make large pages movable. As a result, the allocated hotplug memory cannot be set offline until all large pages are released from that memory.

To disable allocation of large pages from movable hotplug memory, issue:

```
# echo 0 > /proc/sys/vm/hugepages_treat_as_movable
```

Working with large page support

Typical tasks for working with large page support include reading the current number of large pages, changing the number of large pages, and display information about available large pages.

About this task

The large page memory can be used through mmap() or SysV shared memory system calls, more detailed information can be found in the Linux kernel source tree under Documentation/vm/hugetlbpage.txt, including implementation examples.

You can configure Oracle Database 11g Release 2 to use large page memory. For more information, see the Redbooks® publication *Experiences with Oracle 11gR2 on Linux on System z*, SG24-8104.

To make a Java™ program use the large page feature, specify the Java **-Xlp** option. If you use the SysV shared memory interface, which includes **java -Xlp**, you must adjust the shared memory allocation limits to match the workload requirements. Use the following sysctl attributes:

/proc/sys/kernel/shmall

Defines the global maximum amount of shared memory for all processes, specified in number of 4 KB pages.

/proc/sys/kernel/shmmax

Defines the maximum amount of shared memory per process, specified in number of Bytes.

For example, the following commands would set both limits to 20 GB:

```
# echo 5242880 > /proc/sys/kernel/shmall  
# echo 21474836480 > /proc/sys/kernel/shmmax
```

Procedure

- Specify the **hugepages=** kernel parameter with the number of large pages to be allocated at boot time. To read the current number of large pages, issue:

```
cat /proc/sys/vm/nr_hugepages
```

- To change the number of large pages dynamically during runtime, write to procfs:

```
echo 12 > /proc/sys/vm/nr_hugepages
```

If there is not enough contiguous memory available to fulfill the request, the maximum number of large pages are reserved.

- To obtain information about the number of large pages currently available and the large page size, issue:

```
cat /proc/meminfo  
...  
HugePages_Total: 20  
HugePages_Free: 14  
HugePages_Rsvd: 0  
HugePages_Surp: 0  
Hugepagesize: 1024 KB  
...
```

- To see whether hardware large page support is enabled (indicated by the word "edat" in the "features" line), issue:

```
cat /proc/cpuinfo  
...  
features : esan3 zarch stfile msa ldisp eimm dfp edat  
...
```


Chapter 28. S/390 hypervisor file system

The S/390® hypervisor file system provides a mechanism to access LPAR and z/VM hypervisor data.

Directory structure

When the hypfs file system is mounted, the accounting information is retrieved and a file system tree is created. The tree contains a full set of attribute files with the hypervisor information.

By convention, the mount point for the hypervisor file system is /sys/hypervisor/s390.

LPAR directories and attributes

There are hypfs directories and attributes with hypervisor information for Linux in LPAR mode.

Figure 47 illustrates the file system tree that is created for LPAR.

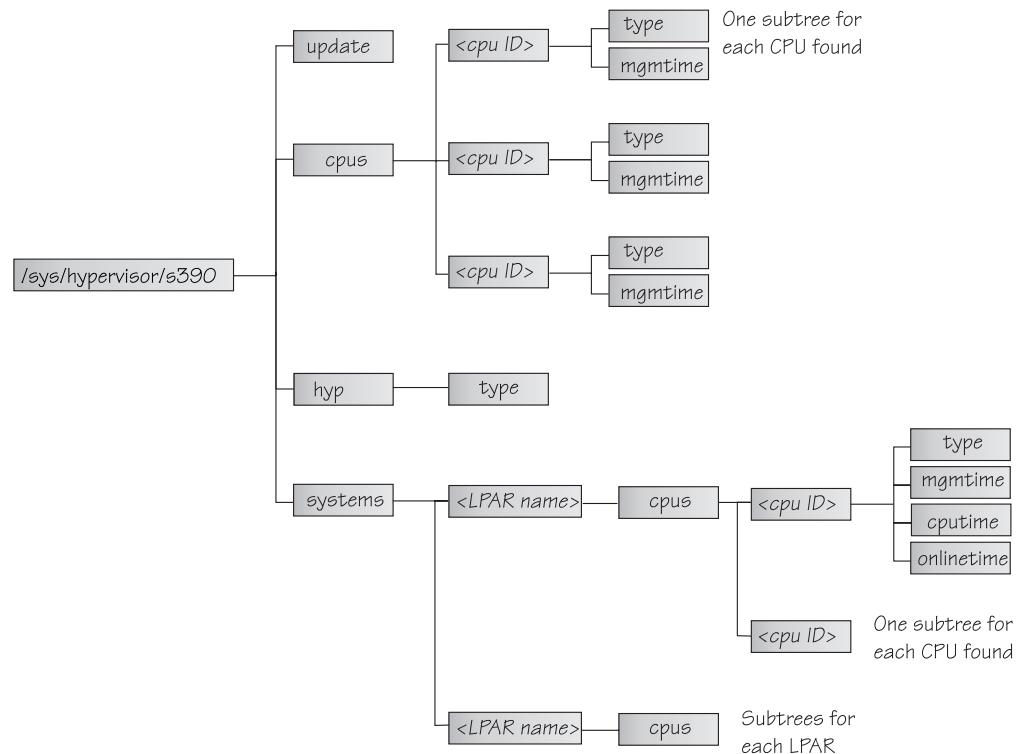


Figure 47. The hypervisor file system for LPAR

update Write-only file to trigger an update of all attributes.

cpus/ Directory for all physical CPUs.

cpus/<cpu ID>
Directory for one physical CPU. <cpu ID> is the logical (decimal) CPU number.

type Type name of physical CPU, such as CP or IFL.

mgttime
Physical-LPAR-management time in microseconds (LPAR overhead).

hyp/ Directory for hypervisor information.

hyp/type
Type of hypervisor (LPAR hypervisor).

systems/
Directory for all LPARs.

systems/<lpars name>/
Directory for one LPAR.

systems/<lpars name>/cpus/<cpu ID>/
Directory for the virtual CPUs for one LPAR. The <cpu ID> is the logical (decimal) CPU number.

type Type of the logical CPU, such as CP or IFL.

mgttime
LPAR-management time. Accumulated number of microseconds during which a physical CPU was assigned to the logical CPU and the CPU time was consumed by the hypervisor and was not provided to the LPAR (LPAR overhead).

cputime
Accumulated number of microseconds during which a physical CPU was assigned to the logical CPU and the CPU time was consumed by the LPAR.

onlinetime
Accumulated number of microseconds during which the logical CPU has been online.

Note: For older machines, the `onlinetime` attribute might be missing. Generally, it is advantageous for applications to tolerate missing attributes or new attributes that are added to the file system. To check the content of the files, you can use tools such as `cat` or `less`.

z/VM directories and attributes

There are hypfs directories and attributes with hypervisor information for Linux on z/VM.

update Write-only file to trigger an update of all attributes.

cpus/ Directory for all physical CPUs.

cpus/count

Total current CPUs.

hyp/ Directory for hypervisor information.

hyp/type

Type of hypervisor (z/VM hypervisor).

systems/

Directory for all z/VM guest virtual machines.

systems/<guest name>/

Directory for one z/VM guest virtual machine.

systems/<guest name>/onlinetime_us

Time in microseconds that the guest virtual machine has been logged on.

systems/<guest name>/cpus/

Directory for the virtual CPUs for one guest virtual machine.

capped Flag that shows whether CPU capping is on for the guest virtual machine (0 = off, 1 = soft, 2 = hard).

count Total current virtual CPUs in the guest virtual machine.

cputime_us

Number of microseconds where the guest virtual machine CPU was running on a physical CPU.

dedicated

Flag that shows if the guest virtual machine has at least one dedicated CPU (0 = no, 1 = yes).

weight_cur

Current share of guest virtual machine (1-10000); 0 for ABSOLUTE SHARE guests.

weight_max

Maximum share of guest virtual machine (1-10000); 0 for ABSOLUTE SHARE guests.

weight_min

Number of operating CPUs. Do not be confused by the attribute name, which suggests a different meaning.

systems/<guest name>/samples/

Directory for sample information for one guest virtual machine.

cpu_delay

Number of CPU delay samples that are attributed to the guest virtual machine.

cpu_using

Number of CPU using samples attributed to the guest virtual machine.

idle Number of idle samples attributed to the guest virtual machine.

mem_delay

Number of memory delay samples that are attributed to the guest virtual machine.

other Number of other samples attributed to the guest virtual machine.

total Number of total samples attributed to the guest virtual machine.

systems/<guest name>/mem/

Directory for memory information for one guest virtual machine.

max_KiB

Maximum memory in KiB (1024 bytes).

min_KiB

Minimum memory in KiB (1024 bytes).

share_KiB

Guest estimated core working set size in KiB (1024 bytes).

used_KiB

Resident memory in KiB (1024 bytes).

To check the content of the files, you can use tools such as **cat** or **less**.

Setting up the S/390 hypervisor file system

To use the file system, it must be mounted. You can mount the file system with the **mount** command or with an entry in **/etc/fstab**.

To mount the file system manually, issue the following command:

```
# mount none -t s390_hypfs <mount point>
```

where **<mount point>** is where you want the file system mounted. Preferably, use **/sys/hypervisor/s390**.

To mount hypfs by using **/etc/fstab**, add the following line:

```
none <mount point> s390_hypfs defaults 0 0
```

If your z/VM system does not support DIAG 2fc, the s390_hypfs is not activated and it is not possible to mount the file system. Instead, an error message like this is issued:

```
mount: unknown filesystem type 's390_hypfs'
```

To get data for all z/VM guests, privilege class B is required for the guest where hypfs is mounted. For non-class B guests, data is provided only for the local guest.

To get data for all LPARs, select the **Global performance data control** check box in the HMC or SE security menu of the LPAR activation profile. Otherwise, data is provided only for the local LPAR.

Working with the S/390 hypervisor file system

Typical tasks that you must perform when working with the S/390 hypervisor file system include defining access permissions and updating hypfs information.

- “Defining access permissions”
- “Updating hypfs information” on page 295

Defining access permissions

The root user usually has access to the hypfs file system. It is possible to explicitly define access permissions.

About this task

If no mount options are specified, the files and directories of the file system get the uid and gid of the user who mounted the file system (usually root). It is possible to explicitly define uid and gid by using the mount options **uid=<number>** and **gid=<number>**.

Example

You can define uid=1000 and gid=2000 with the following mount command:

```
# mount none -t s390_hypfs -o "uid=1000,gid=2000" <mount point>
```

Alternatively, you can add the following line to the /etc/fstab file:

```
none <mount point> s390_hypfs uid=1000,gid=2000 0 0
```

The first mount defines uid and gid. Subsequent mounts automatically have the same uid and gid setting as the first one.

The permissions for directories and files are as follows:

- Update file: 0220 (--w--w----
- Regular files: 0440 (-r--r----
- Directories: 0550 (dr-xr-x---

Updating hypfs information

You trigger the update process by writing something into the update file at the top-level hypfs directory.

Procedure

With hypfs mounted at /sys/hypervisor/s390, you can trigger the update process by issuing the following command:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/hypervisor/s390/update
```

During the update, the entire directory structure is deleted and rebuilt. If a file was open before the update, subsequent reads return the old data until the file is opened again. Within 1 second only one update can be done. If multiple updates are triggered within a second, only the first update is performed and subsequent write system calls return -1 and errno is set to EBUSY.

Applications can use the following procedure to ensure consistent data:

1. Read modification time through stat(2) from the update attribute.
2. If data is too old, write to the update attribute and start again with step 1.
3. Read data from file system.
4. Read modification time of the update attribute again and compare it with first timestamp. If the timestamps do not match, return to step 2.

Chapter 29. ETR- and STP-based clock synchronization

Your Linux instance might be part of an extended remote copy (XRC) setup that requires synchronization of the Linux time-of-day (TOD) clock with a timing network.

Linux on System z supports external time reference (ETR) and system time protocol (STP) based TOD synchronization. ETR and STP work independently of one another. If both ETR and STP are enabled, Linux might use either to synchronize the clock.

For more information about ETR, see the IBM Redbooks technote at
www.ibm.com/redbooks/abstracts/tips0217.html

For information about STP, see
www.ibm.com/systems/z/advantages/ps0/stp.html

Both ETR and STP support are included in the Linux kernel. No special build options are required.

ETR requires at least one ETR unit that is connected to an external time source. For availability reasons, many installations use a second ETR unit. The ETR units correspond to two ETR ports on Linux. Always set both ports online if two ETR units are available.

Attention: Be sure that a reliable timing signal is available before enabling clock synchronization. With enabled clock synchronization, Linux expects regular timing signals and might stop indefinitely to wait for such signals if it does not receive them.

Enabling clock synchronization when booting

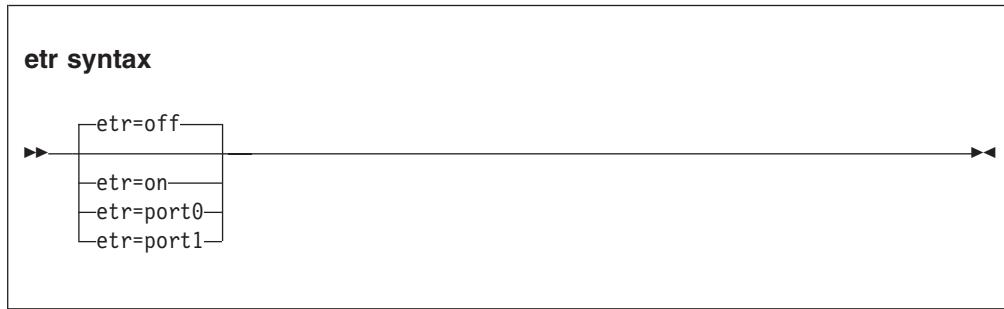
Use kernel parameters to enable clock synchronization when booting.

This section describes the kernel parameters that you can use to set up synchronization for your Linux TOD clock. These kernel parameters specify the initial synchronization settings. On a running Linux instance, you can change these settings through attributes in sysfs (see “Enabling and disabling clock synchronization” on page 299).

Enabling ETR-based clock synchronization

Use the `etr=` kernel parameter to set ETR ports online when Linux is booted.

ETR-based clock synchronization is enabled if at least one ETR port is online.



The values have the following effect:

on sets both ports online.

port0

sets port0 online and port1 offline.

port1

sets port1 online and port0 offline.

off

sets both ports offline. With both ports offline, ETR-based clock synchronization is not enabled. This is the default.

Example

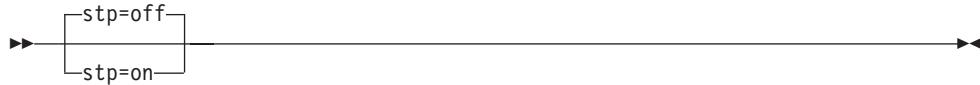
To enable ETR-based clock synchronization with both ETR ports online, specify:

```
etr=on
```

Enabling STP-based clock synchronization

Use the `stp=` kernel parameter to enable STP-based clock synchronization when Linux is booted.

stp syntax



By default, STP-based clock synchronization is not enabled.

Example

To enable STP-based clock synchronization, specify:

```
stp=on
```

Enabling and disabling clock synchronization

You can use the sysfs interfaces of ETR and STP to enable and disable clock synchronization on a running Linux instance.

Enabling and disabling ETR-based clock synchronization

Use the ETR sysfs attribute `online` to set an ETR port online or offline.

About this task

ETR-based clock synchronization is switched off if both ETR ports are offline.

Procedure

To set an ETR port online, set its sysfs `online` attribute to 1. To set an ETR port offline, set its sysfs `online` attribute to 0. Enter a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/devices/system/etr/etr<n>/online
```

where `<n>` identifies the port and is either 0 or 1.

Example

To set ETR port `etr1` offline, enter:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/etr/etr1/online
```

Enabling and disabling STP-based clock synchronization

Use the STP sysfs attribute `online` to enable or disable STP-based clock synchronization.

Procedure

To enable STP-based clock synchronization, set /sys/devices/system/stp/online to 1. To disable STP-based clock synchronization, set this attribute to 0.

Example

To disable STP-based clock synchronization, enter:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/stp/online
```

Chapter 30. Identifying the System z hardware

In installations with several System z mainframes, you might need to identify the particular hardware system on which a Linux instance is running.

Two attributes in /sys/firmware/ocf can help you to identify the hardware.

cpc_name

contains the name that is assigned to the central processor complex (CPC). This name identifies the mainframe system on a Hardware Management Console (HMC).

hmc_network

contains the name of the HMC network to which the mainframe system is connected.

The two attributes contain the empty string if the Linux instance runs as a guest of a hypervisor that does not support the operations command facility (OCF) communication parameters interface.

Use the **cat** command to read these attributes.

Example:

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ocf/cpc_name  
Z05  
# cat /sys/firmware/ocf/hmc_network  
SNA00
```

Part 6. Security

Chapter 31. Generic cryptographic device driver	305
Features	305
What you should know about the cryptographic device driver	307
Setting up the cryptographic device driver	308
Working with cryptographic devices.	310
External programming interfaces	316
Chapter 32. Pseudo-random number device driver.	319
Setting up the pseudo-random number device driver	319
Reading pseudo-random numbers	319

These device drivers and features support security aspects of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z.

Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at
ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html

Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at
https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

Chapter 31. Generic cryptographic device driver

The generic cryptographic device driver supports cryptographic coprocessor and accelerator hardware. Cryptographic coprocessors provide secure key cryptographic operations for the IBM Common Cryptographic Architecture (CCA).

Some cryptographic processing in Linux can be off-loaded from the CPU and performed by dedicated CCA coprocessors or accelerators. Several of these CCA coprocessors and accelerators are available offering a range of features. The generic cryptographic device driver is required to use any available cryptographic hardware.

Features

The generic cryptographic device driver supports a range of hardware and software functions.

Supported cryptographic adapters

The cryptographic hardware feature might contain one or two cryptographic adapters. Each adapter can be configured either as a coprocessor or as an accelerator.

- Crypto Express3 Coprocessor (CEX3C)
- Crypto Express3 Accelerator (CEX3A)
- Crypto Express4S Coprocessor (CEX4C)
- Crypto Express4S Accelerator (CEX4A)

For information about setting up your cryptographic environment on Linux under z/VM, see *Security on z/VM*, SG24-7471 and *Security for Linux on System z*, SG24-7728.

Cryptographic devices for Linux on z/VM

A z/VM guest virtual machine can either have one or more dedicated cryptographic devices or one shared cryptographic device, but not both.

Dedicated devices

Each dedicated device maps to exactly one hardware device. The device representations in Linux on z/VM show the type of the actual hardware.

Shared device

The shared device can map to one or more hardware devices. The device representation in Linux on z/VM shows the type of the most advanced of these hardware devices. In this representation, cryptographic accelerators are considered more advanced than coprocessors.

As a consequence, Linux on z/VM with access to a shared cryptographic accelerator can either observe an accelerator or a coprocessor, but not both.

Supported facilities

The cryptographic device driver supports several cryptographic accelerators and coprocessors.

Cryptographic accelerators support clear key cryptographic algorithms. In particular, they provide fast RSA encryption and decryption for key sizes 1024-bit, 2048-bit, and 4096-bit (CEC4A and CEC3A only).

Cryptographic coprocessors act as a hardware security module (HSM) and provide secure key cryptographic operations for the IBM Common Cryptographic Architecture (CCA). For more information, see *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294. You can obtain this book at www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards/pciecc/library.shtml.

Cryptographic coprocessors also provide clear key RSA operations for 1024-bit, 2048-bit, and 4096-bit keys, and a true random number generator.

Hardware and software prerequisites

Support for the Crypto Express4S, Crypto Express3, and Crypto Express2 features depends on the System z hardware.

Table 38 lists the support for the cryptographic adapters.

Table 38. Support for cryptographic adapters by mainframe model

Cryptographic adapters	Mainframe support
CEX4A and CEX4C	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• zEC12• zBC12
CEX3A and CEX3C	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• zEC12• zBC12• z196• z114

Table 39 lists the required software by function.

Table 39. Required software

Software required	Function that is supported by the software
The CCA library	For the secure key cryptographic functions on CEX4C or CEX3C features. For information about CEX4C and CEX3C adapter coexistence and how to use CCA functions, see <i>Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide</i> , SC33-8294. You can obtain it at www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards/pciecc/library.shtml .
The libica library	For the clear key cryptographic functions. See <i>libica Programmer's Reference</i> , SC34-2602. You can obtain it at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_red_hat.html .
APAR VM65007	To support CEX4A and CEX4C adapters on z/VM 5.4, 6.1, and 6.2.
APAR VM65308	To share CEX4C CCA coprocessor adapters (APVIRT) on z/VM 5.4, 6.1, and 6.2.
APAR VM64656	To support CEX3C and CEX3A adapters for Linux on z/VM 6.1 or 5.4.
APAR VM64727	To correct a shared CCA coprocessor problem on z/VM 5.4.
APAR VM64793	To use the protected key functionality under z/VM and CCA on z/VM 5.4 and 6.1.

You can download the CCA library from the IBM cryptographic coprocessor web page at
www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards

Note: The CCA library works with 64-bit applications only.

What you should know about the cryptographic device driver

Your use of the cryptographic device driver and the cryptographic hardware might require additional software. There are special considerations for Linux on z/VM, for performance, and for specific cryptographic operations.

Functions provided by the cryptographic device driver

The functions that are provided by the cryptographic device driver depend on whether it finds an accelerator or coprocessor.

If the cryptographic device driver finds a cryptographic accelerator, it provides Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) encryption and RSA decryption functions using clear keys. RSA operations are supported in both the modulus-exponent and the Chinese-Remainder Theorem (CRT) variants using 1024-bit, 2048-bit, and 4096-bit size keys.

If the cryptographic device driver finds a cryptographic coprocessor, it provides RSA encryption and RSA decryption functions using clear keys. RSA operations are supported in both the modulus-exponent and the CRT variants using 1024-bit, 2048-bit, and 4096-bit size keys. It also provides a function to pass CCA requests to the cryptographic coprocessor and an access to the true random number generator of the coprocessor.

32-bit systems do not support 4096-bit key length for clear-key RSA operations.

Adapter discovery

The cryptographic device driver provides two misc device nodes, one for cryptographic requests, and one for a device from which random numbers can be read.

Cryptographic adapters are detected automatically when the module is loaded. They are reprobed periodically, and following any hardware problem.

Upon detection of a cryptographic adapter, the device driver presents a Linux misc device, `z90crypt`, to user space. A user space process can open the misc device to submit cryptographic requests to the adapter through IOCTLs.

If at least one of the detected cryptographic adapters is a coprocessor, an additional misc device, `hwrng`, is created from which random numbers can be read.

You can set cryptographic adapters online or offline in the device driver. The cryptographic device driver ignores adapters that are configured offline even if the hardware is detected. The online or offline configuration is independent of the hardware configuration.

Request processing

Cryptographic adapters process requests asynchronously.

The device driver detects request completion either by standard polling, a special high-frequency polling thread, or by hardware interrupts. Hardware interrupt support is only available for Linux instances that run in an LPAR. If hardware interrupt support is available, the device driver does not use polling to detect request completion.

All requests to either of the two misc devices are routed to a cryptographic adapter using a crypto request scheduling function that, for each adapter, takes into account:

- The supported functions
- The number of pending requests
- A speed rating

A cryptographic adapter can be partitioned into multiple domains. Each domain acts as an independent virtual HSM that maintains its own master key. The cryptographic device driver uses only a single domain for all adapters. By default the kernel selects a domain. Alternatively, you can select the domain using a module parameter (see “Module parameters”).

Setting up the cryptographic device driver

Configure the cryptographic device driver through the `domain=` and the `poll_thread=` module parameters. You might also have to set up libraries.

The cryptographic device driver consists of multiple, separate modules:

ap AP bus module.

zcrypt_api
request router module. Loads the `rng_core` module.

zcrypt_cex4
device driver for CEX4A, and CEX4C adapters.

zcrypt_cex2a
device driver for CEX3A adapters.

zcrypt_pcixcc
device driver for CEX3C adapters.

zcrypt_msctype6
secure key message module.

zcrypt_msctype50
clear key message module.

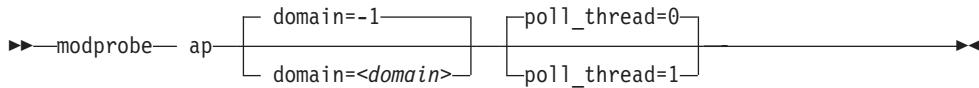
For information about setting up cryptographic hardware on your mainframe, see *zSeries Crypto Guide Update*, SG24-6870.

Module parameters

The cryptographic device driver consists of multiple, separate modules. You configure the device driver through module parameters when you load the AP bus module.

Use the `modprobe` command to load the AP bus module:

ap module syntax



where

<domain>

is an integer in the range 0 - 15 that identifies the cryptographic domain for the Linux instance.

The default (*domain=-1*) causes the device driver to attempt to autodetect and use the domain index with the maximum number of devices.

You must specify the domain parameter only if you are running Linux in an LPAR for which multiple cryptographic domains were defined.

<poll_thread>

is an integer argument and enables a polling thread to tune cryptographic performance. Valid values are 1 (enabled) or 0 (disabled, this value is the default). For details, see “Setting the polling thread” on page 312.

Note: If you are running Linux in an LPAR, AP interrupts are used instead of the polling thread. The polling thread is disabled when AP interrupts are available. See “Using AP adapter interrupts” on page 313.

All other modules are loaded automatically when they are required.

To remove a single module, for example, a module that supports a card type that is no longer available, issue a command of the following form:

```
# rmmod <module_name>
```

Examples

- This example loads the cryptographic device driver module ap if Linux runs in an LPAR with only one cryptographic domain:

```
# modprobe ap
```

- This example loads the cryptographic device driver module ap to operate within the cryptographic domain 1:

```
# modprobe ap domain=1
```

See the **modprobe** man page for command details.

Accessing cryptographic devices

User space programs access cryptographic devices through a single device node.

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, udev creates the device node /dev/z90crypt for you. The device node is assigned to the miscellaneous devices.

Accessing long random numbers

Applications can access large amounts of random number data through a character device.

Prerequisites:

- At least one cryptographic feature must be installed in the system and one coprocessor CEX3C or CEX4C, must be configured.
- Linux on z/VM needs a dedicated cryptographic coprocessor or a shared cryptographic device that is backed only by coprocessors.
- Automatic creation of the random number character device requires udev.
- The cryptographic device driver must be loaded.

If the cryptographic device driver detects at least one coprocessor capable of generating long random numbers, a new miscellaneous character device is registered. The new device can be found under /proc/misc as hw_random. udev creates a character device called /dev/hwrng and a symbolic link called /dev/hw_random and pointing to /dev/hwrng.

Reading from the character device or the symbolic link returns the hardware-generated long random numbers. However, do not read excess amounts of random number data from this character device as the data rate is limited due to the cryptographic hardware architecture.

Removing the last available coprocessor adapter while the cryptographic device driver is loaded automatically removes the random number character device.

Reading from the random number character device while all coprocessor adapters are set offline results in an input/output error (EIO). After at least one adapter is set online again, reading from the random number character device continues to return random number data.

Working with cryptographic devices

Typically, cryptographic devices are not directly accessed by users but through user programs. Some tasks can be performed through the sysfs interface.

- “Displaying information about cryptographic devices”
- “Starting the cryptographic device driver” on page 311
- “Setting devices online or offline” on page 311
- “Setting the polling thread” on page 312
- “Using AP adapter interrupts” on page 313
- “Setting the polling interval” on page 314
- “Dynamically adding and removing cryptographic adapters” on page 314
- “Displaying information about the AP bus” on page 315
- “Unloading the cryptographic device driver” on page 316

Displaying information about cryptographic devices

Use the **lszcrypt** command to display status information about your cryptographic devices; alternatively, you can use sysfs.

About this task

For information about **lszcrypt**, see “**lszcrypt - Display cryptographic devices**” on page 519.

Each cryptographic adapter is represented in a sysfs directory of the form
`/sys/bus/ap/devices/card<XX>`

where `<XX>` is the device index for each device. The valid device index range is hex 00 to hex 3f. For example, device 0x1a can be found under
`/sys/bus/ap/devices/card1a`. The sysfs directory contains a number of attributes with information about the cryptographic adapter.

Table 40. Cryptographic adapter attributes

Attribute	Explanation
ap_functions	Read-only attribute that represents the function facilities that are installed on this device.
depth	Read-only attribute that represents the input queue length for this device.
hwtype	Read-only attribute that represents the hardware type for this device. The following values are defined: 8 CEX3A adapters. 9 CEX3C adapters. 10 CEX4A or CEX4C adapters.
modalias	Read-only attribute that represents an internally used device bus-ID.
pendingq_count	Read-only attribute that represents the number of requests in the hardware queue.
request_count	Read-only attribute that represents the number of requests that are already processed by this device.
requestq_count	Read-only attribute that represents the number of outstanding requests (not including the requests in the hardware queue).
type	Read-only attribute that represents the type of this device. The following types are defined: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• CEX3A• CEX3C• CEX4A• CEX4C

Starting the cryptographic device driver

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, you start the cryptographic device driver by using the `modprobe` command.

Procedure

This command loads the cryptographic device driver module ap if Linux runs in an LPAR with only one cryptographic domain:

```
# modprobe ap
```

Setting devices online or offline

Use the `chzcrypt` command to set cryptographic devices online or offline.

Procedure

- Preferably, use the **chzcrypt** command with the **-e** option to set cryptographic devices online, or use the **-d** option to set devices offline.

Examples:

- To set cryptographic devices (in decimal notation) 0, 1, 4, 5, and 12 online issue:

```
# chzcrypt -e 0 1 4 5 12
```

- To set all available cryptographic devices offline issue:

```
# chzcrypt -d -a
```

For more information about **chzcrypt**, see “**chzcrypt - Modify the cryptographic configuration**” on page 448.

- Alternatively, write 1 to the **online** sysfs attribute of a cryptographic device to set the device online, or write 0 to set the device offline.

Examples:

- To set a cryptographic device with device ID 0x3e online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/online
```

- To set a cryptographic device with device ID 0x3e offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/online
```

- To check the online status of the cryptographic device with device ID 0x3e issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/online
```

The value is 1 if the device is online or 0 otherwise.

Setting the polling thread

For Linux on z/VM, enabling the polling thread can improve cryptographic performance.

About this task

Linux in LPAR mode supports interrupts that indicate the completion of cryptographic requests. See “**Using AP adapter interrupts**” on page 313. If AP interrupts are available, it is not possible to activate the polling thread.

Depending on the workload, enabling the polling thread can increase cryptographic performance. For Linux on z/VM, the polling thread is deactivated by default.

The cryptographic device driver can run with or without the polling thread. When it runs with the polling thread, one processor constantly polls the cryptographic cards for finished cryptographic requests while requests are being processed. The polling thread sleeps when no cryptographic requests are being processed. This mode uses the cryptographic cards as much as possible, at the cost of blocking one processor during cryptographic operations.

Without the polling thread, the cryptographic cards are polled at a much lower rate. The lower rate results in higher latency, and reduced throughput for cryptographic requests, but without a noticeable processor load.

Procedure

- Use the **chzcrypt** command to set the polling thread.

Examples:

- To activate the polling thread issue:

```
# chzcrypt -p
```

- To deactivate the polling thread issue:

```
# chzcrypt -n
```

For more information about **chzcrypt**, see “**chzcrypt - Modify the cryptographic configuration**” on page 448.

- Alternatively, you can set the polling thread through the **poll_thread** sysfs attribute. This read-write attribute can be found at the AP bus level.

Examples:

- To activate a polling thread for a device 0x3e issue:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/poll_thread
```

- To deactivate a polling thread for a cryptographic device with bus device-ID 0x3e issue:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/poll_thread
```

Using AP adapter interrupts

To improve cryptographic performance for Linux instances that run in LPAR mode, use AP interrupts.

About this task

Using AP interrupts instead of the polling thread frees one processor while cryptographic requests are processed.

During module initialization, the cryptographic device driver checks whether AP adapter interrupts are supported by the hardware. If so, polling is disabled and the interrupt mechanism is automatically used.

To query whether AP adapter interrupts are used, read the sysfs attribute **ap_interrupt**. The read-only attribute can be found at the AP bus level.

Example

To read the **ap_interrupt** attribute for a device 0x3e issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/ap_interrupt
```

If interrupts are used, the attribute shows 1, otherwise 0.

Setting the polling interval

Request polling is supported at nanosecond intervals.

Procedure

- Use the **lszcrypt** and **chzcrypt** commands to read and set the polling time.

Examples:

- To find out the current polling time, issue:

```
# lszcrypt -b  
...  
poll_timeout=250000 (nanoseconds)
```

- To set the polling time to 1 microsecond, issue:

```
# chzcrypt -t 1000
```

For more information about **lszcrypt** and **chzcrypt**, see “**lszcrypt - Display cryptographic devices**” on page 519 and “**chzcrypt - Modify the cryptographic configuration**” on page 448.

- Alternatively, you can set the polling time through the **poll_timeout** sysfs attribute. This read-write attribute can be found at the AP bus level.

Examples:

- To read the **poll_timeout** attribute for the ap bus issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ap/poll_timeout
```

- To set the **poll_timeout** attribute for the ap bus to poll, for example, every microsecond, issue:

```
# echo 1000 > /sys/bus/ap/poll_timeout
```

Dynamically adding and removing cryptographic adapters

On an LPAR, you can add or remove cryptographic adapters without the need to reactivate the LPAR after a configuration change.

About this task

z/VM does not support dynamically adding or removing cryptographic adapters.

Linux attempts to detect new cryptographic adapters and set them online every time a configuration timer expires. Read or modify the expiration time with the **lszcrypt** and **chzcrypt** commands.

Examples:

- To find out the current configuration timer setting, issue:

```
# lszcrypt -b  
...  
config_time=30 (seconds)  
...
```

In the example, the timer is set to 30 seconds.

- To set the configuration timer to 60 seconds, issue:

```
# chzcrypt -c 60
```

For more information about **lscrypt** and **chzcrypt**, see “**lscrypt - Display cryptographic devices**” on page 519 and “**chzcrypt - Modify the cryptographic configuration**” on page 448.

Alternatively, you can read or set the configuration timer through the `config_time` sysfs attribute. This read-write attribute can be found at the AP bus level. Valid values for the `config_time` sysfs attribute are in the range 5 - 120 seconds.

Examples:

- To read the configuration timer setting, issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ap/config_time
```

- To set the configuration timer to 60 seconds, issue:

```
# echo 60 > /sys/bus/ap/config_time
```

Adding or removing of cryptographic adapters to or from an LPAR is transparent to applications that use clear key functions. If a cryptographic adapter is removed while cryptographic requests are being processed, the device driver automatically resubmits lost requests to the remaining adapters. Special handling is required for secure key.

Secure key requests are submitted to a dedicated cryptographic coprocessor. If this coprocessor is removed or lost, new requests cannot be submitted to a different coprocessor. Therefore, dynamically adding and removing adapters with a secure key application requires support within the application. For more information about secure key cryptography, see *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294. You can obtain this book at

www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards/pciecc/library.shtml

Displaying information about the AP bus

Use the **lscrypt -b** command to display status information about the AP bus; alternatively, you can use sysfs.

About this task

For information about **lscrypt -b**, see “**lscrypt - Display cryptographic devices**” on page 519.

The AP bus is represented in sysfs as a directory of the form
`/sys/bus/ap`

The sysfs directory contains a number of attributes with information about the AP bus.

Table 41. AP bus attributes

Attribute	Explanation
ap_domain	Read-only attribute that represents the domain. By default the kernel selects a domain. Alternatively, you can select the domain using a kernel parameter, or a module parameter during module load. See “Module parameters” on page 308.
ap_interrupts	Read-only attribute that indicates whether interrupt handling for the AP bus is enabled.
config_time	Read-write attribute that represents a time interval in seconds used to detect new crypto devices.
poll_thread	Read-write attribute that represents the polling thread for the AP bus.
poll_timeout	Read-write attribute that represents the time interval of the poll thread in nanoseconds.

Example

```
# lszcrypt -b
ap_domain=5
ap_interrupts are enabled
config_time=30 (seconds)
poll_thread is disabled
poll_timeout=250000 (nanoseconds)
```

Unloading the cryptographic device driver

You can use `rmmod` to unload the cryptographic device driver modules.

Before you begin

The use count of the modules must be zero before you can unload them.

Procedure

- To unload the entire cryptographic device driver, explicitly unload each module. For example:

```
# rmmod zcrypt_msatype50 zcrypt_msatype6 zcrypt_pcixcc zcrypt_cex2a zcrypt_cex4 zcrypt_api ap
```

- Alternatively, unload all unused modules that are related to `zcrypt_api`. You must unload only modules that were actually loaded. For example, if only the `zcrypt_msatype6` and `zcrypt_cex4` modules are loaded in addition to `zcrypt_api` and `ap` use:

```
# rmmod zcrypt_msatype6 zcrypt_cex4 zcrypt_api ap
```

List the arguments in the order given.

External programming interfaces

Applications can directly access the cryptographic device driver through an API.

Programmers: This information is intended for those who want to program against the cryptographic device driver or against the available cryptographic libraries.

If you want to circumvent libica and directly access the cryptographic device driver, see the cryptographic device driver header file available from the source RPM:

```
/usr/include/asm-s390/zcrypt.h
```

For information about the library APIs, see the following files in the Linux source tree:

- The libica library `/usr/include/ica_api.h`
- The openCryptoki library `/usr/include/opencryptoki/pkcs11.h`
- The CCA library `/opt/IBM/<prod>/include/csulincl.h`, where `<prod>` is specific to the particular hardware product.

`ica_api.h`, `pkcs11.h`, and `csulincl.h` are present after their libraries were installed. Install the `libica-devel-<version>` RPM. You can obtain the `openCryptoki` package from sourceforge at: sourceforge.net/projects/opencryptoki

Clear key cryptographic functions

The libica library provides a C API to clear-key cryptographic functions that are supported by System z hardware. You can configure both `openCryptoki` (by using the `icatoken`) and `openssl` (by using the `ibmca` engine) to use System z clear-key cryptographic hardware support through libica. See *libica Programmer's Reference*, SC34-2602 for details about the libica functions.

If you must circumvent libica and access the cryptographic device driver directly, your user space program must open the `zcrypt` device node, and submit the cryptographic request with an IOCTL. The IOCTL subfunction `ICARSAMODEXPO` performs RSA modular exponent encryption and decryption. The IOCTL `ICARSACRT` performs RSA CRT decryption. See the cryptographic device driver header file in the Linux source tree:
`/usr/include/asm-s390/zcrypt.h`

Ensuring the correct length for RSA encryption requests: Cryptographic coprocessors might reject RSA encryption requests for which the numerical value of the data to be encrypted is greater than the modulus.

Secure key cryptographic functions

To use clear key cryptographic functions in your user space program, use the CCA host library. The CCA host library opens the `zcrypt` device node and submits the cryptographic requests with the `ZSECSENDCPRB` IOCTL subfunction.

See *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294, for installation and setup instructions, feature coexistence information, and how to use CCA functions. You can obtain this publication at www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards/pciecc/library.shtml.

Reading true random numbers

To read true random numbers, a user space program must open the `hwrng` device and read as many bytes as needed from the device.

Tip: Using the output of the `hwrng` device to periodically reseed a pseudo-random number generator might be an efficient use of the random numbers.

Chapter 32. Pseudo-random number device driver

The pseudo-random number device driver provides user-space applications with pseudo-random numbers generated by the System z CP Assist for Cryptographic Function (CPACF).

The pseudo-random number device provides pseudo-random numbers similar to the Linux pseudo-random number device `/dev/urandom` but offers a better performance.

User space programs access the pseudo-random-number device through a device node, `/dev/prandom`. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 provides udev to create it for you.

Setting up the pseudo-random number device driver

You must load the pseudo-random number module before you can work with it. By default, only user “root” can read from the pseudo-random number device.

Procedure

1. Load the device driver module, `prng`, with the `modprobe` command:

```
# modprobe prng
```

There are no module parameters for the pseudo-random number device driver.

2. Optional: Make the device node accessible to non-root users. For example, add this udev rule to automatically extend access to the device to other users:

```
KERNEL=="prandom", MODE="0444", OPTIONS="last_rule"
```

Reading pseudo-random numbers

The pseudo-random number device is read-only. Use the read function, `cat` program, or `dd` program to obtain random numbers.

Example

In this example `bs` specifies the block size in bytes for transfer, and `count` specifies the number of records with block size. The bytes are written to the output file.

```
dd if=/dev/prandom of=<output file name> bs=<xxxx> count=<nnnn>
```

Part 7. Booting and shutdown

Chapter 33. Console device drivers	323
Console features	323
What you should know about the console device drivers	324
Setting up the console device drivers	329
Working with Linux terminals	336
Chapter 34. Initial program loader for System z	347
- zipl	347
Usage	347
Parameter overview	365
Configuration file structure	369
Chapter 35. Booting Linux	375
IPL and booting	375
Control point and boot medium	376
Menu configurations	376
Boot data	377
Booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine	378
Booting Linux in LPAR mode	383
Displaying current IPL parameters	389
Rebooting from an alternative source	391
Chapter 36. Suspending and resuming Linux	395
What you should know about suspend and resume	395
Setting up Linux for suspend and resume	397
Suspending a Linux instance	398
Resuming a suspended Linux instance	399
Chapter 37. Shutdown actions	401
The shutdown configuration in sysfs	402
Configuring z/VM CP commands as a shutdown action	403

These device drivers and features are useful for booting and shutting down Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.

Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at
ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html

Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at
https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

Chapter 33. Console device drivers

The Linux on System z console device drivers support terminal devices for basic Linux control, for example, for booting Linux, for troubleshooting, and for displaying Linux kernel messages.

The only interface to a Linux instance in an LPAR before the boot process is completed is the Hardware Management Console (HMC), see Figure 48. After the boot process has completed, you typically use a network connection to access Linux through a user login, for example, in an ssh session. The possible connections depend on the configuration of your particular Linux instance.

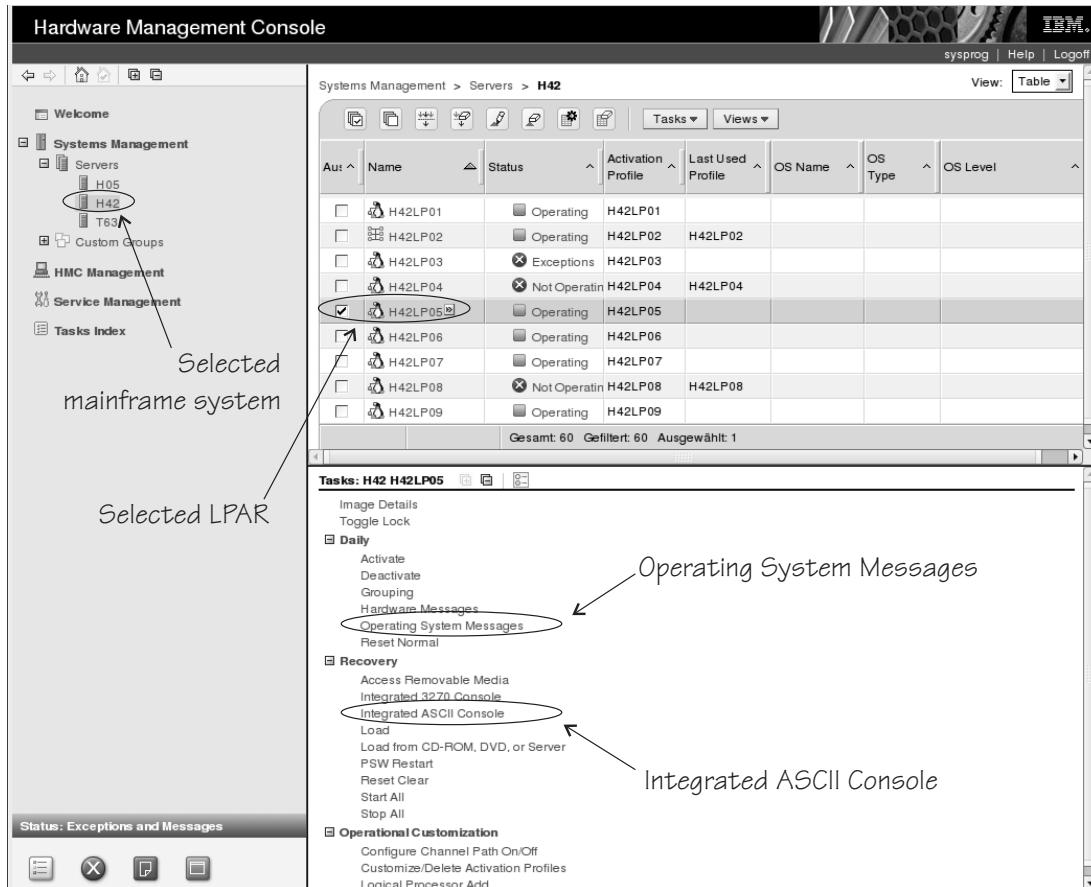


Figure 48. Hardware Management Console

With Linux on z/VM, you typically use a 3270 terminal or terminal emulator to log in to z/VM first. From the 3270 terminal you IPL the Linux boot device. Again, after boot you typically use a network connection to access Linux through a user login rather than a 3270 terminal.

Console features

The console device drivers support several types of terminal devices.

HMC applets

You can use two applets.

Operating System Messages

This applet provides a line-mode terminal. See Figure 49 for an example.

Integrated ASCII Console

This applet provides a full-screen mode terminal.

These HMC applets are accessed through the service-call logical processor (SCLP) console interface.

3270 terminal

This terminal can be based on physical 3270 terminal hardware or a 3270 terminal emulation.

z/VM can use the 3270 terminal as a 3270 device or perform a protocol translation and use it as a 3215 device. As a 3215 device it is a line-mode terminal for the United States code page (037).

The iucvconn program

You can use the iucvconn program from Linux on z/VM to access terminal devices on other Linux instances that run as guests of the same z/VM system.

See *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596 for information about the iucvconn program.

The console device drivers support these terminals as output devices for Linux kernel messages.

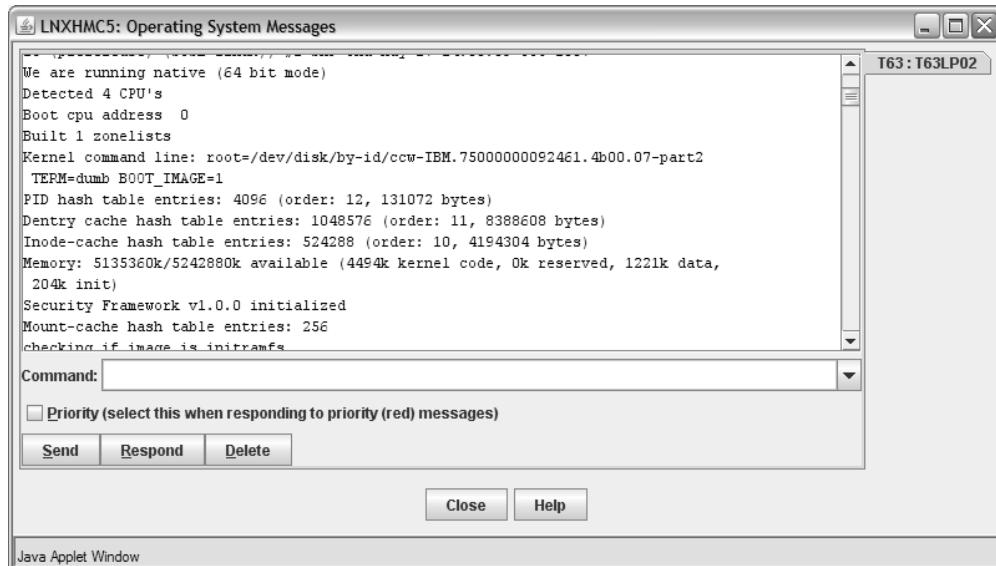


Figure 49. Linux kernel messages on the HMC Operating System Messages applet

What you should know about the console device drivers

The console concepts, naming conventions, and terminology overview help you to understand the tasks you might have to perform with console and terminal devices.

Console terminology

Terminal and *console* have special meanings in Linux.

A Linux terminal

is an input/output device through which users interact with Linux and Linux applications. Login programs and shells typically run on Linux terminals and provide access to the Linux system.

The Linux console

is an output device that displays Linux kernel messages.

A mainframe terminal

is any device that gives a user access to operating systems and applications that are running on the mainframe. This terminal can be a physical device such as a 3270 terminal hardware that is linked to the mainframe through a controller. It can also be a terminal emulator on a workstation that is connected through a network. For example, you access z/OS through a mainframe terminal.

The HMC

is a device that gives a system programmer control over the hardware resources, for example the LPARs. The HMC is a web application on a web server that is connected to the support element (SE). The HMC can be accessed from the SE, but more commonly is accessed from a workstation within a secure network.

Console device

in the context of the console device drivers, a device, as seen by Linux, to which Linux kernel messages can be directed.

On the mainframe, the Linux console and Linux terminals can both be connected to a mainframe terminal.

Before you have a Linux terminal - the zipl boot menu

Do not confuse the zipl boot menu with a Linux terminal.

Depending on your setup, a zipl boot menu might be displayed when you perform an IPL. The zipl boot menu is part of the boot loader that loads the Linux kernel and is displayed before a Linux terminal is set up. The zipl boot menu is very limited in its functions. For example, there is no way to specify uppercase letters because all input is converted to lowercase characters. For more details about booting Linux, see Chapter 35, “Booting Linux,” on page 375. For more details about the zipl boot menu, see Chapter 34, “Initial program loader for System z - zipl,” on page 347.

Device and console names

Each terminal device driver can provide a single console device.

Table 42 lists the terminal device drivers with the corresponding device names and console names.

Table 42. Device and console names

Device driver	Device name	Console name
SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	sclp_line0	ttyS0
SCLP VT220 terminal device driver	ttysclp0	ttyS1
3215 line-mode terminal device driver	ttyS0	ttyS0

Table 42. Device and console names (continued)

Device driver	Device name	Console name
3270 terminal device driver	3270/tty1	tty3270
z/VM IUCV HVC device driver	hvc0 to hvc7	hvc0

As shown in Table 42 on page 325, the console with name ttyS0 can be provided either by the SCLP console device driver or by the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver. The system environment and settings determine which device driver provides ttyS0. For details, see the information about the conmode kernel parameter in “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 329.

Of the terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver only hvc0 is associated with a console.

You require a device node to make a terminal device available to applications, for example to a login program (see “Device nodes”).

Device nodes

Applications access terminal devices by device nodes.

Table 43 shows all device nodes that udev can create for Linux instances in LPAR mode or as z/VM guests. Which of these device nodes are created depends on the conmode= and hvc_iucv= kernel parameters (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 329).

Table 43. Device nodes created by udev

Device driver	On LPAR	On z/VM
SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	/dev/sclp_line0	/dev/sclp_line0
SCLP VT220 terminal device driver	/dev/ttysclp0	/dev/ttysclp0
3215 line-mode terminal device driver	n/a	/dev/ttyS0
3270 terminal device driver	3270/tty1	n/a
z/VM IUCV HVC device driver	n/a	/dev/hvc0

Terminal modes

The Linux terminals that are provided by the console device drivers include line-mode terminals, block-mode terminals, and full-screen mode terminals.

On a full-screen mode terminal, pressing any key immediately results in data being sent to the terminal. Also, terminal output can be positioned anywhere on the screen. This feature facilitates advanced interactive capability for terminal-based applications like the vi editor.

On a line-mode terminal, the user first types a full line, and then presses Enter to indicate that the line is complete. The device driver then issues a read to get the completed line, adds a new line, and hands over the input to the generic TTY routines.

The terminal that is provided by the 3270 terminal device driver is a traditional IBM mainframe block-mode terminal. Block-mode terminals provide full-screen output support and users can type input in predefined fields on the screen. Other than on typical full-screen mode terminals, no input is passed on until the user

presses Enter. The terminal that is provided by the 3270 terminal device driver provides limited support for full-screen applications. For example, the ned editor is supported, but not vi.

Table 44 summarizes when to expect which terminal mode.

Table 44. Terminal modes

Accessed through	Environment	Device driver	Mode
Operating System Messages applet on the HMC	LPAR	SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	Line mode
z/VM emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages applet	z/VM	SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	Line mode
Integrated ASCII Console applet on the HMC	z/VM or LPAR	SCLP VT220 terminal device driver	Full-screen mode
3270 terminal hardware or emulation	z/VM with CONMODE=3215	3215 line-mode terminal device driver	Line mode
3270 terminal hardware or emulation	z/VM with CONMODE=3270	3270 terminal device driver	Block mode
iucvconn program	z/VM	z/VM IUCV HVC device driver	Full-screen mode

The 3270 terminal device driver provides three different views. See “Switching the views of the 3270 terminal device driver” on page 338 for details.

How console devices are accessed

How you can access console devices depends on your environment.

The diagrams in the following sections omit device drivers that are not relevant for the particular access scenario.

Using the HMC for Linux in an LPAR

You can use two applets on the HMC to access terminal devices on Linux instances that run directly in an LPAR.

Figure 50 shows the possible terminal devices for Linux instances that run directly in an LPAR.

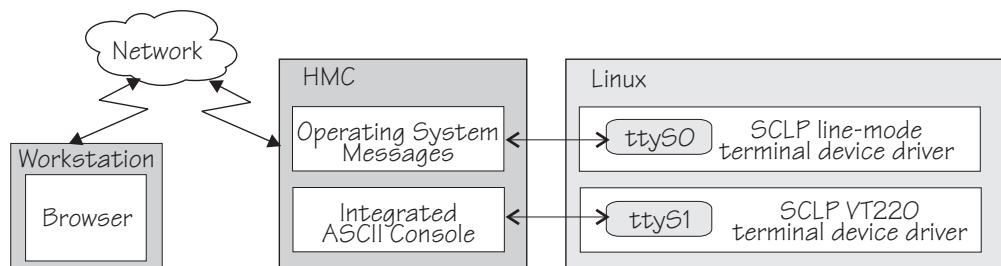


Figure 50. Accessing terminal devices on Linux in an LPAR from the HMC

The **Operating System Messages** applet accesses the device that is provided by the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver. The **Integrated ASCII console** applet accesses the device that is provided by the SCLP VT220 terminal device driver.

Using the HMC for Linux on z/VM

You can use the **HMC Integrated ASCII Console** applet to access terminal devices on Linux instances that run as z/VM guests.

While the ASCII system console is attached to the z/VM guest virtual machine where the Linux instance runs, you can access the ttys1 terminal device from the **HMC Integrated ASCII Console** applet (see Figure 51).

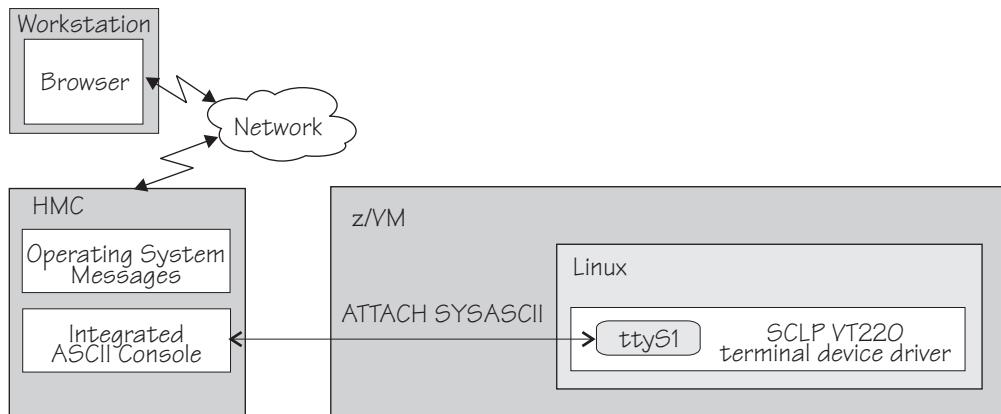


Figure 51. Accessing terminal devices from the HMC for Linux on z/VM

Use the CP ATTACH SYSASCII command to attach the ASCII system console to your z/VM guest virtual machine.

Using 3270 terminal hardware or a 3270 terminal emulation

For Linux on z/VM, you can use 3270 terminal hardware or a 3270 terminal emulation to access a console device.

Figure 52 illustrates how z/VM can handle the 3270 communication.

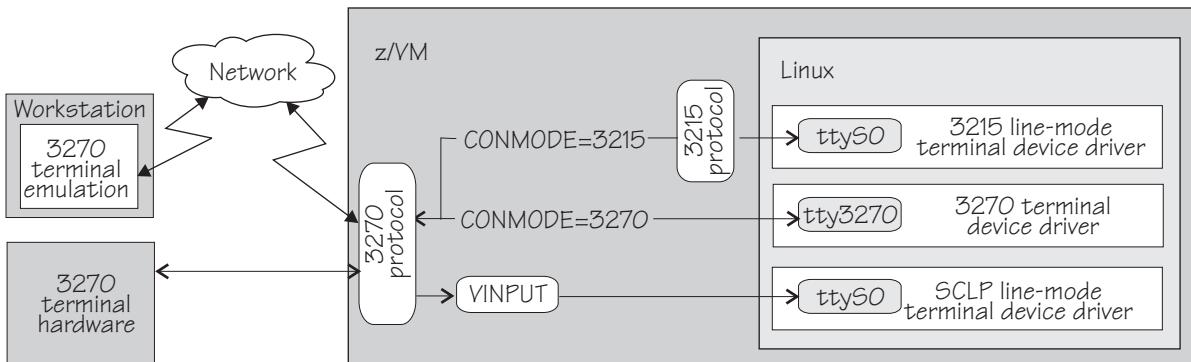


Figure 52. Accessing terminal devices from a 3270 device

Note: Figure 52 shows two console devices with the name **ttyS0**. Only one of these devices can be present at any one time.

CONMODE=3215

translates between the 3270 protocol and the 3215 protocol and connects the 3270 terminal hardware or emulation to the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver in the Linux kernel.

CONMODE=3270

connects the 3270 terminal hardware or emulation to the 3270 terminal device driver in the Linux kernel.

VINPUT

is a z/VM CP command that directs input to the ttyS0 device provided by the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver. In a default z/VM environment, ttyS0 is provided by the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver. You can use the conmode kernel parameter to make the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver provide ttyS0 (see “Console kernel parameter syntax”).

Using iucvconn on Linux on z/VM

On Linux on z/VM, you can access the terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV Hypervisor Console (HVC) device driver.

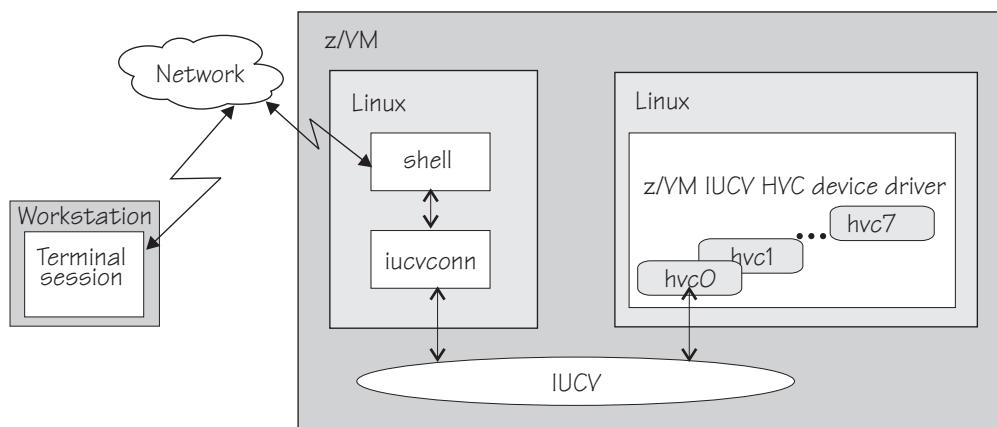


Figure 53. Accessing terminal devices from a peer Linux instance

As illustrated in Figure 53, you access the devices with the iucvconn program from another Linux instance. Both Linux instances are guests of the same z/VM system. IUCV provides the communication between the two Linux instances. With this setup, you can access terminal devices on Linux instances with no external network connection.

Note: Of the terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver only hvc0 can be activated to receive Linux kernel messages.

Setting up the console device drivers

You configure the console device drivers through kernel parameters. You also might have to enable user logins on terminals and ensure that the TERM environment variable has a suitable value.

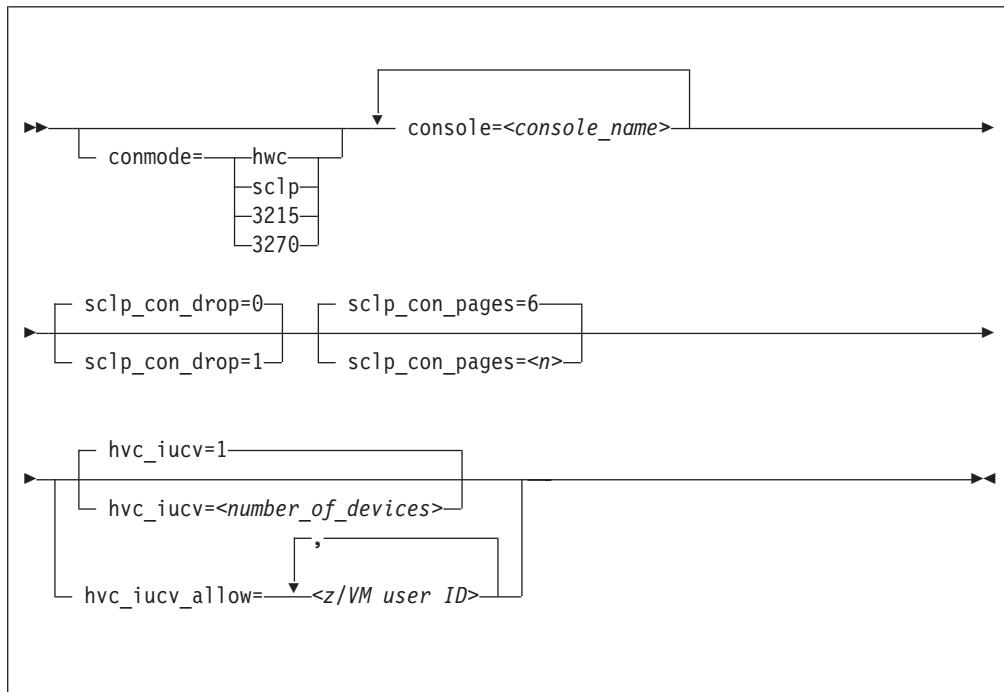
Console kernel parameter syntax

Use the console kernel parameters to configure the console device drivers, line-mode terminals, and HVC terminal devices.

The sclp_con_pages= and sclp_con_drop= parameters apply only to the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver.

The hvc_iucv= and hvc_iucv_allow= kernel parameters apply only to terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver.

Console kernel parameter syntax



Note: If you specify both the conmode= and the console= parameter, specify them in the sequence that is shown, conmode= first.

where:

conmode

specifies which one of the line-mode or block-mode terminal devices is present and provided by which device driver.

A Linux kernel might include multiple console device drivers that can provide a line-mode terminal:

- SCLP line-mode terminal device driver
- 3215 line-mode terminal device driver
- 3270 terminal device driver

On a running Linux instance, only one of these device drivers can provide a device. Table 45 shows how the device driver that is used by default depends on the environment.

Table 45. Default device driver for the line-mode terminal device

Mode	Default
LPAR	SCLP line-mode terminal device driver
z/VM	3215 line-mode terminal device driver or 3270 terminal device driver, depending on the z/VM guest's console settings (the CONMODE field in the output of #CP QUERY TERMINAL). If the device driver you specify with the conmode= kernel parameter contradicts the CONMODE z/VM setting, z/VM is reconfigured to match the specification for the kernel parameter.

You can use the conmode parameter to override the default.

sclp or hwc

specifies the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver.

You need this specification if you want to use the z/VM CP VINPUT command ("Using a z/VM emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages applet" on page 341).

3270

specifies the 3270 device driver.

3215

specifies the 3215 device driver.

console=<console_name>

specifies which devices are to be activated to receive Linux kernel messages. If present, ttyS0 is always activated to receive Linux kernel messages and, by default, it is also the *preferred* console.

The preferred console is used as an initial terminal device, beginning at the stage of the boot process when the 'init'-program is called. Messages that are issued by programs that are run at this stage are therefore only displayed on the preferred console. Multiple terminal devices can be activated to receive Linux kernel messages but only one of the activated terminal devices can be the preferred console.

There is no ttyS0 if you specify conmode=3270.

If you want terminal devices other than ttyS0 to be activated to receive Linux kernel messages, specify a console statement for each of these other devices. The last console statement designates the preferred console.

If you specify one or more console parameters and you want to keep ttyS0 as the preferred console, add a console parameter for ttyS0 as the last console parameter. Otherwise, you do not need a console parameter for ttyS0.

<console_name> is the console name that is associated with the terminal device to be activated to receive Linux kernel messages. Of the terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver only hvc0 can be activated. Specify the console names as shown in Table 42 on page 325.

sclp_con_drop

governs the behavior of the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver if it runs out of output buffer pages. The trade-off is between slowing down Linux and losing console output. Possible values are 0 (default) and 1.

- 0** assures complete console output by pausing until used output buffer pages are written to an output device and can be reused without loss.
- 1** avoids system pauses by overwriting used output buffer pages, even if the content was never written to an output device.

You can use the sclp_con_pages= parameter to set the number of output buffers.

sclp_con_pages=<n>

specifies the number of 4-KB memory pages to be used as the output buffer for the SCLP line-mode terminal. Depending on the line length, each output buffer can hold multiple lines. Use many buffer pages for a kernel with frequent phases of producing console output faster than it can be written to the output device.

Depending on the setting for the sclp_con_drop=, running out of pages can slow down Linux or cause it to lose console output.

The value is a positive integer. The default is 6.

`hvc_iucv=<number_of_devices>`

specifies the number of terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver. `<number_of_devices>` is an integer in the range 0 - 8. Specify 0 to switch off the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver.

`hvc_iucv_allow=<z/VM user ID>,<z/VM user ID>, ...`

specifies an initial list of z/VM guest virtual machines that are allowed to connect to HVC terminal devices. If this parameter is omitted, any z/VM guest virtual machine that is authorized to establish the required IUCV connection is also allowed to connect. On the running system, you can change this list with the **chiucvallow** command. See *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM, SC34-2596* for more information.

Examples

- To activate `tty$1` in addition to `tty$0`, and to use `tty$1` as the preferred console, add the following specification to the kernel command line:

```
console=tty$1
```

- To activate `tty$1` in addition to `tty$0`, and to keep `tty$0` as the preferred console, add the following specification to the kernel command line:

```
console=tty$1 console=tty$0
```

- To use an emulated HMC Operating System Messages applet in a z/VM environment specify:

```
conmode=sclp
```

- To activate `hvc0` in addition to `tty$0`, use `hvc0` as the preferred console, configure the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver to provide four devices, and limit the z/VM guest virtual machines that can connect to HVC terminal devices to `lxtserv1` and `lxtserv2`, add the following specification to the kernel command line:

```
console=hvc0 hvc_iucv=4 hvc_iucv_allow=lxtserv1,lxtserv2
```

- The following specification selects the SCLP line-mode terminal and configures 32 4-KB pages (128 KB) for the output buffer. If buffer pages run out, the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver does not wait for pages to be written to an output device. Instead of pausing, it reuses output buffer pages at the expense of losing content.

```
console=sclp sclp_con_pages=32 sclp_con_drop=1
```

Setting up a z/VM guest virtual machine for iucvconn

Because the `iucvconn` program uses z/VM IUCV to access Linux, you must set up your z/VM guest virtual machine for IUCV.

See “Setting up your z/VM guest virtual machine for IUCV” on page 214 for details about setting up the z/VM guest virtual machine.

For information about accessing Linux through the `iucvtty` program rather than through the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver, see *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM, SC34-2596* or the man pages for the **iucvtty** and **iucvconn** commands.

Setting up a line-mode terminal

The line-mode terminals are primarily intended for booting Linux.

The preferred user access to a running Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 instance is through a user login that runs, for example, in an ssh session. See “Terminal modes” on page 326 for information about the available line-mode terminals.

Tip: If the terminal does not provide the expected output, ensure that dumb is assigned to the TERM environment variable. For example, enter the following command on the bash shell:

```
# export TERM=dumb
```

Setting up a full-screen mode terminal

The full-screen terminal can be used for full-screen text editors, such as vi, and terminal-based full-screen system administration tools.

See “Terminal modes” on page 326 for information about the available full-screen mode terminals.

Tip: If the terminal does not provide the expected output, ensure that linux is assigned to the TERM environment variable. For example, enter the following command on the bash shell:

```
# export TERM=linux
```

Setting up a terminal provided by the 3270 terminal device driver

The terminal that is provided by the 3270 terminal device driver is not a line-mode terminal, but it is also not a typical full-screen mode terminal.

The terminal provides limited support for full-screen applications. For example, the ned editor is supported, but not vi.

Tip: If the terminal does not provide the expected output, ensure that linux is assigned to the TERM environment variable. For example, enter the following command on the bash shell:

```
# export TERM=linux
```

Enabling user logins

Instantiate getty services for terminals to allow users access.

For the default terminals, including hvc0, systemd starts a getty. For other terminals, such as hvc1 to hvc7, you must create a symbolic link. (For the default terminals, see “Device nodes” on page 326.)

Procedure

To create a symbolic link and start a getty on terminal hvc1:

1. Go to the getty targets directory. For example:

```
# cd /etc/systemd/system/getty.target.wants
```

2. Create a link to the serial getty service. This creates a new terminal instance, hvc1, for a serial getty. For example:

```
# ln -s /lib/systemd/system/serial-getty@.service serial-getty@hvc1.service
```

3. Optional: Start the new instance with systemctl. For example:

```
# systemctl start serial-getty@hvc1.service
```

The terminal instance starts automatically at system start when the getty.target is processed.

Preventing respawns for non-operational terminals

If you enable user logins on a terminal that is not available or not operational, systemd keeps respawning the getty service.

Failing respawns increase system and logging activities.

The availability of some terminals depends on the environment where the Linux instance runs, LPAR or z/VM, and on terminal-related kernel parameters. For more information, see the explanations for the `conmode=` and `hvc_iucv=` kernel parameters in “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 329.

You can use ttymode service units for terminals that might or might not be present. The ttymode service unit prevents respawns if the specified terminal is not available or not operational. With suitable ttymode service units in place, you can freely change kernel parameters that affect the presence of terminals.

You need a file similar to the following:

```

# ttyrun-getty@.service - An instance unit template for terminal devices
# Systemd unit to start getty programs if a terminal is available using
# the ttymrun program
#
[Unit]
Description=TTYRun on %I
Documentation=man:ttymrun(8) man:agetty(8)
BindTo=dev-%i.device
After=dev-%i.device systemd-user-sessions.service plymouth-quit-wait.service
After=rc-local.service
Before=getty.target
IgnoreOnIsolate=yes

[Service]
Environment=TERM=linux
ExecStart=-/sbin/ttymrun %I /sbin/agetty -L 115200,38400,9600 %I
IgnoreSIGPIPE=no
KillMode=process
Restart=always
RestartSec=0
SendSIGHUP=yes
TTYPath=/dev/%I
TTYReset=yes
TTYVHangup=yes
UtmpIdentifier=%I

[Install]
WantedBy=getty.target

```

Install the file in `/etc/systemd/system/`

See the `systemd.unit(5)` and `system.service(5)` man page for details about the individual lines in the systemd service units.

Example

To start a getty on terminal `hvc1` using the `ttymrun` service unit:

1. Enable the instance:

```
# systemctl enable ttymrun-getty@hvc1.service
```

2. Optional: Start the new instance with `systemctl`.

```
# systemctl start ttymrun-getty@hvc1.service
```

To enable `hvc2` through `hvc7`, repeat step 1 and 2 for each terminal device. These terminal devices are operational only in a z/VM environment. In addition, they depend on the `hvc_iucv=` kernel parameter (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 329).

Setting up the code page for an x3270 emulation on Linux

For accessing z/VM from Linux through the x3270 terminal emulation, you must add a number of settings to the `.Xdefaults` file to get the correct code translation.

Add these settings:

```
! X3270 keymap and charset settings for Linux
x3270.charset: us-intl
x3270.keymap: circumfix
x3270.keymap.circumfix: :<key>asciicircum: Key("^\")\n
```

Working with Linux terminals

You might have to work with different types of Linux terminals, and use special functions on these terminals.

- “Using the terminal applets on the HMC”
- “Accessing terminal devices over z/VM IUCV”
- “Switching the views of the 3270 terminal device driver” on page 338
- “Setting a CCW terminal device online or offline” on page 338
- “Entering control and special characters on line-mode terminals” on page 339
- “Using the magic sysrequest feature” on page 340
- “Using a z/VM emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages applet” on page 341
- “Using a 3270 terminal in 3215 mode” on page 344

Using the terminal applets on the HMC

You should be aware of some aspects of the line-mode and the full-screen mode terminal when working with the corresponding applets on the HMC.

The following statements apply to both the line-mode terminal and the full-screen mode terminal on the HMC:

- On an HMC, you can open each applet only once.
- Within an LPAR, there can be only one active terminal session for each applet, even if multiple HMCs are used.
- A particular Linux instance supports only one active terminal session for each applet.
- Security hint: Always end a terminal session by explicitly logging off (for example, type “exit” and press Enter). Simply closing the applet leaves the session active and the next user to open the applet resumes the existing session without a logon.
- Slow performance of the HMC is often due to a busy console or increased network traffic.

The following statements apply to the full-screen mode terminal only:

- Output that is written by Linux while the terminal window is closed is not displayed. Therefore, a newly opened terminal window is always blank. For most applications, like login or shell prompts, it is sufficient to press Enter to obtain a new prompt.
- The terminal window shows only 24 lines and does not provide a scroll bar. To scroll up, press Shift+PgUp; to scroll down, press Shift+PgDn.

Accessing terminal devices over z/VM IUCV

Use z/VM IUCV to access hypervisor console (HVC) terminal devices, which are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver.

About this task

For information about accessing terminal devices that are provided by the iucvttty program see *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596.

You access HVC terminal devices from a Linux instance where the iucvconn program is installed. The Linux instance with the terminal device to be accessed and the Linux instance with the iucvconn program must both run as guests of the same z/VM system. The two z/VM guest virtual machines must be configured such that z/VM IUCV communication is permitted between them.

Procedure

Perform these steps to access an HVC terminal device over z/VM IUCV:

1. Open a terminal session on the Linux instance where the iucvconn program is installed.
2. Enter a command of this form:

```
# iucvconn <guest_ID> <terminal_ID>
```

where:

<guest_ID>

specifies the z/VM guest virtual machine on which the Linux instance with the HVC terminal device to be accessed runs.

<terminal_ID>

specifies an identifier for the terminal device to be accessed. HVC terminal device names are of the form hvc n where n is an integer in the range 0-7. The corresponding terminal IDs are lnxhvc n .

Example: To access HVC terminal device hvc0 on a Linux instance that runs on a z/VM guest virtual machine LXGUEST1, enter:

```
# iucvconn LXGUEST1 lnxhvc0
```

For more details and further parameters of the **iucvconn** command, see the **iucvconn** man page or *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596.

3. Press Enter to obtain a prompt.

Output that is written by Linux while the terminal window is closed is not displayed. Therefore, a newly opened terminal window is always blank. For most applications, like login or shell prompts, it is sufficient to press Enter to obtain a new prompt.

Security hint

Always end terminal sessions by explicitly logging off (for example, type **exit** and press Enter). If logging off results in a new login prompt, press Control and Underscore (Ctrl+_), then press **D** to close the login window. Simply closing the terminal window for a hvc0 terminal device that was activated for Linux kernel messages leaves the device active. The terminal session can then be reopened without a login.

Switching the views of the 3270 terminal device driver

The 3270 terminal device driver provides three different views.

Use function key 3 (PF3) to switch between the views (see Figure 54).

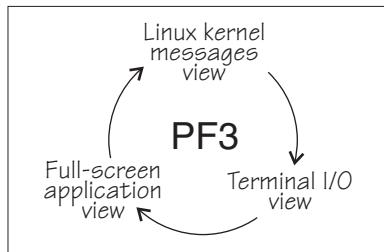


Figure 54. Switching views of the 3270 terminal device driver

The Linux kernel messages view is available only if the terminal device is activated for Linux kernel messages. The full-screen application view is available only if there is an application that uses this view, for example, the ned editor.

Be aware that the 3270 terminal provides only limited full-screen support. The full-screen application view of the 3270 terminal is not intended for applications that require vt220 capabilities. The application itself must create the 3270 data stream.

For the Linux kernel messages view and the terminal I/O view, you can use the PF7 key to scroll backward and the PF8 key to scroll forward. The scroll buffers are fixed at four pages (16 KB) for the Linux kernel messages view and five pages (20 KB) for the terminal I/O view. When the buffer is full and more terminal data needs to be printed, the oldest lines are removed until there is enough room. The number of lines in the history, therefore, vary. Scrolling in the full-screen application view depends on the application.

You cannot issue z/VM CP commands from any of the three views that are provided by the 3270 terminal device driver. If you want to issue CP commands, use the PA1 key to switch to the CP READ mode.

Setting a CCW terminal device online or offline

The 3270 terminal device driver uses CCW devices and provides them as CCW terminal devices.

About this task

This section applies to Linux on z/VM. A CCW terminal device can be:

- The tty3270 terminal device that can be activated for receiving Linux kernel messages.

If this device exists, it comes online early during the Linux boot process. In a default z/VM environment, the device number for this device is 0009. In sysfs, it is represented as /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.0.0009. You need not set this device online and you must not set it offline.

- CCW terminal devices through which users can log in to Linux with the CP DIAL command.

These devices are defined with the CP DEF GRAF command. They are represented in sysfs as /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.<n>.<devno> where <n> is

the subchannel set ID and <devno> is the virtual device number. By setting these devices online, you enable them for user logins. If you set a device offline, it can no longer be used for user login.

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for more information about the DEF GRAF and DIAL commands.

Procedure

You can use the **chccwdev** command (see “**chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes**” on page 436) to set a CCW terminal device online or offline. Alternatively, you can write 1 to the device's online attribute to set it online, or 0 to set it offline.

Examples

- To set a CCW terminal device 0.0.7b01 online, issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.7b01
```

Alternatively issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.0.7b01/online
```

- To set a CCW terminal device 0.0.7b01 offline, issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.7b01
```

Alternatively issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.0.7b01/online
```

Entering control and special characters on line-mode terminals

Line-mode terminals do not have a control (Ctrl) key. Without a control key, you cannot enter control characters directly.

Also, pressing the Enter key adds a newline character to your input string. Some applications do not tolerate such trailing newline characters.

Table 46 summarizes how you can use the caret character (^) to enter some control characters and to enter strings without appended newline characters.

Table 46. Control and special characters on line-mode terminals

For the key combination	Enter	Usage
Ctrl+C	^c	Cancel the process that is running in the foreground of the terminal.
Ctrl+D	^d	Generate an end of file (EOF) indication.
Ctrl+Z	^z	Stop a process.
n/a	^n	Suppresses the automatic generation of a new line. Thus, you can enter single characters; for example, the characters that are needed for yes/no answers in some utilities.

Note: For a 3215 line-mode terminal in 3215 mode, you must use United States code page (037).

Using the magic sysrequest feature

You can call the magic sysrequest functions from a line-mode terminal and, depending on your setup, from the hvc0 terminal device.

To call the magic sysrequest functions on a line-mode terminal, enter the two characters “^_” (caret and hyphen) followed by a third character that specifies the particular function.

You can also call the magic sysrequest functions from the hvc0 terminal device if it is present and is activated to receive Linux kernel messages. To call the magic sysrequest functions from hvc0, enter the single character Ctrl+o followed by the character for the particular function.

Table 47 provides an overview of the commands for the magic sysrequest functions:

Table 47. Magic sysrequest functions

On line-mode terminals, enter	On hvc0, enter	To
^_b	Ctrl+o b	Re-IPL immediately (see “lsreipl - List IPL and re-IPL settings” on page 511).
^_s	Ctrl+o s	Emergency sync all file systems.
^_u	Ctrl+o u	Emergency remount all mounted file systems read-only.
^_t	Ctrl+o t	Show task info.
^_m	Ctrl+o m	Show memory.
	Ctrl+o	Set the console log level.
^_ followed by a digit (0 - 9)	followed by a digit (0 - 9)	
^_e	Ctrl+o e	Send the TERM signal to end all tasks except init.
^_i	Ctrl+o i	Send the KILL signal to end all tasks except init.
^_p	Ctrl+o p	Display perf (cpum_cf) register contents.

Note: In Table 47 `Ctrl+o` means pressing `O` while holding down the control key.

Table 47 lists the main magic sysrequest functions that are known to work on Linux on System z. For a more comprehensive list of functions, see Documentation/sysrq.txt in the Linux source tree. Some of the listed functions might not work on your system.

Activating and deactivating the magic sysrequest feature

Use the sysrq procfs attribute to activate or deactivate the magic sysrequest feature.

Procedure

From a Linux terminal or a command prompt, enter the following command to activate the magic sysrequest function:

```
echo 1 > /proc/sys/kernel/sysrq
```

Enter the following command to deactivate the magic sysrequest feature:

```
echo 0 > /proc/sys/kernel/sysrq
```

Alternatively you can use **sysctl** to activate and deactivate the magic sysrequest feature. To check how the magic sysrequest function is set, issue:

```
# sysctl kernel.sysrq  
kernel.sysrq = 1
```

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 the magic sysrequest function is turned on by default. To turn it off using sysctl, issue:

```
# sysctl -w kernel.sysrq=0
```

Triggering magic sysrequest functions from procfs

If you are working from a terminal that does not support a key sequence or combination to call magic sysrequest functions, you can trigger the functions through procfs.

Procedure

Write the character for the particular function to `/proc/sysrq-trigger`. You can use this interface even if the magic sysrequest feature is not activated as described in “Activating and deactivating the magic sysrequest feature” on page 340.

Example

To set the console log level to 9, enter:

```
# echo 9 > /proc/sysrq-trigger
```

Using a z/VM emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages applet

You can use the **Operating System Messages** applet emulation; for example, if the 3215 terminal is not operational.

About this task

The preferred terminal devices for Linux instances that run as z/VM guests are provided by the 3215 or 3270 terminal device drivers.

The emulation requires a terminal device that is provided by the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver. To use the emulation, you must override the default device driver for z/VM environments (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 329).

For the emulation, you use the z/VM CP VINPUT command instead of the graphical user interface at the service element or HMC. Type any input to the operating system with a leading CP VINPUT.

The examples in the sections that follow show the input line of a 3270 terminal or terminal emulator (for example, x3270). Omit the leading #CP if you are in CP read mode. For more information about VINPUT, see *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175.

Priority and non-priority commands

VINPUT commands require a VMSG (non-priority) or PVMSG (priority) specification.

Operating systems that accept this specification, process priority commands with a higher priority than non-priority commands.

The hardware console driver can accept both if supported by the hardware console within the specific machine or virtual machine.

Linux does not distinguish priority and non-priority commands.

Example

The specifications:

```
#CP VINPUT VMSG LS -L
```

and

```
#CP VINPUT PVMSG LS -L
```

are equivalent.

Case conversion

All lowercase characters are converted by z/VM to uppercase. To compensate for this effect, the console device driver converts all input to lowercase.

For example, if you type VInput VMSG echo \$PATH, the device driver gets ECHO \$PATH and converts it into echo \$path.

Linux and bash are case-sensitive and require some specifications with uppercase characters. To include uppercase characters in a command, use the percent sign (%) as a delimiter. The console device driver interprets characters that are enclosed by percent signs as uppercase.

Examples

In the following examples, the first line shows the user input. The second line shows what the device driver receives after the case conversion by CP. The third line shows the command that is processed by bash:

- ```
#cp vinput vmsg ls -l
CP VINPUT VMSG LS -L
ls -l
...
```

- The following input would result in a bash command that contains a variable \$path, which is not defined in lowercase:

```
#cp vinput vmsg echo $PATH
CP VINPUT VMSG ECHO $PATH
echo $path
...
```

To obtain the correct bash command enclose the uppercase string with the conversion escape character:

```
#cp vinput vmsg echo $%PATH%
CP VINPUT VMSG ECHO $%PATH%
echo $PATH
...
```

## Using the escape character

The quotation mark ("") is the standard CP escape character. To include the escape character in a command that is passed to Linux, you must type it twice.

### Example

The following command passes a string in double quotation marks to be echoed.

```
#cp vinput pvmsg echo ""here is ""$0
CP VINPUT PVMSG ECHO "HERE IS "$0
echo "here is "$0
here is -bash
```

In the example, \$0 resolves to the name of the current process.

## Using the end-of-line character

To include the end-of-line character in the command that is passed to Linux, you must specify it with a leading escape character.

If you are using the standard settings according to “Using a 3270 terminal in 3215 mode” on page 344, you must specify “#” to pass # to Linux.

If you specify the end-of-line character without a leading escape character, z/VM CP interprets it as an end-of-line character that ends the **VINPUT** command.

### Example

In this example a number sign is intended to mark the begin of a comment in the bash command. This character is misinterpreted as the beginning of a second command.

```
#cp vinput pvmsg echo "%N%umber signs start bash comments" #like this one
CP VINPUT PVMSG ECHO "%NUMBER SIGNS START BASH COMMENTS"
LIKE THIS ONE
HCPCMD001E Unknown CP command: LIKE
...
```

The escape character prevents the number sign from being interpreted as an e character.

```
#cp vinput pvmsg echo "%N%umber signs start bash comments" "#like this one
VINPUT PVMSG ECHO "%NUMBER SIGNS START BASH COMMENTS" #LIKE THIS ONE
echo "Number signs start bash comments" #like this one
Number signs start bash comments
```

## Simulating the Enter and Spacebar keys

You can use the **CP VINPUT** command to simulate the Enter and Spacebar keys.

Simulate the Enter key by entering a blank followed by \n:

```
#CP VINPUT VMSG \n
```

Simulate the Spacebar key by entering two blanks followed by \n:

```
#CP VINPUT VMSG \n
```

## Using a 3270 terminal in 3215 mode

The z/VM control program (CP) defines five characters as line-editing symbols. Use the **CP QUERY TERMINAL** command to see the current settings.

The default line-editing symbols depend on your terminal emulator. You can reassign the symbols by changing the settings of LINEND, TABCHAR, CHARDEL, LINEDEL, or ESCAPE with the **CP TERMINAL** command. Table 48 shows the most commonly used settings:

*Table 48. Line edit characters*

| Character | Symbol  | Usage                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| #         | LINEND  | The end of line character. With this character, you can enter several logical lines at once.                                                                                          |
|           | TABCHAR | The logical tab character.                                                                                                                                                            |
| @         | CHARDEL | The character delete symbol deletes the preceding character.                                                                                                                          |
| [ or ¢    | LINEDEL | The line delete symbol deletes everything back to and including the previous LINEND symbol or the start of the input. "[" is common for ASCII terminals and "¢" for EBCDIC terminals. |
| "         | ESCAPE  | The escape character. With this character, you can enter a line-edit symbol as a normal character.                                                                                    |

To enter a line-edit symbol, you must precede it with the escape character. In particular, to enter the escape character you must type it twice.

## Examples

The following examples assume the settings of Table 48 on page 344 with the opening bracket character ([] as the “delete line” character.

- To specify a tab character, specify:  
" |
- To specify a double quotation mark character, specify:  
""
- If you type the character string:

```
#CP HALT#CP ZIPL 190[#CP IPL 1@290 PARM vmpoff=""MSG OP REBOOT"#IPL 290"
```

the actual commands that are received by CP are:

```
CP HALT
CP IPL 290 PARM vmpoff="MSG OP REBOOT#IPL 290"
```



---

## Chapter 34. Initial program loader for System z - zipl

Use **zipl** to prepare a boot device (with a Linux program loader), to prepare a dump device, or to load a data file to initialize a discontiguous saved segment (DCSS).

Instead of preparing a dump device with the **zipl** tool you can also use the kdump infrastructure. To use kdump, no preparation with **zipl** is necessary. For more information about the kdump infrastructure and the dump tools that **zipl** installs, see *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711.

You can simulate a **zipl** command to test a configuration before you apply the command to an actual device (see dry-run).

**zipl** supports the following devices:

- Enhanced Count Key Data (ECKD) DASDs with fixed block Linux disk layout (ldl)
- ECKD DASDs with z/OS-compliant compatible disk layout (cdl)
- Fixed Block Access (FBA) DASDs
- Magnetic tape subsystems compatible with IBM3480, IBM3490, or IBM3590 (boot and dump devices only)
- SCSI with PC-BIOS disk layout

---

## Usage

The **zipl** tool has base functions that can be called from the command line or in configuration-file mode. There are generic parameters and parameters that are specific to particular base functions.

### zipl base functions

For each base function, there is a short and a long command-line option and, with one exception, a corresponding configuration-file option.

*Table 49. zipl base functions*

| Base function                                                                                                                           | Command line<br>short option | Command line<br>long option | Configuration<br>file option |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Install a boot loader<br><br>See “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for details.                                                     | -i                           | --image                     | image=                       |
| Prepare a DASD or tape dump device<br><br>See “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 357 for details.                           | -d                           | --dump-to                   | dump-to=                     |
| Prepare a list of ECKD volumes for a multi-volume dump<br><br>See “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 359 for details. | -M                           | --mvdump                    | mvdump=                      |

*Table 49. zipl base functions (continued)*

| Base function                                                                                                                                                                                       | Command line<br>short option | Command line<br>long option | Configuration<br>file option |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Prepare a SCSI dump device<br><br>See “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 360 for details.                                                                                             | -D                           | --dumptofs                  | dumptofs=                    |
| Prepare a device to load a file to initialize discontiguous named saved segments<br><br>See “Installing a loader to initialize a discontiguous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 363 for details. | -s                           | --segment                   | segment=                     |
| Install a menu configuration<br><br>See “Installing a menu configuration” on page 364 for details.                                                                                                  | -m                           | --menu                      | (None)                       |

## zipl modes and syntax overview

When running **zipl**, you can either directly specify a base function with its parameters or a configuration file with specifications, or you can use the default **zipl** configuration file.

**zipl** operates in one of two modes:

### Command-line mode

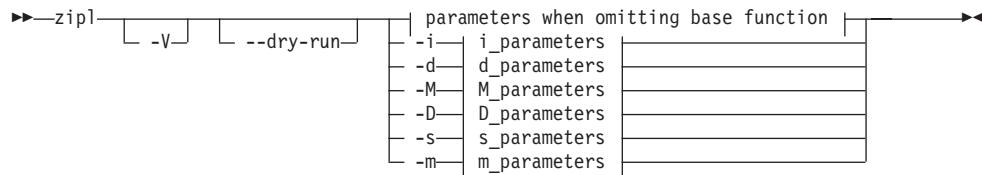
If a **zipl** command is issued with a base function other than installing a menu configuration (see “Installing a menu configuration” on page 364), the entire configuration must be defined by using command-line parameters. See the following base functions for how to specify command-line parameters:

- “Preparing a boot device” on page 351
- “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 357
- “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 359
- “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 360
- “Installing a loader to initialize a discontiguous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 363

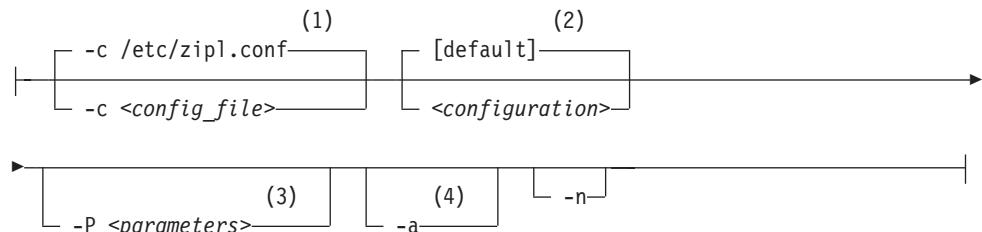
### Configuration-file mode

If a **zipl** command is issued either without a base function or to install a menu configuration, a configuration file is accessed. For more information, see “Configuration file structure” on page 369.

## zipl syntax overview



### parameters when omitting base function:



### Notes:

- 1 You can change the default configuration file with the ZIPLCONF environment variable.
- 2 If no configuration is specified, **zipl** uses the configuration in the [defaultboot] section of the configuration file (see “Configuration file structure” on page 369).
- 3 In a boot configuration or with a SCSI dump configuration only.
- 4 In a boot configuration or a menu configuration only.

Where:

**-c <config\_file>**  
specifies the configuration file to be used.

**<configuration>**  
specifies a single configuration section in a configuration file.

**-P <parameters>**  
can optionally be used to provide:

#### kernel parameters

in a boot configuration section. See “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 353 for information about how kernel parameters specified with the **-P** option are combined with any kernel parameters specified in the configuration file.

#### SCSI system dumper parameters

in a SCSI dump configuration section. See “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 362 for information about how parameters specified with the **-P** option are combined with any parameters specified in the configuration file.

If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotation marks ('') or double quotation marks ("").

- a** in a boot configuration section, adds kernel image, kernel parameter file, and initial RAM disk to the bootmap file. Use this option when these files are spread across multiple disks to ensure that they are available at IPL time. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file that is created in the target directory.
  - n** suppresses confirmation prompts that require operator responses to allow unattended processing (for example, for processing DASD or tape dump configuration sections).
  - V** provides verbose command output.
- dry-run**
- simulates a **zip1** command. Use this option to test a configuration without overwriting data on your device.
- During simulation, **zip1** performs all command processing and issues error messages where appropriate. Data is temporarily written to the target directory and is cleared up when the command simulation is completed.
- v** displays version information.
  - h** displays help information.

The basic functions and their parameters are described in detail in the following sections.

See “Parameter overview” on page 365 for a summary of the short and long command-line options and their configuration file equivalents.

## Examples

- To process the default configuration in the default configuration file (`/etc/zip1.conf`, unless specified otherwise with the environment variable `ZIPLCONF`) issue:

```
zip1
```

- To process the default configuration in a configuration file `/etc/myxmp.conf` issue:

```
zip1 -c /etc/myxmp.conf
```

- To process a configuration [myconf] in the default configuration file issue:

```
zip1 myconf
```

- To process a configuration [myconf] in a configuration file `/etc/myxmp.conf` issue:

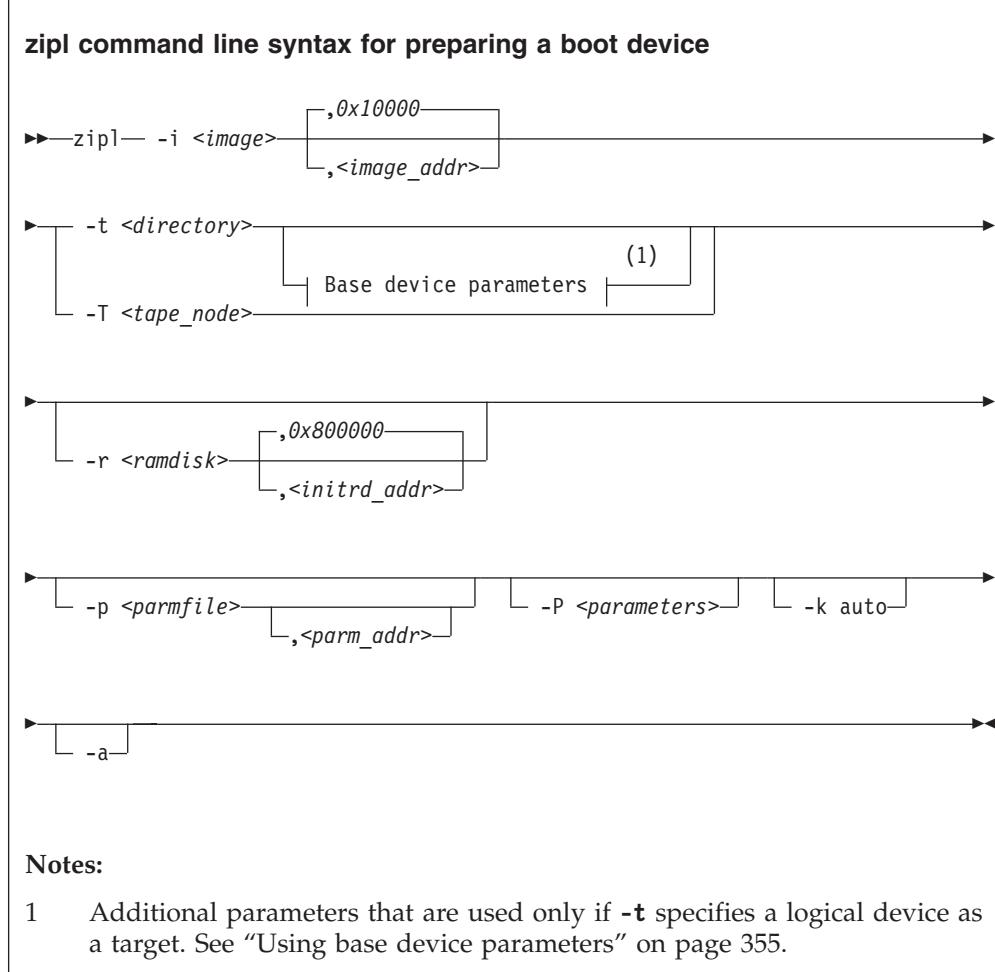
```
zip1 -c /etc/myxmp.conf myconf
```

- To simulate processing a configuration [myconf] in a configuration file `/etc/myxmp.conf` issue:

```
zip1 --dry-run -c /etc/myxmp.conf myconf
```

## Preparing a boot device

Use **zipl** with the **-i** (--) command-line option or with the **image=** configuration-file option to prepare a boot device.



To prepare a device as a boot device, you must specify:

**The location** *<image>*

of the Linux kernel image on the file system.

**A target** *<directory>* **or** *<tape\_node>*

**zipl** installs the boot loader code on the device that contains the specified directory *<directory>* or to the specified tape device *<tape\_node>*.

Optionally, you can also specify:

**A kernel image address** *<image\_addr>*

to which the kernel image is loaded at IPL time. The default address is 0x10000.

**The RAM disk location** *<ramdisk>*

of an initial RAM disk image (initrd) on the file system.

**A RAM disk image address <initrd\_addr>**

to which the RAM disk image is loaded at IPL time. If you do not specify this parameter, **zipl** investigates the location of other components and calculates a suitable address for you.

**Kernel parameters**

to be used at IPL time. If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotation marks ('') or double quotation marks ("").

You can specify parameters <parameters> directly on the command line. Instead or in addition, you can specify a location <parmfile> of a kernel parameter file on the file system. See “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 353 for a discussion of how **zipl** combines multiple kernel parameter specifications.

**A parameter address <parm\_addr>**

to which the kernel parameters are loaded at IPL time. The default address is 0x1000.

**An option -k auto**

to install a kdump kernel that can be used as a stand-alone dump tool. You can IPL this kernel in an LPAR or guest virtual machine to create a dump of a previously running operating system instance that has been configured with a reserved memory area for kdump. For Linux, this memory area is reserved with the crashkernel= kernel parameter.

**An option -a**

to add the kernel image, kernel parameter file, and initial RAM disk to the bootmap file. Use this option when these files are spread across multiple disks to ensure that they are available at IPL time. This option is available on the command line only. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file that is created in the target directory.

See “Parameter overview” on page 365 for a summary of the parameters. This summary includes the long options that you can use on the command line.

Figure 55 summarizes how you can specify a boot configuration within a configuration file section. Required specifications are shown in bold. See “Configuration file structure” on page 369 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

---

```
[<section_name>]
image=<image>,<image_addr>
ramdisk=<ramdisk>,<initrd_addr>
parmfile=<parmfile>,<parm_addr>
parameters=<parameters>
Next line for devices other than tape only
target=<directory>
Next line for tape devices only
tape=<tape_node>
Next line for stand-alone kdump only
kdump=auto
```

---

Figure 55. *zipl syntax for preparing a boot device - configuration file mode*

## Example

The following command identifies the location of the kernel image as /boot/mnt/image-2, identifies the location of an initial RAM disk as /boot/mnt/initrd, specifies a kernel parameter file /boot/mnt/parmf-2, and writes the required boot loader code to /boot. At IPL time, the initial RAM disk is to be loaded to address 0x900000, rather than an address that is calculated by **zipl**. Kernel image, initial RAM disk, and the kernel parameter file are to be copied to the bootmap file on the target directory /boot rather than being referenced.

```
zipl -i /boot/mnt/image-2 -r /boot/mnt/initrd,0x900000 -p /boot/mnt/parmf-2 -t /boot -a
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this example:

```
[boot2]
image=/boot/mnt/image-2
ramdisk=/boot/mnt/initrd,0x900000
paramfile=/boot/mnt/parmf-2
target=/boot
```

There is no configuration file equivalent for option **-a**. To use this option for a boot configuration in a configuration file, it must be specified with the **zipl** command that processes the configuration.

If the configuration file is called /etc/myxmp.conf:

```
zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf boot2 -a
```

## How kernel parameters from different sources are combined

**zipl** allows for multiple sources of kernel parameters when preparing boot devices.

In command-line mode, there are two possible sources of kernel parameters. The parameters are processed in the following order:

1. Parameters in the kernel parameter file (specified with the **-p** or **--parmf** option)
2. Parameters that are specified on the command line (specified with the **-P** or **--parameters** option)

In configuration file mode, there are three possible sources of kernel parameters. The parameters are processed in the following order:

1. Parameters that are specified in the kernel parameter file (specified with the **paramfile=** option)
2. Parameters that are specified in the configuration section (specified with the **parameters=** option)
3. Parameters that are specified on the command line (specified with the **-P** or **--parameters** option)

Parameters from different sources are concatenated and passed to the kernel in one string. At IPL time, the combined kernel parameter string is loaded to address 0x1000, unless an alternate address is provided.

For more information about the different sources of kernel parameters, see “Including kernel parameters in a boot configuration” on page 22.

## Preparing a logical device as a boot device

A *logical device* is a block device that represents one or more real devices.

If your boot directory is on a logical DASD or SCSI device, **zipl** cannot detect all required information about the underlying real device or devices and needs extra input.

Logical devices can be two DASDs combined into a logical mirror volume. Another examples are a linear mapping of a partition to a real device or a more complex mapping hierarchy. Logical devices are controlled by a device mapper.

Blocks on the logical device must map to blocks on the underlying real device or devices linearly. If two blocks on the logical device are adjacent, they must also be adjacent on the underlying real devices. This requirement excludes mappings such as *striping*.

You always boot from a real device. **zipl** must be able to write to that device, starting at block 0. In a logical device setup, starting at the top of the mapping hierarchy, the first block device that grants access to block 0 (and subsequent blocks) is the *base device*, see Figure 56.

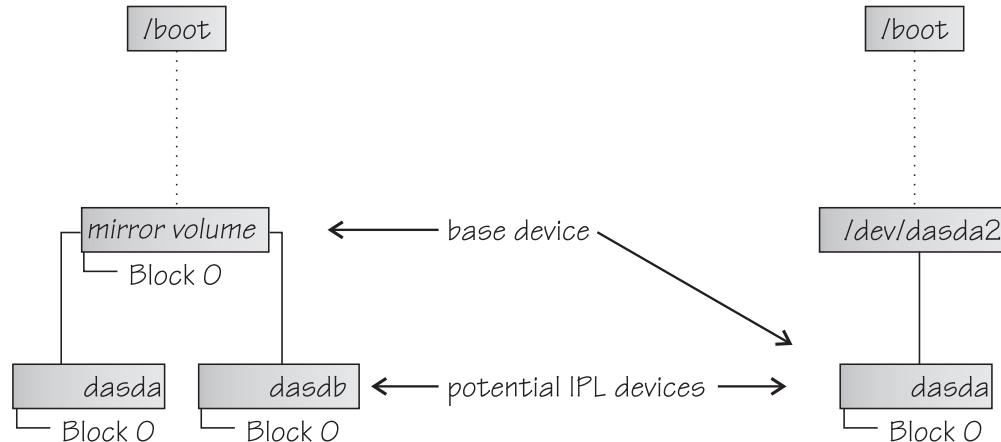


Figure 56. Definition of base device

A base device can have the following mappings:

- A mapping to a part of a real device that contains block 0
- A mapping to one complete real device
- A mapping to multiple real devices.

For a mapping to multiple real devices all the real devices must share the device characteristics and contain the same data (for example, a mirror setup). The mapping can also be to parts of the devices if these parts contain block 0. The mapping must not combine multiple devices into one large device.

The **zipl** command needs the device node of the base device and information about the physical characteristics of the underlying real devices. For most logical boot devices, a helper script automatically provides all the required information to **zipl** for you (see “Using a helper script” on page 355).

If you decide not to use the supplied helper script, or want to write your own helper script, you can use parameters to supply the base device information to **zipl**, see “Using base device parameters” and “Writing your own helper script” on page 357.

## Using a helper script

**zipl** provides a helper script, `zipl_helper.device-mapper`, that detects the required information and provides it to **zipl** for you.

The helper script is used automatically when you run `zip1` to prepare a boot device. Specify the parameters for the kernel image, parameter file, initial RAM disk, and target as usual. See “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for details about the parameters.

Assuming an example device for which the location of the kernel image is /boot/image-5, the location of an initial RAM disk as /boot/initrd-5, a kernel parameter file /boot/parmf-5, and which writes the required boot loader code to /boot and is a device mapper device, the command then becomes:

```
(# zip1 -i /boot/image-5 -r /boot/initrd-5 -p /boot/parmf-5 -t /boot
```

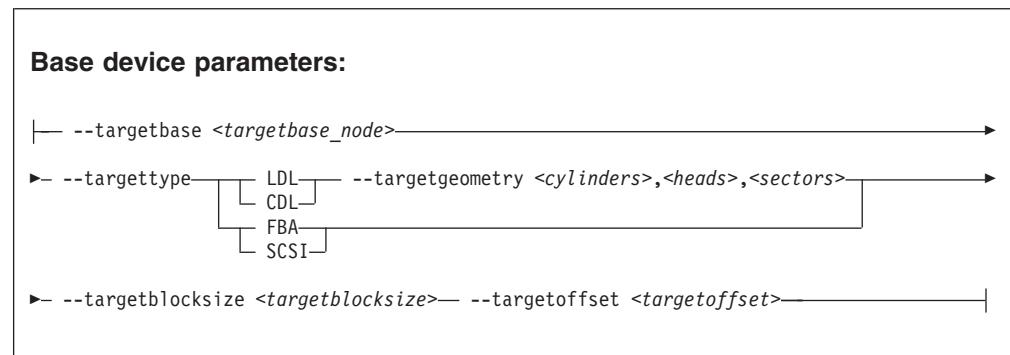
The corresponding configuration file section becomes:

```
[boot5]
image=/boot/image-5
ramdisk=/boot/initrd-5
paramfile=/boot/parmf-5
target=/boot
```

## Using base device parameters

You can use parameters to supply the base device information to `zipl` directly.

The following command syntax for the base device parameters is used for logical boot devices. It extends the **zip1** syntax as shown in “Preparing a boot device” on page 351.



You must specify the following device information:

**The device node** *<targetbase\_node>*

of the base device, either by using the standard device name or in form of the major and minor number, separated by a colon (:).

**Example:** The device node specification for the device might be /dev/dm-0 and the equivalent specification with major and minor numbers might be 253:0.

#### The device type

of the base device. The following specifications are valid:

- LDL** for ECKD type DASD with the Linux disk layout.
- CDL** for ECKD type DASD with the compatible disk layout.
- FBA** for FBA type DASD.
- SCSI** for FCP-attached SCSI disks.

**LDL and CDL only:** The disk geometry <cylinders>,<heads>,<sectors> of the base device in cylinders, heads, and sectors.

#### The block size <targetblocksize>

in bytes per block of the base device.

#### The offset <targetoffset>

in blocks between the start of the physical device and the start of the topmost logical device in the mapping hierarchy.

Figure 57 shows how you can specify this information in a configuration file.

---

```
[<section_name>
image=<image>,<image_addr>
ramdisk=<ramdisk>,<initrd_addr>
parmfile=<parmfile>,<parm_addr>
parameters=<parameters>
target=<directory>
targetbase=<targetbase_node>
targettype=LDL|CDL|FBA|SCSI
Next line for target types LDL and CDL only
targetgeometry=<cylinders>,<heads>,<sectors>
targetblocksize=<targetblocksize>
targetoffset=<targetoffset>
```

---

Figure 57. zipl syntax for preparing a logical device as a boot device - configuration file mode

#### Example

The example command identifies the location of the kernel image as /boot/image-5, identifies the location of an initial RAM disk as /boot/initrd-5, specifies a kernel parameter file /boot/parmf-5, and writes the required boot loader code to /boot.

The command specifies the following information about the base device: the device node is /dev/dm-3, the device has the compatible disk layout, there are 6678 cylinders, there are 15 heads, there are 12 sectors, and the topmost logical device in the mapping hierarchy begins with an offset of 24 blocks from the start of the base device.

```
zipl -i /boot/image-5 -r /boot/initrd-5 -p /boot/parmf-5 -t /boot --targetbase /dev/dm-3 \
--targettype CDL --targetgeometry 6678,15,12 --targetblocksize=4096 --targetoffset 24
```

**Note:** Instead of using the continuation sign (\) at the end of the first line, you might want to specify the entire command on a single line.

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this example:

```
[boot5]
image=/boot/image-5
ramdisk=/boot/initrd-5
paramfile=/boot/parmf-5
target=/boot
targetbase=/dev/dm-3
targettype=CDL
targetgeometry=6678,15,12
targetblocksize=4096
targetoffset=24
```

## Writing your own helper script

You can write your own helper script for device drivers that provide logical devices. The helper script must conform to a set of rules.

- The script must accept the name of the target directory as an argument. From this specification, it must determine a suitable base device. See “Using base device parameters” on page 355.
- The script must write the following base device parameter=<value> pairs to stdout as ASCII text. Each pair must be written on a separate line.
  - **targetbase=<targetbase\_node>**
  - **targettype=<type>** where type can be LDL, CDL, FBA, or SCSI.
  - **targetgeometry=<cylinders>,<heads>,<sectors>** (For LDL and CDL only)
  - **targetblocksize=<blocksize>**
  - **targetoffset=<offset>**
- See “Using base device parameters” on page 355 for the meaning of the base device parameters.
- The script must be named **zipl\_helper.<device>** where <device> is the device name as specified in /proc/devices.
- The script must be in /lib/s390-tools.

## Preparing a DASD or tape dump device

Use **zipl** with the **-d (--dump-to)** command-line option or with the **dump-to=** configuration-file option to prepare a DASD or tape dump device.

### zipl command line syntax for preparing a DASD or tape dump device

```
►—zipl— -d <dump_device> [,<size>] [-n] ►
```

To prepare a DASD or tape dump device, you must specify:

#### The device node <dump\_device>

of the DASD partition or tape device to be prepared as a dump device. **zipl** deletes all data on the partition or tape and installs the boot loader code there.

#### Note:

- If the dump device is an ECKD disk with fixed-block layout (ldl), a dump overwrites the dump utility. You must reinstall the dump utility before you can use the device for another dump.
- If the dump device is a tape, FBA disk, or ECKD disk with the compatible disk layout (cdl), you do not need to reinstall the dump utility after every dump.

Optionally, you can also specify:

**An option `-n`**

to suppress confirmation prompts to allow unattended processing (for example, from a script). This option is available on the command line only.

**A limit `<size>`**

for the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary.

If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory that is used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete.

DASD or tape dump devices are not formatted with a file system so no target directory can be specified. See *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 for details about processing these dumps.

See “Parameter overview” on page 365 for a summary of the parameters. The summary includes the long options that you can use on the command line.

Figure 58 summarizes how you can specify a DASD or tape dump configuration in a configuration file. See “Configuration file structure” on page 369 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

---

```
[<section_name>]
dump-to=<dump_device>,<size>
```

---

*Figure 58. zip1 syntax for preparing a DASD or tape dump device - configuration file mode*

## Example

The following command prepares a DASD partition /dev/dasdc1 as a dump device and suppresses confirmation prompts that require an operator response:

```
zip1 -d /dev/dasdc1 -n
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this example:

```
[dumpdasd]
dump-to=/dev/dasdc1
```

There is no configuration file equivalent for option `-n`. To use this option for a DASD or tape dump configuration in a configuration file, it must be specified with the `zip1` command that processes the configuration.

If the configuration file is called `/etc/myxmp.conf`:

```
zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf dumpdasd -n
```

## Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD

Use **zipl** with the **-M** (--) command-line option or with the **mvdump=** configuration-file option to prepare a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD.

### zipl command line syntax for preparing devices for a multi-volume dump

```
►—zipl—[—f]—[-M <dump_device_list>—[,<size>]—[-n]—►
```

To prepare a set of DASD devices for a multi-volume dump, you must specify:

#### A file **-M <dump\_device\_list>**

containing the device nodes of the dump partitions, separated by one or more line feed characters (0x0a). **zipl** writes a dump signature to each involved partition and installs the stand-alone multi-volume dump tool on each involved volume. Duplicate partitions are not allowed. A maximum of 32 partitions can be listed. The volumes must be formatted with cdl. You can use any block size, even mixed block sizes. However, to speed up the dump process and to reduce wasted disk space, use block size 4096.

Optionally, you can also specify:

#### An option **-f** or **--force**

to force that no signature checking takes place when dumping. Any data on all involved partitions is overwritten without warning.

#### An option **-n**

to suppress confirmation prompts to allow unattended processing (for example, from a script). This option is available on the command line only.

#### A limit **<size>**

for the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary.

If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory that is used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete.

DASD or tape dump devices are not formatted with a file system so no target directory can be specified. See *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 for details about processing these dumps.

See “Parameter overview” on page 365 for a summary of the parameters. This summary includes the long options that you can use on the command line.

Figure 59 on page 360 summarizes how you can specify a multi-volume DASD dump configuration in a configuration file. See “Configuration file structure” on page 369 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

---

```
[<section_name>]
mvdump=<dump_device_list>,<size>
```

---

*Figure 59. zipl syntax for preparing DASD devices for a multi-volume dump - configuration file mode*

## Example

The following command prepares two DASD partitions /dev/dasdc1, /dev/dasdd1 for a multi-volume dump and suppresses confirmation prompts that require an operator response:

```
zipl -M sample_dump_conf -n
```

where the sample\_dump\_conf file contains the two partitions that are separated by line breaks:

```
/dev/dasdc1
/dev/dasdd1
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this example:

```
[multi_volume_dump]
mvdump=sample_dump_conf
```

There is no configuration file equivalent for option **-n**. To use this option for a multi-volume DASD dump configuration in a configuration file, it must be specified with the **zipl** command that processes the configuration.

If the configuration file is called /etc/myxmp.conf:

```
zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf multi_volume_dump -n
```

## Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk

Use **zipl** with the **-D** (**--dumptofs**) command-line option or with the **dumptofs=** configuration-file option to prepare a dump device on a SCSI disk.

**Before you begin:** At least one partition, the *target partition*, must be available to **zipl**.

### zipl command line syntax for preparing a SCSI dump device

```
►—zipl— -D <dump_partition> —————— ,<size> —————— -t <directory>————→
|—————
| —————— -P <parameters> —————— -p <parmfile> ——————→
```

The target partition contains the target directory and is accessed to load the SCSI system dumper tool at IPL time. Dumps are written as files to a *dump partition*.

The dump and target partition can but need not be the same partition. Preferably, dump and target partition are two separate partitions.

The target and dump partitions must be formatted with a file system supported by the SCSI Linux system dumper tool. Unlike DASD and tape, creating a dump device on SCSI disk does not destroy the contents of the target partition. See *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 for more details.

To prepare a SCSI disk as a dump device, you must specify:

**The dump partition** *<dump\_partition>*  
to which the dumps are written.

**A target** *<directory>*  
to which the SCSI system dumper components are written. **zipl** uses the target directory to determine the dump device (target partition).

Optionally, you can also specify:

#### SCSI system dumper parameters

You can specify parameters *<parameters>* directly on the command line. Instead or in addition, you can specify a location *<parmfile>* of a parameter file on the file system. See “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 362 for a discussion of how multiple parameter specifications are combined.

**dump\_dir=/<directory>**  
Path to the directory (relative to the root of the dump partition) where the dump file is to be written. This directory is specified with a leading slash. The directory must exist when the dump is initiated.

**Example:** If the dump partition is mounted as /dumps, and the parameter `dump_dir=/mydumps` is defined, the dump directory would be accessed as /dumps/mydumps.

The default is / (the root directory of the partition).

**dump\_compress=gzip|none**  
Dump compression option. Compression can be time-consuming on slower systems with a large amount of memory.

The default is none.

**dump\_mode=interactive|auto**  
Action that is taken if there is no room on the file system for the new dump file. `interactive` prompts the user to confirm that the dump with the lowest number is to be deleted. `auto` automatically deletes this file.

The default is `interactive`.

If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotation marks ('') or double quotation marks ("").

**A limit** *<size>*  
for the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary.

If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory that is used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete.

See “Parameter overview” on page 365 for a summary of the parameters. This summary includes the long options that you can use on the command line.

Figure 60 summarizes how you can specify a SCSI dump configuration in a configuration file. Required specifications are shown in bold. See “Configuration file structure” on page 369 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

---

```
[<section_name>
dumpofs=<dump_partition>
parmfile=<parmfile>,<parm_addr>
parameters=<parameters>
target=<directory>
```

---

Figure 60. *zipl* syntax for preparing a SCSI dump device - configuration file mode

## Example

The following command prepares a SCSI partition /dev/sda2 as a dump device and a directory /boot as the target directory. Dumps are to be written to a directory mydumps, relative to the mount point. There is to be no compression but instead the oldest dump is automatically deleted if there is not enough space for the new dump.

```
zipl -D /dev/sda2 -P 'dumpdir=/mydumps dump_compress=none dump_mode=auto' -t /boot
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this example:

```
[dumpscsi]
dumpofs=/dev/sda2
parameters='dumpdir=/mydumps dump_compress=none dump_mode=auto'
target=/boot
```

In both the command line and configuration file examples the parameter specifications `dump_compress=none` `dump_mode=auto` could be omitted because they correspond to the defaults.

If the configuration file is called `/etc/myxmp.conf`, the `zipl` command that processes the configuration would be:

```
zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf dumpscsi
```

## How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined

`zipl` allows for multiple sources of SCSI system dumper parameters.

In command-line mode, there are two possible sources of parameters. The parameters are processed in the following order:

1. Parameters in a parameter file (specified with the `-p` or `--parmfile` option)
2. Parameters that are specified on the command line (specified with the `-P` or `--parameters` option)

In configuration file mode, there are three possible sources of parameters. The parameters are processed in the following order:

1. Parameters in a parameter file (specified with the **parmfile=** option)
2. Parameters that are specified in the configuration section (specified with the **parameters=** option)
3. Parameters that are specified on the command line (specified with the **-P** or **--parameters** option)

Parameters from different sources are concatenated and passed to the SCSI system dumper in one string. If the same parameter is specified in multiple sources, the value that is encountered last is used. At IPL time, the combined parameter string is loaded to address (0x1000).

## Installing a loader to initialize a discontiguous named saved segment (DCSS)

Use **zipl** with the **-s (--segment)** command-line option or with the **segment=** configuration-file option to initialize a DCSS.

### **zipl** command line syntax for loading a DCSS

```
►►—zipl— -s <segment_file>,<seg_addr>— -t <directory>—————►►
```

To prepare a device for loading a data file to initialize discontiguous named saved segments, you must specify:

**The source file** *<segment\_file>*  
to be loaded at IPL time.

**The segment address** *<seg\_addr>*  
to which the segment is to be written at IPL time.

**A target** *<directory>*  
**zipl** installs the boot loader code on the device that contains the specified directory *<directory>*.

After the segment is loaded, the system is put into the *disabled wait state*. No Linux instance is started.

See “Parameter overview” on page 365 for a summary of the parameters. The summary includes the long options that you can use on the command line.

Figure 61 on page 364 summarizes how you can specify a file to be loaded to a DCSS within a configuration file section. See “Configuration file structure” on page 369 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

---

```
[<section_name>]
segment=<segment_file>,<seg_addr>
target=<directory>
```

---

Figure 61. *zipl* syntax for loading a DCSS - configuration file mode

## Example

The following command prepares a device for loading a file /boot/segment to a DCSS at address 0x40000000 when IPLed. The boot loader code is written to /boot:

```
zipl -s /boot/segment,0x40000000 -t /boot
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this example:

```
[segment]
segment=/boot/segment,0x40000000
target=/boot
```

If the configuration file is called /etc/myxmp.conf, the **zipl** command that processes the configuration would be:

```
zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf segment
```

## Installing a menu configuration

Use **zipl** with the **-m** (--) command-line option to install a menu configuration.

To prepare a menu configuration, you need a configuration file that includes at least one menu.

### zipl syntax for installing a menu configuration



#### Notes:

- 1 You can change the default configuration file with the ZIPLCONF environment variable.

Where:

#### **-m or --menu**

specifies the menu that defines the menu configuration in the configuration file.

*<config\_file>*

specifies the configuration file where the menu configuration is defined. The default, /etc/zipl.conf, can be changed with the ZIPCONF environment variable.

**-a or --add-files**

adds the kernel image file, parmfile, and initial RAM disk image to the bootmap files in the respective target directories instead of referencing them. Use this option if the files are spread across disks to ensure that the files are available at IPL time. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file that is created in the target directory.

## Example

Using the sample configuration file of Figure 62 on page 372, you could install a menu configuration with:

```
zipl -m menu1
```

## Parameter overview

You might need to know all **zipl** options and how to specify them on the command line or in the configuration file.

|                                     | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Command line short option           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Command line long option            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Configuration file option           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>-a</b>                           | Causes kernel image, kernel parameter file, and initial RAM disk to be added to the bootmap file in the target directory rather than being referenced from this file.                                                                 |
| <b>--add-files</b>                  | Use this option when these files are spread across multiple disks to ensure that they are available at IPL time. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file that is created in the target directory. |
| n/a                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>-c &lt;config_file&gt;</b>       | Specifies the configuration file. You can change the default configuration file /etc/zipl.conf with the environment variable ZIPCONF.                                                                                                 |
| <b>--config=&lt;config_file&gt;</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| n/a                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>&lt;configuration&gt;</i>        | Specifies a configuration section to be read and processed from the configuration file.                                                                                                                                               |
| n/a                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| n/a                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

|                                                                                                                                                                       | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Command line short option</b>                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Command line long option</b>                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Configuration file option</b>                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>-d &lt;dump_device&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b><br><b>--dumpto=&lt;dump_device&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b><br><br><b>dumpto=&lt;dump_device&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b>            | Specifies the DASD partition or tape device to which a dump is to be written after IPL.<br><br>The optional size specification limits the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary. If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory that is used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete. If no limit is provided, all of the available physical memory is dumped.<br><br>See “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 357 and <i>Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7</i> , SC34-2711 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>-D &lt;dump_partition&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b><br><b>--dumpofs=&lt;dump_partition&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b><br><br><b>dumpofs=&lt;dump_partition&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b> | Specifies the partition to which a SCSI dump file is to be written. This partition must be formatted with a file system supported by the SCSI Linux system dumper tool. The dump partition must be on the same physical SCSI disk as the target partition. It can but need not be the partition that also contains the target directory (target partition).<br><br>The optional size specification limits the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary. If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory that is used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete. If no limit is provided, all of the available physical memory is dumped.<br><br>See “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 360 and <i>Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7</i> , SC34-2711 for details. |
| <b>-h</b><br><b>--help</b>                                                                                                                                            | Displays help information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| n/a                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>-i &lt;image&gt;[,&lt;image_addr&gt;]</b><br><b>--image=&lt;image&gt;[,&lt;image_addr&gt;]</b><br><br><b>image=&lt;image&gt;[,&lt;image_addr&gt;]</b>              | Specifies the location of the Linux kernel image on the file system and, optionally, in memory after IPL. The default memory address is 0x10000.<br><br>See “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>-k auto</b><br><b>--kdump=auto</b><br><br><b>kdump=auto</b>                                                                                                        | Installs a kdump kernel that can be used as a stand-alone dump tool. You can IPL this kernel in an LPAR or guest virtual machine to create a dump of a previously running operating system instance that has been configured with a reserved memory area for kdump. For Linux, this memory area is reserved with the <code>crashkernel=</code> kernel parameter.<br><br>See “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

|                                                                                                                                                                           | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Command line short option</b>                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Command line long option</b>                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Configuration file option</b>                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>-m &lt;menu_name&gt;</b><br><b>--menu=&lt;menu_name&gt;</b>                                                                                                            | Specifies the name of the menu that defines a menu configuration in the configuration file (see “Menu configurations” on page 370).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| n/a                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>-M &lt;dump_device_list&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b><br><b>--mvdump=&lt;dump_device_list&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b><br><br><b>mvdump=&lt;dump_device_list&gt;[,&lt;size&gt;]</b> | <p>Specifies a file with a list of DASD partitions to which a dump is to be written after IPL.</p> <p>The optional size specification limits the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary. If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory that is used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete. If no limit is provided, all of the available physical memory is dumped.</p> <p>See “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 359 and <i>Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7</i>, SC34-2711 for details.</p>                                                                                                       |
| <b>-n</b><br><b>--noninteractive</b>                                                                                                                                      | Suppresses all confirmation prompts (for example, when preparing a DASD or tape dump device).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| n/a                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>-p &lt;parmfile&gt;[,&lt;parm_addr&gt;]</b><br><b>--parmfile=&lt;parmfile&gt;[,&lt;parm_addr&gt;]</b><br><br><b>parmfile=&lt;parmfile&gt;[,&lt;parm_addr&gt;]</b>      | <p>In a boot configuration, specifies the location of a kernel parameter file.</p> <p>In a SCSI dump configuration, specifies the location of a parameter file with SCSI system dumper parameters (see “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 360).</p> <p>You can specify multiple sources of kernel or SCSI system dumper parameters. For more information, see “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 362 and “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 353.</p> <p>The optional <i>&lt;parm_addr&gt;</i> specifies the memory address where the combined kernel parameter list is to be loaded at IPL time. This specification is ignored for SCSI dump configuration. SCSI system dumper parameters are always loaded to the default address 0x1000.</p> |

|                                                                         | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Command line short option</b>                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Command line long option</b>                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Configuration file option</b>                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>-P &lt;parameters&gt;</b>                                            | In a boot configuration, specifies kernel parameters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>--parameters=&lt;parameters&gt;</b>                                  | In a SCSI dump configuration, specifies SCSI system dumper parameters (see “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 360)                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>parameters=&lt;parameters&gt;</b>                                    | Individual parameters are single keywords or have the form key=value, without spaces. If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotation marks ('') or double quotation marks ("").                                                        |
|                                                                         | You can specify multiple sources of kernel or SCSI system dumper parameters. For more information, see “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 362 and “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 353.                         |
| <b>-r &lt;ramdisk&gt;[,&lt;initrd_addr&gt;]</b>                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>--ramdisk=&lt;ramdisk&gt;[,&lt;initrd_addr&gt;]</b>                  | Specifies the location of the initial RAM disk (initrd) on the file system and, optionally, in memory after IPL. If you do not specify a memory address, <b>zip1</b> investigates the location of other components and calculates a suitable address for you.                                   |
| <b>ramdisk=&lt;ramdisk&gt;[,&lt;initrd_addr&gt;]</b>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>-s &lt;segment_file&gt;,&lt;seg_addr&gt;</b>                         | Specifies the segment file to load at IPL time and the memory location for the segment.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>--segment=&lt;segment_file&gt;,&lt;seg_addr&gt;</b>                  | See “Installing a loader to initialize a discontiguous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 363 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>segment=&lt;segment_file&gt;,&lt;seg_addr&gt;</b>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>-t &lt;directory&gt;</b>                                             | Specifies the target directory where <b>zip1</b> creates boot-relevant files. The boot loader is installed on the disk that contains the target directory. For a SCSI dump device, this partition must be formatted with a file system supported by the SCSI system dumper (for example, ext4). |
| <b>--target=&lt;directory&gt;</b>                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>target=&lt;directory&gt;</b>                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>none</b>                                                             | For logical boot devices, specifies the device node of the base device, either by using the standard device name or in form of the major and minor number, separated by a colon (:).                                                                                                            |
| <b>--targetbase=&lt;targetbase_node&gt;</b>                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>targetbase=&lt;targetbase_node&gt;</b>                               | See “Using base device parameters” on page 355 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>none</b>                                                             | For logical boot devices, specifies the bytes per block of the base device.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>--targetblocksize=&lt;targetblocksize&gt;</b>                        | See “Using base device parameters” on page 355 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>targetblocksize=&lt;targetblocksize&gt;</b>                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>none</b>                                                             | For logical boot devices that map to ECKD type base devices, specifies the disk geometry of the base device in cylinders, heads, and sectors.                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>--targetgeometry=&lt;cylinders&gt;,&lt;heads&gt;,&lt;sectors&gt;</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>targetgeometry=&lt;cylinders&gt;,&lt;heads&gt;,&lt;sectors&gt;</b>   | See “Using base device parameters” on page 355 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>none</b>                                                             | For logical boot devices, specifies the offset in blocks between the start of the physical device and the start of the logical device.                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>--targetoffset=&lt;targetoffset&gt;</b>                              | See “Using base device parameters” on page 355 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>targetoffset=&lt;targetoffset&gt;</b>                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

|                                  | Explanation                                                                |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Command line short option</b> |                                                                            |
| <b>Command line long option</b>  |                                                                            |
| <b>Configuration file option</b> |                                                                            |
| none                             | For logical boot devices, specifies the device type of the base device.    |
| <b>--targettype=&lt;type&gt;</b> | See “Using base device parameters” on page 355 for details.                |
| <b>targettype=&lt;type&gt;</b>   |                                                                            |
| <b>-T &lt;tape_node&gt;</b>      | Specifies the tape device where <b>zipl</b> installs the boot loader code. |
| <b>--tape=&lt;tape_node&gt;</b>  |                                                                            |
| <b>tape=&lt;tape_node&gt;</b>    |                                                                            |
| <b>-v</b>                        | Prints version information.                                                |
| <b>--version</b>                 |                                                                            |
| n/a                              |                                                                            |
|                                  | Provides more detailed command output.                                     |
| <b>-V</b>                        |                                                                            |
| <b>--verbose</b>                 |                                                                            |
| n/a                              |                                                                            |

If you call **zipl** in configuration file mode without specifying a configuration file, the default /etc/zipl.conf is used. You can change the default configuration file with the environment variable ZIPLCONF.

## Configuration file structure

A configuration file comprises a default section and one or more sections with IPL configurations. In addition, there can be sections that define menu configurations.

### [defaultboot]

a default section that defines what is to be done if the configuration file is called without a section specification.

### [<configuration>]

one or more sections that describe IPL configurations.

### :<menu\_name>

optionally, one or more menu sections that describe menu configurations.

A configuration file section consists of a section identifier and one or more option lines. Option lines are valid only as part of a section. Blank lines are permitted, and lines that begin with the number sign (#) are treated as comments and ignored. Option specifications consist of keyword=value pairs. There can but need not be blanks before and after the equal sign (=) of an option specification.

## Default section

The default section consists of the section identifier, [defaultboot], followed by a single option line.

The option line specifies one of these mutually exclusive options:

**`default=<section_name>`**

where `<section_name>` is one of the IPL configurations described in the configuration file. If the configuration file is called without a section specification, an IPL device is prepared according to this IPL configuration.

**`defaultmenu=<menu_name>`**

where `<menu_name>` is the name of a menu configuration that is described in the configuration file. If the configuration file is called without a section specification, IPL devices are prepared according to this menu configuration.

## Examples

- This default specification points to a boot configuration `boot1` as the default.

```
[defaultboot]
default=boot1
```

- This default specification points to a menu configuration with a menu `menu1` as the default.

```
[defaultboot]
defaultmenu=menu1
```

## IPL configurations

An IPL configuration has a section identifier that consists of a section name within square brackets and is followed by one or more option lines.

Each configuration includes one of the following mutually exclusive options that determine the type of IPL configuration:

**`image=<image>`**

Defines a boot configuration. See “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for details.

**`dump-to=<dump_device>`**

Defines a DASD or tape dump configuration. See “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 357 for details.

**`mvdump=<dump_device_list>`**

Defines a multi-volume DASD dump configuration. See “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 359 for details.

**`dump-to-fs=<dump_partition>`**

Defines a SCSI dump configuration. See “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 360 for details.

**`segment=<segment_file>`**

Defines a DCSS load configuration. See “Installing a loader to initialize a discontiguous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 363 for details.

Additional parameters might be required for logical boot devices (see “Preparing a logical device as a boot device” on page 354).

## Menu configurations

For DASD and SCSI devices, you can define a menu configuration. A menu configuration has a section identifier that consists of a menu name with a leading colon.

The identifier is followed by one or more lines with references to IPL configurations in the same configuration file and one or more option lines.

**target=<directory>**

specifies a device where a boot loader is installed that handles multiple IPL configurations. For menu configurations, the target options of the referenced IPL configurations are ignored.

**<i>=<configuration>**

specifies a menu item. A menu includes one and more lines that specify the menu items.

<configuration> is the name of an IPL configuration that is described in the same configuration file. You can specify multiple boot configurations. For SCSI target devices, you can also specify one or more SCSI dump configurations. You cannot include DASD dump configurations as menu items.

<i> is the configuration number. The configuration number sequentially numbers the menu items, beginning with 1 for the first item. When initiating an IPL from a menu configuration, you can specify the configuration number of the menu item you want to use.

**default=<n>**

specifies the configuration number of one of the configurations in the menu to define it as the default configuration. If this option is omitted, the first configuration in the menu is the default configuration.

**prompt=<flag>**

for a DASD target device, determines whether the menu is displayed when an IPL is performed. Menus cannot be displayed for SCSI target devices.

For prompt=1 the menu is displayed, for prompt=0 it is suppressed. If this option is omitted, the menu is not displayed. Independent of this parameter, the operator can force a menu to be displayed by specifying prompt in place of a configuration number for an IPL configuration to be used.

If the menu of a menu configuration is not displayed, the operator can either specify the configuration number of an IPL configuration or the default configuration is used.

**timeout=<seconds>**

for a DASD target device and a displayed menu, specifies the time in seconds, after which the default configuration is IPLed, if no configuration has been specified by the operator. If this option is omitted or if 0 is specified as the timeout, the menu stays displayed indefinitely on the operator console and no IPL is performed until the operator specifies an IPL configuration.

## Example

Figure 62 on page 372 shows a sample configuration file that defines multiple configuration sections and two menu configurations.

---

```
[defaultboot]
defaultmenu=menu1

First boot configuration (DASD)
[boot1]
ramdisk=/boot/initrd
parameters='root=/dev/ram0 ro'
image=/boot/image-1
target=/boot

Second boot configuration (SCSI)
[boot2]
image=/boot/mnt/image-2
ramdisk=/boot/mnt/initrd,0x900000
parmfile=/boot/mnt/parmf-2
target=/boot

Third boot configuration (DASD)
[boot3]
image=/boot/mnt/image-3
ramdisk=/boot/mnt/initrd
parmfile=/boot/mnt/parmf-3
target=/boot

Configuration for dumping to tape
[dumptape]
dumpto=/dev/rtibm0

Configuration for dumping to DASD
[dumpdasd]
dumpto=/dev/dasdc1

Configuration for multi-volume dumping to DASD
[multi_volume_dump]
mvdump=sample_dump_conf

Configuration for dumping to SCSI disk
Separate IPL and dump partitions
[dumpscsi]
target=/boot
dumptofs=/dev/sda2
parameters="dump_dir=/mydumps dump_compress=none dump_mode=auto"

Menu containing the SCSI boot and SCSI dump configurations
:menu1
1=dumpscsi
2=boot2
target=/boot
default=2

Menu containing two DASD boot configurations
:menu2
1=boot1
2=boot3
target=/boot
default=1
prompt=1
timeout=30

Configuration for initializing a DCSS
[segment]
segment=/boot/segment,0x800000
target=/boot
```

---

Figure 62. Sample /etc/zipl.conf file

The following commands assume that the configuration file of the sample is the default configuration file.

- Call **zipl** to use the default configuration file settings:

```
zipl
```

**Result:** **zipl** reads the default option from the [defaultboot] section and selects the :menu1 section. It then installs a menu configuration with a boot configuration and a SCSI dump configuration.

- Call **zipl** to install a menu configuration (see also “Installing a menu configuration” on page 364):

```
zipl -m menu2
```

**Result:** **zipl** selects the :menu2 section. It then installs a menu configuration with two DASD boot configurations. “Example for a DASD menu configuration on z/VM” on page 379 and “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 386 illustrate what this menu looks like when it is displayed.

- Call **zipl** to install a boot loader for boot configuration [boot2]:

```
zipl boot2
```

**Result:** **zipl** selects the [boot2] section. It then installs a boot loader that loads copies of /boot/mnt/image-2, /boot/mnt/initrd, and /boot/mnt/parmf-2.

- Call **zipl** to prepare a tape that can be IPLed for a tape dump:

```
zipl dumptape
```

**Result:** **zipl** selects the [dumptape] section and prepares a dump tape on /dev/rtibm0.

- Call **zipl** to prepare a DASD dump device:

```
zipl dumpdasd -n
```

**Result:** **zipl** selects the [dumpdasd] section and prepares the dump device /dev/dasdc1. Confirmation prompts that require an operator response are suppressed.

- Call **zipl** to prepare a SCSI dump device:

```
mount /dev/sda1 /boot
mount /dev/sda2 /dumps
mkdir /dumps/mydumps
zipl dumpscsi
umount /dev/sda1
umount /dev/sda2
```

**Result:** **zipl** selects the [dumpscsi] section and prepares the dump device /dev/sda1. The associated dump file is created uncompressed in directory /mydumps on the dump partition. If space is required, the lowest-numbered dump file in the directory is deleted.

- Call **zipl** to install a loader to initialize named saved segments:

```
zipl segment
```

**Result:** **zipl** installs segment loader that loads the contents of file /boot/segment to address 0x800000 at IPL time and then put the processor into the disabled wait state.

# Chapter 35. Booting Linux

The options and requirements you have for booting Linux depend on your platform, LPAR or z/VM, and on your boot medium.

Find a general overview of how to boot Linux in an LPAR or in a z/VM guest virtual machine. For details about defining a Linux virtual machine, see *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6194, the chapter about creating your first Linux virtual machine.

## IPL and booting

On System z, you usually start booting Linux by performing an Initial Program Load (IPL).

Figure 63 summarizes the main steps of the boot process.

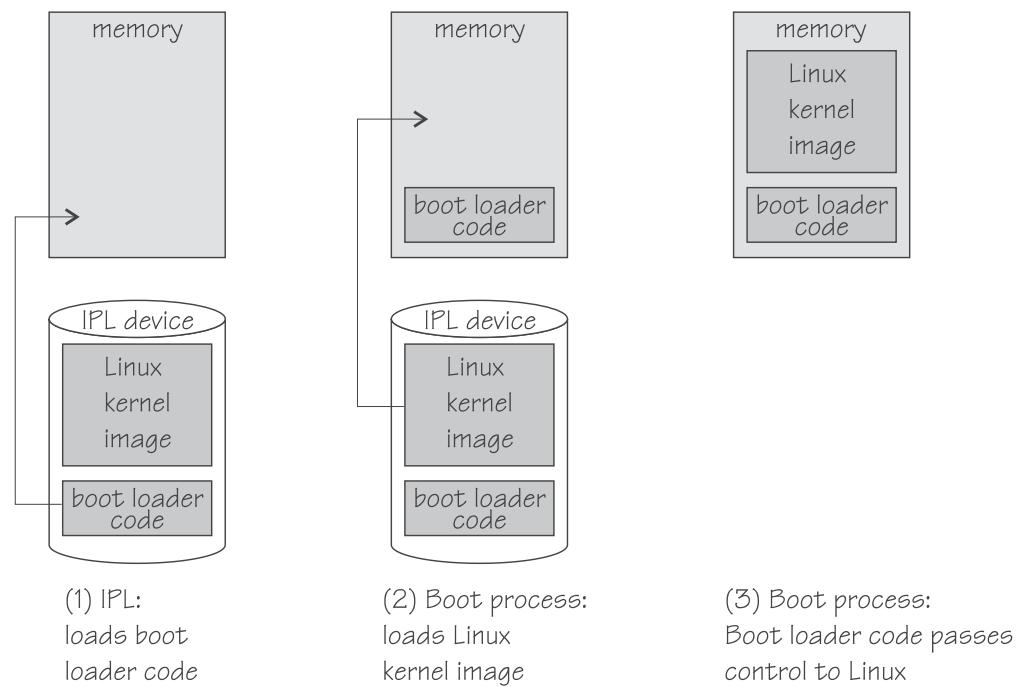


Figure 63. IPL and boot process

The IPL process accesses the IPL device and loads the Linux boot loader code to the mainframe memory. The boot loader code then gets control and loads the Linux kernel. At the end of the boot process Linux gets control.

If your Linux instance is to run in an LPAR, you can circumvent the IPL and use the service element (SE) to copy the Linux kernel to the mainframe memory (see “Loading Linux from removable media or from an FTP server” on page 387).

Apart from starting a boot process, an IPL can also be used for writing out system storage (dumping).

See *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 for more information about dumps.

You can find the latest copies of this document on developerWorks at [www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation\\_red\\_hat.html](http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_red_hat.html)

Use the **zip1** tool to prepare DASD, SCSI, and tape devices as IPL devices for booting Linux, for dumping, or for loading a DCSS. For more information about **zip1**, see Chapter 34, “Initial program loader for System z - zip1,” on page 347.

---

## Control point and boot medium

The control point from where you can start the boot process depends on the environment where your Linux is to run.

If your Linux instance is to run in LPAR mode, the control point is the mainframe's Support Element (SE) or an attached Hardware Management Console (HMC). For Linux on z/VM, the control point is the control program (CP) of the hosting z/VM.

The media that can be used as boot devices also depend on where Linux is to run. Table 50 provides an overview of the possibilities:

Table 50. Boot media

|            | DASD | tape | SCSI | z/VM reader | CD-ROM/FTP |
|------------|------|------|------|-------------|------------|
| z/VM guest | ✓    | ✓    | ✓    | ✓           |            |
| LPAR       | ✓    | ✓    | ✓    |             | ✓          |

DASDs, tapes on channel-attached tape devices, and SCSI device that are attached through an FCP channel can be used for both LPAR and z/VM guest virtual machines. A SCSI device can be a disk or an FC-attached CD-ROM or DVD drive. The z/VM reader is available only in a z/VM environment.

If your Linux runs in LPAR mode, you can also boot from a CD-ROM drive on the SE or HMC, or you can obtain the boot data from a remote FTP server.

---

## Menu configurations

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, you can use **zip1** to prepare a DASD or SCSI boot disk with a menu configuration.

A boot device with a menu configuration can hold the code for multiple boot configurations. For SCSI disks, the menu can also include one or more SCSI system dumpers.

Each boot and dump configuration in a menu is associated with a configuration number. At IPL time, you can specify a configuration number to select the configuration to be used.

For menu configurations on DASD, you can display a menu with the configuration numbers (see “Example for a DASD menu configuration on z/VM” on page 379 and “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 386). For menu configurations on SCSI disks, you need to know the configuration numbers without being able to display the menus.

See “Menu configurations” on page 370 for information about defining menu configurations.

---

## Boot data

To boot Linux, you generally need a kernel image, boot loader code, kernel parameters, and an initial RAM disk image.

For sequential I/O boot devices, z/VM reader and tape, the order in which this data is provided is significant. For random access devices, there is no required order.

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, kernel images are installed into the /boot directory and are named `vmlinuz-<version>.s390x`. For information about where to find the images and how to start an installation, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*.

## Boot loader code

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 kernel images are compiled to contain boot loader code for IPL from z/VM reader devices.

If you want to boot a kernel image from a device that does not correspond to the included boot loader code, you can provide alternate boot loader code separate from the kernel image.

Use **zipl** to prepare boot devices with separate DASD, SCSI, or tape boot loader code. You can then boot from DASD, SCSI, or tape regardless of the boot loader code in the kernel image.

## Kernel parameters

The kernel parameters are in form of an ASCII text string of up to 895 characters. If the boot device is tape or the z/VM reader, the string can also be encoded in EBCDIC.

Individual kernel parameters are single keywords or keyword/value pairs of the form `keyword=<value>` with no blank. Blanks are used to separate consecutive parameters.

If you use the **zipl** command to prepare your boot device, you can provide kernel parameters on the command line, in a parameter file, and in a **zipl** configuration file.

See Chapter 3, “Kernel and module parameters,” on page 21, Chapter 34, “Initial program loader for System z - zipl,” on page 347, or the **zipl** and **zipl.conf** man pages for more details.

## Initial RAM disk image

An initial RAM disk holds files, programs, or modules that are not included in the kernel image but are required for booting.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 provides a ramdisk in /boot and named `initramfs-<kernel version>.s390x.img`. When a ramdisk is installed or modified, you must call **zipl** to update the boot record.

## Booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine

You boot Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine by issuing CP commands from a CMS or CP session.

This information summarizes booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine. For more information about z/VM guest environments for Linux, see *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6194.

### Booting from a tape device

Boot Linux by issuing the IPL command with a tape boot device. The boot data on the tape must be arranged in a specific order.

#### Before you begin

You need a tape that is prepared as a boot device. A tape boot device must contain the following items in the specified order:

1. Tape boot loader code  
The tape boot loader code is included in the s390utils RPM.
2. Tape mark
3. Kernel image
4. Tape mark
5. Kernel parameters (optional)
6. Tape mark
7. Initial RAM disk (optional)
8. Tape mark
9. Tape mark

All tape marks are required even if an optional item is omitted. For example, if you do not provide an initial RAM disk image, the end of the boot information is marked with three consecutive tape marks. **zip1** prepared tapes conform to this layout. See “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for information about preparing a tape with **zip1**.

#### Procedure

Perform these steps to start the boot process:

1. Establish a CMS or CP session with the z/VM guest virtual machine where you want to boot Linux.
2. Ensure that the boot device is accessible to your z/VM guest virtual machine.
3. Ensure that the correct tape is inserted and rewound.
4. Issue a command of this form:

```
#cp i <devno> parm <kernel_parameters>
```

where

**<devno>**

is the device number of the boot device as seen by the guest virtual machine.

**parm <kernel\_parameters>**

is an optional 64-byte string of kernel parameters to be concatenated to the

end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for information about the boot configuration).

See also “Specifying kernel parameters when booting Linux” on page 23.

## Booting from a DASD

### Before you begin

You need a DASD boot device that is prepared with **zip1** (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 351).

### Procedure

Perform these steps to start the boot process:

1. Establish a CMS or CP session with the z/VM guest virtual machine where you want to boot Linux.
2. Ensure that the boot device is accessible to your z/VM guest virtual machine.
3. Issue a command of this form:

```
#cp i <devno> loadparm <n> parm <kernel_parameters>
```

where:

**<devno>**

specifies the device number of the boot device as seen by the guest.

**loadparm <n>**

is applicable to menu configurations only. Omit this parameter if you are not working with a menu configuration.

Configuration number 0 specifies the default configuration. Depending on the menu configuration, omitting this option might display the menu or select the default configuration. Specifying “prompt” instead of a configuration number forces the menu to be displayed.

When the menu is displayed, you can specify additional kernel parameters (see “Example for a DASD menu configuration on z/VM”). These additional kernel parameters are appended to the parameters you might have provided in a parameter file. The combined parameter string must not exceed 895 bytes.

See “Menu configurations” on page 370 for more details about menu configurations.

**parm <kernel\_parameters>**

is an optional 64-byte string of kernel parameters to be concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for information about the boot configuration).

See also “Specifying kernel parameters when booting Linux” on page 23.

### Example for a DASD menu configuration on z/VM

Use the VI VMSG z/VM CP command to choose a boot configuration from a menu configuration.

This example illustrates how menu2 in the sample configuration file in Figure 62 on page 372 is displayed on the z/VM guest virtual machine console:

```
00: zIPL interactive boot menu
00:
00: 0. default (boot1)
00:
00: 1. boot1
00: 2. boot3
00:
00: Note: VM users please use '#cp vi vmsg <number> <kernel-parameters>'
00:
00: Please choose (default will boot in 30 seconds): #cp vi vmsg 2
```

You choose a configuration by specifying the configuration number. For example, to boot configuration boot3 specify

```
#cp vi vmsg 2
```

You can also specify additional kernel parameters by appending them to the configuration number. For example, you can specify:

```
#cp vi vmsg 2 maxcpus=1 mem=64m
```

These parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration when booting Linux.

## Booting from a SCSI device

Boot Linux by issuing the IPL command with an FCP channel as the IPL device. You must specify the target port and LUN for the boot device in advance by setting the z/VM CP LOADDEV parameter.

### Before you begin

You need a SCSI boot device that is prepared with **zipl** (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 351). A SCSI device can be a disk or an FC-attached CD-ROM or DVD drive.

### Procedure

Perform these steps to start the boot process:

1. Establish a CMS or CP session with the z/VM guest virtual machine where you want to boot Linux.
2. Ensure that the FCP channel that provides access to the SCSI boot disk is accessible to your z/VM guest virtual machine.
3. Specify the target port and LUN of the SCSI boot disk. Enter a command of this form:

```
#cp set loaddev portname <wwpn> lun <lun>
```

where:

<wwpn>

specifies the world wide port name (WWPN) of the target port in hexadecimal format. A blank separates the first eight digits from the final eight digits.

*<lun>*

specifies the LUN of the SCSI boot disk in hexadecimal format. A blank separating the first eight digits from the final eight digits.

**Example:** To specify a WWPN 0x5005076300c20b8e and a LUN 0x5241000000000000:

```
#cp set loaddev portname 50050763 00c20b8e lun 52410000 00000000
```

4. Optional for menu configurations: Specify the boot configuration (boot program in z/VM terminology) to be used. Enter a command of this form:

```
#cp set loaddev bootprog <n>
```

where *<n>* specifies the configuration number of the boot configuration. Omitting the bootprog parameter or specifying the value 0 selects the default configuration. For more information about menu configurations, see “Menu configurations” on page 370.

**Example:** To select a configuration with configuration number 2 from a menu configuration:

```
#cp set loaddev bootprog 2
```

5. Optional: Specify kernel parameters.

```
#cp set loaddev scpdata <APPEND|NEW> '<kernel_parameters>'
```

where:

*<kernel\_parameters>*

specifies a set of kernel parameters to be stored as system control program data (SCPDATA). When booting Linux, these kernel parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration.

*<kernel\_parameters>* must contain ASCII characters only. If characters other than ASCII characters are present, the boot process ignores the SCPDATA.

*<kernel\_parameters>* as entered from a CMS or CP session is interpreted as lowercase on Linux. If you require uppercase characters in the kernel parameters, run the SET LOADDEV command from a REXX script instead. In the REXX script, use the “address command” statement. See *REXX/VM Reference*, SC24-6221 and *REXX/VM User’s Guide*, SC24-6222 for details.

**Optional: APPEND**

appends kernel parameters to existing SCPDATA. This is the default.

**Optional: NEW**

replaces existing SCPDATA.

**Examples:**

- To append kernel parameter *noresume* to the current SCPDATA:

```
#cp set loaddev scpdata 'noresume'
```

- To replace the current SCPDATA with the kernel parameters *resume=/dev/sda2* and *no\_console\_suspend*:

```
#cp set loaddev scpdata NEW 'resume=/dev/sda2 no_console_suspend'
```

For a subsequent IPL command, these kernel parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters in your boot configuration.

6. Start the IPL and boot process by entering a command of this form:

```
#cp i <devno>
```

where *<devno>* is the device number of the FCP channel that provides access to the SCSI boot disk.

### Tip

You can specify the target port and LUN of the SCSI boot disk, a boot configuration, and SCPDATA all with a single SET LOADDEV command. See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for more information about the SET LOADDEV command.

## Booting from the z/VM reader

Boot Linux by issuing the IPL command with the z/VM reader as the IPL device. You first must transfer the boot data to the reader.

### Before you begin

You need the following files, all in record format fixed 80:

- Linux kernel image with built-in z/VM reader boot loader code. This is the case for the default Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 kernel.
- Kernel parameters (optional)
- Initial RAM disk image (optional)

### About this task

This information is a summary of how to boot Linux from a z/VM reader. For more details, refer to Redpaper *Building Linux Systems under IBM VM*, REDP-0120.

### Procedure

Proceed like this to boot Linux from a z/VM reader:

1. Establish a CMS session with the guest where you want to boot Linux.
2. Transfer the kernel image, kernel parameters, and the initial RAM disk image to your guest. You can obtain the files from a shared minidisk or use:
  - The z/VM sendfile facility.
  - An FTP file transfer in binary mode.

Files that are sent to your reader contain a file header that you must remove before you can use them for booting. Receive files that you obtain through your z/VM reader to a minidisk.

3. Set up the reader as a boot device.
  - a. Ensure that your reader is empty.
  - b. Direct the output of the punch device to the reader. Issue:

```
spool pun * rdr
```

- c. Use the CMS PUNCH command to transfer each of the required files to the reader. Be sure to use the “no header” option to omit the file headers.

First transfer the kernel image.

Second transfer the kernel parameters.

Third transfer the initial RAM disk image, if present.

For each file, issue a command of this form:

```
pun <file_name> <file_type> <file_mode> (noh)
```

- d. Optional: Ensure that the contents of the reader remain fixed.

```
change rdr all keep nohold
```

If you omit this step, all files are deleted from the reader during the IPL that follows.

4. Issue the IPL command:

```
ipl 000c clear parm <kernel_parameters>
```

where:

**0x000c**

is the device number of the reader.

**parm <kernel\_parameters>**

is an optional 64-byte string of kernel parameters to be concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 351 for information about the boot configuration).

See also “Specifying kernel parameters when booting Linux” on page 23.

## Booting Linux in LPAR mode

You can boot Linux in LPAR mode from a Hardware Management Console (HMC) or Support Element (SE).

### About this task

The following description refers to an HMC, but the same steps also apply to an SE.

## Booting from DASD, tape, or SCSI

The initial steps for Linux in LPAR mode are the same for DASD, tape, or SCSI.

### Before you begin

- You need a boot device that is prepared with **zipl** (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 351).
- For booting from a SCSI boot device, you need to have the SCSI IPL feature (FC9904) installed.

### Procedure

Perform these steps to boot from a DASD, tape, or SCSI boot device:

1. In the navigation pane of the HMC, expand **Systems Management** and **Servers** and select the mainframe system you want to work with. A table of LPARs is displayed on the **Images** tab in the content area.
2. Select the LPAR where you want to boot Linux.
3. In the **Tasks** area, expand **Recovery** and click **Load** (see Figure 64).

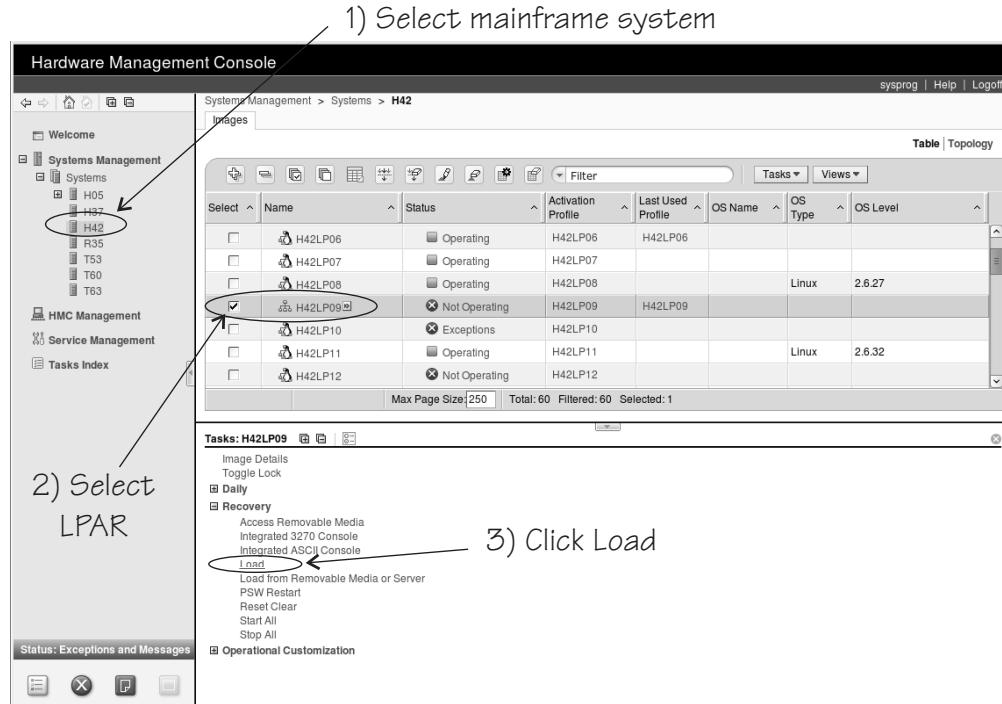


Figure 64. Load task on the HMC

4. Proceed according to your boot device.
  - For booting from tape:
    - a. Select **Load type** "Normal" (see Figure 65 on page 385).

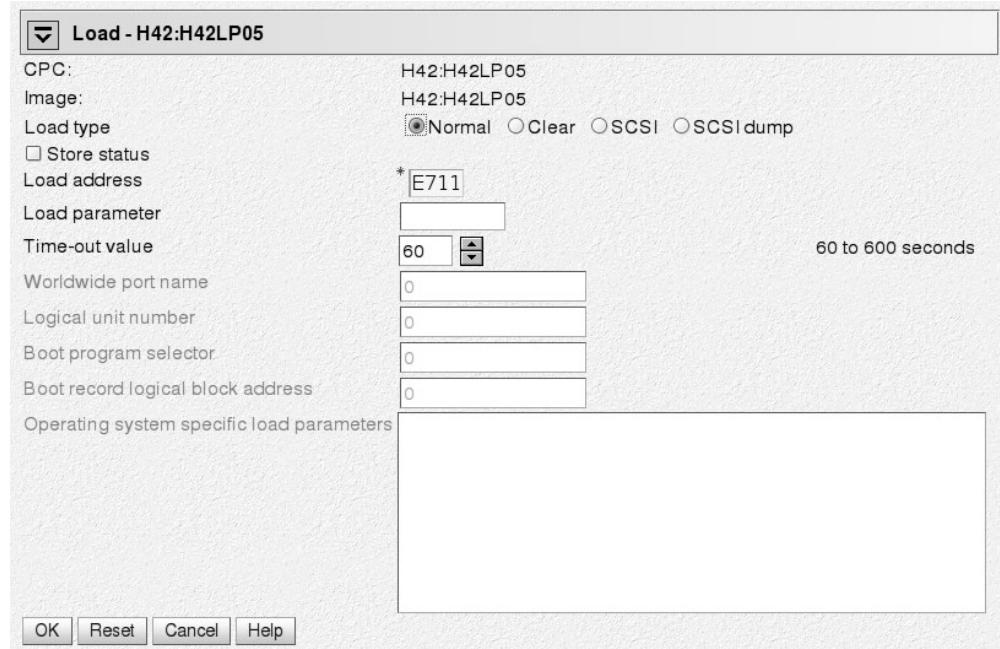


Figure 65. Load panel for booting from tape or DASD

- b. Enter the device number of the tape boot device in the **Load address** field.
- For booting from DASD:
  - a. Select **Load type** “Normal” (see Figure 65).
  - b. Enter the device number of the DASD boot device in the **Load address** field.
  - c. If the boot configuration is part of a **zipl** created menu configuration, enter the configuration number that identifies your DASD boot configuration within the menu in the **Load parameter** field.

Configuration number 0 specifies the default configuration. Depending on the menu configuration, omitting this option might display the menu or select the default configuration. Specifying “prompt” instead of a configuration number forces the menu to be displayed.

When the menu is displayed, you can specify additional kernel parameters (see “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 386). These additional kernel parameters are appended to the parameters you might have provided in a parameter file. The combined parameter string must not exceed 895 bytes.

See “Menu configurations” on page 370 for more details about menu configurations.
- For booting from a SCSI device:
 

A SCSI device can be a disk or an FC-attached CD-ROM or DVD drive.

  - a. Select load type **SCSI** (see Figure 66 on page 386).

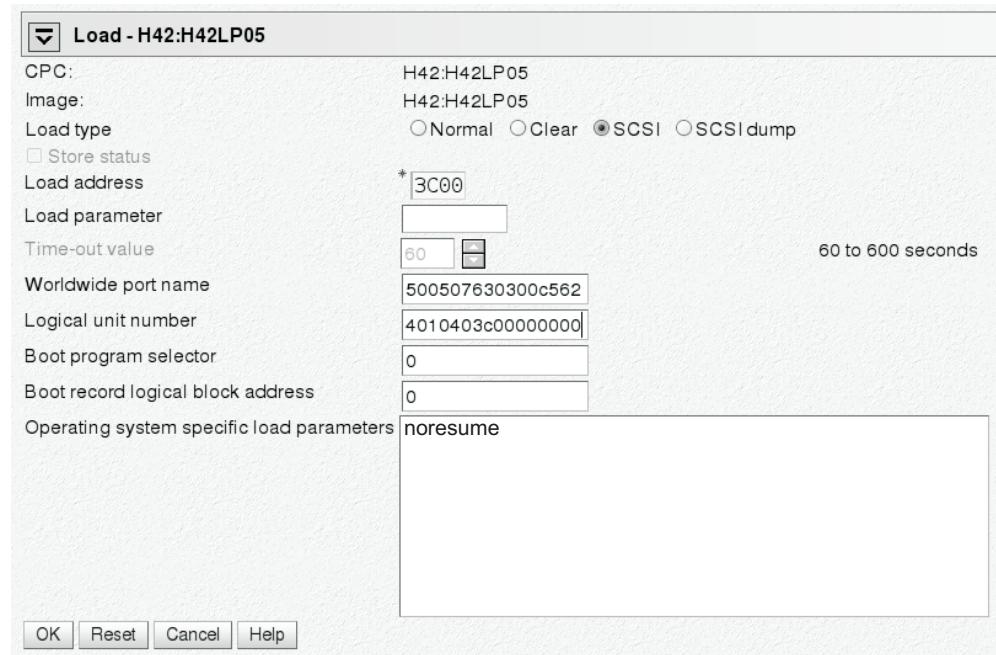


Figure 66. Load panel with *SCSI* feature enabled - for booting from a *SCSI* device

- b. Enter the device number of the FCP channel through which the *SCSI* device is accessed in the **Load address** field.
  - c. Enter the WWPN of the *SCSI* device in the **World wide port name** field.
  - d. Enter the LUN of the *SCSI* device in the **Logical unit number** field.
  - e. If the boot configuration is part of a **zip1** created menu configuration, enter the configuration number that identifies your *SCSI* boot configuration within the menu in the **Boot program selector** field. Configuration number 0 specifies the default configuration. For example, an installation from DVD is typically done with boot program selector 2. See “Menu configurations” on page 370 for more details about menu configurations.
  - f. Optional: Type kernel parameters in the **Operating system specific load parameters** field. These parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration when booting Linux.  
Use ASCII characters only. If you enter characters other than ASCII characters, the boot process ignores the data in the **Operating system specific load parameters** field.
  - g. Accept the defaults for the remaining fields.
5. Click **OK** to start the boot process.

## Results

Check the output on the preferred console (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 329) to monitor the boot progress.

### Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)

Use the Operating System Messages applet on the HMC or SE to choose a boot configuration from a menu configuration.

This example illustrates how menu2 in the sample configuration file in Figure 62 on page 372 is displayed on the HMC or SE:

```
zIPL interactive boot menu
0. default (boot1)
1. boot1
2. boot3

Please choose (default will boot in 30 seconds):
```

You choose a configuration by specifying the configuration number. For example, to boot configuration boot3, issue:

```
2
```

You can also specify additional kernel parameters by appending them to this command. For example:

```
2 maxcpus=1 mem=64m
```

## Loading Linux from removable media or from an FTP server

You can use the SE to copy the Linux kernel image directly to your LPARs memory. This process bypasses IPL and does not require a boot loader.

### About this task

The SE performs the tasks that are normally done by the boot loader code. When the Linux kernel has been loaded, Linux is started using restart PSW.

As a source, you can use the SE's CD-ROM/DVD drive or any device on a remote system that you can access through FTP from your SE. If you access the SE remotely from an HMC, you can also use the CD-ROM drive of the system where your HMC runs.

The installation process requires a file with a mapping of the location of installation data in the file system of the DVD or FTP server and the memory locations where the data is to be copied. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, this file is called `generic.ins` and in the root directory of the file system on the DVD.

### Procedure

Perform these steps:

1. In the navigation pane of the HMC expand **Systems Management** and **Servers** and select the mainframe system that you want to work with. A table of LPARs is displayed on the **Images** tab in the content area.
2. Select the LPAR where you want to boot Linux.
3. In the **Tasks** area, expand **Recovery** and click **Load from Removable Media or Server** (see Figure 67 on page 388).

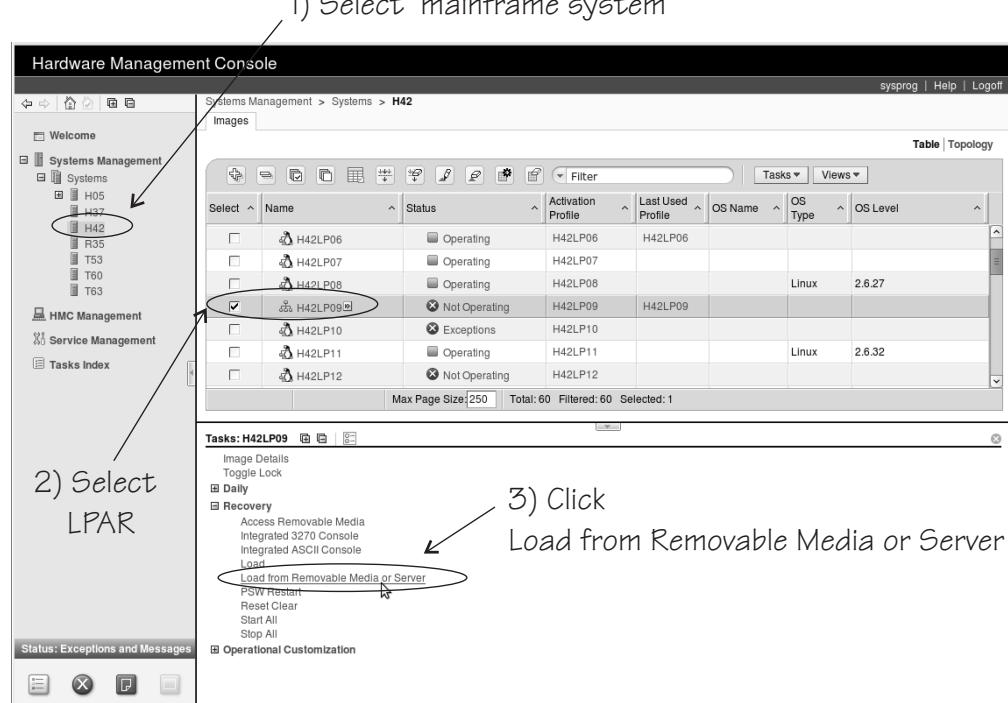


Figure 67. Load from Removable Media or Server task on the HMC

4. Specify the source of the code to be loaded.

- For loading from a CD-ROM drive:
  - a. Select **Hardware Management Console CD-ROM/DVD** (see Figure 68).

This is a configuration dialog box titled 'Load from Removable Media, or Server - H42:H42LP09'. It contains the following text: 'Use this task to load operating system software or utility programs from a CD-ROM / DVD or a server that can be accessed using FTP.' Below this, it asks 'Select the source of the software:' with three radio button options:
 

- Hardware Management Console CD-ROM / DVD**
- Hardware Management Console CD / DVD and assign for operating system use**
- FTP Source**

 There are four input fields for 'Host computer', 'User ID', 'Password', and 'Account (optional)'. At the bottom, there is a 'File location (optional)' input field, an 'OK' button, a 'Cancel' button, and a 'Help' button.

Figure 68. Load from Removable Media or Server panel

- b. Leave the **File location** field blank.
- For loading from an FTP server:

- a. Select **FTP Source**.
  - b. Enter the IP address or host name of the FTP server with the installation code in the **Host computer** entry field.
  - c. Enter your user ID for the FTP server in the **User ID** entry field.
  - d. Enter your password for the FTP server in the **Password** entry field.
  - e. If required by your FTP server, enter your account information in the **Account** entry field.
  - f. Enter the path to the directory with the generic.ins in the file location entry field. You can leave this field blank if the file is in the FTP server's root directory.
5. Click **Continue** to display the Select Software to Install panel (Figure 69).

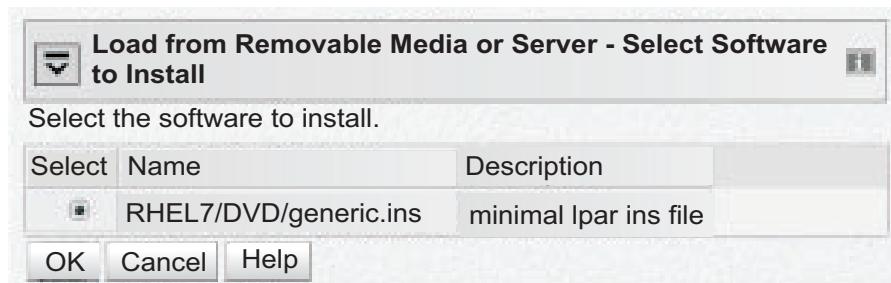


Figure 69. Select Software to Install panel

6. Select the generic.ins file.
7. Click **OK** to start loading Linux.

## Results

The kernel has started and the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 boot process continues.

## Displaying current IPL parameters

To display the IPL parameters, use the **lsreipl** command. Alternatively, a sysfs user-space interface is available.

For more information about the **lsreipl** command, see “**lsreipl - List IPL and re-IPL settings**” on page 511. In sysfs, information about IPL parameters is available in subdirectories of /sys/firmware/ipl.

/sys/firmware/ipl/ipl\_type

The /sys/firmware/ipl/ipl\_type file contains the device type from which the kernel was booted. The following values are possible:

- ccw** The IPL device is a CCW device, for example, a DASD or the z/VM reader.
- fcp** The IPL device is an FCP device.
- nss** The IPL device is a z/VM named saved system.
- unknown** The IPL device is not known.

Depending on the IPL type, there might be more files in /sys/firmware/ipl/.

If the device is a CCW device, the additional files `device` and `loadparm` are present.

**device** Contains the bus ID of the CCW device that is used for IPL, for example:

```
cat /sys/firmware/ipl/device
0.0.1234
```

**loadparm**

Contains up to 8 characters for the loadparm that is used for IPL, for example:

```
cat /sys/firmware/ipl/loadparm
1
```

**parm**

Contains additional kernel parameters that are specified with the PARM parameter when booting with the z/VM CP IPL command, for example:

```
cat /sys/firmware/ipl/parm
noresume
```

See also “Specifying kernel parameters when booting Linux” on page 23.

A leading equal sign (=) indicates that the existing kernel parameters used by the boot configuration were ignored and the kernel parameters of the `parm` attribute were the only kernel parameters used for booting Linux. See “Replacing all kernel parameters in a boot configuration” on page 25.

If the device is FCP, a number of additional files are present (also see Chapter 5, “SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver,” on page 65 for details):

**device** Contains the bus ID of the FCP device that is used for IPL, for example:

```
cat /sys/firmware/ipl/device
0.0.50dc
```

**wwpn** Contains the WWPN used for IPL, for example:

```
cat /sys/firmware/ipl/wwpn
0x5005076300c20b8e
```

**lun** Contains the LUN used for IPL, for example:

```
cat /sys/firmware/ipl/lun
0x5010000000000000
```

**br\_lba** Contains the logical block address of the boot record on the boot device (usually 0).

**bootprog**

Contains the boot program number.

**scp\_data**

Contains additional kernel parameters that are used when booting from a SCSI device (see “Booting from a SCSI device” on page 380 and “Booting from DASD, tape, or SCSI” on page 383). A leading equal sign (=) indicates that the existing kernel parameters used by the boot configuration were

ignored and the kernel parameters of the `scp_data` attribute where the only kernel parameters used for booting Linux.

```
cat /sys/firmware/ipl/scp_data
noresume
```

#### **binary\_parameter**

Contains the information of the preceding files in binary format.

## **Rebooting from an alternative source**

When you reboot Linux, the system conventionally boots from the last used location. However, you can configure an alternative device to be used for re-IPL instead of the last used IPL device.

When the system is re-IPLed, the alternative device is used to boot the kernel.

To configure the re-IPL device, use the `chreipl` tool (see “[chreipl - Modify the re-IPL configuration](#)” on page 442).

Alternatively, you can use a sysfs interface. The virtual configuration files are located under `/sys/firmware/reipl`. To configure, write strings into the configuration files. The following re-IPL types can be set with the `/sys/firmware/reipl/reipl_type` attribute:

- ccw** For ccw devices such as DASDs that are attached through ESCON or FICON.
- fcp** For FCP SCSI devices, including SCSI disks and CD or DVD drives (Hardware support is required.)
- nss** For Named Saved Systems (z/VM only)

For each supported re-IPL type a sysfs directory is created under `/sys/firmware/reipl` that contains the configuration attributes for the device. The directory name is the same as the name of the re-IPL type.

When Linux is booted, the re-IPL attributes are set by default to the values of the boot device, which can be found under `/sys/firmware/ipl`.

## **Attributes for ccw**

You can find the attributes for re-IPL type ccw in the `/sys/firmware/reipl/ccw` sysfs directory.

**device** Device number of the re-IPL device. For example, 0.0.7412.

**Note:** IPL is possible only from subchannel set 0.

#### **loadparm**

Up to eight characters for the loadparm used to select the boot configuration in the zipl menu (if available).

**parm** A 64-byte string of kernel parameters that is concatenated to the boot command-line. The PARM parameter can be set only for Linux on z/VM. See also “[Specifying kernel parameters when booting Linux](#)” on page 23.

A leading equal sign (=) means that the existing kernel parameter line in the boot configuration is ignored and the boot process uses the kernel

parameters in the `parm` attribute only. See also “Replacing all kernel parameters in a boot configuration” on page 25.

## Attributes for fcp

You can find the attributes for re-IPL type fcp in the `/sys/firmware/reipl/fcp` sysfs directory.

**device** Device number of the FCP device that is used for re-IPL. For example, 0.0.7412.

**Note:** IPL is possible only from subchannel set 0.

**wwpn** World wide port number of the FCP re-IPL device.

**lun** Logical unit number of the FCP re-IPL device.

**bootprog**

Boot program selector. Used to select the boot configuration in the zipl menu (if available).

**br\_lba** Boot record logical block address. Master boot record. Is always 0 for Linux.

**scp\_data**

Kernel parameters to be used for the next FCP re-IPL.

A leading equal sign (=) means that the existing kernel parameter line in the boot configuration is ignored and the boot process uses the kernel parameters in the `scp_data` attribute only. See also “Replacing all kernel parameters in a boot configuration” on page 25.

## Attributes for nss

You can find the attributes for re-IPL type nss in the `/sys/firmware/reipl/nss` sysfs directory.

**name** Name of the NSS. The NSS name can be 1-8 characters long and must consist of alphabetic or numeric characters. The following examples are all valid NSS names: 73248734, NSSCSITE, or NSS1234.

**parm** A 56-byte string of parameters that is passed to the NSS to be booted.

## Kernel panic settings

Set the attribute `/sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_panic` to `reipl` to make the system re-IPL with the current re-IPL settings if a kernel panic occurs.

See also the description of the `dumpconf` tool in *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 on the developerWorks website at [www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation\\_red\\_hat.html](http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_red_hat.html)

## Examples for configuring re-IPL

Typical examples include configuring re-IPL from an FCP device and specifying parameters for re-IPL.

- To configure an FCP re-IPL device 0.0.5711 with a LUN 0x1711000000000000 and a WWPN 0x5005076303004715 with an additional kernel parameter `noresume`:

```
echo 0.0.5711 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/device
echo 0x5005076303004715 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/wwpn
echo 0x1711000000000000 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/lun
echo 0 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/bootprog
echo 0 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/br_lba
echo "noresume" > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/scp_data
echo fcp > /sys/firmware/reipl/reipl_type
```

**Note:** IPL is possible only from subchannel set 0.

- To specify additional kernel parameters for Linux re-IPL, follow these steps:
  1. Change to the sysfs directory appropriate for the next re-IPL:

```
cd /sys/firmware/reipl/$(cat /sys/firmware/reipl/reipl_type)
/sys/firmware/reipl/ccw
```

- 2. Use the echo command to output the parameter string into the `parm` attribute:

```
echo "noresume" > parm
```



---

## Chapter 36. Suspending and resuming Linux

With suspend and resume support, you can stop a running Linux on System z instance and later continue operations.

When Linux is suspended, data is written to a swap partition. The resume process uses this data to make Linux continue from where it left off when it was suspended. A suspended Linux instance does not require memory or processor cycles.

Linux on System z suspend and resume support applies to both Linux on z/VM and Linux instances that run directly in an LPAR.

While a Linux instance is suspended, you can run another Linux instance in the z/VM guest virtual machine or in the LPAR where the suspended Linux instance was running.

---

### What you should know about suspend and resume

Before suspending a Linux instance, you must be aware of the prerequisites and of activities that can cause resume to fail.

#### Prerequisites for suspending a Linux instance

Suspend and resume support checks for conditions that might prevent resuming a suspended Linux instance. You cannot suspend a Linux instance unless all prerequisites that are fulfilled.

The following prerequisites must be fulfilled regardless of whether a Linux instance runs directly in an LPAR or as a z/VM guest:

- All tape device nodes must be closed and online tape drives must be unloaded.
- The Linux instance must not have used any hotplug memory since it was last booted.
- No program must be in a prolonged uninterruptible sleep state.

Programs can assume this state while they are waiting for an outstanding I/O request to complete. Most I/O requests complete in a very short time and do not compromise suspend processing. An example of an I/O request that can take too long to complete is rewinding a tape.

For Linux on z/VM, the following additional prerequisites must be fulfilled:

- No discontiguous saved segment (DCSS) device must be accessed in exclusive-writable mode.

You must remove all DCSSs of segment types EW, SW, and EN by writing the DCSS name to the sysfs remove attribute.

You must remove all DCSSs of segment types SR and ER that are accessed in exclusive-writable mode or change their access mode to shared.

For more information, see “Removing a DCSS device” on page 257 and “Setting the access mode” on page 254.

- All device nodes of the z/VM recording device driver must be closed.
- All device nodes of the z/VM unit record device driver must be closed.
- No watchdog timer must run and the watchdog device node must be closed.

## Precautions while a Linux instance is suspended

There are conditions outside the control of the suspended Linux instance that can cause resume to fail.

- The CPU configuration must remain unchanged between suspend and resume.
- The data that is written to the swap partition when the Linux instance is suspended must not be compromised.

In particular, be sure that the swap partition is not used if another operating system instance runs in the LPAR or z/VM guest virtual machine while the initial Linux instance is suspended.

- If the Linux instance uses expanded storage (XPRAM), this expanded storage must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.

If the size or content of the expanded memory is changed before the Linux instance is resumed or if the expanded memory is unavailable when the Linux instance is resumed, resuming fails with a kernel panic.

- If an instance of Linux on z/VM uses one or more DCSSs these DCSSs must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.

If the size, location, or content of a DCSS is changed before the Linux instance is resumed, resuming fails with a kernel panic.

- For an instance of Linux on z/VM with a Linux kernel that is a named saved system (NSS), the NSS must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.

If the size, location, or content of the NSS is changed before the Linux instance is resumed, resuming fails.

- Take special care when replacing a DASD and, thus, making a different device available at a particular device bus-ID.

You might intentionally replace a device with a backup device. Changing the device also changes its UID-based device nodes. Expect problems if you run an application that depends on UID-based device nodes and you exchange one of the DASD the application uses. In particular, you cannot use multipath tools when the UID changes.

- The SCSI configuration must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.
- Generally, avoid changes to the real or virtual hardware configuration between suspending and resuming a Linux instance.
- Disks that hold swap partitions or the root file system must be present when resuming the Linux instance.

## Handling of devices that are unavailable when resuming

Devices that were available when the Linux instance was suspended might be unavailable when resuming.

If such unavailable devices were offline when the Linux instance was suspended, they are de-registered and the device name can be assigned to other devices.

If unavailable devices were online when the Linux instance was suspended, handling depends on the respective device driver. DASD and FCP devices remain registered as disconnected devices. The device name and the device configuration are preserved. Devices that are controlled by other device drivers are de-registered.

## Handling of devices that become available at a different subchannel

The mapping between subchannels and device bus-IDs can change if the real or virtual hardware is restarted between suspending and resuming Linux.

If the subchannel changes for a DASD or FCP device, the device configuration is changed to reflect the new subchannel. This change is accomplished without de-registration. Thus, device name and device configuration are preserved.

If the subchannel changes for any other device, the device is de-registered and registered again as a new device.

---

## Setting up Linux for suspend and resume

Configure suspend and resume support through kernel parameters and set up a suitable swap partition for suspending and resuming a Linux instance.

### Kernel parameters

You configure the suspend and resume support by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.

#### suspend and resume kernel parameter syntax

```
►—resume=<device_node>— [no_console_suspend] [noresume] —►
```

where:

##### **resume=<device\_node>**

specifies the standard device node of the swap partition with the data that is required for resuming the Linux instance.

##### **no\_console\_suspend**

prevents Linux consoles from being suspended early in the suspend process. Without this parameter, you cannot see the kernel messages that are issued by the suspend process.

##### **noresume**

boots the kernel without resuming a previously suspended Linux instance. Add this parameter to circumvent the resume process, for example, if the data written by the previous suspend process is damaged.

### Example

To use a partition /dev/dasda2 as the swap partition and prevent Linux consoles from being suspended early in the suspend process specify:

```
resume=/dev/dasda2 no_console_suspend
```

## Setting up a swap partition

During the suspend process, Linux writes data to a swap partition. This data is required later to resume Linux.

Set up a swap partition that is at least the size of the available LPAR memory or the memory of the z/VM guest virtual machine.

Do not use this swap partition for any other operating system that might run in the LPAR or z/VM guest virtual machine while the Linux instance is suspended.

You cannot suspend a Linux instance while most of the memory and most of the swap space is in use. If there is not sufficient remaining swap space to hold the data for resuming the Linux instance, suspending the Linux instance fails. To assure sufficient swap space you might have to configure two swap partitions, one partition for regular swapping and another for suspending the Linux instance. Configure the swap partition for suspending the Linux instance with a lower priority than the regular swap partition.

Use the `pri=` parameter to specify the swap partitions in `/etc/fstab` with different priorities. See the `swapon` man page for details.

The following example shows two swap partitions with different priorities:

```
cat /etc/fstab
...
/dev/dasdb1 swap swap pri=-1 0 0
/dev/dasdc1 swap swap pri=-2 0 0
```

In the example, the partition to be used for the resume data is `/dev/dasdc1`.

You can check your current swap configuration by reading `/proc/swaps`.

```
cat /proc/swaps
Filename Type Size Used Priority
/dev/dasdb1 partition 7212136 71056 -1
/dev/dasdc1 partition 7212136 0 -2
```

## Configuring for fast resume

The more devices are available to a Red Hat Enterprise Linux instance, the longer it takes to resume a suspended instance.

With a thousand or more available devices, the resume process can take longer than an IPL. If the duration of the resume process is critical for a Linux instance with many devices, include unused devices in the exclusion list (see “`cio_ignore` – List devices to be ignored” on page 570).

---

## Suspending a Linux instance

Suspend a Linux instance by writing to the `/sys/power/state` sysfs attribute.

### Before you begin

**Attention:** Suspend only Linux instances for which you specified the `resume=kernel` parameter. Without this parameter, you cannot resume the suspended Linux instance.

## Procedure

Enter the following command to suspend a Linux instance:

```
echo disk > /sys/power/state
```

## Results

On the Linux console you might see progress indications until the console itself is suspended. Most of these messages require log level 7 or higher to be printed. See “Using the magic sysrq feature” on page 340 about setting the log level. You cannot see such progress messages if you suspend the Linux instance from an ssh session.

---

## Resuming a suspended Linux instance

Boot Linux to resume a suspended Linux instance.

### About this task

Use the same kernel, initial RAM disk, and kernel parameters that you used to first boot the suspended Linux instance.

You must reestablish any terminal session for HVC terminal devices and for terminals that are provided by the iucvttty program. You also must reestablish all ssh sessions that timed out while the Linux instance was suspended.

If resuming the Linux instance fails, boot Linux again with the `noresume` kernel parameter. The boot process then ignores the data that was written to the swap partition and starts Linux without resuming the suspended instance.



---

## Chapter 37. Shutdown actions

Several triggers can cause Linux to shut down. For each shutdown trigger, you can configure a specific shutdown action to be taken as a response.

*Table 51. Shutdown triggers and default action overview*

| Trigger | Command or condition                                                                                                                                                     | Default shutdown action |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| halt    | Linux <b>shutdown -H</b> command                                                                                                                                         | stop                    |
| poff    | Linux <b>poweroff</b> or <b>shutdown -P</b> command                                                                                                                      | stop                    |
| reboot  | Linux <b>reboot</b> or <b>shutdown -r</b> command                                                                                                                        | reipl                   |
| restart | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>PSW restart</b> on the HMC for Linux in LPAR mode</li><li>• z/VM CP <b>system restart</b> command for Linux on z/VM</li></ul> | stop                    |
| panic   | Linux kernel panic                                                                                                                                                       | stop                    |

The available shutdown actions are summarized in Table 52.

*Table 52. Shutdown actions*

| Action     | Explanation                                                                                                    | See also                                                              |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| stop       | For panic or restart, enters a disabled wait state. For all other shutdown triggers, stops all CPUs.           | n/a                                                                   |
| ipl        | Performs an IPL according to the specifications in /sys/firmware/ipl.                                          | “Displaying current IPL parameters” on page 389                       |
| reipl      | Performs an IPL according to the specifications in /sys/firmware/reipl.                                        | “Rebooting from an alternative source” on page 391                    |
| dump       | Creates a dump according to the specifications in /sys/firmware/dump.                                          | <i>Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7</i> , SC34-2711 |
| dump_reipl | Performs the dump action followed by the reipl action.                                                         | <i>Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7</i> , SC34-2711 |
| vmcmd      | For Linux on z/VM, issues one or more z/VM CP commands according to the specifications in /sys/firmware/vmcmd. | “Configuring z/VM CP commands as a shutdown action” on page 403       |

Use **lsshut** to find out which shutdown action is configured for each shutdown trigger, see “**lsshut - List the current system shutdown actions**” on page 514.

Use the applicable command to configure the shutdown action for a shutdown trigger:

- For halt, power off, and reboot use **chshut**, see “*chshut - Control the system shutdown actions*” on page 446.
- For restart and panic use **dumpconf**, see *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711

## Possible overrides

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 maps halt to poff. The action that is specified for halt is ignored and the action that is specified for poff is triggered instead. You can change this by editing the file /etc/sysconfig/shutdown and replacing HALT="auto" with HALT="halt".
- If kdump is set up for a Linux instance, kdump is started to create a dump, regardless of the shutdown actions that are specified for restart and panic. With kdump, these settings act as a backup that is used only if kdump fails.

**Note:** kdump is not a shutdown action that you can set as a sysfs attribute value for a shutdown trigger. See *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 about how to set up kdump.

## The shutdown configuration in sysfs

The configured shutdown action for each shutdown trigger is stored in a sysfs attribute /sys/firmware/shutdown\_actions/on\_<trigger>.

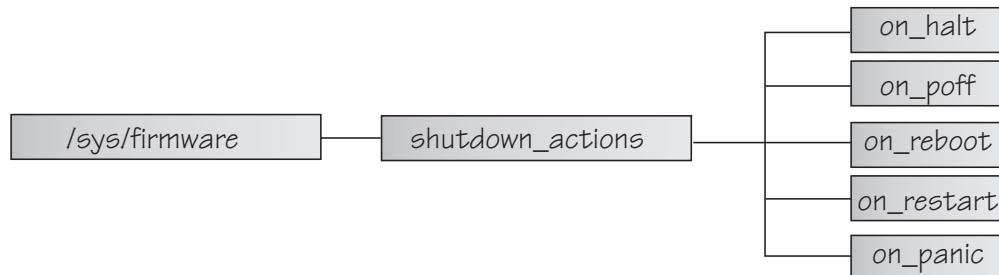


Figure 70. sysfs branch with shutdown action settings

The preferred way to read or change these settings is using the **lsshut**, **chshut**, and **dumpconf** commands. Alternatively, you can read and write to the /sys/firmware/shutdown\_actions/on\_<trigger> attributes.

## Examples

- This command reads the shutdown setting for the poff shutdown trigger.

```
cat /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_poff
stop
```

- This command changes the setting for the restart shutdown trigger to ipl:

```
echo ipl > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_restart
```

Details for the ipl, reipl, dump, and vmcmd shutdown actions are contained in the corresponding subdirectories in /sys/firmware. For example, /sys/firmware/ipl contains specifications for an IPL device and other IPL parameters.

## Configuring z/VM CP commands as a shutdown action

Use **chshut** and **dumpconf** to configure a CP command as a shutdown action, or directly write to the relevant sysfs attributes.

**Before you start:** This information applies to Linux on z/VM only.

Two attributes are required to set a z/VM CP command as a shutdown action for a trigger <trigger>:

- `/sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_<trigger>` must be set to `vmcmd`.
- `/sys/firmware/vmcmd/on_<trigger>` specifies the z/VM CP command.

### Example

The commands in this example configure the z/VM CP LOGOFF command as the shutdown action for the poff shutdown trigger:

```
echo vmcmd > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_poff
echo LOGOFF > /sys/firmware/vmcmd/on_poff
```

Figure 71 illustrates this example.

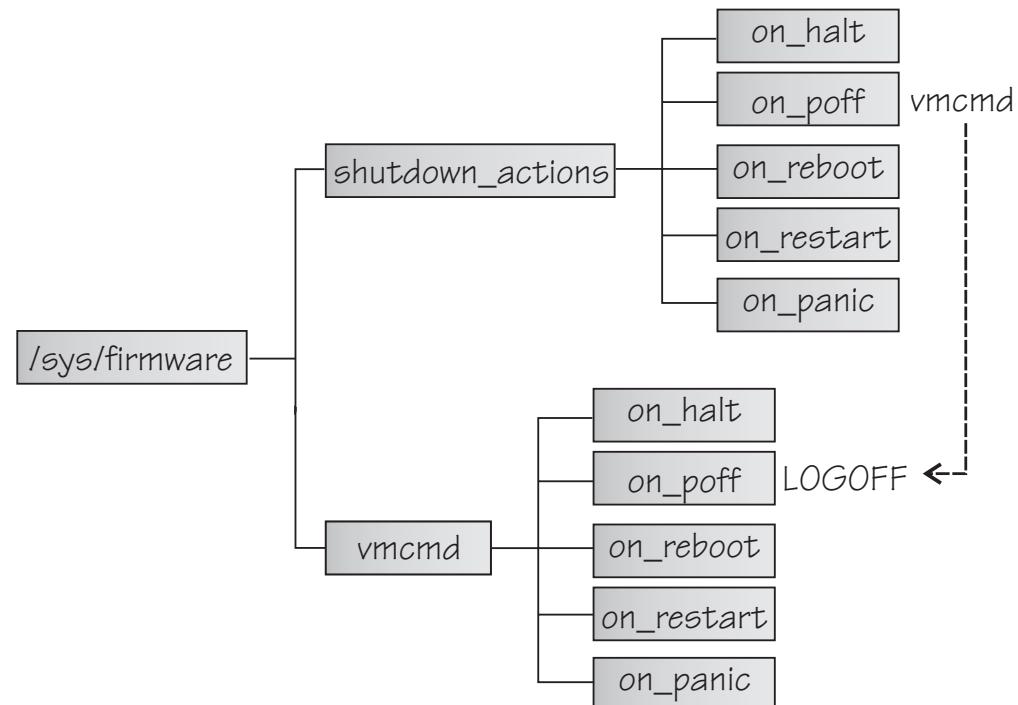


Figure 71. sysfs branch with shutdown action settings

Use the **chshut** and **dumpconf** commands to change your settings. As an alternative, you can write directly to the sysfs attributes. The values of the attributes in the `/sys/firmware/vmcmd` directory must conform to these rules:

- The value must be a valid z/VM CP command.
- The commands, including any z/VM user IDs or device numbers, must be specified with uppercase characters.

- Commands that include blanks must be delimited by double quotation marks ("").
- The value must not exceed 127 characters.

You can specify multiple z/VM CP commands that are separated by the newline character “\n”. Each newline is counted as one character. When writing values with multiple commands, use this syntax to ensure that the newline character is processed correctly:

```
echo -e <cmd1>\n<cmd2>... | cat > /sys/firmware/vmcmd/on_<trigger>
```

where *<cmd1>\n<cmd2>...* are two or more z/VM CP commands and *on\_<trigger>* is one of the attributes in the *vmcmd* directory.

## Example

The commands in this example configure two z/VM CP commands as the shutdown action for the poff shutdown trigger. First a message is sent to user OPERATOR, and then the LOGOFF command is issued.

```
echo vmcmd > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_poff
echo -e "MSG OPERATOR Going down\nLOGOFF" | cat > /sys/firmware/vmcmd/on_poff
```

The **echo** option **-e** and the redirect through **cat** are required because of the newline character.

---

## Part 8. Performance measurement using hardware facilities

|                                                                 |     |                                                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>Chapter 38. Channel measurement facility . . . . .</b>       | 407 | Working with OProfile . . . . .                                         | 412 |
| Setting up the channel measurement facility . . . . .           | 407 |                                                                         |     |
| Working with the channel measurement facility . . . . .         | 408 |                                                                         |     |
| <b>Chapter 39. OProfile hardware sampling support . . . . .</b> | 411 | <b>Chapter 40. Using the CPU-measurement counter facility . . . . .</b> | 415 |
| Setting up OProfile support . . . . .                           | 411 | Working with the CPU-measurement counter facility . . . . .             | 415 |

The System z hardware provides performance data that can be accessed by Linux on System z.

Gathering performance data constitutes an additional load on the Linux instance on which the application to be analyzed runs. Hardware support for data gathering can reduce the extra load and can yield more accurate data.

For the performance measurement facilities of z/VM, see “Performance monitoring for z/VM guest virtual machines” on page 219.

Other performance relevant information is provided in the context of the respective device driver or feature. For example, see “Working with DASD statistics in debugfs” on page 53 for DASD performance and “Starting and stopping collection of QETH performance statistics” on page 152 for qeth group devices.

### Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at  
[ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz\\_r\\_distlibs.html](http://ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html)

### Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at  
[https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux](https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux)



## Chapter 38. Channel measurement facility

The System z architecture provides a channel measurement facility to collect statistical data about I/O on the channel subsystem.

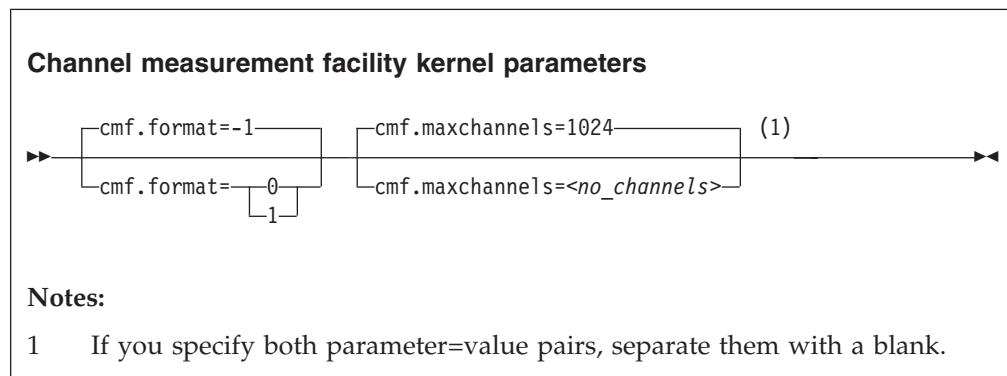
Data collection can be enabled for all CCW devices. User space applications can access this data through the sysfs.

The channel measurement facility provides the following features:

- Basic channel measurement format for concurrently collecting data on up to 4096 devices. (Specifying 4096 or more channels causes high memory consumption, and enabling data collection might not succeed.)
- Extended channel measurement format for concurrently collecting data on an unlimited number of devices.
- Data collection for all channel-attached devices, except those using QDIO (that is, except qeth and SCSI-over-Fibre channel attached devices)

### Setting up the channel measurement facility

Configure the channel measurement facility by adding parameters to the kernel parameter file.



where:

#### **cmf.format**

defines the format, 0 for basic and 1 for extended, of the channel measurement blocks. The default, -1, assigns a format depending on the hardware, the extended format for zEnterprise mainframes.

#### **cmf.maxchannels=<no\_channels>**

limits the number of devices for which data measurement can be enabled concurrently with the basic format. The maximum for <no\_channels> is 4096. A warning is printed if more than 4096 channels are specified. The channel measurement facility might still work; however, specifying more than 4096 channels causes a high memory consumption.

For the extended format, there is no limit and any value you specify is ignored.

## Working with the channel measurement facility

Typical tasks that you need to perform when you work with the channel measurement facility is controlling data collection and reading data.

### Enabling, resetting, and switching off data collection

Control data collection through the `cmb_enable` sysfs attribute of the device.

#### Procedure

Use a device's `cmb_enable` attribute to enable, reset, or switch off data collection.

- To enable data collection, write 1 to the `cmb_enable` attribute. If data collection was already enabled, writing 1 to the attribute resets all collected data to zero.

Issue a command of this form:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmb_enable
```

where `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>` represents the device in sysfs.

When data collection is enabled for a device, a subdirectory `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmf` is created that contains several attributes. These attributes contain the collected data (see “Reading data”).

- To switch off data collection issue a command of this form:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmb_enable
```

When data collection for a device is switched off, the subdirectory `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmf` and its content are deleted.

#### Example

In this example, data collection for a device `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100` is already active and reset:

```
cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/cmb_enable
1
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/cmb_enable
```

## Reading data

Read the sysfs attributes with collected I/O data, for example with the `cat` command.

#### Procedure

While data collection is enabled for a device, the directories that represent it in sysfs contain a subdirectory, `cmf`, with several read-only attributes. These attributes hold the collected data.

To read one of the attributes, issue a command of this form:

```
cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device-bus-id>/cmf/<attribute>
```

where `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device-bus-id>` is the directory that represents the device, and `<attribute>` the attribute to be read. Table 53 on page 409 summarizes the available attributes.

*Table 53. Attributes with collected I/O data*

| Attribute                         | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ssch_rsch_count                   | An integer that represents the ssch rsch count value.                                                                                                                                                 |
| sample_count                      | An integer that represents the sample count value.                                                                                                                                                    |
| avg_device_connect_time           | An integer that represents the average device connect time, in nanoseconds, per sample.                                                                                                               |
| avg_function_pending_time         | An integer that represents the average function pending time, in nanoseconds, per sample.                                                                                                             |
| avg_device_disconnect_time        | An integer that represents the average device disconnect time, in nanoseconds, per sample.                                                                                                            |
| avg_control_unit_queuing_time     | An integer that represents the average control unit queuing time, in nanoseconds, per sample.                                                                                                         |
| avg_initial_command_response_time | An integer that represents the average initial command response time, in nanoseconds, per sample.                                                                                                     |
| avg_device_active_only_time       | An integer that represents the average device active only time, in nanoseconds, per sample.                                                                                                           |
| avg_device_busy_time              | An integer that represents the average value device busy time, in nanoseconds, per sample.                                                                                                            |
| avg_utilization                   | A percent value that represents the fraction of time that was spent in device connect time, plus function pending time, plus device disconnect time during the measurement period.                    |
| avg_sample_interval               | An integer that represents the average time, in nanoseconds, between two samples during the measurement period. Can be “-1” if no measurement data was collected.                                     |
| avg_initial_command_response_time | An integer that represents the average time in nanoseconds between the first command of a channel program being sent to the device and the command being accepted. Available in extended format only. |
| avg_device_busy_time              | An integer that represents the average time in nanoseconds of the subchannel being in the “device busy” state when initiating a start or resume function. Available in extended format only.          |

## Example

To read the avg\_device\_busy\_time attribute for a device /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100:

```
cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/cmf/avg_device_busy_time
21
```



---

## Chapter 39. OProfile hardware sampling support

OProfile is a performance analysis tool for Linux that can use hardware sampling support to capture performance data for processes, shared libraries, the kernel, and device drivers.

For general information about OProfile, see [sourceforge.net/projects/oprofile](http://sourceforge.net/projects/oprofile).

OProfile hardware sampling can be used for Linux instances in LPAR mode.

---

### Setting up OProfile support

After you install the OProfile package that is provided with your distribution, you must initialize OProfile on your Linux instance. Then, enable hardware sampling for the LPAR in which the Linux instance runs.

#### Initializing OProfile

Before initialization, the `/dev/oprofile` file system is not available and commands that act on files within this file system fail.

Issue:

```
opcontrol --init
```

This command loads the `oprofile` module and initializes the OProfile support. For more information, see [oprofile.sourceforge.net/docs](http://oprofile.sourceforge.net/docs).

#### Setting up an LPAR for hardware sampling

To enable hardware sampling for an LPAR you must activate the LPAR with authorization for basic sampling control.

See the *Support Element Operations Guide* for your mainframe system for more information.

To check if hardware sampling is enabled, read the `hwsampler` attribute:

```
cat /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hwsampler
1
```

If hardware sampling is enabled, the value is 1.

If the value is 0, timer-interrupt based sampling is used. The reason might be that your System z hardware does not support hardware sampling, that your LPAR has not been set up for hardware sampling, or that your Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest.

You can disable hardware sampling by writing 0 to the `hwsampler` attribute:

```
echo 0 > /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hwsampler
```

## Working with OProfile

You might have to set the sampling interval and the sampler memory, and you might have to start and stop sampling.

- “Starting and stopping sampling”
- “Setting the sampling interval”
- “Setting the sampler memory”

### Starting and stopping sampling

You start and stop sampling as you would on any hardware platform.

See [oprofile.sourceforge.net/docs](http://oprofile.sourceforge.net/docs) for details.

### Setting the sampling interval

Set the sampling interval through the /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hw\_interval attribute in the /dev/oprofile file system.

#### Procedure

Issue a command of this form to set the sample interval:

```
echo <value> > /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hw_interval
```

where *<value>* is the sample interval in processor cycles. The sample interval must not exceed the value of the hw\_max\_interval attribute and it must not be smaller than the value of the hw\_min\_interval attribute. The default is 4096.

#### Example

This example sets the sampling rate to twice the default rate:

```
echo 2048 > /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hw_interval
```

### Setting the sampler memory

Set the sampler memory size through the /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hw\_sdbt\_blocks attribute in the /dev/oprofile file system.

#### About this task

The best size for the sampler memory depends on the particular system and the workload to be measured. Providing the sampler with too little memory results in lost samples. Reserving too much system memory for the sampler impacts the overall performance and, hence, also the workload to be measured.

#### Procedure

To set the size of the memory that is reserved for sampled data, issue a command of this form:

```
echo <value> > /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hw_sdbt_blocks
```

where *<value>* is the memory size in multiples of 2 MB. The default is 1.

## Example

```
echo 2 > /dev/oprofile/hwsampling/hw_sdbt_blocks
```



---

## Chapter 40. Using the CPU-measurement counter facility

The hardware counters of the z/Architecture® CPU-measurement counter facility can be used for Linux instances in LPAR mode.

The hardware counters of the z/Architecture CPU-measurement counter facility are grouped into counter sets:

- Basic counter set
- Problem-state counter set
- Crypto-activity counter set
- Extended counter set

The number and type of individual counters depends on your System z hardware model. For details, see *IBM The CPU-Measurement Facility Extended Counters Definition for z10™, z196, z114 and zEC12, SA23-2261*.

A further common counter set, Coprocessor group counter set, cannot be accessed from Linux on System z.

You can use the **perf** tool on Linux to access the hardware counters of the CPU-measurement counter facility.

To use the **perf** tool, you need to install the perf tool package provided with your distribution. Also verify that `CONFIG_PERF_EVENTS=y` is set in the `/boot/config` file.

---

## Working with the CPU-measurement counter facility

You can use the perf tool to work with the CPU-measurement counter facility for authorized LPARs.

- “Authorizing an LPAR for CPU-measurement counter sets”
- “Reading CPU-measurement counters for an application” on page 416
- “Obtaining debug information” on page 417

### Authorizing an LPAR for CPU-measurement counter sets

The LPAR within which the Linux instance runs must be authorized to use the CPU-measurement counter sets. Use the HMC or SE to authorize the LPAR for the counter sets you need.

#### Procedure

Perform these steps on the HMC or SE to grant authorization:

1. Navigate to the LPAR for which you want to grant authorization for the counter sets.
2. Select the **Security** page.
3. Within the counter facility options, select each counter set you want to use. The coprocessor group counter set is not supported by Linux on System z.
4. Click **Save**.

## What to do next

Deactivate, activate, and IPL the LPAR to make the authorization take effect. For more information, see the *Support Element Operations Guide* for your mainframe system.

## Reading CPU-measurement counters for an application

Use the perf tool to read CPU-measurement counters with the scope of an application.

### Before you begin

You must know the hexadecimal value of the counter number. You can find the decimal values in *z/Architecture The Load-Program-Parameter and the CPU-Measurement Facilities*, SA23-2260 and in *IBM The CPU-Measurement Facility Extended Counters Definition for z10, z196, z114 and zEC12*, SA23-2261.

### Procedure

Issue a command of this form to read a counter:

```
perf stat -e r<hex_counter_number> -- <path_to_app>
```

Where:

**-e r<hex\_counter\_number>**

specifies the hexadecimal value for the counter number as a raw event.

**Tip:** You can read multiple counters by specifying a comma-separated list of raw events, for example, -e r20,r21.

**<path\_to\_app>**

specifies the path to the application to be evaluated. The counters are incremented for all threads that belong to the specified application.

For more information about the **perf** command, see the **perf** or **perf-stat** man page.

### Example

To read the counters with hexadecimal values 20 (problem-state cycle count) and 21 (problem-state instruction count) for an application /bin/df:

```
perf stat -e r20,r21 -- /bin/df
Filesystem 1K-blocks Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/dasda1 7188660 2521760 4306296 37% /
none 923428 88 923340 1% /dev/shm
/dev/dasdb1 7098728 2631972 4106152 40% /root

Performance counter stats for '/bin/df':
1185753 raw 0x20
257509 raw 0x21

0.002507687 seconds time elapsed
```

## Obtaining debug information

You can obtain version information for the CPU-measurement counter facility and check which counter sets are authorized on your LPAR.

### Before you begin

If you call magic sysrequest functions with a method other than through the procfs, you might need to activate them first. For more information about the magic sysrequest functions, see “Using the magic sysrequest feature” on page 340.

### Procedure

Perform these steps to obtain debug information:

1. Use the magic sysrequest function with character p to trigger a kernel message with information about the CPU-measurement counter facility.

For example, trigger the message from procfs:

```
echo p > /proc/sysrq-trigger
```

2. Find the message by issuing the **dmesg** command and looking for output lines that include CPUM\_CF.

#### Example:

```
CPU[0] CPUM_CF: ver=1.2 A=000c E=0008 C=0000
```

**Note:** The message is specific to the particular processor that processed the magic sysrequest. However, the scope of the version (ver=) and authorization (A=) information is the LPAR and can be read from the message for any processor in the LPAR. The values for E= (enabled) and C= (activated) can differ among processors.

3. Obtain the version of the CPU-measurement counter facility by reading the value of the ver= parameter in the message.
4. Check whether counter sets are authorized for the LPAR by interpreting the value of the A= parameter in the message.

The value is a 4-digit hexadecimal number that represent the sums of these values for the individual counter sets:

- 0001 Extended counter set.
- 0002 Basic counter set.
- 0004 Problem-state counter set.
- 0008 Crypto-activity counter set.

#### Examples:

A=0000 means that none of the counter set are authorized.

A=000c means that the Problem-state counter set and the Crypto-activity counter set are authorized.

A=000f means that all four counter sets are authorized.

**More information:** For more details, see *z/Architecture The Load-Program-Parameter and the CPU-Measurement Facilities*, SA23-2260.

## Example

This example shows how to trigger the message from procfs and assumes that message numbers are supported:

```
echo p > /proc/sysrq-trigger
dmesg | grep perf.ee05c5
perf.ee05c5: CPU[0] CPUM_CF: ver=1.2 A=000c E=0008 C=0000
```

In the message, **ver=1.2** means version 1.2 of the System z CPU-measurement counter facility.

Because  $0x000c = 0x0004 + 0x0008$ , the **A=000c** of the example means that the Problem-state counter set and the Crypto-activity counter set are authorized for the LPAR.

**cpu0 only:** **E=0008** means that only the Crypto-activity counter set is enabled, and the **C=0000** means that neither of the counter sets are activated.

---

## Part 9. Diagnostics and troubleshooting

|                                                                        |     |                                                                       |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>Chapter 41. Logging I/O subchannel status information</b> . . . . . | 421 | Ensuring correct channel path status . . . . .                        | 429 |
| <b>Chapter 42. Control program identification</b> . . . . .            | 423 | Determining channel path usage . . . . .                              | 429 |
| Working with the CPI support. . . . .                                  | 423 | Configuring LPAR I/O devices . . . . .                                | 429 |
| <b>Chapter 43. Activating automatic problem reporting</b> . . . . .    | 427 | Using cio_ignore . . . . .                                            | 430 |
| Setting up the Call Home support . . . . .                             | 427 | Excessive guest swapping . . . . .                                    | 430 |
| Activating the Call Home support . . . . .                             | 427 | Including service levels of the hardware and the hypervisor . . . . . | 430 |
| <b>Chapter 44. Avoiding common pitfalls</b> . . . . .                  | 429 | Booting stops with disabled wait state . . . . .                      | 431 |
|                                                                        |     | Preparing for dump-on-panic . . . . .                                 | 431 |
|                                                                        |     | Multipath failover causes kernel panic . . . . .                      | 431 |

These resources are useful when diagnosing and solving problems for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.

### Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at  
[ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz\\_r\\_distlibs.html](http://ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html)

### Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at  
[https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux](https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux)

When reporting a problem to IBM support, you might be asked to supply a kernel dump. See *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 for information about how to create dumps.



---

# Chapter 41. Logging I/O subchannel status information

When investigating I/O subchannels, support specialists might request operation status information for the subchannel.

## About this task

The channel subsystem offers a logging facility that creates a set of log entries with such information. From Linux, you can trigger this logging facility through sysfs.

The log entries are available through the SE Console Actions Work Area with the View Console Logs function. The entries differ dependent on the device and model that is connected to the subchannel. On the SE, the entries are listed with a prefix that identifies the model. The content of the entries is intended for support specialists.

## Procedure

To create a log entry, issue a command of this form:

```
echo 1 > /sys/devices/css0/<subchannel-bus-id>/logging
```

where *<subchannel-bus-id>* is the bus ID of the I/O subchannel that corresponds to the I/O device for which you want to create a log entry.

To find out how your I/O devices map to subchannels you can use, for example, the **lscss** command.

## Example

In this example, first the subchannel for an I/O device with bus ID 0.0.3d07 is identified, then logging is initiated.

```
lscss -d 0.0.3d07
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs

0.0.3d07 0.0.000c 1732/01 1731/01 80 80 ff 05000000 00000000
echo 1 > /sys/devices/css0/0.0.000c/logging
```



---

## Chapter 42. Control program identification

If your Linux instance runs in LPAR mode, you can provide the names of the Linux instance and, if applicable, sysplex to the control program identification (CPI) feature.

You can use one of these interfaces to specify the names:

- The `/etc/sysconfig/cpi` configuration file provided by Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7
- The sysfs interface `/sys/firmware/cpi`
- The control program identification module, `sclp_cpi`

The names are used, for example, to identify the Linux instance or the sysplex on the HMC. This section describes how to set the system and sysplex names using sysfs.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 provides an init script, `/etc/init.d/cpi`, to set the system and sysplex name automatically during system boot.

---

### Working with the CPI support

Typical tasks that you perform when working with CPI support are setting and displaying system information.

- “Loading the CPI module”
- “Defining a sysplex name” on page 424
- “Defining a system name” on page 424
- “Displaying the system type” on page 424
- “Displaying the system level” on page 425
- “Sending system data to the SE” on page 425

### Loading the CPI module

You can provide the system name and the sysplex name as parameters when you load the CPI module, but the preferred method is to edit the `/etc/sysconfig/cpi` configuration file.

### About this task

When you load the CPI module, the following is sent to the SE:

- System name (if provided)
- Sysplex name (if provided)
- System type (automatically set to "LINUX")
- System level (automatically set to the value of `LINUX_VERSION_CODE`)

### CPI module parameter syntax

```
►modprobe sclp_cpi [system_name=<system>] [sysplex_name=<sysplex>]
```

where:

**system\_name = <system>**

specifies an eight-character system name of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, #, and blank. The specification is converted to uppercase.

**sysplex\_name = <sysplex>**

specifies an eight-character sysplex name of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, #, and blank. The specification is converted to uppercase.

## Defining a system name

You can use the `system_name` attribute in the `/sys/firmware/cpi` directory in sysfs to specify a system name.

### About this task

The system name is a string that consists of up to eight characters of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, #, and blank.

The `system_name` attribute is intended for setting the name only. To confirm the current system name, check the HMC.

### Example

```
echo LPAR12 > /sys/firmware/cpi/system_name
```

## Defining a sysplex name

You can use the `sysplex_name` attribute in the `/sys/firmware/cpi` directory in sysfs to specify a sysplex name.

### About this task

The sysplex name is a string that consists of up to eight characters of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, #, and blank.

This attribute is intended for setting the name only. To confirm the current sysplex name, check the HMC.

### Example

```
echo SYSPLEX1 > /sys/firmware/cpi/sysplex_name
```

## Displaying the system type

Read the `system_type` attribute in the `/sys/firmware/cpi` directory in sysfs to obtain the system type.

## Example

```
cat /sys/firmware/cpi/system_type
LINUX
```

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux the system type is LINUX.

## Displaying the system level

Read version information about your Linux instance from the `system_level` attribute in the `/sys/firmware/cpi` directory in sysfs.

### About this task

The information is displayed in the format:

`0x0000000000aabbc`

where:

**aa** kernel version

**bb** kernel patch level

**cc** kernel sublevel

## Example

Linux kernel 2.6.32 displays as

```
cat /sys/firmware/cpi/system_level
0x0000000000020620
```

## Sending system data to the SE

Use the `set` attribute in the `/sys/firmware/cpi` directory in sysfs to send data to the service element.

### About this task

To send the data in attributes `sysplex_name`, `system_level`, `system_name`, and `system_type` to the SE, write an arbitrary string to the `set` attribute.

## Example

```
echo 1 > /sys/firmware/cpi/set
```



---

## Chapter 43. Activating automatic problem reporting

You can activate automatic problem reporting for situations where Linux experiences a kernel panic.

### Before you begin

- The Linux instance must run in an LPAR.
- You need a hardware support agreement with IBM to report problems to RETAIN®.

### About this task

Linux uses the Call Home function to send automatically collected problem data to the IBM service organization through the Service Element. Hence a system crash automatically leads to a new Problem Management Record (PMR) which can be processed by IBM service.

---

## Setting up the Call Home support

To set up the Call Home support, load the `sclp_async` module with the `modprobe` command.

### About this task

There are no module parameters for `sclp_async`.

### Procedure

Load the `sclp_async` module with the `modprobe` command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order:

```
modprobe sclp_async
```

---

## Activating the Call Home support

When the `sclp_async` module is loaded, you can control it through the `sysctl` interface or `procfs`.

### Procedure

To activate the support, set the `callhome` attribute to 1. To deactivate the support, set the `callhome` attribute to 0. Issue a command of this form:

```
echo <flag> > /proc/sys/kernel/callhome
```

This is equivalent to:

```
sysctl -w kernel.callhome=<flag>
```

To persistently enable the Call Home support across reboots, add "`kernel.callhome=1`" to the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file. The kernel module must be

loaded before the sysctl.conf file is processed.  
Linux cannot check whether Call Home is supported by the hardware.

## Examples

- To activate the Call Home support, issue:

```
echo 1 > /proc/sys/kernel/callhome
```

- To deactivate the Call Home support, issue:

```
echo 0 > /proc/sys/kernel/callhome
```

---

## Chapter 44. Avoiding common pitfalls

Common problems and how to avoid them.

### Ensuring correct channel path status

Ensure that you have varied the path offline before you perform a planned task on it.

Tasks that require the channel path to be offline include:

- Pulling out or plugging in a cable on a path.
- Configuring a path off or on at the SE.

To vary the path offline, issue a command of the form:

```
echo off > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status
```

After the operation completed and the path is available again, vary the path online by using a command of the form:

```
echo on > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status
```

An unplanned change in path availability can occur due to, for example, unplanned cable pulls or a temporary path malfunction. Then, the PIM/PAM/POM values (as obtained through **lscss**) might not be as expected. To update the PIM/PAM/POM values, vary one of the paths that lead to the affected devices by using:

```
echo off > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status
echo on > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status.
```

**Rationale:** Linux does not always receive a notification (machine check) when the status of a path changes (especially for a path that comes online again). To make sure Linux has up-to-date information about the usable paths, path verification is triggered through the Linux vary operation.

### Determining channel path usage

To determine the usage of a specific channel path on LPAR, for example, to check whether traffic is distributed evenly over all channel paths, use the channel path measurement facility.

See “Channel path measurement” on page 14 for details.

### Configuring LPAR I/O devices

A Linux LPAR should contain only those I/O devices that it uses.

Limit the I/O devices by:

- Adding only the needed devices to the IOCDS

- Using the `cio_ignore` kernel parameter to ignore all devices that are not currently in use by this LPAR.

If more devices are needed later, they can be dynamically removed from the list of devices to be ignored. Use the `cio_ignore` kernel parameter or the `/proc/cio_ignore` dynamic control to remove devices, see “`cio_ignore` - List devices to be ignored” on page 570 and “Changing the exclusion list” on page 571.

**Rationale:** Numerous unused devices can cause:

- Unnecessary high memory usage due to allocation of device structures.
- Unnecessary high load on status changes because hot-plug handling must be done for every device found.

---

## Using `cio_ignore`

With `cio_ignore`, essential devices might be hidden.

For example, if Linux does not boot under z/VM and does not show any message except:

```
HCPGIR450W CP entered; disabled wait PSW 00020001 80000000 00000000 00144D7A
```

Check if `cio_ignore` is used and verify that the console device, which is typically device number 0.0.0009, is not ignored.

---

## Excessive guest swapping

Avoid excessive guest swapping by using the timed page pool size and the static page pool size attributes.

An instance of Linux on z/VM might be swapping and stalling. Setting the timed page pool size and the static page pool size to zero might solve the problem:

```
echo 0 > /proc/sys/vm/cmm_timed_pages
echo 0 > /proc/sys/vm/cmm_pages
```

If you see a temporary relief, the guest does not have enough memory. Try increasing the guest memory.

If the problem persists, z/VM might be out of memory.

If you are using cooperative memory management (CMM), unload the cooperative memory management module:

```
modprobe -r cmm
```

See Chapter 24, “Cooperative memory management,” on page 273 for more details about CMM.

---

## Including service levels of the hardware and the hypervisor

The service levels of the different hardware cards, the LPAR level, and the z/VM service level are valuable information for problem analysis.

If possible, include this information with any problem you report to IBM service.

A /proc interface that provides a list of service levels is available. To see the service levels issue:

```
cat /proc/service_levels
```

Example for a z/VM system with a QETH adapter:

```
cat /proc/service_levels
VM: z/VM Version 5 Release 2.0, service level 0801 (64-bit)
qeth: 0.0.f5f0 firmware level 087d
```

---

## Booting stops with disabled wait state

An automatic processor type check might stop the boot process with a disabled wait PSW.

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, a processor type check is automatically run at every kernel startup. If the check determines that Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 is not compatible with the hardware, it stops the boot process with a disabled wait PSW with an address of zero.

If this problem occurs, ensure that you are running Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 on supported hardware. See the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at [https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux](https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux)

---

## Preparing for dump-on-panic

You might want to consider setting up your system to automatically create a memory dump after a kernel panic.

Configuring and using dump-on-panic has the following advantages:

- You have a memory dump disk that is prepared ahead of time.
- You do not have to reproduce the problem since a memory dump will be triggered automatically immediately after the failure.

See Chapter 37, “Shutdown actions,” on page 401 for details.

---

## Multipath failover causes kernel panic

In a multipath setup where SCSI disks are attached over multiple paths, failover might trigger a kernel panic.

To remedy this, try increasing the value for `fast_fail` to, for example, 5 seconds and `dev_loss_tmo` to, for example, 120 seconds.



---

## Part 10. Reference

|                                                                                |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>Chapter 45. Commands for Linux on System z</b>                              | 435 |
| Generic command options . . . . .                                              | 435 |
| chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes . . . . .                                 | 436 |
| chchp - Change channel path status . . . . .                                   | 438 |
| chmem - Set memory online or offline . . . . .                                 | 440 |
| chreipl - Modify the re-IPL configuration . . . . .                            | 442 |
| chshut - Control the system shutdown actions . .                               | 446 |
| chzcrypt - Modify the cryptographic configuration                              | 448 |
| cmsfs-fuse - Mount a z/VM CMS file system. . . .                               | 450 |
| cpupluggd - Control CPUs and memory. . . . .                                   | 455 |
| dasdfmt - Format a DASD . . . . .                                              | 464 |
| dasdstat - Display DASD performance statistics                                 | 468 |
| dasdview - Display DASD structure. . . . .                                     | 471 |
| fdasd - Partition a DASD . . . . .                                             | 479 |
| hypstop - Display hypervisor performance data .                                | 487 |
| lschp - List channel paths . . . . .                                           | 497 |
| lcscs - List subchannels . . . . .                                             | 499 |
| lsdasd - List DASD devices. . . . .                                            | 503 |
| lsluns - Discover LUNs in Fibre Channel SANs .                                 | 505 |
| lsmem - Show online status information about<br>memory blocks. . . . .         | 507 |
| lsqeth - List qeth-based network devices . . . . .                             | 509 |
| lsreipl - List IPL and re-IPL settings . . . . .                               | 511 |
| lsscm - List storage-class memory increments. .                                | 512 |
| lsshut - List the current system shutdown actions                              | 514 |
| lstape - List tape devices . . . . .                                           | 515 |
| lszcrypt - Display cryptographic devices . . . . .                             | 519 |
| lszfcp - List zfcp devices. . . . .                                            | 522 |
| mon_fsstatd - Monitor z/VM guest file system size                              | 524 |
| mon_procd - Monitor Linux on z/VM . . . . .                                    | 528 |
| qetharp - Query and purge OSA and HiperSockets<br>ARP data. . . . .            | 535 |
| qethconf - Configure qeth devices . . . . .                                    | 537 |
| qethqoat - Query OSA address table. . . . .                                    | 540 |
| scsi_logging_level - Set and get the SCSI logging<br>level . . . . .           | 543 |
| tape390_crypt - Manage tape encryption . . . . .                               | 546 |
| tape390_display - Display messages on tape<br>devices and load tapes . . . . . | 550 |
| tunedasd - Adjust low-level DASD settings . . . .                              | 552 |
| vmcp - Send CP commands to the z/VM<br>hypervisor . . . . .                    | 555 |
| vmur - Work with z/VM spool file queues . . . .                                | 557 |
| znetconf - List and configure network devices . .                              | 565 |
| <b>Chapter 46. Selected kernel parameters</b>                                  | 569 |
| cio_ignore - List devices to be ignored . . . . .                              | 570 |
| cmma - Reduce hypervisor paging I/O overhead                                   | 574 |
| maxcpus - Restrict the number of CPUs Linux can<br>use at IPL . . . . .        | 575 |
| mem - Restrict memory usage . . . . .                                          | 576 |
| possible_cpus - Limit the number of CPUs Linux<br>can use . . . . .            | 577 |
| ramdisk_size - Specify the ramdisk size . . . . .                              | 578 |
| ro - Mount the root file system read-only . . . . .                            | 579 |
| root - Specify the root device . . . . .                                       | 580 |
| user_mode - Set address mode for user space<br>processes . . . . .             | 581 |
| vdso - Optimize system call performance . . . . .                              | 582 |
| vmhalt - Specify CP command to run after a<br>system halt . . . . .            | 583 |
| vmpanic - Specify CP command to run after a<br>kernel panic . . . . .          | 584 |
| vmpoff - Specify CP command to run after a<br>power off. . . . .               | 585 |
| vmreboot - Specify CP command to run on reboot                                 | 586 |
| <b>Chapter 47. Linux diagnose code use</b>                                     | 587 |

Use these commands, kernel parameters, kernel options to configure Linux on System z. Be aware of the z/VM DIAG calls required by Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.

### Newest version

You can find the newest version of this book at  
[ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz\\_r\\_distlibs.html](http://ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_distlibs.html)

### Restrictions

For prerequisites and restrictions see the System z architecture specific information in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 release notes at  
[https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux](https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux)



---

## Chapter 45. Commands for Linux on System z

You can use System z specific commands to configure and work with the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z device drivers and features.

Some commands come with an init script or a configuration file or both. Init scripts are installed in `/etc/init.d/` and configuration files are installed in `/etc/sysconfig/`. You can extract any missing files from the `etc` subdirectory in the `s390utils` RPM.

### Commands described elsewhere

- For the `zipl` command, see Chapter 34, “Initial program loader for System z - `zipl`,” on page 347.
- For commands and tools that are related to creating and analyzing system dumps, see *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711.
- For commands related to terminal access over IUCV connections, see *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596.
- The `icainfo` and `icastats` commands are provided with the `libica` package and described in *libica Programmer’s Reference*, SC34-2602.

---

## Generic command options

For simplicity, common command options are omitted from some of the syntax diagrams.

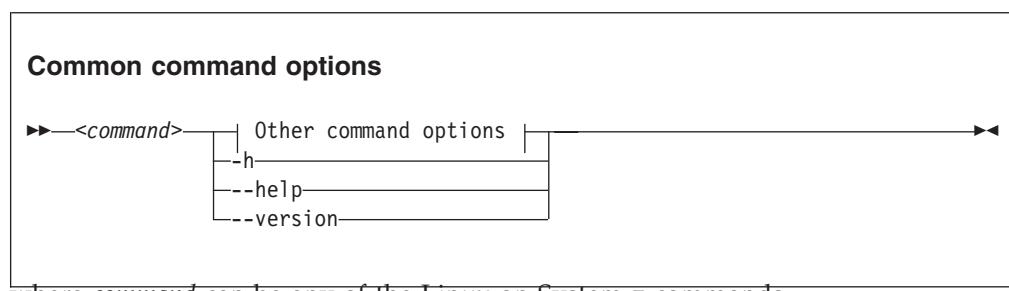
### **-h or --help**

to display help information for the command.

### **--version**

to display version information for the command.

The syntax for these options is:



See Appendix B, “Understanding syntax diagrams,” on page 593 for general information about reading syntax diagrams.

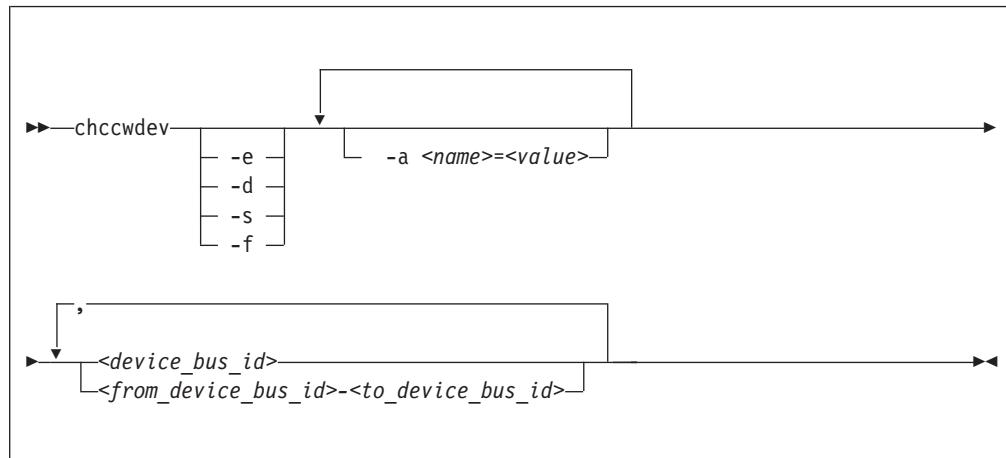
## chccwdev - Set CCW device attributes

Use the **chccwdev** command to set attributes for CCW devices and to set CCW devices online or offline.

Use “znetconf - List and configure network devices” on page 565 to work with CCW\_GROUP devices. For more information about CCW devices and CCW group devices, see “Device categories” on page 7.

The **chccwdev** command uses cio\_settle before it changes anything, to ensure that sysfs reflects the latest device status information, and includes newly available devices.

### chccwdev syntax



Where:

**-e or --online**

sets the device online.

**-d or --offline**

sets the device offline.

**-s or --safeoffline**

waits until all outstanding I/O requests complete, and then tries to set the device offline. Valid for DASDs only.

**-f or --forceonline**

forces a boxed device online, if this action is supported by the device driver.

**-a or --attribute <name>=<value>**

sets the <name> attribute to <value>.

The available attributes depend on the device type. See the chapter for your device for details about the applicable attributes and values.

Setting the **online** attribute has the same effect as using the **-e** or **-d** options.

**<device\_bus\_id>**

identifies the device to be set online or offline. **<device\_bus\_id>** is a device number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID. Input is converted to lowercase.

*<from\_device\_bus\_id>-<to\_device\_bus\_id>*

identifies a range of devices. If not all devices in the range exist, the command is limited to the existing ones. If you specify a range with no existing devices, you get an error message.

**-h or --help**

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man chccwdev**.

**-v or --version**

displays version information for the command.

## Examples

- To set a CCW device 0.0.b100 online issue:

```
chccwdev -e 0.0.b100
```

- Alternatively, use **-a** to set a CCW device 0.0.b100 online. Issue:

```
chccwdev -a online=1 0.0.b100
```

- To set all CCW devices in the range 0.0.b200 through 0.0.b2ff online, issue:

```
chccwdev -e 0.0.b200-0.0.b2ff
```

- To set a CCW device 0.0.b100 and all CCW devices in the range 0.0.b200 through 0.0.b2ff offline, issue:

```
chccwdev -d 0.0.b100,0.0.b200-0.0.b2ff
```

- To set several CCW devices in different ranges and different subchannel sets offline, issue:

```
chccwdev -a online=0 0.0.1000-0.0.1100,0.1.7000-0.1.7010,0.0.1234,0.1.4321
```

- To set devices with bus ID 0.0.0192, and 0.0.0195 through 0.0.0198 offline after completing all outstanding I/O requests:

```
chccwdev -s 0.0.0192,0.0.0195-0.0.0198
```

If an outstanding I/O request is blocked, the command might wait forever. Reasons for blocked I/O requests include reserved devices that can be released or disconnected devices that can be reconnected.

- Try to resolve the problem that blocks the I/O request and wait for the command to complete.
  - If you cannot resolve the problem, issue **chccwdev -d** to cancel the outstanding I/O requests. The data is lost.
- To set an ECKD DASD 0.0.b100 online and to enable extended error reporting and logging issue:

```
chccwdev -e -a eer_enabled=1 -a erplog=1 0.0.b100
```

## chchp - Change channel path status

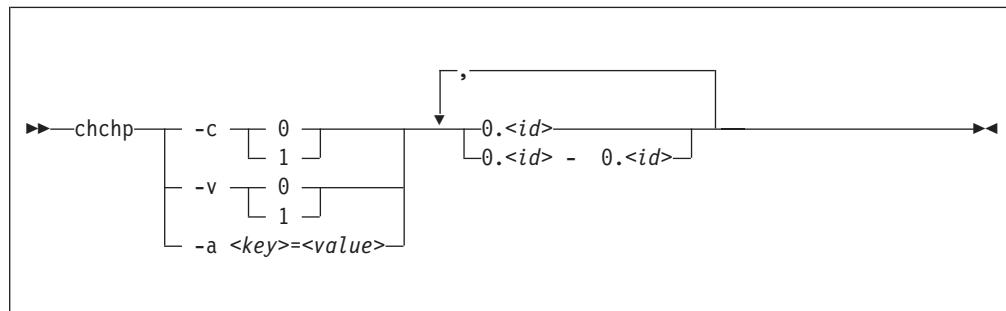
Use the **chchp** command to set channel paths online or offline.

The actions are equivalent to performing a Configure Channel Path Off or Configure Channel Path On operation on the Hardware Management Console.

The channel path status that results from a configure operation is persistent across IPLs.

**Note:** Changing the configuration state of an I/O channel path might affect the availability of I/O devices. It can also trigger associated functions (such as channel-path verification or device scanning) which in turn can result in a temporary increase in processor, memory, and I/O load.

### chchp syntax



Where:

**-c or --configure <value>**

sets the device to configured (1) or standby (0).

**Note:** Setting the configured state to standby can stop running I/O operations.

**-v or --vary <value>**

changes the logical channel-path state to online (1) or offline (0).

**Note:** Setting the logical state to offline can stop running I/O operations.

**-a or --attribute <key> = <value>**

changes the channel-path sysfs attribute *<key>* to *<value>*. The *<key>* can be the name of any available channel-path sysfs attribute (that is, *configure* or *status*). *<value>* can take any valid value that can be written to the attribute (for example, 0 or offline). Using -a is a generic way of writing to the corresponding sysfs attribute. It is intended for cases where sysfs attributes or attribute values are available in the kernel but not in **chchp**.

**0.<id> and 0.<id> - 0.<id>**

where *<id>* is a hexadecimal, two-digit, lowercase identifier for the channel path. An operation can be performed on more than one channel path by specifying multiple identifiers as a comma-separated list, or a range, or a combination of both.

**--version**

displays the version number of **chchp** and exits.

**-h or --help**

displays a short help text, then exits.

**Examples**

- To set channel path 0.19 into standby state issue:

```
chchp -a configure=0 0.19
```

- To set the channel path with the channel path ID 0.40 to the standby state, write 0 to the configure file with the **chchp** command:

```
chchp --configure 0 0.40
Configure standby 0.40... done.
```

- To set a channel-path to the configured state, write 1 to the configure file with the **chchp** command:

```
chchp --configure 1 0.40
Configure online 0.40... done.
```

- To set channel-paths 0.65 to 0.6f to the configured state issue:

```
chchp -c 1 0.65-0.6f
```

- To set channel-paths 0.12, 0.7f and 0.17 to 0.20 to the logical offline state issue:

```
chchp -v 0 0.12,0.7f,0.17-0.20
```

## chmem

### chmem - Set memory online or offline

Use the **chmem** command to set a particular size or range of memory online or offline.

Setting memory online can fail if the hypervisor does not have enough memory left, for example because memory was overcommitted. Setting memory offline can fail if Linux cannot free the memory. If only part of the requested memory can be set online or offline, a message informs you how much memory was set online or offline instead of the requested amount.

#### chmem syntax

```
►—chmem— [-e] [<size>]
 [-d] [<start>-<end>] —►
```

Where:

**-e or --enable**

sets the specified memory online.

**-d or --disable**

sets the specified memory offline.

**<size>**

specifies an amount of memory to be set online or offline. A numeric value without a unit or a numeric value immediately followed by **m** or **M** is interpreted as MB (1024 x 1024 bytes). A numeric value immediately followed by **g** or **G** is interpreted as GB (1024 x 1024 x 1024 bytes).

The size must be aligned to the memory block size, as shown in the output of the **lsmem** command.

**<start>-<end>**

specifies a memory range to be set online or offline. **<start>** is the hexadecimal address of the first byte and **<end>** is the hexadecimal address of the last byte in the memory range.

The range must be aligned to the memory block size, as shown in the output of the **lsmem** command.

**-v or --version**

displays the version number of **chmem**, then exits.

**-h or --help**

displays a short help text, then exits. To view the man page, enter **man chmem**.

#### Examples

- This command requests 1024 MB of memory to be set online.

```
chmem --enable 1024
```

- This command requests 2 GB of memory to be set online.

```
chmem --enable 2g
```

- This command requests the memory range that starts with 0x00000000e4000000 and ends with 0x00000000f3fffff to be set offline.

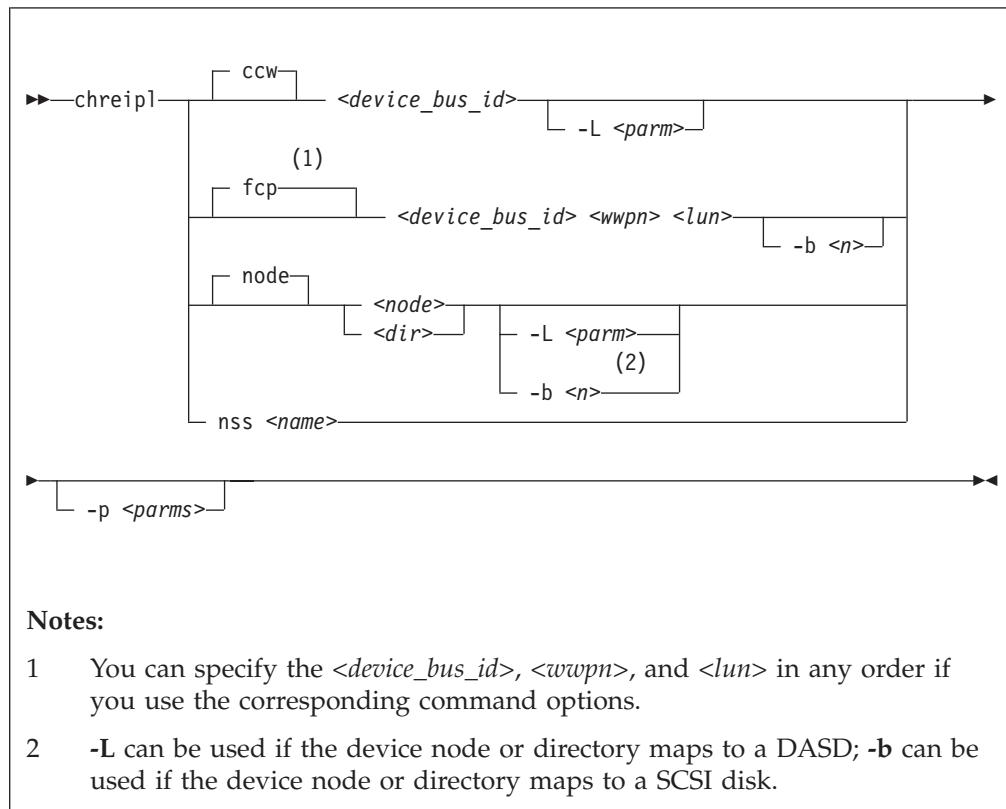
```
chmem --disable 0x00000000e4000000-0x00000000f3fffff
```

## chreipl - Modify the re-IPL configuration

Use the **chreipl** tool to modify the re-IPL configuration for Linux on System z.

You can configure a particular device as the reboot device. For **zipl** boot menu configurations, you can set the boot menu entry to be used for the next reboot. You can also specify additional kernel parameters for the next reboot.

### chreipl syntax



Where:

<device\_bus\_id> **or** -d <device\_bus\_id> **or** --device <device\_bus\_id>  
specifies the device bus-ID of a CCW re-IPL device or of the FCP device through with a SCSI re-IPL device is attached.

<wwpn> **or** -w <wwpn> **or** --wwpn <wwpn>  
specifies the worldwide port name (WWPN) of a SCSI re-IPL device.

<lun> **or** -l <lun> **or** --lun <lun>  
specifies the logical unit number (LUN) of a SCSI re-IPL device.

<node>  
specifies a device node of a DASD, SCSI, or logical device mapper re-IPL device. For more information about logical boot devices, see “Preparing a logical device as a boot device” on page 354.

<dir>  
specifies a directory in the Linux file system on the re-IPL device.

**nss**

declares that the following parameters refer to a z/VM named saved system (NSS).

**<name> or -n <name> or --name <name>**

specifies the name of an NSS as defined on the z/VM system.

**-L or --loadparm <parameter>**

specifies the entry in the boot menu to be used for the next reboot. This parameter applies only if the re-IPL device is a DASD with a **zip1** boot menu configuration.

Omitting this parameter eliminates an existing selection in the boot configuration. Depending on your boot menu configuration, a **zip1** interactive boot menu might be displayed during the re-IPL process or the default configuration is used. See “Example for a DASD menu configuration on z/VM” on page 379, “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 386, and “Menu configurations” on page 370 for details.

**-b or --bootprog <n>**

specifies the entry in the boot menu to be used for the next reboot. This parameter applies only if the re-IPL device is a SCSI disk with a **zip1** boot menu configuration.

Omitting this parameter eliminates an existing selection in the boot configuration and the default boot configuration is used.

**-p or --bootparms**

specifies boot parameters for the next reboot. The boot parameters, which typically are kernel parameters, are appended to the kernel parameter line in the boot configuration. The number of characters you can specify depends on your environment and re-IPL device as shown in Table 54.

*Table 54. Maximum characters for additional kernel parameters*

| Virtual hardware where Linux runs | DASD re-IPL device | SCSI re-IPL device | NSS re-IPL device |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| z/VM guest virtual machine        | 64                 | 3452               | 56                |
| LPAR                              | none               | 3452               | n/a               |

If you omit this parameter, the existing boot parameters in the next boot configuration are used without any changes.

**-h or --help**

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man chreipl**.

**-v or --version**

displays version information.

For disk-type re-IPL devices, the command accepts but does not require an initial statement:

**ccw**

declares that the following parameters refer to a DASD re-IPL device.

**fcp**

declares that the following parameters refer to a SCSI re-IPL device.

**node**

declares that the following parameters refer to a disk re-IPL device that is

## chreipl

identified by a device node or by a directory in the Linux file system on that device. The disk device can be a DASD or a SCSI disk.

### Examples

These examples illustrate common uses for **chreipl**.

- The following commands all configure the same DASD as the re-IPL device, assuming that the device bus-ID of the DASD is `0.0.7e78`, that the standard device node is `/dev/dasdc`, that udev creates an alternative device node `/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.7e78`, that `/mnt/boot` is located on the Linux file system in a partition of the DASD.

- Using the bus ID:

```
chreipl 0.0.7e78
```

- Using the bus ID and the optional ccw statement:

```
chreipl ccw 0.0.7e78
```

- Using the bus ID, the optional statement and the optional **--device** keyword:

```
chreipl ccw --device 0.0.7e78
```

- Using the standard device node:

```
chreipl /dev/dasdc
```

- Using the udev-created device node:

```
chreipl /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.7e78
```

- Using a directory within the file system on the DASD:

```
chreipl /mnt/boot
```

- The following commands all configure the same SCSI disk as the re-IPL device, assuming that the device bus-ID of the FCP device through which the device is attached is `0.0.1700`, the WWPN of the storage server is `0x500507630300c562`, and the LUN is `0x401040b300000000`. Further it is assumed that the standard device node is `/dev/sdb`, that udev creates an alternative device node `/dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303fc5620000000000010b4`, and that `/mnt/fcpboot` is located on the Linux file system in a partition of the SCSI disk.

- Using bus ID, WWPN, and LUN:

```
chreipl 0.0.1700 0x500507630300c562 0x401040b300000000
```

- Using bus ID, WWPN, and LUN with the optional fcp statement:

```
chreipl fcp 0.0.1700 0x500507630300c562 0x401040b300000000
```

- Using bus ID, WWPN, LUN, the optional statement, and keywords for the parameters. When you use the keywords, the parameters can be specified in any order:

```
chreipl fcp --wwpn 0x500507630300c562 -d 0.0.1700 --lun 0x401040b300000000
```

- Using the standard device node:

```
chreipl /dev/sdb
```

- Using the udev-created device node:

```
chreipl /dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303ffc56200000000000010b4
```

- Using a directory within the file system on the SCSI disk:

```
chreipl /mnt/fcpboot
```

- To configure a DASD with bus ID 0.0.7e78 as the re-IPL device, using the first entry of the **zipl** boot menu:

```
chreipl 0.0.7e78 -L 1
Re-IPL type: ccw
Device: 0.0.7e78
Loadparm: "1"
Bootparms: ""
```

- To configure a DASD with bus ID 0.0.7e78 as the re-IPL device and adding **mem=512M** to the existing kernel parameters in the boot configuration:

```
chreipl 0.0.7e78 -p "mem=512M"
Re-IPL type: ccw
Device: 0.0.7e78
Loadparm: ""
Bootparms: "mem=512M"
```

- To configure an NSS LINUX1 as the re-IPL device:

```
chreipl nss LINUX1
```

## chshut - Control the system shutdown actions

Use the **chshut** command to change the shutdown actions for specific shutdown triggers.

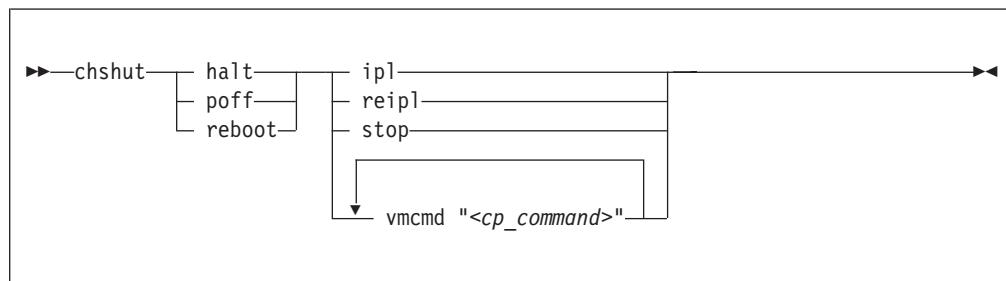
The shutdown triggers are:

- **halt**
- **poff**
- **reboot**

The shutdown triggers **restart** and **panic** are handled by the **dumpconf** service script, see *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 for details.

Linux on System z performs shutdown actions according to sysfs attribute settings within the `/sys/firmware` directory structure. The **chshut** command sets a shutdown action for a shutdown trigger by changing the corresponding sysfs attribute setting. For more information about the sysfs attributes and the shutdown actions, see Chapter 37, “Shutdown actions,” on page 401.

### chshut syntax



Where:

#### **halt**

sets an action for the **halt** shutdown trigger.

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, by default, **halt** is mapped to **poff**. You can undo this mapping by editing the file `/etc/sysconfig/shutdown` and replacing `HALT="auto"` with `HALT="halt"`.

#### **poff**

sets an action for the **poff** shutdown trigger.

#### **reboot**

sets an action for the **reboot** shutdown trigger.

#### **ipl**

sets IPL as the action to be taken.

#### **reipl**

sets re-IPL as the action to be taken.

#### **stop**

sets “stop” as the action to be taken.

#### **vmcmd "<cp\_command>"**

sets the action to be taken to issuing a z/VM CP command. The command must be specified in uppercase characters and enclosed in quotation marks. To issue multiple commands, repeat the **vmcmd** attribute with each command.

**-h or --help**

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man chshut**.

**-v or --version**

displays version information.

## Examples

These examples illustrate common uses for **chshut**.

- To make the system start again after a power off:

```
chshut poff ipl
```

- To log off the z/VM guest virtual machine if the Linux **poweroff** command was run successfully:

```
chshut poff vmcmd LOGOFF
```

- To send a message to z/VM user ID OPERATOR and automatically log off the z/VM guest virtual machine if the Linux **poweroff** command is run:

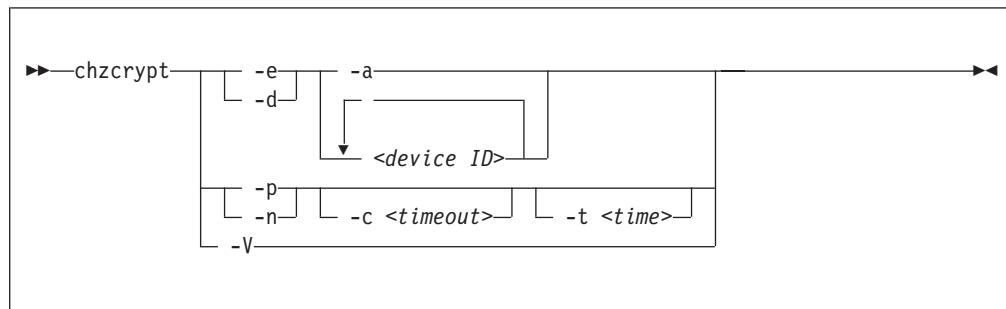
```
chshut poff vmcmd "MSG OPERATOR Going down" vmcmd "LOGOFF"
```

## chzcrypt - Modify the cryptographic configuration

Use the **chzcrypt** command to configure cryptographic adapters that are managed by zcrypt and modify zcrypt's AP bus attributes.

To display the attributes, use “[lszcrypt - Display cryptographic devices](#)” on page 519.

### chzcrypt syntax



Where:

**-e or --enable**

sets the given cryptographic adapters online.

**-d or --disable**

sets the given cryptographic adapters offline.

**-a or --all**

sets all available cryptographic adapters online or offline.

**<device ID>**

specifies a cryptographic adapter that is to be set online or offline. A cryptographic adapter can be specified either in decimal notation or hexadecimal notation with a '0x' prefix.

**-p or --poll-thread-enable**

enables zcrypt's poll thread.

**-n or --poll-thread-disable**

disables zcrypt's poll thread.

**-c <timeout> or --config-time <timeout>**

sets configuration timer for rescanning the AP bus to <timeout> seconds.

**-t <time> or --poll-timeout=<time>**

sets the high-resolution polling timer to <time> nanoseconds. To display the value, use **lszcrypt -b**.

**-V or --verbose**

displays verbose messages.

**-h or --help**

displays short information about command usage.

**-v or --version**

displays version information.

## Examples

These examples illustrate common uses for **chzcrypt**.

- To set the cryptographic adapters 0, 1, 4, 5, and 12 online (in decimal notation):

```
chzcrypt -e 0 1 4 5 12
```

- To set all available cryptographic adapters offline:

```
chzcrypt -d -a
```

- To set the configuration timer for rescanning the AP bus to 60 seconds and disable zcrypt's poll thread:

```
chzcrypt -c 60 -n
```

## **cmsfs-fuse - Mount a z/VM CMS file system**

Use the cmsfs-fuse command to mount the enhanced disk format (EDF) file system on a z/VM minidisk.

In Linux, the minidisk is represented as a DASD and the file system is mounted as a cmsfs-fuse file system. The cmsfs-fuse file system translates the record-based file system on the minidisk into Linux semantics.

Through the cmsfs-fuse file system, the files on the minidisk become available to applications on Linux. Applications can read from and write to files on minidisks. Optionally, the cmsfs-fuse file system converts text files between EBCDIC on the minidisk and ASCII within Linux.

**Attention:** You can inadvertently damage files and lose data when directly writing to files within the cmsfs-fuse file system. To avoid problems when you write, multiple restrictions must be observed, especially regarding linefeeds (see restrictions for write).

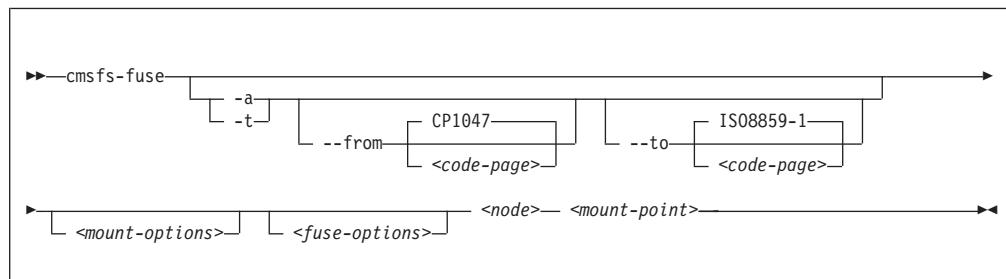
**Tip:** If you are unsure about how to safely write to a file on the cmsfs-fuse file system, copy the file to a location outside the cmsfs-fuse file system, edit the file, and then copy it back to its original location.

Use **fusermount** to unmount file systems that you mounted with **cmsfs-fuse**. See the **fusermount** man page for details.

### **Before you begin:**

- The fuse module must be loaded, for example, with **modprobe fuse**.
- The FUSE library must be installed on your system. Install the fuse-libs RPM delivered with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.
- The DASD must be online.
- Depending whether you intend to read, write, or both, you must have the appropriate permissions for the device node.
- Mounting a z/VM CMS file system requires sufficient virtual memory.
  - You can use the **ulimit** command to query and change your virtual memory settings. Consider setting the amount of virtual memory to “unlimited”. See the **ulimit** man page for details.
  - If the command fails because Linux does not have enough free memory, you might still be able to mount the disk after you set **/proc/sys/vm/overcommit\_memory** to 1.

### **cmsfs-fuse syntax**



Where:

**-a or --ascii**

treats all files on the minidisk as text files and converts them from EBCDIC to ASCII.

**-t or --filetype**

treats files with extensions as listed in the **cmsfs-fuse** configuration file as text files and converts them from EBCDIC to ASCII.

The **cmsfs-fuse** command uses `~/.cmsfs-fuse/filetypes.conf` as the configuration file. If this file within the user's home directory does not exist, the default configuration file `/etc/cmsfs-fuse/filetypes.conf` is used.

The `filetypes.conf` file lists one file type per line. Lines that start with a number sign (#) followed by a space are treated as comments and are ignored.

**--from <code-page>**

specifies the encoding of the files on the z/VM minidisk. If this option is not specified, code page CP1047 is used. Enter `iconv --list` to display a list of all available code pages.

**--to <code-page>**

specifies the encoding to which the files on the z/VM minidisk are converted in Linux. If this option is not specified, code page ISO-8859-1 is used. Enter `iconv --list` to display a list of all available code pages.

**<mount-options>**

options as available for the **mount** command. See the **mount** man page for details.

**<fuse-options>**

options for FUSE. The following options are supported by the **cmsfs-fuse** command. To use an option, it must also be supported by the version of FUSE that you have.

**-d or -o debug**

enables debug output (implies **-f**).

**-f**

runs the command as a foreground operation.

**-o allow\_other**

allows access to other users.

**-o allow\_root**

allows access to root.

**-o nonempty**

allows mounts over files and non-empty directories.

**-o default\_permissions**

enables permission checking by the kernel.

**-o max\_read=<n>**

sets maximum size of read requests.

**-o kernel\_cache**

caches files in the kernel.

**-o [no]auto\_cache**

enables or disables caching based on modification times.

**-o umask=<mask>**

sets file permissions (octal).

## **cmsfs-fuse**

**-o uid=<n>**  
sets the file owner.

**-o gid=<n>**  
sets the file group.

**-o max\_write=<n>**  
sets the maximum size of write requests.

**-o max\_readahead=<n>**  
sets the maximum readahead value.

**-o async\_read**  
performs reads asynchronously (default).

**-o sync\_read**  
performs reads synchronously.

**-o big\_writes**  
enables write operations with more than 4 KB.

**<node>**  
the device node for the DASD that represents the minidisk in Linux.

**<mount-point>**  
the mount point in the Linux file system where you want to mount the CMS file system.

**-h or --help**  
displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man cmsfs-fuse**.

**-v or --version**  
displays version information for the command.

You can use the following extended attributes to handle the CMS characteristics of a file:

### **user.record\_format**

specifies the format of the file. The format is F for fixed record length files and V for variable record length files. This attribute can be set only for empty files. The default file format for new files is V.

### **user.record\_lrec1**

specifies the record length of the file. This attribute can be set only for an empty fixed record length file. A valid record length is an integer in the range 1-65535.

### **user.file\_mode**

specifies the CMS file mode of the file. The file mode consists of a mode letter from A-Z and mode number in the range 0 - 6. The default file mode for new files is A1.

You can use the following system calls to work with extended attributes:

### **listxattr**

to list the current values of all extended attributes.

### **getxattr**

to read the current value of a particular extended attribute.

### **setxattr**

to set a particular extended attribute.

You can use these system calls through the **getattr** and **setattr** commands. For more information, see the man pages of these commands and of the listxattr, getxattr, and setxattr system calls.

## Restrictions

When you work with files in the cmsfs-fuse file system, restrictions apply for the following system calls:

**write** Be aware of the following restrictions when you write to a file on the cmsfs-fuse file system:

### Write location

Writing is supported only at the end of a file.

### Padding

For fixed-length record files, the last record is padded to make up a full record length. The padding character is zero in binary mode and the space character in ASCII mode.

### Sparse files

Sparse files are not supported. To prevent the **cp** tool from writing in sparse mode specify **-sparse=never**.

### Records and linefeeds with ASCII conversion (-a and -t)

In the ASCII representation of an EBCDIC file, a linefeed character determines the end of a record. Follow these rules about linefeed characters requirements when you write to EBCDIC files in ASCII mode:

#### For fixed record length files

Use linefeed characters to separate character strings of the fixed record length.

#### For variable record length files

Use linefeed characters to separate character strings. The character strings must not exceed the maximum record length.

The CMS file system does not support empty records. cmsfs-fuse adds a space to records that consist of a linefeed character only.

### rename and creat

Uppercase file names are enforced.

### truncate

Only shrinking of a file is supported. For fixed-length record files, the new file size must be a multiple of the record length.

## Examples

- To mount the CMS file system on the minidisk represented by the file node `/dev/dasde` at `/mnt`:

```
cmsfs-fuse /dev/dasde /mnt
```

- To mount the CMS file system on the minidisk represented by the file node `/dev/dasde` at `/mnt` and enable EBCDIC to ASCII conversion for text files with extensions as specified in `~/.cmsfs-fuse/filetypes.conf` or `/etc/cmsfs-fuse/filetypes.conf` if the former does not exist:

## cmsfs-fuse

```
cmsfs-fuse -t /dev/dasde /mnt
```

- To mount the CMS file system on the minidisk represented by the file node /dev/dasde at /mnt and allow root to access the mounted file system:

```
cmsfs-fuse -o allow_root /dev/dasde /mnt
```

- To unmount the CMS file system that was mounted at /mnt:

```
fusermount -u /mnt
```

- To show the record format of a file, PROFILE.EXEC, on a z/VM minidisk that is mounted on /mnt:

```
getfattr -n user.record_format /mnt/PROFILE.EXEC
F
```

- To set record length 80 for an empty fixed record format file, PROFILE.EXEC, on a z/VM minidisk that is mounted on /mnt:

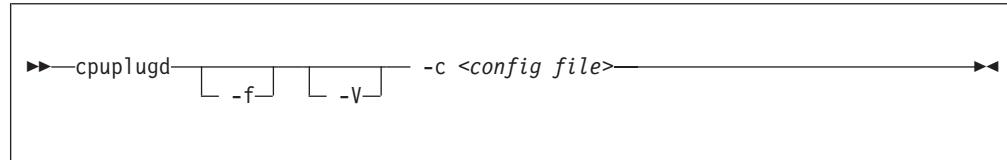
```
setfattr -n user.record_lrec1 -v 80 /mnt/PROFILE.EXEC
```

## cpuplugd - Control CPUs and memory

Use the **cpuplugd** command and a set of rules in a configuration file to dynamically enable or disable CPUs. For Linux on z/VM, you can also dynamically add or remove memory.

Rules that are tailored to a particular system environment and the associated workload can increase performance. The rules can include various system load variables.

### cpuplugd syntax



Where:

**-c or --config <config file>**

specifies the path to the configuration file with the rules (see “Configuration file structure”).

After you install cpuplugd for the first time, you can find a sample configuration file at /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd. If you are upgrading from a prior version of cpuplugd, see “Migrating old configuration files” on page 456.

**-f or --foreground**

runs in foreground.

**-V or --verbose**

displays verbose messages.

**-h or --help**

displays help information for the command. To view the command man page, enter **man cpuplugd**. To view the man page for the configuration file, enter **man cpuplugd.conf**

**-v or --version**

displays version information.

### Examples

- To start cpuplugd in daemon mode with a configuration file /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd:

```
cpuplugd -c /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd
```

- To run cpuplugd in the foreground with verbose messages and with a configuration file /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd:

```
cpuplugd -V -f -c /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd
```

## Configuration file structure

The cpuplugd configuration file can specify rules for controlling the number of active CPUs and for controlling the amount of memory.

## **cpuplugd**

The configuration file contains:

- `<variable>="<value>"` pairs

These pairs must be specified within one line. The maximum valid line length is 2048 characters. The values can be decimal numbers or algebraic or Boolean expressions.

- Comments

Any part of a line that follows a number sign (#) is treated as a comment. There can be full comment lines with the number sign at the beginning of the line or comments can begin in mid-line.

- Empty lines

**Attention:** These configuration file samples illustrate the syntax of the configuration file. Do not use the sample rules on production systems. Useful rules differ considerably, depending on the workload, resources, and requirements of the system for which they are designed.

### **Migrating old configuration files**

With Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.2, an enhanced version of **cpuplugd** was introduced.

This enhanced version includes extensions to the configuration file and a new sample configuration file, /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd.

If a configuration file from a prior version of cpuplugd already exists at /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd, this file is not replaced but complemented with new variables. The new sample configuration file is then copied to /var/adm/fillup-templates/sysconfig.cpuplugd.

The new sample file contains comments that describe the enhanced file layout. View the file to see this information. Consider merging the existing configuration file with a copy of the new sample file to obtain a configuration file with the existing rules, the new variables, and the new descriptions.

### **Basic configuration file for CPU control**

A configuration file for dynamically enabling or disabling CPUs has several required specifications.

The configuration file sample of Figure 72 has been reduced to the specifications that are required for dynamically enabling or disabling CPUs.

---

```
UPDATE="10"
CPU_MIN="2"
CPU_MAX="10"

HOTPLUG = "idle < 10.0"
HOTUNPLUG = "idle > 100"
```

---

*Figure 72. Simplified configuration file with CPU hotplug rules*

In the configuration file:

#### **UPDATE**

specifies the time interval, in seconds, at which cpuplugd evaluates the rules

and, if a rule is met, enables or disables CPUs. This variable is also required for controlling memory (see “Basic configuration file for memory control”).

In the example, the rules are evaluated every 10 seconds.

#### **CPU\_MIN**

specifies the minimum number of CPUs. Even if the rule for disabling CPUs is met, cpupluggd does not reduce the number of CPUs to less than this number.

In the example, the number of CPUs cannot become less than 2.

#### **CPU\_MAX**

specifies the maximum number of CPUs. Even if the rule for enabling CPUs is met, cpupluggd does not increase the number of CPUs to more than this number. If 0 is specified, the maximum number of CPUs is the number of CPUs available on the system.

In the example, the number of CPUs cannot become more than 10.

#### **HOTPLUG**

specifies the rule for dynamically enabling CPUs. The rule resolves to a boolean true or false. Each time this rule is true, cpupluggd enables one CPU, unless the number of CPUs has already reached the maximum specified with CPU\_MAX.

Setting HOTPLUG to 0 disables dynamically adding CPUs.

In the example, a CPU is enabled when the idle times of all active CPUs sum up to less than 10.0%. See “Keywords for CPU hotplug rules” on page 459 for information about available keywords.

#### **HOTUNPLUG**

specifies the rule for dynamically disabling CPUs. The rule resolves to a boolean true or false. Each time this rule is true, cpupluggd disables one CPU, unless the number of CPUs has already reached the minimum specified with CPU\_MIN.

Setting HOTUNPLUG to 0 disables dynamically removing CPUs.

In the example, a CPU is disabled when the idle times of all active CPUs sum up to more than 100%. See “Keywords for CPU hotplug rules” on page 459 for information about available keywords.

If one of these variables is set more than once, only the last occurrence is used. These variables are not case sensitive.

If both the HOTPLUG and HOTUNPLUG rule are met simultaneously, HOTUNPLUG is ignored.

### **Basic configuration file for memory control**

For Linux on z/VM, you can also use cpupluggd to dynamically add or take away memory. There are several required specifications for memory control.

The configuration file sample of Figure 73 on page 458 was reduced to the specifications that are required for dynamic memory control.

---

```
UPDATE="10"
CMM_MIN="0"
CMM_MAX="131072" # 512 MB
CMM_INC="10240" # 40 MB

MEMPLUG = "swaprte > 250"
MEMUNPLUG = "swaprte < 10"
```

---

*Figure 73. Simplified configuration file with memory hotplug rules*

In the configuration file:

**UPDATE**

specifies the time interval, in seconds, at which cpuplugd evaluates the rules and, if a rule is met, adds or removes memory. This variable is also required for controlling CPUs (see “Basic configuration file for CPU control” on page 456).

In the example, the rules are evaluated every 10 seconds.

**CMM\_MIN**

specifies the minimum amount of memory, in 4 KB pages, that Linux surrenders to the CMM static page pool (see “Cooperative memory management background” on page 221). Even if the MEMPLUG rule for taking memory from the CMM static page pool and adding it to Linux is met, cpuplugd does not decrease this amount.

In the example, the amount of memory that is surrendered to the static page pool can be reduced to 0.

**CMM\_MAX**

specifies the maximum amount of memory, in 4 KB pages, that Linux surrenders to the CMM static page pool (see “Cooperative memory management background” on page 221). Even if the MEMUNPLUG rule for removing memory from Linux and adding it to the CMM static page pool is met, cpuplugd does not increase this amount.

In the example, the amount of memory that is surrendered to the static page pool cannot become more than 131072 pages of 4 KB (512 MB).

**CMM\_INC**

specifies the amount of memory, in 4 KB pages, that is removed from Linux when the MEMUNPLUG rule is met. Removing memory from Linux increases the amount that is surrendered to the CMM static page pool.

In the example, the amount of memory that is removed from Linux is 10240 pages of 4 KB (40 MB) at a time.

**CMM\_DEC**

Optional: specifies the amount of memory, in 4 KB pages, that is added to Linux when the MEMPLUG rule is met. Adding memory to Linux decreases the amount that is surrendered to the CMM static page pool.

If this variable is omitted, the amount of memory that is specified for CMM\_INC is used.

In the example, CMM\_DEC is omitted and the amount of memory added to Linux is 10240 pages of 4 KB (40 MB) at a time, as specified with CMM\_INC.

**MEMPLUG**

specifies the rule for dynamically adding memory to Linux. The rule resolves to a boolean true or false. Each time this rule is true, cpuplugd adds the

number of pages that are specified by CMM\_DEC, unless the CMM static page pool already reached the minimum that is specified with CMM\_MIN.

Setting MEMPLUG to 0 disables dynamically adding memory to Linux.

In the example, memory is added to Linux if there are more than 250 swap operations per second. See “Keywords for memory hotplug rules” on page 460 for information about available keywords.

#### **MEMUNPLUG**

specifies the rule for dynamically removing memory from Linux. The rule resolves to a boolean true or false. Each time this rule is true, cpuplug removes the number of pages that are specified by CMM\_INC, unless the CMM static page pool already reached the maximum that is specified with CMM\_MAX.

Setting MEMUNPLUG to 0 disables dynamically removing memory from Linux.

In the example, memory is removed from Linux when there are less than 10 swap operations per second. See “Keywords for memory hotplug rules” on page 460 for information about available keywords.

If any of these variables are set more than once, only the last occurrence is used. These variables are not case-sensitive.

If both the MEMPLUG and MEMUNPLUG rule are met simultaneously, MEMUNPLUG is ignored.

CMM\_DEC and CMM\_INC can be set to a decimal number or to a mathematical expression that uses the same algebraic operators and variables as the MEMPLUG and MEMUNPLUG hotplug rules (see “Keywords for memory hotplug rules” on page 460 and “Writing more complex rules” on page 461).

### **Predefined keywords**

There is a set of predefined keywords that you can use for CPU hotplug rules and a set of keywords that you can use for memory hotplug rules. All predefined keywords are case sensitive.

#### **Keywords for CPU hotplug rules:**

There are predefined keywords for use in the CPU hotplug rules, HOTPLUG and HOTUNPLUG.

##### **loadavg**

is the current load average.

##### **onumcpus**

is the current number of online CPUs.

##### **runnable\_proc**

is the current number of runnable processes.

##### **user**

is the current CPU user percentage.

##### **nice**

is the current CPU nice percentage.

##### **system**

is the current CPU system percentage.

## **cpuplugd**

### **idle**

is the current CPU idle percentage.

### **iowait**

is the current CPU iowait percentage.

### **irq**

is the current CPU irq percentage.

### **softirq**

is the current CPU softirq percentage.

### **steal**

is the current CPU steal percentage.

### **guest**

is the current CPU guest percentage.

### **guest\_nice**

is the current CPU guest\_nice percentage.

### **cpustat.<name>**

is data from /proc/stat and /proc/loadavg. In the keyword, <name> can be any of the previously listed keywords, for example, cpustat.idle. See the proc man page for more details about the data that is represented by these keywords.

With this notation, the keywords resolve to raw timer ticks since system start, not to current percentages. For example, idle resolves to the current idle percentage and cpustat.idle resolves to the total timer ticks spent idle. See “Using historical data” on page 461 about how to obtain average and percentage values.

loadavg, onumcpus, and runnable\_proc are not percentages and resolve to the same values as cpustat.loadavg, cpustat.onumcpus, and cpustat.runnable\_proc.

### **cpustat.total\_ticks**

is the total number of timer ticks since system start.

### **time**

is the UNIX epoch time in the format “seconds.microseconds”.

Percentage values are accumulated for all online CPUs. Hence, the values for the percentages range from 0 to  $100 \times (\text{number of online CPUs})$ . To get the average percentage per CPU device, divide the accumulated value by the number of CPUs. For example, idle / onumcpus yields the average idle percentage per CPU.

### **Keywords for memory hotplug rules:**

There are predefined keywords for use in the memory hotplug rules, MEMPLUG and MEMUNPLUG.

### **apcr**

is the number of page cache operations, pgpin + pgpout, from /proc/vmstat in 512-byte blocks per second.

### **freetmem**

is the amount of free memory in MB.

### **swaprte**

is the number of swap operations, pswpin + pswpout, from /proc/vmstat in 4 KB pages per second.

**meminfo.<name>**

is the value for the symbol *<name>* as shown in the output of  
**cat /proc/meminfo**. The values are plain numbers but refer to the same units as those used in /proc/meminfo.

**vmstat.<name>**

is the value for the symbol *<name>* as shown in the output of  
**cat /proc/vmstat**.

**Using historical data:**

Historical data is available for the keyword **time** and the sets of keywords **cpustat.<name>**, **meminfo.<name>**, and **vmstat.<name>**.

See “Keywords for CPU hotplug rules” on page 459 and “Keywords for memory hotplug rules” on page 460 for details about these keywords.

Use the suffixes [*<n>*] to retrieve the data of *<n>* intervals in the past, where *<n>* can be in the range 0 - 100.

**Examples****cpustat.idle**

yields the current value for the counted idle ticks.

**cpustat.idle[1]**

yields the idle ticks as counted one interval ago.

**cpustat.idle[5]**

yields the idle ticks as counted five intervals ago.

**cpustat.idle - cpustat.idle[5]**

yields the idle ticks during the past five intervals.

**time - time[1]**

yields the length of an update interval in seconds.

**cpustat.total\_ticks - cpustat.total\_ticks[5]**

yields the total number of ticks during the past five intervals.

**(cpustat.idle - cpustat.idle[5]) / (cpustat.total\_ticks - cpustat.total\_ticks[5])**

yields the average ratio of idle ticks to total ticks during the past five intervals.

Multiplying this ratio with 100 yields the percentage of idle ticks during the last five intervals.

Multiplying this ratio with 100 \* onumcpus yields the accumulated percentage of idle ticks for all processors during the last five intervals.

**Writing more complex rules**

In addition to numbers and keywords, you can use mathematical and Boolean operators, and you can use user-defined variables to specify rules.

- The keywords of “Predefined keywords” on page 459
- Decimal numbers
- The mathematical operators
  - + addition
  - subtraction
  - \* multiplication
  - / division

## cpuplugd

- < less than
- > greater than
- Parentheses ( and ) to group mathematical expressions
- The Boolean operators
  - & and
  - | or
  - ! not
- User-defined variables

You can specify complex calculations as user-defined variables, which can then be used in expressions. User-defined variables are case-sensitive and must not match a pre-defined variable or keyword. In the configuration file, definitions for user-defined variables must precede their use in expressions.

Variable names consist of alphanumeric characters and the underscore (`_`) character. An individual variable name must not exceed 128 characters. All user-defined variable names and values, in total, must not exceed 4096 characters.

### Examples

- HOTPLUG = "loadavg > onumcpus + 0.75"
- HOTPLUG = "(loadavg > onumcpus + 0.75) & (idle < 10.0)"
- ```
my_idle_rate = "(cpustat.idle - cpustat.idle[5]) / (cpustat.total_ticks - cpustat.total_ticks[5])"
my_idle_percent_total = "my_idle_rate * 100 * onumcpus"
...
HOTPLUG = "(loadavg > onumcpus + 0.75) & (my_idle_percent_total < 10.0)"
```

Sample configuration file

A typical configuration file includes multiple user-defined variables and values from procfs, for example, to calculate the page scan rate or the cache size.

```

# Required static variables

CPU_MIN="1"
CPU_MAX="0"
UPDATE="1"
CMM_MIN="0"
CMM_MAX="131072" # 512 MB

# User-defined variables

pgscan_d="vmstat.pgscan_direct_dma[0] + vmstat.pgscan_direct_normal[0] + vmstat.pgscan_direct_movable[0]"
pgscan_d1="vmstat.pgscan_direct_dma[1] + vmstat.pgscan_direct_normal[1] + vmstat.pgscan_direct_movable[1]"
# page scan rate in pages / timer tick
pgscanrate="(pgscan_d - pgscan_d1) / (cpustat.total_ticks[0] - cpustat.total_ticks[1])"
# cache usage in kilobytes
avail_cache="meminfo.Cached - meminfo.Shmem"

user_0="(cpustat.user[0] - cpustat.user[1])"
nice_0="(cpustat.nice[0] - cpustat.nice[1])"
system_0="(cpustat.system[0] - cpustat.system[1])"
user_2="(cpustat.user[2] - cpustat.user[3])"
nice_2="(cpustat.nice[2] - cpustat.nice[3])"
system_2="(cpustat.system[2] - cpustat.system[3])"
CP_Active0="(user_0 + nice_0 + system_0) / (cpustat.total_ticks[0] - cpustat.total_ticks[1])"
CP_Active2="(user_2 + nice_2 + system_2) / (cpustat.total_ticks[2] - cpustat.total_ticks[3])"
CP_ActiveAVG="(CP_Active0+CP_Active2) / 2"

idle_0="(cpustat.idle[0] - cpustat.idle[1])"
iowait_0="(cpustat.iowait[0] - cpustat.iowait[1])"
idle_2="(cpustat.idle[2] - cpustat.idle[3])"
iowait_2="(cpustat.iowait[2] - cpustat.iowait[3])"
CP_Idle0="(idle_0 + iowait_0) / (cpustat.total_ticks[0] - cpustat.total_ticks[1])"
CP_Idle2="(idle_2 + iowait_2) / (cpustat.total_ticks[2] - cpustat.total_ticks[3])"
CP_IdleAVG="(CP_Idle0 + CP_Idle2) / 2"

# More required variables

# cmm_inc: 10% of free memory, in 4K pages
CMM_INC="meminfo.MemFree / 40"
# cmm_dec: 10% of total memory, in 4K pages
CMM_DEC="meminfo.MemTotal / 40"

# Hotplug rules
HOTPLUG="((1 - CP_ActiveAVG) * onumcpus) < 0.08"
HOTUNPLUG="(CP_IdleAVG * onumcpus) > 1.15"
MEMPLUG="pgscanrate > 20"
MEMUNPLUG="(meminfo.MemFree + avail_cache) > (meminfo.MemTotal / 10)"

```

Figure 74. Sample configuration file for CPU and memory hotplug

After you install cpuplugd with the s390utils RPM, a commented sample configuration file is available at /etc/sysconfig/cpuplugd.

Attention: These configuration file samples illustrate the syntax of the configuration file. Do not use the sample rules on production systems. Useful rules differ considerably, depending on the workload, resources, and requirements of the system for which they are designed.

dasdfmt

dasdfmt - Format a DASD

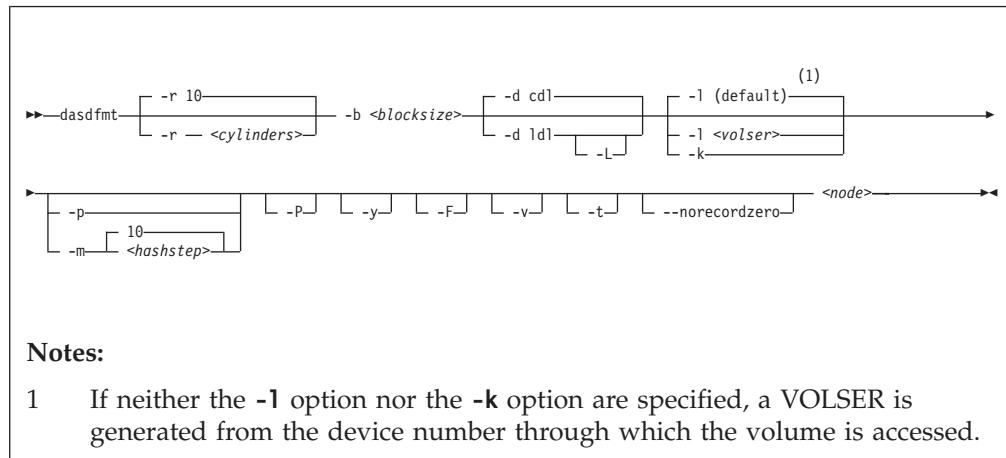
Use the **dasdfmt** command to low-level format ECKD-type direct access storage devices (DASD).

dasdfmt uses an ioctl call to the DASD driver to format tracks. A block size (hard sector size) can be specified. The formatting process can take quite a long time (hours for large DASD). Use the **-p** option to monitor the progress.

CAUTION:

As on any platform, formatting irreversibly destroys data on the target disk. Be sure not to format a disk with vital data unintentionally.

dasdfmt syntax



Where:

-r <cylinders> or --requestsize=<cylinders>

specifies the number of cylinders to be processed in one formatting step. The value must be an integer in the range 1 - 255. The default is 10 cylinders. This parameter exploits any available PAV devices. Ideally, the number of cylinders matches the number of associated devices, counting the base device and all alias devices.

-b <block_size> or --blocksize=<block_size>

specifies one of the following block sizes in bytes: 512, 1024, 2048, or 4096.

If you do not specify a value for the block size, you are prompted. You can then press Enter to accept 4096 or specify a different value.

Tip: Set **<block_size>** as large as possible (ideally 4096); the net capacity of an ECKD DASD decreases for smaller block sizes. For example, a DASD formatted with a block size of 512 byte has only half of the net capacity of the same DASD formatted with a block size of 4096 byte.

<node>

specifies the device node of the device to be formatted, for example, /dev/dasdzzz. See “DASD naming scheme” on page 37 for more details about device nodes).

- d <disklayout> or --disk_layout=<disklayout>**
formats the device with the compatible disk layout (cdl) or the Linux disk layout (ldl). If the parameter is not specified, the default (cdl) is used.
- L or --no_label**
valid for -d ldl only, where it suppresses the default LNX1 label.
- l <volser> or --label=<volser>**
specifies the volume serial number (see VOLSER) to be written to the disk. If the VOLSER contains special characters, it must be enclosed in single quotation marks. In addition, any '\$' character in the VOLSER must be preceded by a backslash ('\\').
- k or --keep_volser**
keeps the volume serial number when writing the volume label (see VOLSER). Keeping the volume serial number is useful, for example, if the volume serial number was written with a z/VM tool and should not be overwritten.
- p or --progressbar**
displays a progress bar. Do not use this option if you are using a line-mode terminal console driver. For example, if you are using a 3215 terminal device driver or a line-mode hardware console device driver.
- P or --percentage**
displays one line for each formatted cylinder. The line shows the number of the cylinder and percentage of formatting process. Intended for use by higher level interfaces.
- m <hashstep> or --hashmarks=<hashstep>**
displays a number sign (#) after every <hashstep> cylinders are formatted. <hashstep> must be in the range 1 - 1000. The default is 10.
The -m option is useful where the console device driver is not suitable for the progress bar (-p option).
- y** starts formatting immediately without prompting for confirmation.
- F or --force**
formats the device without checking whether it is mounted.
- v** displays extra information messages (verbose).
- t or --test**
runs the command in test mode. Analyzes parameters and displays what would happen, but does not modify the disk.
- norecordzero**
prevents a format write of record zero. This option is intended for experts: Subsystems in DASD drivers are by default granted permission to modify or add a standard record zero to each track when needed. Before you revoke the permission with this option, you must ensure that the device contains standard record zeros on all tracks.
- V or --version**
displays the version number of **dasdfmt** and exits.
- h or --help**
displays an overview of the syntax. Any other parameters are ignored. To view the man page, enter **man dasdfmt**.

Examples

- To format a 100 cylinder z/VM minidisk with the standard Linux disk layout and a 4 KB blocksize with device node /dev/dasdc:

dasdfmt

```
# dasdfmt -b 4096 -d 1d1 -p /dev/dasdc
Drive Geometry: 100 Cylinders * 15 Heads = 1500 Tracks

I am going to format the device /dev/dasdc in the following way:
Device number of device : 0x192
Labelling device        : yes
Disk label              : LNX1
Disk identifier         : 0X0192
Extent start (trk no)  : 0
Extent end (trk no)    : 1499
Compatible Disk Layout : no
Blocksize               : 4096

--->> ATTENTION! <<---
All data of that device will be lost.
Type yes to continue, no will leave the disk untouched: yes
Formatting the device. This may take a while (get yourself a coffee).

cyl 100 of 100 |#####
#####|#####
#####| 100%

Finished formatting the device.
Rereading the partition table... ok
#
```

- To format the same disk with the compatible disk layout (accepting the default value of the **-d** option).

```
# dasdfmt -b 4096 -p /dev/dasdc
Drive Geometry: 100 Cylinders * 15 Heads = 1500 Tracks

I am going to format the device /dev/dasdc in the following way:
Device number of device : 0x192
Labelling device        : yes
Disk label              : VOL1
Disk identifier         : 0X0192
Extent start (trk no)  : 0
Extent end (trk no)    : 1499
Compatible Disk Layout : yes
Blocksize               : 4096

--->> ATTENTION! <<---
All data of that device will be lost.
Type yes to continue, no will leave the disk untouched: yes
Formatting the device. This may take a while (get yourself a coffee).

cyl 100 of 100 |#####
#####|#####
#####| 100%

Finished formatting the device.
Rereading the partition table... ok
#
```

- To format using the **-P** option:

```
# dasdfmt -P /dev/dasde

cyl    1 of   500 |  0%
cyl    2 of   500 |  0%
cyl    3 of   500 |  0%
cyl    4 of   500 |  0%
cyl    5 of   500 |  1%

...
cyl  496 of   500 | 99%
cyl  497 of   500 | 99%
cyl  498 of   500 | 99%
cyl  499 of   500 | 99%
cyl 500 of   500 | 100%
```

- To make best use of PAV when formatting a DASD that has one base device and four alias devices, specify five cylinders:

```
# dasdfmt /dev/dasdd -y -b 4096 -d cdl -r 5
Finished formatting the device.
Rereading the partition table... ok
```

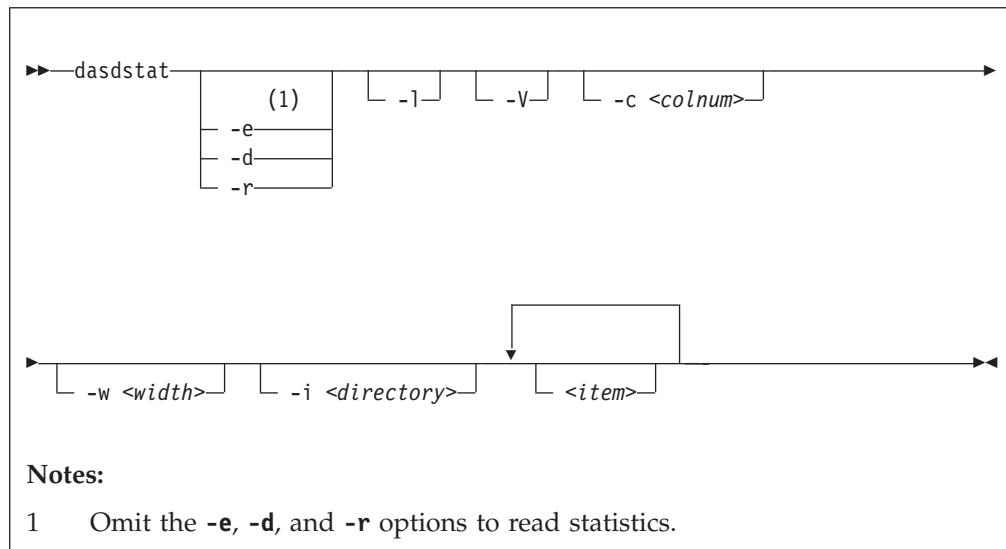
dasdstat - Display DASD performance statistics

Use the **dasdstat** command to display DASD performance statistics, including statistics about Parallel Access Volume (PAV) and High Performance Ficon.

This command includes and extends the performance statistics that is also available through the **tunedasd** command.

Before you begin: debugfs must be mounted, see “debugfs” on page ix.

dasdstat syntax



Where:

-e or --enable

starts statistics data collection.

-d or --disable

stops statistics data collection.

-r or --reset

sets the statistics counters to zero.

-l or --long

displays more detailed statistics information, for example, differentiates between read and write requests.

-V or --verbose

displays more verbose command information.

-c <column> or --columns <column>

formats the command output in a table with the specified number of columns. The default is 16. Each row gets wrapped after the specified number of lines.

-w <width> or --column-width <width>

sets the minimum width, in characters, of a column in the output table.

-i <directory> or --directory <directory>

specifies the directory that contains the statistics. The default is `<mountpoint>/dasd`, where `<mountpoint>` is the mount point of debugfs. You

need to specify this parameter if the **dasdstat** command cannot determine this mount point or if the statistics are copied to another location.

<item>

limits the command to the specified items. For *<item>* you can specify:

- **global** for summary statistics for all available DASDs.
- The block device name by which a DASD is known to the DASD device driver.
- The bus ID by which a DASD is known as a CCW device. DASDs that are set up for PAV or HyperPAV have a CCW base device and, at any one time, can have one or more CCW alias devices for the same block device. Alias devices are not permanently associated with the same block device. Statistics that are based on bus ID, therefore, show additional detail for PAV and HyperPAV setups.

If you do not specify any individual item, the command applies to all DASD block devices, CCW devices, and to the summary.

-v or --version

displays the version number of **dasdstat**, then exits.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command.

Examples

- This command starts data collection for dasda, 0.0.b301, and for a summary of all available DASDs.

```
# dasdstat -e dasda 0.0.b301 0.0.b302 global
```

- This command resets the statistics counters for dasda.

```
# dasdstat -r dasda
```

- This command reads the summary statistics:

dasdstat

```
statistics data for statistic: global
start time of data collection: Wed Aug 17 09:52:47 CEST 2011

3508 dasd I/O requests
with 67616 sectors(512B each)
0 requests used a PAV alias device
3458 requests used HPF
<4   _8   _16  _32  _64  _128 _256 _512 _1k  _2k  _4k  _8k  _16k _32k _64k _128k
_256 _512 _1M _2M _4M _8M _16M _32M _64M _128M _256M _512M _1G _2G _4G _>4G

Histogram of sizes (512B secs)
0   0 2456 603 304 107 18 9 3 8 0 0 0 0 0 0
0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0

Histogram of I/O times (microseconds)
0   0   0   0   0   0 100 1738 813 725 30 39 47 15 1 0
0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0

Histogram of I/O time till ssch
0   0 901 558 765 25 28 288 748 161 17 16 1 0 0 0
0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0

Histogram of I/O time between ssch and irq
0   0   0   0   0   0 316 2798 283 13 19 22 41 15 1 0
0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0

Histogram of I/O time between irq and end
0 3023 460 8 4 9 4 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0

# of req in chanq at enqueueing (0..31)
0   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9   10  11  12  13  14  15
_16 _17 _18 _19 _20 _21 _22 _23 _24 _25 _26 _27 _28 _29 _30 _31
0 2295 319 247 647 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0
```

For details about the data items, see “Interpreting the data rows” on page 55.

dasdview - Display DASD structure

Use the **dasdview** command to display DASD information.

dasdview displays:

- The volume label.
- VTOC details (general information, and FMT1, FMT4, FMT5, FMT7, and FMT8 labels).
- The content of the DASD, by specifying:
 - Starting point
 - Size

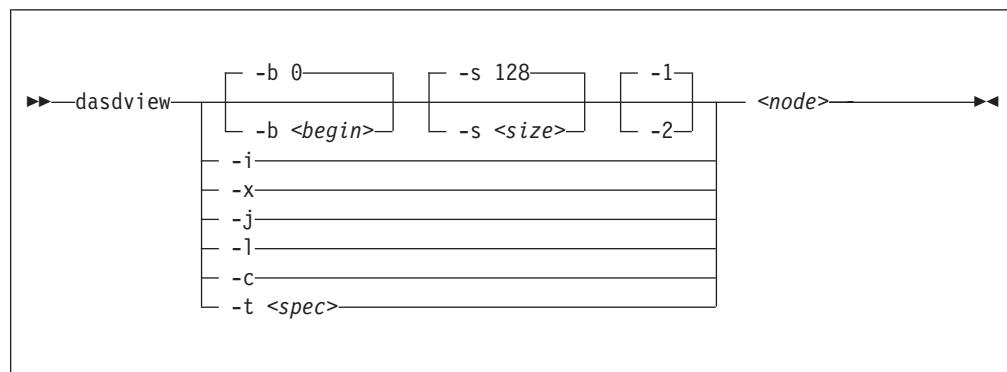
You can display these values in hexadecimal, EBCDIC, and ASCII format.

- Whether the data on the DASD is encrypted.
- Whether the disk is a solid-state device.

If you specify a start point and size, you can also display the contents of a disk dump.

For more information about partitioning, see “The IBM label partitioning scheme” on page 32.

dasdview syntax



Where:

-b <begin> or --begin=<begin>

displays disk content on the console, starting from *<begin>*. The contents of the disk are displayed as hexadecimal numbers, ASCII text, and EBCDIC text. If *<size>* is not specified, **dasdview** takes the default size (128 bytes). You can specify the variable *<begin>* as:

<begin>[k|m|b|t|c]

The default for *<begin>* is 0.

dasdview displays a disk dump on the console with the DASD driver. The DASD driver might suppress parts of the disk, or add information that is not relevant. This discrepancy might occur, for example, when **dasdview** displays the first two tracks of a disk that was formatted as cdl. In this situation, the DASD driver pads shorter blocks with zeros to maintain a constant blocksize. All Linux applications (including **dasdview**) process according to this rule.

Here are some examples of how this option can be used:

dasdview

```
-b 32   (start printing at Byte 32)
-b 32k  (start printing at kByte 32)
-b 32m  (start printing at MByte 32)
-b 32b  (start printing at block 32)
-b 32t  (start printing at track 32)
-b 32c  (start printing at cylinder 32)

-s <size> or --size=<size>
    displays a disk dump on the console, starting at <begin>, and continuing for
    size=<size>. The contents of the dump are displayed as hexadecimal numbers,
    ASCII text, and EBCDIC text. If a start value, <begin>, is not specified,
    dasdview takes the default. You can specify the variable <size> as:
    size[k|m|b|t|c]

The default for <size> is 128 bytes.

Here are some examples of how this option can be used:
-s 16   (use a 16 Byte size)
-s 16k  (use a 16 kByte size)
-s 16m  (use a 16 MByte size)
-s 16b  (use a 16 block size)
-s 16t  (use a 16 track size)
-s 16c  (use a 16 cylinder size)

-1 displays the disk dump with format 1 (as 16 Bytes per line in hexadecimal,
ASCII and EBCDIC). A line number is not displayed. You can use option -1
only together with -b or -s.
    Option -1 is the default.

-2 displays the disk dump with format 2 (as 8 Bytes per line in hexadecimal,
ASCII and EBCDIC). A decimal and hexadecimal byte count are also displayed.
You can use option -2 only together with -b or -s.

-i or --info
    displays basic information such as device node, device bus-ID, device type, or
    geometry data.

-x or --extended
    displays the information that is obtained by using -i option, but also open
    count, subchannel identifier, and so on.

-j or --volser
    prints volume serial number (volume identifier).

-l or --label
    displays the volume label.

-c or --characteristics
    displays model-dependent device characteristics, for example disk encryption
    status or whether the disk is a solid-state device.

-t <spec> or --vtoc=<spec>
    displays the VTOC's table-of-contents, or a single VTOC entry, on the console.
    The variable <spec> can take these values:
        info    displays overview information about the VTOC, such as a list of the
                  data set names and their sizes.
        f1     displays the contents of all format 1 data set control blocks (DSCBs).
        f4     displays the contents of all format 4 DSCBs.
        f5     displays the contents of all format 5 DSCBs.
        f7     displays the contents of all format 7 DSCBs.
        f8     displays the contents of all format 8 DSCBs.
        f9     displays the contents of all format 9 DSCBs.
```

all displays the contents of *all* DSCBs.

<node>

specifies the device node of the device for which you want to display information, for example, /dev/dasdzzz. See “DASD naming scheme” on page 37 for more details about device nodes).

-h or --help

displays short usage text on console. To view the man page, enter **man dasdview**.

-v or --version

displays version number on console, and exit.

Examples

- To display basic information about a DASD:

```
# dasdview -i /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

```
--- general DASD information -----
device node      : /dev/dasdzzz
busid          : 0.0.0193
type           : ECKD
device type    : hex 3390      dec 13200

--- DASD geometry -----
number of cylinders   : hex 64      dec 100
tracks per cylinder  : hex f       dec 15
blocks per track     : hex c       dec 12
blocksize          : hex 1000     dec 4096
#
```

- To display device characteristics:

```
# dasdview -c /dev/dasda
```

This example displays:

```
encrypted disk      : no
solid state device  : no
```

- To include extended information:

```
# dasdview -x /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

dasdview

```
--- general DASD information -----
device node          : /dev/dasdzzz
busid               : 0.0.0193
type                : ECKD
device type         : hex 3390      dec 13200

--- DASD geometry -----
number of cylinders : hex 64        dec 100
tracks per cylinder: hex f         dec 15
blocks per track   : hex c         dec 12
blocksize           : hex 1000     dec 4096

--- extended DASD information -----
real device number  : hex 452bc08  dec 72530952
subchannel identifier: hex e         dec 14
CU type (SenseID)  : hex 3990     dec 14736
CU model (SenseID) : hex e9       dec 233
device type (SenseID): hex 3390    dec 13200
device model (SenseID): hex a       dec 10
open count          : hex 1         dec 1
req_queue_len       : hex 0         dec 0
chanq_len           : hex 0         dec 0
status              : hex 5         dec 5
label_block         : hex 2         dec 2
FBA_layout          : hex 0         dec 0
characteristics_size: hex 40        dec 64
confdata_size       : hex 100      dec 256

characteristics     : 3990e933 900a5f80  dff72024 0064000f
                     e000e5a2 05940222  13090674 00000000
                     00000000 00000000  24241502 dfee0001
                     0677080f 007f4a00  1b350000 00000000

configuration_data  : dc010100 4040f2f1  f0f54040 40c9c2d4
                     f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0  f0c6c3f1 f1f30509
                     dc000000 4040f2f1  f0f54040 40c9c2d4
                     f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0  f0c6c3f1 f1f30500
                     d4020000 4040f2f1  f0f5c5f2 f0c9c2d4
                     f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0  f0c6c3f1 f1f3050a
                     f0000001 4040f2f1  f0f54040 40c9c2d4
                     f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0  f0c6c3f1 f1f30500
                     00000000 00000000  00000000 00000000
                     00000000 00000000  00000000 00000000
                     00000000 00000000  00000000 00000000
                     00000000 00000000  00000000 00000000
                     00000000 00000000  00000000 00000000
                     00000000 00000000  00000000 00000000
                     00000000 00000000  00000000 00000000
                     800000a1 00001e00  51400009 0909a188
                     0140c009 7cb7efb7  00000000 00000800
#
#
```

- To display volume label information:

```
# dasdview -l /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

- To display partition information:

```
# dasdview -t info /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

dasdview

```
--- VTOC info -----
The VTOC contains:
 3 format 1 label(s)
 1 format 4 label(s)
 1 format 5 label(s)
 0 format 7 label(s)
 0 format 8 label(s)
 0 format 9 label(s)

Other S/390 and zSeries operating systems would see the following data sets:
+-----+-----+-----+
| data set          | start   | end    |
+-----+-----+-----+
| LINUX.V0X0193.PART0001.NATIVE | trk     | trk    |
| data set serial number : '0X0193' | 2       | 500    |
| system code           : 'IBM LINUX' | cyl/trk | cyl/trk |
| creation date         : year 2001, day 317 | 0/ 2   | 33/ 5  |
+-----+-----+-----+
| LINUX.V0X0193.PART0002.NATIVE | trk     | trk    |
| data set serial number : '0X0193' | 501    | 900    |
| system code           : 'IBM LINUX' | cyl/trk | cyl/trk |
| creation date         : year 2001, day 317 | 33/ 6  | 60/ 0  |
+-----+-----+-----+
| LINUX.V0X0193.PART0003.NATIVE | trk     | trk    |
| data set serial number : '0X0193' | 901    | 1499   |
| system code           : 'IBM LINUX' | cyl/trk | cyl/trk |
| creation date         : year 2001, day 317 | 60/ 1  | 99/ 14 |
+-----+-----+-----+
#
```

- To display VTOC information:

```
# dasdview -t f4 /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

```
--- VTOC format 4 label -----
DS4KEYCD : 04040404040404040404040404040404040404040404040404040404...
DS4IDFMT : dec 244, hex f4
DS4HPCHR : 0000000105 (cyl 0, trk 1, blk 5)
DS4DSREC : dec 7, hex 0007
DS4HCCHH : 00000000 (cyl 0, trk 0)
DS4NOATK : dec 0, hex 0000
DS4VTOCI : dec 0, hex 00
DS4NOEXT : dec 1, hex 01
DS4SMSFG : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DEVAC : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DSCYL : dec 100, hex 0064
DS4DSTRK : dec 15, hex 000f
DS4DEVTM : dec 58786, hex e5a2
DS4DEVI : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DEVL : dec 0, hex 00
DS4EVK : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DEVFG : dec 48, hex 30
DS4DEVTL : dec 0, hex 0000
DS4DEVDT : dec 12, hex 0c
DS4DEVDB : dec 0, hex 00
DS4AMTIM : hex 0000000000000000
DS4AMCAT : hex 000000
DS4R2TIM : hex 0000000000000000
res1 : hex 0000000000
DS4F6PTR : hex 0000000000
DS4VTOCE : hex 010000000010000001
    typeind : dec 1, hex 01
    seqno : dec 0, hex 00
    l1limit : hex 00000001 (cyl 0, trk 1)
    ulimit : hex 00000001 (cyl 0, trk 1)
res2 : hex 000000000000000000000000
DS4EFLVL : dec 0, hex 00
DS4EFPTR : hex 0000000000 (cyl 0, trk 0, blk 0)
res3 : hex 000000000000000000000000
#
#
```

- To print the contents of a disk to the console starting at block 2 (volume label):

```
# dasdview -b 2b -s 128 /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

HEXADECIMAL	EBCDIC	ASCII
01....04 05....08 09....12 13....16	1.....16	1.....16
E5D6D3F1 E5D6D3F1 F0E7F0F1 F9F34000	VOL1VOL10X0193?.	?????????????????@.
00000101 40404040 40404040 40404040
40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040	?????????????????	0000000000000000
40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040	?????????????????	0000000000000000
40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040	?????????????????	0000000000000000
40404040 88001000 10000000 00808000	????h.....	0000?.....
00000000 00000000 00010000 00000200
21000500 00000000 00000000 00000000	?.....	!.....

- To display the contents of a disk on the console starting at block 14 (first FMT1 DSCB) with format 2:

```
# dasdview -b 14b -s 128 -2 /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

dasdview

BYTE DECIMAL	BYTE HEXADECIMAL	HEXADECIMAL 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	EBCDIC 12345678	ASCII 12345678
57344	E000	D3C9D5E4 E74BE5F0	LINUX.V0	?????K??
57352	E008	E7F0F1F9 F34BD7C1	X0193.PA	?????K??
57360	E010	D9E3F0F0 F0F14BD5	RT0001.N	?????K?
57368	E018	C1E3C9E5 C5404040	ATIVE???	?????000
57376	E020	40404040 40404040	?????????	00000000
57384	E028	40404040 F1F0E7F0	?????10X0	0000?????
57392	E030	F1F9F300 0165013D	193.????	???.?e=
57400	E038	63016D01 0000C9C2	??.?.IB	c?m..??
57408	E040	D440D3C9 D5E4E740	M?LINUX?	?@?????@
57416	E048	40404065 013D0000	??????..	@@@e?=..
57424	E050	00000000 88001000h..?.?
57432	E058	10000000 00808000	?....??.	?....??.
57440	E060	00000000 00000000
57448	E068	00010000 00000200	.?.?.?	.?.?.?
57456	E070	21000500 00000000	?..?.	!.?.???
57464	E078	00000000 00000000

- To see what is at block 1234 (in this example there is nothing there):

```
# dasdview -b 1234b -s 128 /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

HEXADECIMAL 01....04 05....08 09....12 13....16	EBCDIC 1.....16	ASCII 1.....16
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000

- To try byte 0 instead:

```
# dasdview -b 0 -s 64 /dev/dasdzzz
```

This example displays:

HEXADECIMAL 01....04 05....08 09....12 13....16	EBCDIC 1.....16	ASCII 1.....16
C9D7D3F1 000A0000 0000000F 03000000	IPL1.....	????.....
00000001 00000000 00000000 40404040
40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040	?????????????????	0000000000000000
40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040	?????????????????	0000000000000000

fdasd – Partition a DASD

Use the **fdasd** command to manage partitions on ECKD-type DASD that were formatted with the compatible disk layout.

See “dasdfmt - Format a DASD” on page 464 for information about formatting a DASD. With **fdasd** you can create, change, and delete partitions, and also change the volume serial number.

fdasd checks that the volume has a valid volume label and VTOC. If either is missing or incorrect, **fdasd** re-creates it. See “System z compatible disk layout” on page 33 for details about the volume label and VTOC.

Calling **fdasd** with a node, but without options, enters interactive mode. In interactive mode, you are given a menu through which you can display DASD information, add or remove partitions, or change the volume identifier. Your changes are not written to disk until you type the **write** option on the menu. You can quit without altering the disk at any time before this.

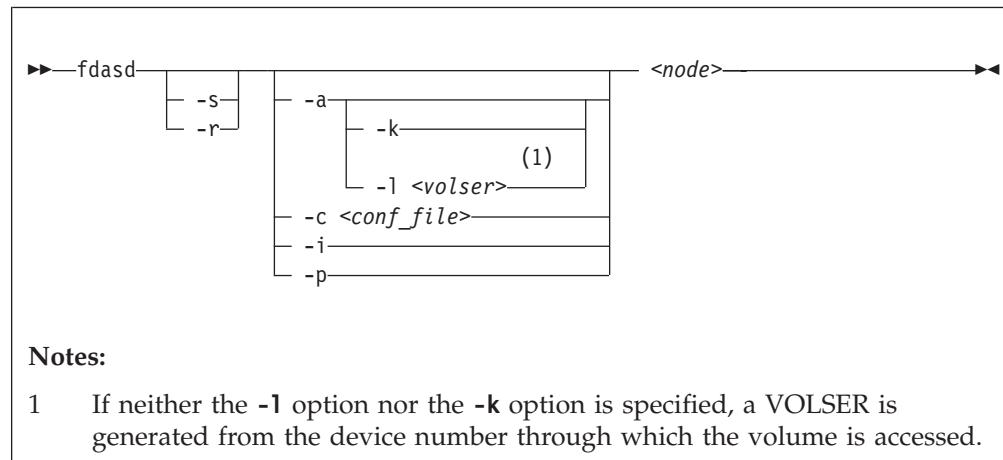
For more information about partitions, see “The IBM label partitioning scheme” on page 32.

Before you begin:

- To partition a SCSI disk, use **fdisk** rather than **fdasd**.
- The disk must be formatted with **dasdfmt**, using the compatible disk layout.

Attention: Careless use of **fdasd** can result in loss of data.

fdasd syntax



Where:

-h or --help

displays help on command line arguments.

-v or --version

displays the version of **fdasd**.

-s or --silent

suppresses messages.

fdasd

-r or --verbose

displays additional messages that are normally suppressed.

-a or --auto

auto-creates one partition using the whole disk in non-interactive mode.

-k or --keep_serial

keeps the volume serial number when writing the volume label (see VOLSER). Keeping the serial number is useful, for example, if the volume serial number was written with a z/VM tool and should not be overwritten.

-l <volser> or --label <volser>

specifies the volume serial number (see VOLSER).

A volume serial consists of one through six alphanumeric characters or the following special characters:

\$ # @ %

All other characters are ignored. Avoid using special characters in the volume serial. Special characters can cause problems when accessing a disk by VOLSER. If you must use special characters, enclose the VOLSER in single quotation marks. In addition, any '\$' character in the VOLSER must be preceded by a backslash ('\').

For example, specify:

-l 'a@b\\$c#'

to get:

A@B\$C#

VOLSER is interpreted as an ASCII string and is automatically converted to uppercase, padded with blanks and finally converted to EBCDIC before it is written to disk.

Do not use the following reserved volume serials:

- SCRTCH
- PRIVAT
- MIGRAT
- Lnnnnn (L followed by a five-digit number)

These volume serials are used as keywords by other operating systems (z/OS).

Omitting this parameter causes **fdasd** to prompt for it, if it is needed.

-c <conf_file> or --config <conf_file>

creates several partitions in non-interactive mode, according to specifications in the plain-text configuration file <conf_file>.

For each partition you want to create, add one line of the following format to <conf_file>:

[<first_track>,<last_track>,<type>]

<first_track> and <last_track> are required and specify the first and last track of the partition. You can use the keyword **first** for the first possible track on disk and, correspondingly, the keyword **last** for the last possible track on disk.

<type> describes the partition type and is one of:

native

for partitions to be used for Linux file systems.

swap

for partitions to be used as swap devices.

raid

for partitions to be used as part of a RAID setup.

lvm

for partitions to be used as part of a logical volume group.

The type specification is optional. If the type is omitted, native is used.

The type describes the intended use of a partition to tools or other operating systems. For example, swap partitions could be skipped by backup programs. How Linux actually uses the partition depends on how the partition is formatted and set up. For example, a partition of type native can still be used in an LVM logical volume or in a RAID configuration.

Example: With the following sample configuration file you can create three partitions:

```
[first,1000,raid]
[1001,2000,swap]
[2001,last]
```

-i or --volser

displays the volume serial number and exits.

-p or --table

displays the partition table and exits.

<node>

specifies the device node of the DASD you want to partition, for example, /dev/dasdzzz. See “DASD naming scheme” on page 37 for more details about device nodes.

fdasd menu

If you call **fdasd** in the interactive mode (that is, with just a node), a menu is displayed.

<pre>Command action m print this menu p print the partition table n add a new partition d delete a partition v change volume serial t change partition type r re-create VTOC and delete all partitions u re-create VTOC re-using existing partition sizes s show mapping (partition number - data set name) q quit without saving changes w write table to disk and exit</pre>
--

Command (m for help):

Menu commands

Use the **fdasd** menu commands to modify or view information about DASDs

m re-displays the **fdasd** command menu.

p displays information about the DASD and any partitions on the DASD.

DASD information:

- Number of cylinders

fdasd

- Number of tracks per cylinder
- Number of blocks per track
- Block size
- Volume label
- Volume identifier
- Number of partitions defined

Partition information:

- Linux node
- Start track
- End track
- Number of tracks
- Partition ID
- Partition type

There is also information about the free disk space that is not used for a partition.

- n** adds a partition to the DASD. You are asked to give the start track and the length or end track of the new partition.
- d** deletes a partition from the DASD. You are asked which partition to delete.
- v** changes the volume identifier. You are asked to enter a new volume identifier. See VOLSER for the format.
- t** changes the partition type. You are asked to identify the partition to be changed. You are then asked for the new partition type (Linux native or swap). This type is a guideline; the actual use Linux makes of the partition depends on how it is defined with the **mkswap** or **mkxxfs** tools. The main function of the partition type is to describe the partition to other operating systems. Then, for example, swap partitions can be skipped by backup programs.
- r** re-creates the VTOC and deletes all partitions.
- u** re-creates all VTOC labels without removing all partitions. Existing partition sizes are reused. This option is useful to repair damaged labels or migrate partitions that are created with older versions of **fdasd**.
- s** displays the mapping of partition numbers to data set names. For example:

```
Command (m for help): s
device .....: /dev/dasdzzz
volume label ...: VOL1
volume serial ...: 0X0193

WARNING: This mapping may be NOT up-to-date,
          if you have NOT saved your last changes!

/dev/dasdzzz1 - LINUX.V0X0193.PART0001.NATIVE
/dev/dasdzzz2 - LINUX.V0X0193.PART0002.NATIVE
/dev/dasdzzz3 - LINUX.V0X0193.PART0003.NATIVE
```

- q** quits **fdasd** without updating the disk. Any changes that you made (in this session) are discarded.
- w** writes your changes to disk and exits. After the data is written, Linux rereads the partition table.

Example using the menu

This example shows how to use **fdasd** to create two partitions on a z/VM minidisk, change the type of one of the partitions, save the changes, and check the results.

This example shows you how to format a z/VM minidisk with the compatible disk layout. The minidisk has device number 193.

1. Call **fdasd**, specifying the minidisk:

```
# fdasd /dev/dasdzzz
```

fdasd reads the existing data and displays the menu:

```
reading volume label: VOL1
reading vtoc : ok

Command action
  m print this menu
  p print the partition table
  n add a new partition
  d delete a partition
  v change volume serial
  t change partition type
  r re-create VTOC and delete all partitions
  u re-create VTOC re-using existing partition sizes
  s show mapping (partition number - data set name)
  q quit without saving changes
  w write table to disk and exit

Command (m for help):
```

2. Use the **p** option to verify that no partitions are created yet on this DASD:

```
Command (m for help): p

Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
 cylinders .....: 100
 tracks per cylinder ..: 15
 blocks per track ....: 12
 bytes per block .....: 4096
 volume label .....: VOL1
 volume serial .....: 0X0193
 max partitions .....: 3

----- tracks -----
Device    start    end   length  Id System
      2       1499   1498     unused
```

3. Define two partitions, one by specifying an end track and the other by specifying a length. (In both cases the default start tracks are used):

```
Command (m for help): n
First track (1 track = 48 KByte) ([2]-1499):
Using default value 2
Last track or +size[c|k|M] (2-[1499]): 700
You have selected track 700
```

```
Command (m for help): n
First track (1 track = 48 KByte) ([701]-1499):
Using default value 701
Last track or +size[c|k|M] (701-[1499]): +400
You have selected track 1100
```

4. Check the results by using the **p** option:

fdasd

```
Command (m for help): p

Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
 cylinders .....: 100
 tracks per cylinder ..: 15
 blocks per track .....: 12
 bytes per block .....: 4096
 volume label .....: VOL1
 volume serial .....: 0X0193
 max partitions .....: 3

----- tracks -----
 Device start end length Id System
 /dev/dasdzzz1 2 700 699 1 Linux native
 /dev/dasdzzz2 701 1100 400 2 Linux native
 1101 1499 399 unused
```

5. Change the type of a partition:

```
Command (m for help): t

Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
 cylinders .....: 100
 tracks per cylinder ..: 15
 blocks per track .....: 12
 bytes per block .....: 4096
 volume label .....: VOL1
 volume serial .....: 0X0193
 max partitions .....: 3

----- tracks -----
 Device start end length Id System
 /dev/dasdzzz1 2 700 699 1 Linux native
 /dev/dasdzzz2 701 1100 400 2 Linux native
 1101 1499 399 unused

change partition type
partition id (use 0 to exit):
```

Enter the ID of the partition you want to change; in this example partition 2:

```
partition id (use 0 to exit): 2
```

6. Enter the new partition type; in this example type 2 for swap:

```
current partition type is: Linux native

 1 Linux native
 2 Linux swap

new partition type: 2
```

7. Check the result:

```
Command (m for help): p
```

```
Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
cylinders .....: 100
tracks per cylinder ..: 15
blocks per track ....: 12
bytes per block .....: 4096
volume label .....: VOL1
volume serial .....: 0X0193
max partitions .....: 3
```

----- tracks -----					
Device	start	end	length	Id	System
/dev/dasdzzz1	2	700	699	1	Linux native
/dev/dasdzzz2	701	1100	400	2	Linux swap
	1101	1499	399		unused

8. Write the results to disk with the **w** option:

```
Command (m for help): w
writing VTOC...
rereading partition table...
#
```

Example using options

You can partition a DASD by using the **-a** or **-c** option without entering the menu mode.

This method is useful for partitioning by using scripts, for example, if you need to partition several hundred DASDs.

With the **-a** option you can create one large partition on a DASD:

```
# fdasd -a /dev/dasdzzz
auto-creating one partition for the whole disk...
writing volume label...
writing VTOC...
rereading partition table...
#
```

This example creates a partition as follows:

Device	start	end	length	Id	System
/dev/dasdzzz1	2	1499	1498	1	Linux native

Using a configuration file that you can create several partitions. For example, the following configuration file, config, creates three partitions:

```
[first,500]
[501,1100]
[1101,last]
```

Submitting the command with the **-c** option creates the partitions:

```
# fdasd -c config /dev/dasdzzz
parsing config file 'config'...
writing volume label...
writing VTOC...
rereading partition table...
#
```

fdasd

This example creates partitions as follows:

Device	start	end	length	Id	System
/dev/dasdzzz1	2	500	499	1	Linux native
/dev/dasdzzz2	501	1100	600	2	Linux native
/dev/dasdzzz3	1101	1499	399	3	Linux native

hyp top - Display hypervisor performance data

Use the **hyp top** command to obtain a dynamic real-time view of a hypervisor environment on System z.

It works with both the z/VM and the LPAR PR/SM™ hypervisor. Depending on the available data, it shows, for example, CPU and memory information about LPARs or z/VM guest virtual machines. The **hyp top** command provides two main windows:

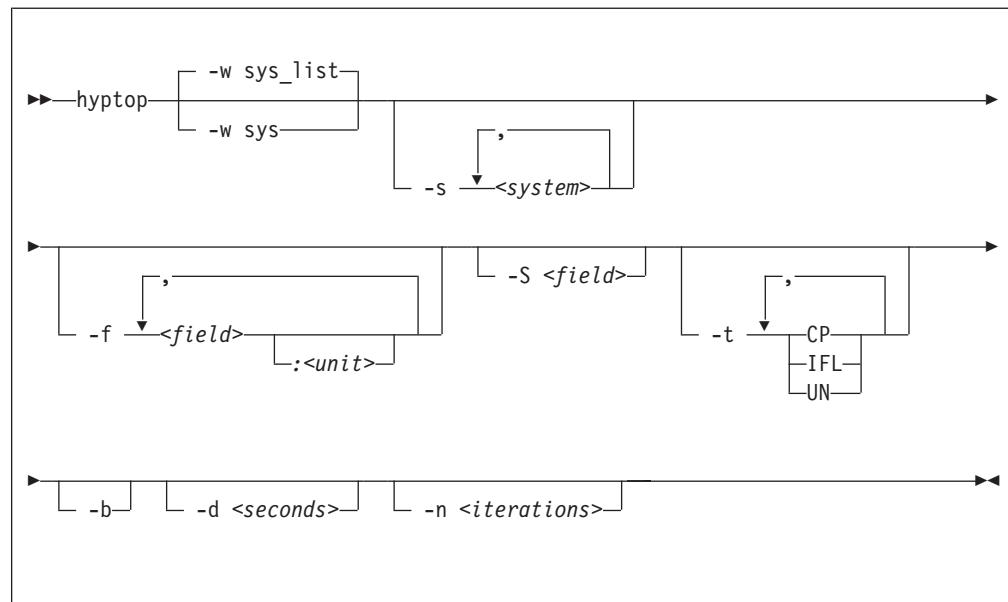
- A list of systems that the hypervisor is currently running (sys_list).
- One system in more detail (sys).

You can run **hyp top** in interactive mode (default) or in batch mode with the **-b** option.

Before you begin:

- The debugfs file system must be mounted, see “debugfs” on page ix.
- The Linux kernel must have the required support to provide the performance data. Check that <debugfs mount point>/s390_hypfs is available after you mount debugfs.
- The hyp top user must have read permission for the required debugfs files:
 - z/VM: <debugfs mount point>/s390_hypfs/diag_2fc
 - LPAR: <debugfs mount point>/s390_hypfs/diag_204
- To monitor all LPARs or z/VM guest virtual machines, your system must have additional permissions:
 - For z/VM: The guest virtual machine must be class B.
 - For LPAR: On the HMC or SE security menu of the LPAR activation profile, select the **Global performance data control** check box.

hyp top syntax



Where:

hytop

- w <window name> or --window=<window name>**
selects the window to display, either sys or sys_list. Use the options **--sys**, **--fields**, and **--sort** to modify the current window. The last window that is specified with the **--window** option is used as the start window. The default window is sys_list.
- s <system> or --sys=<system>**
selects systems for the current window. If you specify this option, only the selected systems are shown in the window. For the sys window, you can specify only one system.
- f <field>[:<unit>] or --fields=<field>[:<unit>]**
selects fields and units in the current window. The **<field>** variable is a one letter unique identifier for a field (for example "c" for CPU time). The **<unit>** variable specifies the unit that is used for the field (for example "us" for microseconds). See "Available fields and units" on page 490 for definitions. If the **--fields** option is specified, only the selected fields are shown.
- S <field> or --sort=<field>**
selects the field that is used to sort the data in the current window. To reverse the sort order, specify the option twice. See "Available fields and units" on page 490 for definitions.
- t <type> or --cpu_types=<type>**
selects CPU types that are used for CPU time calculations. See "CPU types" on page 492 for definitions.
- b or --batch_mode**
uses batch mode. Batch mode can be useful for sending output from hytop to another program, a file, or a line mode terminal. In this mode, no user input is accepted.
- d <seconds> or --delay=<seconds>**
specifies the delay between screen updates.
- n <iterations> or --iterations=<iterations>**
specifies the maximum number of screen updates before the program ends.
- h or --help**
prints usage information, then exits. To view the man page, enter **man hytop**.
- v or --version**
displays the version of **hytop**, then exits.

Navigating between windows

Use letter or arrow keys to navigate between the windows.

When you start the **hytop** command, the sys_list window opens in normal mode. Data is updated at regular intervals, and sorted by CPU time. You can navigate between the windows as shown in Figure 75 on page 489.

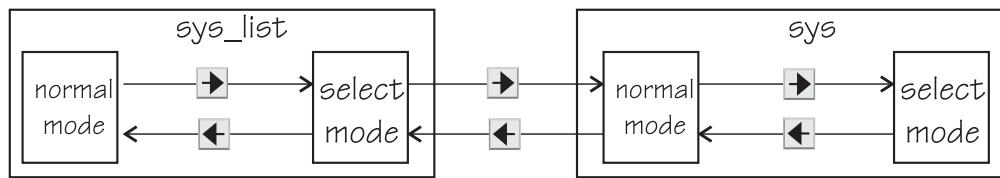


Figure 75. *hytop* window navigation overview

To navigate between the windows, use the \blacktriangleleft and \triangleright arrow keys. The windows have two modes, normal mode and select mode.

You can get online help for every window by pressing the $\square?$ key. Press $\square Q$ in the sys_list window to exit *hytop*.

Instead of using the arrow keys, you can use letter keys (equivalent to the vi editor navigation) in all windows as listed in Table 55.

Table 55. Using letter keys instead of arrow keys

Arrow key	Letter key equivalent
\blacktriangleleft	$\square H$
\downarrow	$\square J$
\uparrow	$\square K$
\triangleright	$\square L$

Selecting data

You can scroll windows and select data rows.

To enter select mode press the \triangleright key. The display is frozen so that you can select rows. Select rows by pressing the \uparrow and \downarrow keys and mark the rows with the Spacebar. Marked rows are displayed in bold font. Leave the select mode by pressing the \blacktriangleleft key.

To see the details of one system, enter select mode in the sys_list window, then navigate to the row for the system you want to look at, and press the \triangleright key. The sys window for the system opens. The \blacktriangleleft key always returns you to the previous window.

To scroll any window, press the \uparrow and \downarrow keys or the Page Up and Page Down keys. Jump to the end of a window by pressing the $\text{Shift} + \text{G}$ keys and to the beginning by pressing the G key.

Sorting data

You can sort data according to column.

The sys window or sys_list window table is sorted according to the values in the selected column. Select a column by pressing the hot key of the column. This key

is underlined in the heading. If you press the hot key again, the sort order is reversed. Alternatively, you can select columns with the \leq and \geq keys.

Filtering data

You can filter the displayed data by CPU types and by data fields.

From the sys or sys_list window you can access the fields selection window and the CPU-type selection window as shown in Figure 76.

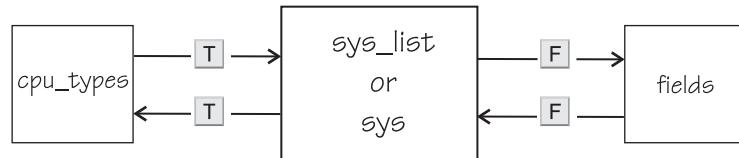


Figure 76. Accessing the fields and CPU-type selection windows

Use the **T** key to toggle between the CPU-type selection window and the main window. Use the **F** key to toggle between the fields selection window and the main window. You can also use the **◀** key to return to the main window from the CPU types and fields windows.

In the fields and CPU-type selection windows, press the field or CPU type identifier key (see “LPAR fields,” “z/VM fields” on page 491, and “CPU types” on page 492) to select or de-select. Selected rows are bold and de-selected rows are grey. When you return to the main window, the data is filtered according to your field and CPU type selections.

Available fields and units

Different fields are supported depending whether your hypervisor is LPAR PR/SM or z/VM.

The fields might also be different depending on machine type, z/VM version, and kernel version. Each field has a unique one letter identifier that can be used in interactive mode to enable the field in the field selection window. Also, use it to select the sort field in the sys or sys_list window. You can also select fields and sort data using the **--fields** and **--sort** command line options.

LPAR fields

Some fields for Linux in LPAR mode are available in both the sys_list and sys windows others are available only in the sys_list window or only in the sys window.

The following fields are available under LPAR in both the sys_list and sys windows:

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
c	cpu	CPU time per second
m	mgm	Management time per second
C	Cpu+	Total CPU time
M	Mgm+	Total management time

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
o	online	Online time

In the sys_list window only:

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
y	system	Name of the LPAR (always shown)
#	#cpu	Number of CPUs

In the sys window only:

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
i	cpuid	CPU identifier (always shown)
p	type	CPU type. See “CPU types” on page 492
v	visual	Visualization of CPU time per second

z/VM fields

Some fields for Linux on z/VM are available in both the sys_list and sys windows. Others are available only in the sys_list window or only in the sys window.

In the sys_list and sys windows:

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
c	cpu	CPU time per second
C	Cpu+	Total CPU time
o	online	Online time

In the sys_list window only:

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
y	system	Name of the z/VM guest virtual machine (always shown)
#	#cpu	Number of CPUs
u	memuse	Used memory
a	memmax	Maximum memory
n	wmin	Minimum weight
r	wcur	Current weight
x	wmax	Maximum weight

In the sys window only:

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
i	cpuid	CPU identifier (always shown)
v	visual	Visualization of CPU time per second

Units

Depending on the field type, the values can be displayed in different units.

In the sys_list and sys windows, the units are displayed under the column headings in parenthesis. Each unit can be specified through the **--fields** command line option. Units can also be selected interactively. To change a unit, enter select mode in the fields window. Then, select the field where you want to change the unit, and press the "+" or "-" keys to go through the available units. The following units are supported:

Units of time:

Unit	Explanation
us	Microseconds (10^{-6} seconds)
ms	Milliseconds (10^{-3} seconds)
%	Hundreds of a second (10^{-2} seconds) or percent
s	Seconds
m	Minutes
hm	Hours and minutes
dhm	Days, hours, and minutes

Units of memory:

Unit	Explanation
KiB	Kibibytes (1 024 bytes)
MiB	Mebibytes (1 048 576 bytes)
GiB	Gibibytes (1 073 741 824 bytes)

Other units:

Unit	Explanation
str	String
#	Count or number
vis	Visualization

CPU types

Enable or disable CPU types in interactive mode in the cpu_types window.

The CPU types can also be specified with the **--cpu_types** command line option.

The calculation of the CPU data uses CPUs of the specified types only. For example, if you want to see how much CPU time is consumed by your Linux systems, enable CPU type IFL.

On z/VM the processor type is always UN and you cannot select the type.

In an LPAR the following CPU types can be selected either interactively or with the **--cpu_types** command line option:

Identifier	Column label	Explanation
i	IFL	Integrated Facility for Linux. On older machines IFLs might be shown as CPs.
p	CP	CP processor type.
u	UN	Unspecified processor type (other than CP or IFL).

Examples

These examples show typical uses of **hyp top**.

- To start **hyp top** with the sys_list window in interactive mode, enter:

```
# hyp top
```

- If your Linux instance is running in an LPAR that has permission to see the other LPARs, the output looks like the following example:

12:30:48 CPU-T: IFL(18) CP(3) UN(3)							?=help
system (str)	#cpu (#)	cpu (%)	mgm (%)	Cpu+ (hm)	Mgm+ (hm)	online (dhm)	
S05LP30	10	461.14	10.18	1547:41	8:15	11:05:59	
S05LP33	4	133.73	7.57	220:53	6:12	11:05:54	
S05LP50	4	99.26	0.01	146:24	0:12	10:04:24	
S05LP02	1	99.09	0.00	269:57	0:00	11:05:58	
TRX2CFA	1	2.14	0.03	3:24	0:04	11:06:01	
S05LP13	6	1.36	0.34	4:23	0:54	11:05:56	
TRX1	19	1.22	0.14	13:57	0:22	11:06:01	
TRX2	20	1.16	0.11	26:05	0:25	11:06:00	
S05LP55	2	0.00	0.00	0:22	0:00	11:05:52	
S05LP56	3	0.00	0.00	0:00	0:00	11:05:52	
	413	823.39	23.86	3159:57	38:08	11:06:01	

- If your Linux instance runs in a z/VM guest virtual machine that has permission to see the other z/VM guest virtual machines, the output looks like the following example:

12:32:21 CPU-T: UN(16)							?=help
system (str)	#cpu (#)	cpu (%)	Cpu+ (hm)	online (dhm)	memuse (GiB)	memmax (GiB)	wcur (#)
T6360004	6	100.31	959:47	53:05:20	1.56	2.00	100
DTCVSW1	1	0.00	0:00	53:16:42	0.01	0.03	100
T6360002	6	0.00	166:26	40:19:18	1.87	2.00	100
OPERATOR	1	0.00	0:00	53:16:42	0.00	0.03	100
T6360008	2	0.00	0:37	30:22:55	0.32	0.75	100
T6360003	6	0.00	3700:57	53:03:09	4.00	4.00	100
NSLCF1	1	0.00	0:02	53:16:41	0.03	0.25	500
PERFSVM	1	0.00	0:53	2:21:12	0.04	0.06	0
TCPPIP	1	0.00	0:01	53:16:42	0.01	0.12	3000
DIRMAINT	1	0.00	0:04	53:16:42	0.01	0.03	100
DTCVSW2	1	0.00	0:00	53:16:42	0.01	0.03	100
RACFVM	1	0.00	0:00	53:16:42	0.01	0.02	100
	75	101.57	5239:47	53:16:42	15.46	22.50	3000

At the top of the sys and sys_list windows the CPU types currently used for CPU time calculation are displayed.

- To start **hyp top** with the sys window showing performance data for LPAR MYLPAR, enter:

```
# hyp top -w sys -s mylpar
```

The result looks like the following example:

hytop

```
11:18:50 MYLPAR CPU-T: IFL(0) CP(24) UN(2)          ?=help
cpuid type   cpu  mgm visual
(#+) (str) (%) (%) (vis)
0     CP  50.78 0.28 #####
1     CP  62.76 0.17 #####
2     CP  71.11 0.48 #####
3     CP  32.38 0.24 #####
4     CP  64.35 0.32 #####
5     CP  67.61 0.40 #####
6     CP  70.95 0.35 #####
7     CP  62.16 0.41 #####
8     CP  70.48 0.25 #####
9     CP  56.43 0.20 #####
10    CP  0.00 0.00 #####
11    CP  0.00 0.00 #####
12    CP  0.00 0.00 #####
13    CP  0.00 0.00 #####
=:V:N      609.02 3.10
```

- To start **hytop** with the sys_list window in batch mode, enter:

```
# hytop -b
```

- To start **hytop** with the sys_list window in interactive mode, with the fields CPU time (in milliseconds), and online time (unit default), and sort the output according to online time, enter:

```
# hytop -f c:ms,o -S o
```

- To start **hytop** with the sys_list window in batch mode with update delay 5 seconds and 10 iterations, enter:

```
# hytop -b -d 5 -n 10
```

- To start **hytop** with the sys_list window and use only CPU types IFL and CP for CPU time calculation, enter:

```
# hytop -t ifl,cp
```

Scenario

Perform the steps described in this scenario to start **hytop** with the sys window with system MYLPAR with the fields CPU time (unit milliseconds) and Total CPU time (unit default) and sort the output reversely according to the Total CPU time.

Procedure

- Start hytop.

```
# hytop
```

- Go to select mode by pressing the key. The display will freeze.
- Navigate to the row for the system you want to look (in the example MYLPAR) at using the and keys.

system (str)	#cpu (#)	cpu (%)	mgm (%)	Cpu+ (hm)	Mgm+ (hm)	online (dhm)
MYLPAR	4	199.69	0.04	547:41	8:15	11:05:59
S05LP33	4	133.73	7.57	220:53	6:12	11:05:54
S05LP50	4	99.26	0.01	146:24	0:12	10:04:24
S05LP02	1	99.09	0.00	269:57	0:00	11:05:58
...						
S05LP56	3	0.00	0.00	0:00	0:00	11:05:52
	413	823.39	23.86	3159:57	38:08	11:06:01

4. Open the sys window for MYLPAR by pressing the **→** key.

cpuid (#)	type (str)	cpu (%)	mgm (%)	visual (vis)	
0	IFL	99.84	0.02	#####	#####
1	IFL	99.85	0.02	#####	#####
2	IFL	0.00	0.00	#####	#####
3	IFL	0.00	0.00	#####	#####
=:V:N		199.69	0.04		

5. Press the **F** key to go to the fields selection window:

Select Fields and Units				?=help
K	S	ID	UNIT	AGG DESCRIPTION
p	*	type	str	none CPU type
c	*	cpu	%	sum CPU time per second
m	*	mgm	%	sum Management time per second
C		cpu+	hm	sum Total CPU time
M		mgm+	hm	sum Total management time
o		online	dhm	max Online time
v	*	visual	vis	none Visualization of CPU time per second

Ensure that CPU time per second and Total CPU time are selected and for CPU time microseconds are used as unit:

- Press the **P** key, the **M** key, and the **V** key to disable CPU type, Management time per second, and Visualization.
- Press the **C** key to enable Total CPU time.
- Then select the CPU time per second row by pressing the **→** and **↓** keys.
- Press the minus key (-) to switch from the percentage (%) unit to the microseconds (ms) unit.

Select Fields and Units				?=help
K	S	ID	UNIT	AGG DESCRIPTION
p		type	str	none CPU type
c	*	cpu	ms	sum CPU time per second
m		mgm	%	sum Management time per second
C	*	cpu+	hm	sum Total CPU time
M		mgm+	hm	sum Total management time
o		online	dhm	max Online time
v		visual	vis	none Visualization of CPU time per second

Press the **←** key twice to return to the sys window.

6. To sort by Total CPU time and list the values from low to high, press the **Shift** + **C** keys twice:

hytop

```
13:44:41 MYLPAR CPU-T: IFL(18) CP(3) UN(2)          _=help
cpuid    cpu      Cpu+
(#+)   (ms)    (hm)
2       0.00    0:00
3       0.00    0:00
1      37.48  492:55
0      23.84  548:52
=:^:N  61.33  1041:47
```

Results

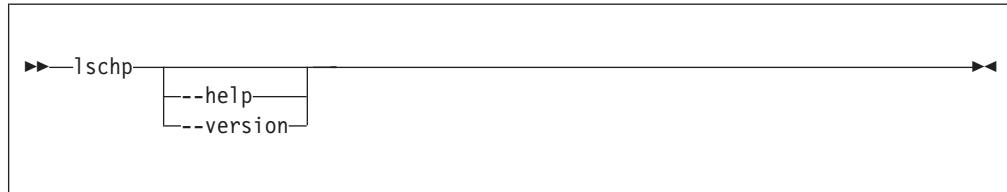
You can do all of these steps in one by entering the command:

```
# hytop -w sys -s mylpar -f c:ms,C -S C -S C
```

Ischp - List channel paths

Use the **Ischp** command to display information about channel paths.

Ischp syntax



Where:

-v or --version

displays the version number of **Ischp** and exits.

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits.

Output column description:

CHPID

Channel-path identifier.

Vary

Logical channel-path state:

- 0 = channel-path is not used for I/O.
- 1 = channel-path is used for I/O.

Cfg.

Channel-path configure state:

- 0 = stand-by
- 1 = configured
- 2 = reserved
- 3 = not recognized

Type

Channel-path type identifier.

Cmg

Channel measurement group identifier.

Shared

Indicates whether a channel-path is shared between LPARs:

- 0 = channel-path is not shared
- 1 = channel-path is shared

PCHID

Physical channel path identifier, or, if enclosed in brackets, internal channel identifier. The mapping might not be available to Linux when running as a z/VM guest. If so, use the CP command:

QUERY CHPID <num> PCHID

A column value of '-' indicates that a facility associated with the corresponding channel-path attribute is not available.

lschp

Examples

- To query the configuration status of channel path ID 0.40 issue:

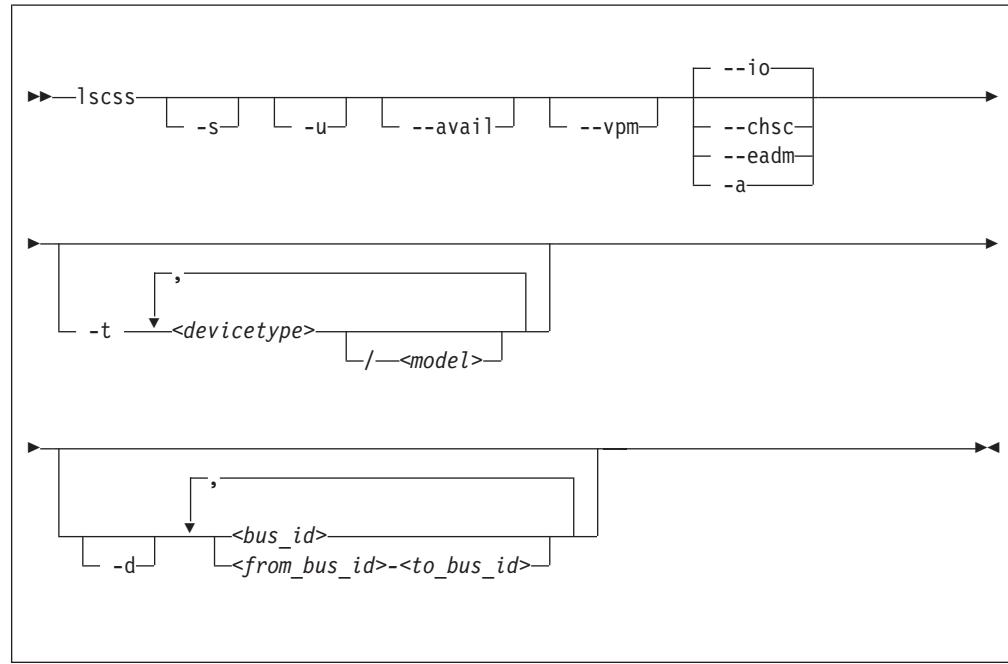
```
# lschp  
CHPID Vary Cfg. Type Cmg Shared PCHID  
=====...  
...  
0.40 1 1 1b 2 1 0580  
...  
...
```

The value under **Cfg.** shows that the channel path is configured (1).

lscss - List subchannels

Use the **lscss** command to gather subchannel information from sysfs and display it in a summary format.

lscss syntax



Where:

-s or --short

strips the “0.n.” from the device bus-IDs in the command output.

-u or --uppercase

displays the output with uppercase letters. The default is lowercase.

Changed default: Earlier versions of **lscss** printed the command output in uppercase. Specify this option to obtain the former output style.

--avail

includes the availability attribute of I/O devices.

--vpm

shows verified paths in a mask. Channel paths listed in this mask are available to Linux device drivers for I/O. Reasons for a channel path being unavailable include:

- The corresponding bit is not set in at least one of the PIM, PAM, or POM masks.
- The channel path is varied offline.
- Linux received no interrupt to I/O using this channel path.

--io

limits the output to I/O subchannels and corresponding devices. This option is the default.

--chsc

limits the output to CHSC subchannels.

lscss

--eadm

limits the output to EADM subchannels.

-a or --all

does not limit the output.

-t or --devtype

limits the output to information about the specified device types and, if provided, the specified model.

<devicetype>

specifies a device type.

<model>

is a specific model of the specified device type.

-d or --devrange

interprets bus IDs as specifications of devices. By default, bus IDs are interpreted as specifications of subchannels.

<bus_id>

specifies an individual subchannel; if used with **-d** specifies an individual device. If you omit the leading 0.<subchannel set ID>, 0.0. is assumed.

If you specify subchannels or devices, the command output is limited to these subchannels or devices.

<from_bus_id>-<to_bus_id>

specifies a range of subchannels; if used with **-d** specifies a range of devices. If you omit the leading 0.<subchannel set ID>, 0.0. is assumed.

If you specify subchannels or devices, the command output is limited to these subchannels or devices.

-v or --version

displays the version number of **lscss** and exits.

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits. To view the man page enter **man lscss**.

Examples

- This command lists all subchannels, including subchannels that do not correspond to I/O devices:

```
# lscss -a
IO Subchannels and Devices:
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.f500 0.0.05cf 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 76000000 00000000
0.0.f501 0.0.05d0 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 76000000 00000000
0.0.f502 0.0.05d1 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 76000000 00000000
0.0.6194 0.0.36e0 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes fc fc ff 32333435 40410000
0.0.6195 0.0.36e1 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes fc fc ff 32333435 40410000
0.0.6196 0.0.36e2 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes fc fc ff 32333435 40410000

CHSC Subchannels:
Device Subchan.
-----
n/a 0.0.ff40

EADM Subchannels:
Device Subchan.
-----
n/a 0.0.ff00
n/a 0.0.ff01
n/a 0.0.ff02
n/a 0.0.ff03
n/a 0.0.ff04
n/a 0.0.ff05
n/a 0.0.ff06
n/a 0.0.ff07
```

- This command lists subchannels with an attached 3480 model 04 or 3590 tape device and strips the “0.n.” from the device and subchannel bus-IDs in the command output:

```
# lscss -s -t 3480/04,3590
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0480 000e 3480/04 3480/01 80 80 ff 10000000 00000000
0a38 000f 3590/11 3590/50 80 80 ff 10000000 00000000
```

- This command limits the output to subchannels with attached DASD model 3390 type 0a:

```
# lscss -t 3390/0a
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
```

- This command limits the output to the subchannel range 0.0.0b00-0.0.0bff:

```
# lscss 0.0.0b00-0.0.0bff
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
```

- This command limits the output to subchannels 0.0.0a78 and 0.0.0b57 and shows the availability:

```
# lscss --avail 0a78,0b57
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs Avail.
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000 good
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000 good
```

lscss

- This command limits the output to subchannel 0.0.0a78 and displays uppercase output:

```
# lscss -u 0a78
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0A78 3390/0A 3990/E9 YES C0 C0 FF 34400000 00000000
```

- This command limits the output to subchannels that correspond to I/O device 0.0.7e10 and the device range 0.0.2f00-0.0.2fff:

```
# lscss -d 2f00-2fff,0.0.7e10
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
0.0.7e10 0.0.1828 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes f0 f0 ef 34403541 00000000
```

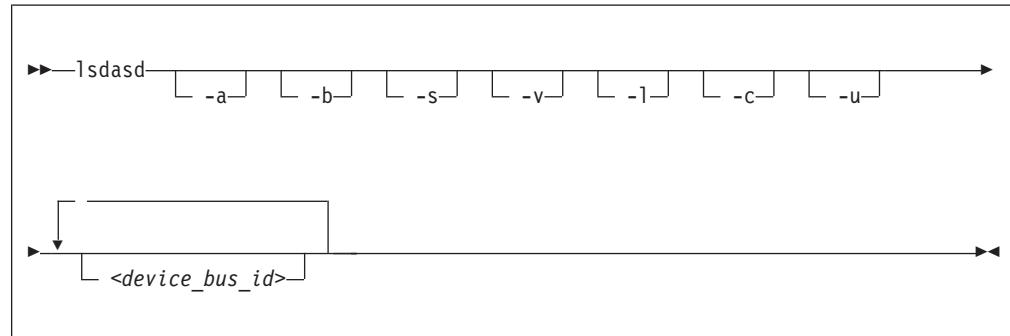
- This example shows a CHPID with PIM, PAM, and POM masks that are OK, but the entry in the VPM column indicates that one of the paths, 0x41, is not usable for I/O.

```
# lscss --vpm
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM VPM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.f500 0.0.05cf 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 80 76000000 00000000
0.0.f501 0.0.05d0 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 80 76000000 00000000
0.0.f502 0.0.05d1 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 80 76000000 00000000
0.0.6194 0.0.3700 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes fc fc ff f8 32333435 40410000
0.0.6195 0.0.3701 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes fc fc ff f8 32333435 40410000
0.0.6196 0.0.3702 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes fc fc ff f8 32333435 40410000
0.0.6197 0.0.3703 3390/0c 3990/e9 fc fc ff 00 32333435 40410000
0.2.5600 0.2.0040 1732/03 1731/03 80 80 ff 00 5d000000 00000000
```

lsdasd - List DASD devices

Use the **lsdasd** command to gather information about DASD devices from sysfs and display it in a summary format.

lsdasd syntax



Where:

-a or --offline

includes devices that are currently offline.

-b or --base

omits PAV alias devices. Lists only base devices.

-s or --short

strips the “0.n.” from the device bus-IDs in the command output.

-v or --verbose

Obsolete. This option has no effect on the output.

-l or --long

extends the output to include UID and attributes.

-c or --compat

creates output of this command as with versions earlier than 1.7.0.

-u or --uid

includes and sorts output by UID.

--version

displays the version of the command.

<device_bus_id>

limits the output to information about the specified devices only.

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits.

lsdasd

Examples

- The following command lists all DASD (including offline DASDS):

```
# lsdasd -a
Bus-ID      Status     Name      Device      Type      BlkSz      Size      Blocks
=====
0.0.0190    offline
0.0.0191    offline
0.0.019d    offline
0.0.019e    offline
0.0.0592    offline
0.0.4711    offline
0.0.4712    offline
0.0.4f2c    offline
0.0.4d80    active    dasda    94:0       ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
0.0.4f19    active    dasdb    94:4       ECKD      4096      23034MB   5896800
0.0.4d81    active    dasdc    94:8       ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
0.0.4d82    active    dasdd    94:12      ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
0.0.4d83    active    dasde    94:16      ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
```

- The following command shows information only for the DASD with device number 0x4d80 and strips the “0.n.” from the bus IDs in the output:

```
# lsdasd -s 4d80
Bus-ID      Status     Name      Device      Type      BlkSz      Size      Blocks
=====
4d80        active    dasda    94:0       ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
```

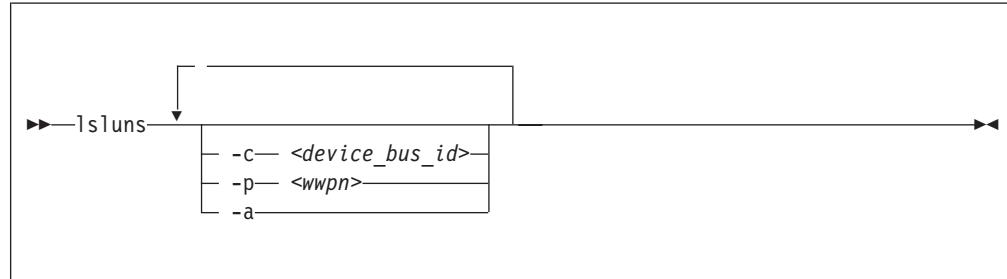
- The following command shows only online DASDs in the format of **lsdasd** versions earlier than 1.7.0:

```
# lsdasd -c
0.0.4d80(ECKD) at ( 94: 0) is dasda : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
0.0.4f19(ECKD) at ( 94: 4) is dasdb : active at blocksize 4096, 5896800 blocks, 23034 MB
0.0.4d81(ECKD) at ( 94: 8) is dasdc : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
0.0.4d82(ECKD) at ( 94: 12) is dasdd : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
0.0.4d83(ECKD) at ( 94: 16) is dasde : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
```

IsLuns - Discover LUNs in Fibre Channel SANs

Use the **IsLuns** command to discover and scan LUNs in Fibre Channel storage area networks (SANs) or to show LUNs actively used in Linux.

IsLuns syntax



Where:

- c or --ccw <device_bus_id>**
shows LUNs for a specific FCP device.
- p or --port <wwpn>**
shows LUNs for the port with the specified WWPN.
- a or --active**
shows the currently active LUNs. A bracketed "x" indicates that the corresponding disk is encrypted.
- v or --version**
displays the version number of **IsLuns** and exits.
- h or --help**
displays an overview of the syntax.

Examples

- This example shows all LUNs for port 0x500507630300c562:

```

# IsLuns --port 0x500507630300c562
Scanning for LUNs on adapter 0.0.5922
  at port 0x500507630300c562:
    0x4010400000000000
    0x4010400100000000
    0x4010400200000000
    0x4010400300000000
    0x4010400400000000
    0x4010400500000000
  
```

- This example shows all LUNs for an FCP device with bus ID 0.0.5922:

lsluns

```
# lsluns -c 0.0.5922
    at port 0x500507630300c562:
        0x4010400000000000
        0x4010400100000000
        0x4010400200000000
        0x4010400300000000
        0x4010400400000000
        0x4010400500000000
    at port 0x500507630303c562:
        0x4010400000000000
        0x4010400100000000
        0x4010400200000000
        0x4010400300000000
        0x4010400400000000
        0x4010400500000000
```

- This example shows all active LUNs:

```
# lsluns -a
adapter = 0.0.5922
    port = 0x500507630300c562
        lun = 0x401040a200000000 /dev/sg0      Disk IBM:2107900
        lun = 0x401040a300000000(x) /dev/sg1    Disk IBM:2107900
        lun = 0x401040a400000000 /dev/sg2      Disk IBM:2107900
        lun = 0x401040a500000000 /dev/sg3      Disk IBM:2107900
    port = 0x500507630303c562
        lun = 0x401040a400000000 /dev/sg4      Disk IBM:2107900
        lun = 0x401040a500000000 /dev/sg5      Disk IBM:2107900
adapter = 0.0.593a
    port = 0x500507630307c562
        lun = 0x401040b000000000 /dev/sg6      Disk IBM:2107900
        lun = 0x401040b300000000 /dev/sg7      Disk IBM:2107900
    ...
```

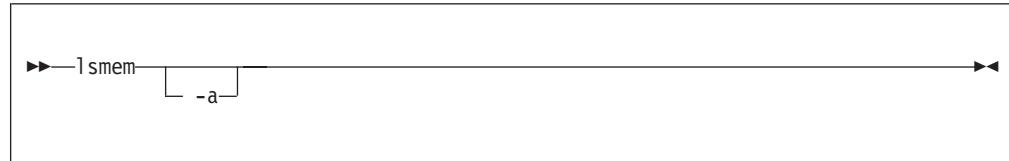
The (x) in the output indicates that the device is encrypted.

lsmem - Show online status information about memory blocks

Use the **lsmem** command to list the ranges of available memory with their online status.

The listed memory blocks correspond to the memory block representation in sysfs. The command also shows the memory block size, the device size, and the amount of memory in online and offline state.

lsmem syntax



Where:

-a or --all

lists each individual memory block, instead of combining memory blocks with similar attributes.

-v or --version

displays the version number of **lsmem**, then exits.

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits. To view the man page, enter **man lsmem**.

The columns in the command output have this meaning:

Address range

Start and end address of the memory range.

Size Size of the memory range in MB (1024 x 1024 bytes).

State Indication of the online status of the memory range. State on->off means that the address range is in transition from online to offline.

Removable

yes if the memory range can be set offline, no if it cannot be set offline. A dash (-) means that the range is already offline.

Device

Device number or numbers that correspond to the memory range.

A device represents a unit of memory for the hypervisor in control of the memory. The hypervisor cannot reuse a device unless the entire corresponding memory range is offline.

The memory units that you can set online or offline from Linux are memory blocks. In most memory configurations, there is a one-to-one mapping of devices and memory blocks or a mapping of multiple devices to a single memory block. In other configurations, multiple memory blocks might map to a single device. Memory might be used inefficiently if a device includes both online and offline memory blocks.

The **chmem** command with the size parameter automatically chooses the best suited device or devices for setting memory online or offline. The device size depends on the hypervisor and on the amount of total online and offline memory.

lsmem

Examples

- The output of this command, shows ranges of adjacent memory blocks with similar attributes.

```
# lsmem
Address range          Size (MB)  State   Removable Device
=====
0x0000000000000000-0x000000000fffffff    256 online  no      0
0x0000000010000000-0x000000002fffffff    512 online  yes     1-2
0x0000000030000000-0x000000003fffffff    256 online  no      3
0x0000000040000000-0x000000006fffffff    768 online  yes     4-6
0x0000000070000000-0x00000000fffffff    2304 offline -       7-15

Memory device size : 256 MB
Memory block size  : 256 MB
Total online memory: 1792 MB
Total offline memory: 2304 MB
```

- The output of this command, shows each memory block as a separate range.

```
# lsmem -a
Address range          Size (MB)  State   Removable Device
=====
0x0000000000000000-0x000000000fffffff    256 online  no      0
0x0000000010000000-0x000000001fffffff    256 online  yes     1
0x0000000020000000-0x000000002fffffff    256 online  yes     2
0x0000000030000000-0x000000003fffffff    256 online  no      3
0x0000000040000000-0x000000004fffffff    256 online  yes     4
0x0000000050000000-0x000000005fffffff    256 online  yes     5
0x0000000060000000-0x000000006fffffff    256 online  yes     6
0x0000000070000000-0x000000007fffffff    256 offline -       7
0x0000000080000000-0x000000008fffffff    256 offline -       8
0x0000000090000000-0x000000009fffffff    256 offline -       9
0x00000000a0000000-0x00000000afffffff    256 offline -      10
0x00000000b0000000-0x00000000bfffffff    256 offline -      11
0x00000000c0000000-0x00000000cfffffff    256 offline -      12
0x00000000d0000000-0x00000000dfffffff    256 offline -      13
0x00000000e0000000-0x00000000efffffff    256 offline -      14
0x00000000f0000000-0x00000000fffffff    256 offline -      15

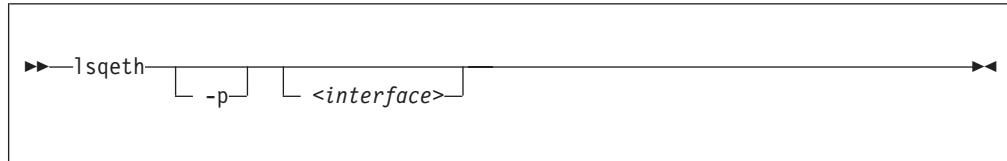
Memory device size : 256 MB
Memory block size  : 256 MB
Total online memory: 1792 MB
Total offline memory: 2304 MB
```

lsgeth - List qeth-based network devices

Use the `lsgeth` command to display a summary of information about qeth-based network devices.

Before you begin: To be able to use this command, you must also install **qethconf** (see “**qethconf - Configure qeth devices**” on page 537). You install **qethconf** and **1sqeth** with the s390utils RPM.

Isqeth syntax



Where:

-p or --proc

displays the interface information in the former /proc/qeth format. This option can generate input to tools that expect this particular format.

<interface>

limits the output to information about the specified interface only.

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits.

Examples

- The following command lists information about interface enccw0.0.f5a0 in the default format:

```
# lsqeth enccw0.0.f5a0
Device name          : enccw0.0.f5a0
-----
card_type            : OSD_100
cdev0                : 0.0.f5a0
cdev1                : 0.0.f5a3
cdev2                : 0.0.f5a4
chpid                : B5
online               : 1
portname              : OSAPORT
portno                : 0
route4                : no
route6                : no
checksumming          : hw checksumming
state                 : UP (LAN ONLINE)
priority_queueing    : always queue 2
fake_broadcast        : 0
buffer_count          : 64
layer2                : 0
large_send             : no
isolation              : none
sniffer                : 0
```

- The following command lists information about all qeth-based interfaces in the former /proc/qeth format:

lsqeth

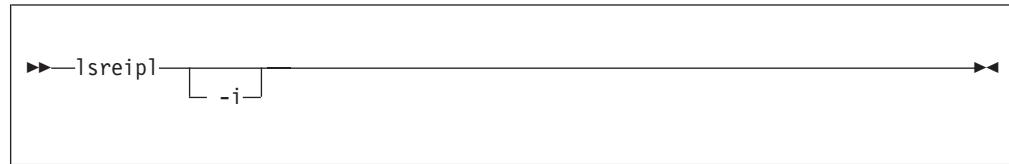
```
# lsqeth -p
devices          CHPID interface      cardtype      port  checksum prio-q'ing rtr4 rtr6 lay'2 cnt
-----
0.0.833c/0.0.8340/0.0.8341 xFE  enccw0.0.833c  HiperSockets  0   sw    always_q_2 no  no  0   128
0.0.f5a0/0.0.f5a3/0.0.f5a4 xB5  enccw0.0.f5a0   OSD_100       0   hw    always_q_2 no  no  0   64
0.0.fba2/0.0.fba3/0.0.fba4 xB0  enccw0.0.fba2   OSD_100       0   sw    always_q_2 no  no  1   64
```

lsreipl - List IPL and re-IPL settings

Use the **lsreipl** command to find out which boot device and which options are used if you issue the reboot command.

You can also display information about the current boot device.

lsreipl syntax



Where:

-i or --ipl

displays the IPL setting.

-v or --version

displays the version number of **lsreipl** and exits.

-h or --help

displays an overview of the syntax. Any other parameters are ignored.

By default the re-IPL device is set to the current IPL device. Use the chreipl command to change the re-IPL settings.

Examples

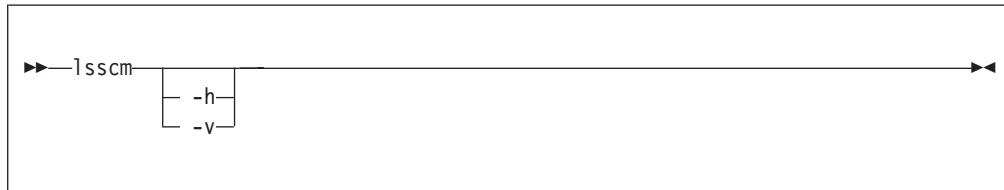
- This example shows the current re-IPL settings:

```
# lsreipl
Re-IPL type:      fcp
WWPN:             0x500507630300c562
LUN:              0x401040b300000000
Device:           0.0.1700
bootprog:         0
br_lba:           0
Bootparms:        ""
```

lsscm - List storage-class memory increments

Use the **lsscm** command to list status and other information about available storage-class memory increments.

lsscm syntax



Where:

-h or --help

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man lsscm**.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

In the output table, the columns have the following meaning:

SCM Increment

Starting address of the storage-class memory increment.

Size

Size of the block device that represents the storage-class memory increment.

Name

Name of the block device that represents the storage-class memory increment.

Rank

A quality ranking in the form of a number in the range 1 - 15 where a lower number means better ranking.

D_state

Data state of the storage-class memory increment. A number that indicates whether there is data on the increment. The data state can be:

- 1 The increment contains zeros only.
- 2 Data was written to the increment.
- 3 No data was written to the increment since the increment was attached.

O_state

Operation state of the storage-class memory increment.

Pers

Persistence attribute.

ResID

Resource identifier.

Examples

- This command lists all increments:

```
# lsscm
SCM Increment  Size   Name  Rank D_state O_state Pers ResID
-----
0000000000000000 16384MB scma    1      2      1    2    1
0000000400000000 16384MB scmb    1      2      1    2    1
```

Isshut

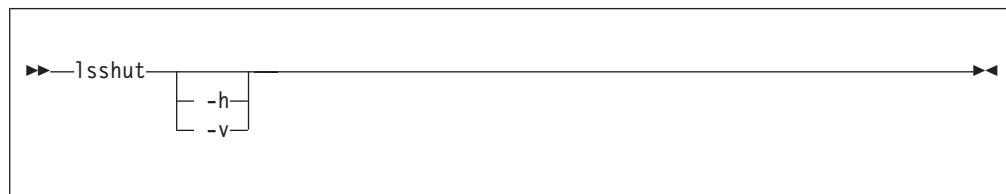
Isshut - List the current system shutdown actions

Use the **lsshut** command to see how the Linux instance is configured for the halt, poff, reboot, restart, and panic system shutdown triggers.

For more information about the shutdown triggers and possible shutdown actions, see Chapter 37, “Shutdown actions,” on page 401.

If the action is kdump, a second action might be listed. This second action is the backup action that is taken if kdump fails. See *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711 for details about using kdump.

Isshut syntax



Where:

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits.

-v or --version

displays the version number of **lsshut** and exits.

Examples

- To query the configuration issue:

```
# lsshut
Trigger      Action
-----
Halt        stop
Power off   vmcmd (LOGOFF)
Reboot      reipl
Restart     kdump,dump_reipl
Panic       kdump,dump_reipl
```

ltape - List tape devices

Use the **ltape** command to gather information about tape devices and display it in a summary format.

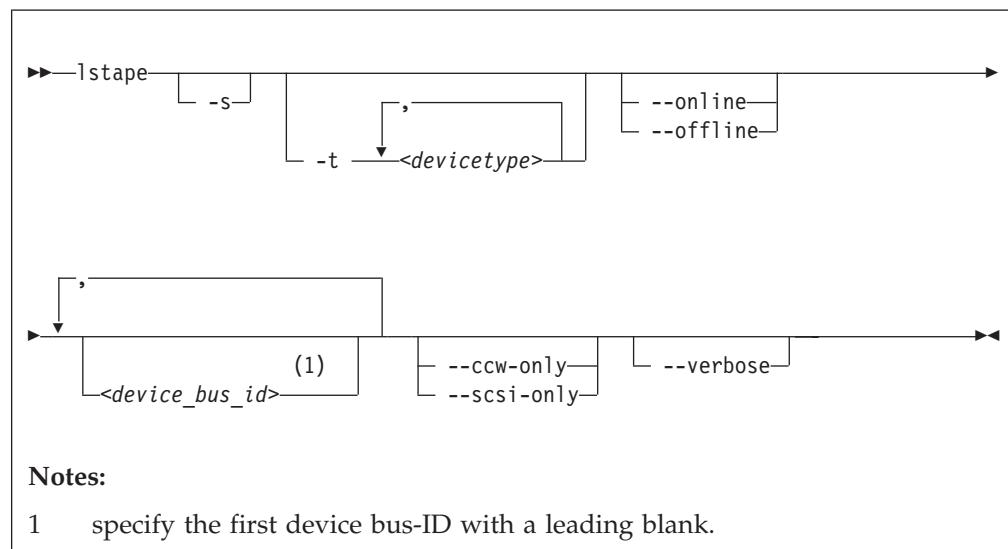
It gathers information about CCW-attached tape devices and tape devices that are attached to the SCSI bus from sysfs (see “Displaying tape information” on page 110).

For information about SCSI tape devices, the command uses the following sources for the information displayed:

- The IBMtape or the open source lin_tape driver.
- The sg_inq command from the scsi/sg3_utils package.
- The st (SCSI tape) device driver in the Linux kernel.

If you use the IBMtape or lin_tape driver, the sg_inq utility is required. If sg_inq is missing, certain information about the IBMtape or lin_tape driver cannot be displayed.

ltape syntax



Where:

-s or --shortid

strips the “0.n.” from the device bus-IDs in the command output. For CCW-attached devices only.

-t or --type

limits the output to information about the specified type or types of CCW-attached devices only.

--ccw-only

limits the output to information about CCW-attached devices only.

--scsi-only

limits the output to information about tape devices that are attached to the SCSI bus.

ltape

--online | --offline

limits the output to information about online or offline CCW-attached tape devices only.

<device_bus_id>

limits the output to information about the specified tape device or devices only.

--verbose

For tape devices attached to the SCSI bus only. Prints the serial of the tape and information about the FCP connection as an additional text line after each SCSI tape in the list.

-h or --help

displays a short help text.

--version

displays the version of the command.

Examples

- This command displays information about all tapes that are found, here one CCW-attached tape and one tape and changer device that is configured for zFCP:

```
#> ltape
FICON/ESCON tapes (found 1):
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/Model BlkSize State Op MedState
0      0.0.0480 3480/01   3480/04    auto     UNUSED --- UNLOADED

SCSI tape devices (found 2):
Generic Device Target Vendor Model Type State
sg4     IBMchanger0 0:0:0:0 IBM 03590H11 changer running
sg5     IBMtape0   0:0:0:1 IBM 03590H11 tapedrv running
```

If only the generic tape driver (st) and the generic changer driver (ch) are loaded, the output lists those names in the device section:

```
#> ltape
FICON/ESCON tapes (found 1):
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/Model BlkSize State Op MedState
0      0.0.0480 3480/01   3480/04    auto     UNUSED --- UNLOADED

SCSI tape devices (found 2):
Generic Device Target Vendor Model Type State
sg0     sch0      0:0:0:0 IBM 03590H11 changer running
sg1     st0       0:0:0:1 IBM 03590H11 tapedrv running
```

- This command displays information about all available CCW-attached tapes.

```
# ltape --ccw-only
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/DevMod BlkSize State Op MedState
0      0.0.0132 3590/50  3590/11   auto    IN_USE --- LOADED
1      0.0.0110 3490/10  3490/40   auto    UNUSED --- UNLOADED
2      0.0.0133 3590/50  3590/11   auto    IN_USE --- LOADED
3      0.0.012a 3480/01  3480/04   auto    UNUSED --- UNLOADED
N/A   0.0.01f8 3480/01  3480/04   N/A     OFFLINE --- N/A
```

- This command limits the output to tapes of type 3480 and 3490.

```
# ltape -t 3480,3490
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/DevMod BlkSize State Op MedState
1 0.0.0110 3490/10 3490/40 auto UNUSED --- UNLOADED
3 0.0.012a 3480/01 3480/04 auto UNUSED --- UNLOADED
N/A 0.0.01f8 3480/01 3480/04 N/A OFFLINE --- N/A
```

- This command limits the output to those tapes of type 3480 and 3490 that are currently online.

```
# ltape -t 3480,3490 --online
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/DevMod BlkSize State Op MedState
1 0.0.0110 3490/10 3490/40 auto UNUSED --- UNLOADED
3 0.0.012a 3480/01 3480/04 auto UNUSED --- UNLOADED
```

- This command limits the output to the tape with device bus-ID 0.0.012a and strips the "0.n." from the device bus-ID in the output.

```
# ltape -s 0.0.012a
TapeNo BusID CuType/Model DevType/DevMod BlkSize State Op MedState
3 012a 3480/01 3480/04 auto UNUSED --- UNLOADED
```

- This command limits the output to SCSI devices but gives more details. The serial numbers are only displayed if the **sg_inq** command is found on the system.

```
#> ltape --scsi-only --verbose
Generic Device Target Vendor Model Type State
HBA WWPN Serial
sg0 st0 0:0:0:1 IBM 03590H11 tapedrv running
0.0.1708 0x500507630040727b NO/INQ
sg1 sch0 0:0:0:2 IBM 03590H11 changer running
0.0.1708 0x500507630040727b NO/INQ
```

Data fields for SCSI tape devices

There are specific data fields for SCSI tape devices.

Table 56. ltape data fields for SCSI tape devices

Attribute	Description
Generic	SCSI generic device file for the tape drive (for example /dev/sg0). This attribute is empty if the sg_inq command is not available.
Device	Main device file for accessing the tape drive, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> /dev/st0 for a tape drive that is attached through the Linux st device driver /dev/sch0 for a medium changer device that is attached through the Linux changer device driver /dev/IBMchanger0 for a medium changer that is attached through the IBMtape or lin_tape device driver /dev/IBMtape0 for a tape drive that is attached through the IBMtape or lin_tape device driver
Target	The ID in Linux used to identify the SCSI device.
Vendor	The vendor field from the tape drive.
Model	The model field from the tape drive.
Type	"Tapedrv" for a tape driver or "changer" for a medium changer.
State	The state of the SCSI device in Linux. This state is an internal state of the Linux kernel, any state other than "running" can indicate problems.

Istape

Table 56. Istape data fields for SCSI tape devices (continued)

Attribute	Description
HBA	The FCP device to which the tape drive is attached.
WWPN	The WWPN (worldwide port name) of the tape drive in the SAN.
Serial	The serial number field from the tape drive.

lszcrypt - Display cryptographic devices

Use the **lszcrypt** command to display information about cryptographic adapters that are managed by the cryptographic device driver and its AP bus attributes.

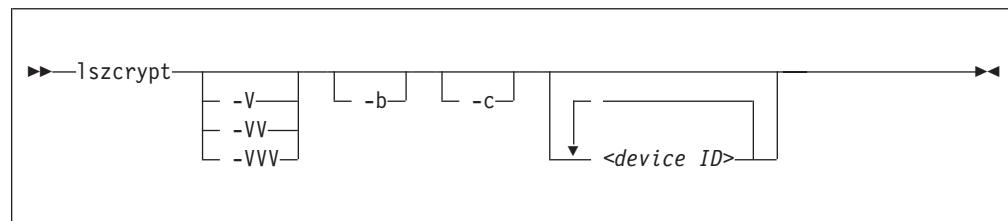
To set the attributes, use “chzcrypt - Modify the cryptographic configuration” on page 448. The following information can be displayed for each cryptographic adapter:

- The card type
- The online status
- The hardware card type
- The card capability
- The hardware queue depth
- The request count

The following AP bus attributes can be displayed:

- The AP domain
- The configuration timer
- The poll thread status
- The poll timeout
- The AP interrupt status

lszcrypt syntax



Where:

-V or --verbose, -VV, -VVV

increases the verbose level for cryptographic adapter information.

-V or --verbose

displays card type and online status.

-VV displays card type, online status, hardware card type, hardware queue depth, and request count.

-VVV displays card type, online status, hardware card type, hardware queue depth, request count, pending request queue count, outstanding request queue count, and installed function facilities.

-b or --bus

displays the AP bus attributes.

-c or --capability

shows the capabilities of a cryptographic adapter of hardware type 6 or higher. The capabilities of a cryptographic adapter depend on the card type and the installed function facilities. A cryptographic adapter can provide one or more of the following capabilities:

- RSA 2K Clear Key

lszcrypt

- RSA 4K Clear Key
- CCA Secure Key
- Long RNG

<device ID>

specifies the cryptographic adapter that is displayed. A cryptographic adapter can be specified either in decimal notation or hexadecimal notation with a '0x' prefix. If no adapters are specified, information about all available adapters is displayed.

-h or --help

displays short information about command usage.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

These examples illustrate common uses for **lszcrypt**.

- To display information about all available cryptographic adapters:

```
# lszcrypt
```

This command displays output similar to the following example:

```
card00: CEX3A  
card01: CEX3C  
card02: CEX3A  
card03: CEX3C  
card04: CEX3C  
card05: CEX3C  
card06: CEX4A  
card08: CEX4A  
card09: CEX4C  
card0a: CEX4C  
card0b: CEX4C
```

- To display card type and online status of all available cryptographic adapters:

```
# lszcrypt -V
```

This command displays output similar to the following example:

```
card00: CEX3A online  
card01: CEX3C online  
card02: CEX3A offline  
card03: CEX3C online  
card04: CEX3C online  
card05: CEX3C online  
card06: CEX4A offline  
card08: CEX4A online  
card09: CEX4C online  
card0a: CEX4C online  
card0b: CEX4C online
```

- To display card type, online status, hardware card type, hardware queue depth, and request count for cryptographic adapters 00, 02, and 0a.:

```
# lszcrypt -VV 0x00 0x02 0x0a
```

This command displays output similar to the following example:

```
card00: CEX3A online hwtype=8 depth=8 request_count=0
card02: CEX3A offline hwtype=8 depth=8 request_count=0
card0b: CEX4C online hwtype=10 depth=8 request_count=292
```

Tip: In the adapter specification you can also use one-digit hexadecimal or decimal notation. The specifications 0x0 0x2 0xb, 0x00 0x02 0x0b and 0 2 11 are all equivalent.

- To display the device ID and the installed function facility in hexadecimal notation as well as card type, online status, hardware card type, hardware queue depth, request count, pending request queue count, outstanding request queue count, and installed function facilities:

```
# lszcrypt -VVV 0x00 0x02 0x0b
```

This command displays output similar to the following example:

```
card00: CEX3A online hwtype=8 depth=8 request_count=0 pendingq_count=0 requestq_count=0 functions=0x60000000
card02: CEX3A offline hwtype=8 depth=8 request_count=0 pendingq_count=0 requestq_count=0 functions=0x60000000
card0b: CEX4C online hwtype=10 depth=8 request_count=292 pendingq_count=0 requestq_count=0 functions=0x90000000
```

- To display AP bus information:

```
# lszcrypt -b
```

This command displays output similar to the following example:

```
ap_domain=8
ap_interrupts are enabled
config_time=30 (seconds)
poll_thread is disabled
poll_timeout=250000 (nanoseconds)
```

- To display the capabilities for the cryptographic adapter with device index 0x0b:

```
# lszcrypt -c 0x0b
```

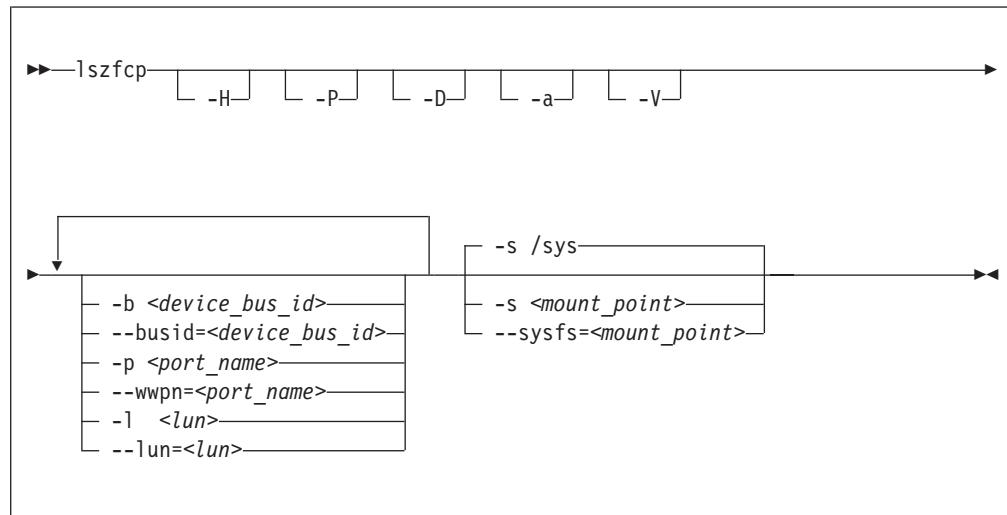
This command displays output similar to the following example:

```
Coprocessor card0b provides capability for:
CCA Secure Key
RSA 4K Clear Key
Long RNG
```

lszfcp - List zfcp devices

Use the **lszfcp** command to gather information about zfcp devices, ports, units, and their associated class devices from sysfs and to display it in a summary format.

lszfcp syntax



Where:

- H or --hosts**
shows information about hosts.
- P or --ports**
shows information about ports.
- D or --devices**
shows information about SCSI devices.
- a or --attributes**
shows all attributes (implies **-V**).
- V or --verbose**
shows sysfs paths of associated class and bus devices.
- b or --busid <device_bus_id>**
limits the output to information about the specified device.
- p or --wwpn <port_name>**
limits the output to information about the specified port name.
- l or --lun <lun>**
limits the output to information about the specified LUN.
- s or --sysfs <mount_point>**
specifies the mount point for sysfs.
- v or --version**
displays version information.
- h or --help**
displays a short help text.

Examples

- This command displays information about all available hosts, ports, and SCSI devices.

```
# lszfcp -H -D -P
0.0.3d0c host0
0.0.500c host1
...
0.0.3c0c host5
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562 rport-0:0-0
0.0.3d0c/0x50050763030bc562 rport-0:0-1
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630303c562 rport-0:0-2
0.0.500c/0x50050763030bc562 rport-1:0-0
...
0.0.3c0c/0x500507630303c562 rport-5:0-2
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403300000000 0:0:0:1
0.0.3d0c/0x50050763030bc562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:1:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630303c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:2:0
0.0.500c/0x50050763030bc562/0x4010403200000000 1:0:0:0
...
0.0.3c0c/0x500507630303c562/0x4010403200000000 5:0:2:0
```

- This command shows SCSI devices and limits the output to the devices that are attached through the FCP device with bus ID 0.0.3d0c:

```
# lszfcp -D -b 0.0.3d0c
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403300000000 0:0:0:1
0.0.3d0c/0x50050763030bc562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:1:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630303c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:2:0
```

mon_fsstatd

mon_fsstatd – Monitor z/VM guest file system size

The **mon_fsstatd** command is a user space daemon that collects physical file system size data from Linux on z/VM.

The daemon periodically writes the data as defined records to the z/VM monitor stream using the monwriter character device driver. You can start the daemon with a service script /etc/init.d/mon_statd or call it manually. When it is called with the service utility, it reads the configuration file /etc/sysconfig/mon_statd.

Before you begin:

- Install the monwriter device driver and set up z/VM to start the collection of monitor sample data. See Chapter 16, “Writing z/VM monitor records,” on page 229 for information about the setup for and usage of the monwriter device driver.
- Customize the configuration file /etc/sysconfig/mon_statd if you plan to call it with the service utility.

The following books provide general information about DCSSs, DIAG x'DC', CP commands, and APPLDATA:

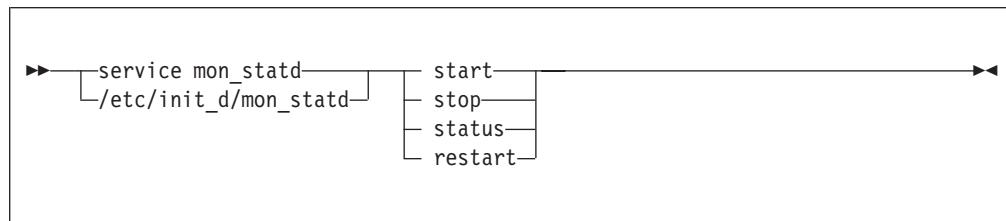
- See *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6229 for general information about DCSSs.
- See *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6179 for information about the DIAG x'DC' instruction.
- See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about the CP commands.
- See *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for information about monitor APPLDATA.

You can run the **mon_fsstatd** command in two ways:

- Calling mon_statd with the service utility. This method reads the configuration file /etc/sysconfig/mon_statd. The mon_statd service script also controls other daemons, such as mon_procd.
- Calling mon_fsstatd from a command line.

mon_statd service utility syntax

If you run the **mon_fsstatd** daemon through the service utility, you configure the daemon through specifications in a configuration file.



Where:

start

enables monitoring of guest file system size, by using the configuration in /etc/sysconfig/mon_statd.

stop

disables monitoring of guest file system size.

status

shows current status of guest file system size monitoring.

restart

stops and restarts monitoring. Useful to re-read the configuration file when it was changed.

Configuration file keywords

FSSTAT_INTERVAL="*n*"

specifies the wanted sampling interval in seconds.

FSSTAT="yes | no"

specifies whether to enable the mon_fsstatd daemon. Set to "yes" to enable the daemon. Anything other than "yes" is interpreted as "no".

Examples of service utility use

Example configuration file for mon_statd (/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd).

- This example sets the sampling interval to 30 seconds and enables the mon_fsstatd daemon:

```
FSSTAT_INTERVAL="30"  
FSSTAT="yes"
```

Example of mon_statd use. Note that your output can look different and include messages for other daemons, such as mon_procd:

- To enable guest file system size monitoring:

```
> service mon_statd start  
...  
Starting mon_fsstatd:[ OK ]  
...
```

- To display the status:

```
> service mon_statd status  
...  
mon_fsstatd (pid 1075, interval: 30) is running.  
...
```

- To disable guest file system size monitoring:

```
> service mon_statd stop  
...  
Stopping mon_fsstatd:[ OK ]  
...
```

- To display the status again and check that monitoring is now disabled:

```
> service mon_statd status  
...  
mon_fsstatd is not running  
...
```

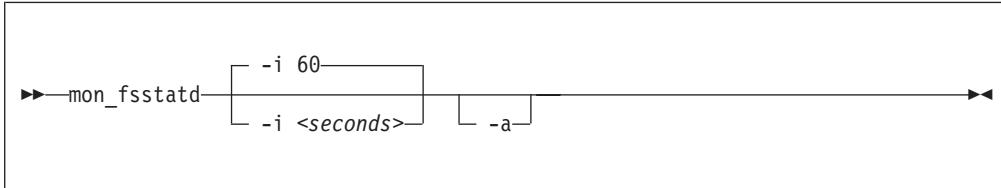
- To restart the daemon and re-read the configuration file:

mon_fsstatd

```
> service mon_statd restart  
...  
stopping mon_fsstatd:[ OK ]  
starting mon_fsstatd:[ OK ]  
...
```

mon_fsstatd command-line syntax

If you call the **mon_fsstatd** daemon from the command line, you configure the daemon through command parameters.



Where:

- i or --interval <seconds>**
specifies the wanted sampling interval in seconds.
- a or --attach**
runs the daemon in the foreground.
- h or --help**
displays help information for the command.
- v or --version**
displays version information for the command.

Examples of command-line use

- To start mon_fsstatd with default setting:

```
> mon_fsstatd
```

- To start mon_fsstatd with a sampling interval of 30 seconds:

```
> mon_fsstatd -i 30
```

- To start mon_fsstatd and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_fsstatd -a
```

- To start mon_fsstatd with a sampling interval of 45 seconds and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_fsstatd -a -i 45
```

Processing monitor data

The mon_fsstatd daemon writes physical file system size data for Linux on z/VM to the z/VM monitor stream.

The following is the format of the file system size data that is passed to the z/VM monitor stream. One sample monitor record is written for each physical file system that is mounted at the time of the sample interval. The monitor data in each record contains a header consisting of a time stamp, the length of the data, and an offset. The header is followed by the file system data (as obtained from statvfs). The file system data fields begin with "fs_".

Table 57. File system size data format

Type	Name	Description
__u64	time_stamp	Time at which the file system data was sampled.
__u16	data_len	Length of data that follows the header.
__u16	data_offset	Offset from start of the header to start of file system data (that is, to the fields that begin with fs_).
__u16	fs_name_len	Length of the file system name. The file system name can be too long to fit in the monitor record. If so, this length is the portion of the name that is contained in the monitor record.
char [fs_name_len]	fs_name	The file system name. If the name is too long to fit in the monitor record, the name is truncated to the length in the fs_name_len field.
__u16	fs_dir_len	Length of the mount directory name. The mount directory name can be too long to fit in the monitor record. If so, this length is the portion of the name that is contained in the monitor record.
char[fs_dir_len]	fs_dir	The mount directory name. If the name is too long to fit in the monitor record, the name is truncated to the length in the fs_dir_len field.
__u16	fs_type_len	Length of the mount type. The mount type can be too long to fit in the monitor record. If so, this length is the portion that is contained in the monitor record.
char[fs_type_len]	fs_type	The mount type (as returned by getmntent). If the type is too long to fit in the monitor record, the type is truncated to the length in the fs_type_len field.
__u64	fs_bsize	File system block size.
__u64	fs_frsize	Fragment size.
__u64	fs_blocks	Total data blocks in file system.
__u64	fs_bfree	Free blocks in fs.
__u64	fs_bavail	Free blocks avail to non-superuser.
__u64	fs_files	Total file nodes in file system.
__u64	fs_ffree	Free file nodes in fs.
__u64	fs_favail	Free file nodes available to non-superuser.
__u64	fs_flag	Mount flags.

Use the time_stamp to correlate all file systems that were sampled in a given interval.

mon_fsstatd

Reading the monitor data

All records that are written to the z/VM monitor stream begin with a product identifier.

The product ID is a 16-byte structure of the form ppppppffnnvvrrmm, where for records that are written by mon_fsstatd, these values are:

ppppppp

is a fixed ASCII string LNXAPPL.

ff is the application number for mon_fsstatd = x'0001'.

n is the record number = x'00'.

vv is the version number = x'0000'.

rr is reserved for future use and should be ignored.

mm is reserved for mon_fsstatd and should be ignored.

Note: Though the mod_level field (mm) of the product ID varies, there is no relationship between any particular mod_level and file system. The mod_level field should be ignored by the reader of this monitor data.

There are many tools available to read z/VM monitor data. One such tool is the Linux monreader character device driver. For more information about monreader, see Chapter 17, "Reading z/VM monitor records," on page 233.

mon_procd – Monitor Linux on z/VM

The **mon_procd** command is a user space daemon that gathers system summary information and information about up to 100 concurrent processes on Linux on z/VM.

The daemon writes this data to the z/VM monitor stream using the monwriter character device driver. You can start the daemon with a service script /etc/init.d/mon_statd or call it manually. When it is called with the service utility, it reads the configuration file /etc/sysconfig/mon_statd.

Before you begin:

- Install the monwriter device driver and set up z/VM to start the collection of monitor sample data. See Chapter 16, "Writing z/VM monitor records," on page 229 for information about the setup for and usage of the monwriter device driver.
- Customize the configuration file /etc/sysconfig/mon_statd if you plan to call it with the service utility.
- The Linux instance on which the proc_mond deamon runs requires a z/VM guest virtual machine with the OPTION APPLMON statement in the CP directory entry.

The following books provide general information about DCSSs, CP commands, and APPLDATA:

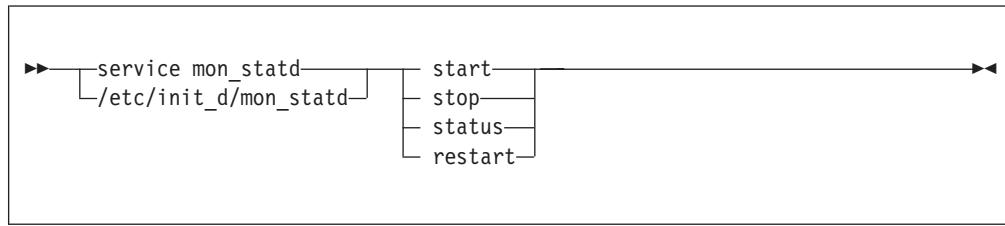
- See *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6229 for general information about DCSSs.
- See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175 for information about the CP commands.
- See *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208 for information about monitor APPLDATA.

You can run the **mon_procd** command in two ways:

- Calling **mon_procd** with the service utility. Use this method when you have the **mon_statd** service script that is installed in `/etc/init.d`. This method reads the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`. The **mon_statd** service script also controls other daemons, such as **mon_fsstatd**.
- Calling **mon_procd** manually from a command line.

mon_statd service utility syntax

If you run the **mon_procd** daemon through the service utility, you configure the daemon through specifications in a configuration file.



Where:

start

enables monitoring of guest process data, by using the configuration in `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`.

stop

disables monitoring of guest process data.

status

shows current status of guest process data monitoring.

restart

stops and restarts guest process data monitoring. Useful to re-read the configuration file after it changed.

Configuration file keywords

PROC_INTERVAL="<n>"

specifies the wanted sampling interval in seconds.

PROC="yes | no"

specifies whether to enable the **mon_procd** daemon. Set to "yes" to enable the daemon. Anything other than "yes" is interpreted as "no".

Examples of service utility use

Example configuration file for **mon_statd** (`/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`).

- This example sets the sampling interval to 30 seconds and enables the **mon_procd**:

```

PROC_INTERVAL="30"
PROC="yes"
  
```

Example of **mon_statd** use (note that your output might look different and include messages for other daemons, such as **mon_fsstatd**):

mon_procd

- To enable guest process data monitoring:

```
> service mon_stad start  
...  
Starting mon_procd:[ OK ]  
...
```

- To display the status:

```
> service mon_stad status  
...  
mon_procd (pid 1075, interval: 30) is running.  
...
```

- To disable guest process data monitoring:

```
> service mon_stad stop  
...  
Stopping mon_procd:[ OK ]  
...
```

- To display the status again and check that monitoring is now disabled:

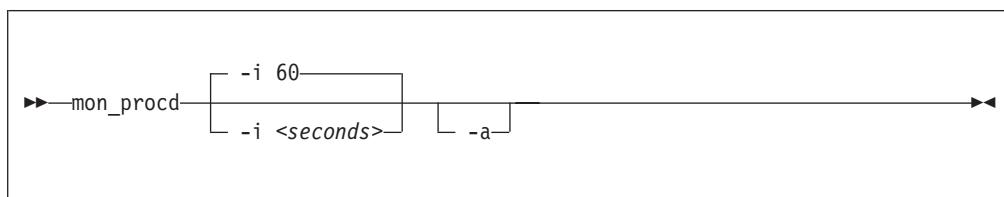
```
> service mon_stad status  
...  
mon_procd is not running  
...
```

- To restart the daemon and re-read the configuration file:

```
> service mon_stad restart  
...  
stopping mon_procd:[ OK ]  
starting mon_procd:[ OK ]  
...
```

mon_procd command-line syntax

If you call the **mon_procd** daemon from the command line, you configure the daemon through command parameters.



Where:

-i or --interval <seconds>

specifies the wanted sampling interval in seconds.

-a or --attach

runs the daemon in the foreground.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

Examples of command-line use

- To start mon_procd with default setting:

```
> mon_procd
```

- To start mon_procd with a sampling interval of 30 seconds:

```
> mon_procd -i 30
```

- To start mon_procd and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_procd -a
```

- To start mon_procd with a sampling interval of 45 seconds and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_procd -a -i 45
```

Processing monitor data

The mon_procd daemon writes process data to the z/VM monitor stream.

The data includes system summary information and information of each process for up to 100 processes currently being managed by an instance of Linux on z/VM to the z/VM monitor stream. At the time of the sample interval, one sample monitor record is written for system summary data. Then, one sample monitor record is written for each process for up to 100 processes currently being managed by the Linux instance. If more than 100 processes exist in a Linux instance at a given time, processes are sorted by the sum of CPU and memory usage percentage values. Only the top 100 processes' data is written to the z/VM monitor stream.

The monitor data in each record begins with a header (a time stamp, the length of the data, and the offset). The data after the header depends on the field "record number" of the 16-bit product ID and can be summary data or process data. See "Reading the monitor data" on page 534 for details. The following is the format of system summary data that is passed to the z/VM monitor stream.

Table 58. System summary data format

Type	Name	Description
__u64	time_stamp	Time at which the process data was sampled.
__u16	data_len	Length of data that follows the header.
__u16	data_offset	Offset from start of the header to the start of the process data.
__u64	uptime	Uptime of the Linux instance.
__u32	users	Number of users on the Linux instance.
char[6]	loadavg_1	Load average over the last 1 minute.
char[6]	loadavg_5	Load average over the last 5 minutes.
char[6]	loadavg_15	Load average over the last 15 minutes.
__u32	task_total	total number of tasks on the Linux instance.
__u32	task_running	Number of running tasks.
__u32	task_sleeping	Number of sleeping tasks.
__u32	task_stopped	Number of stopped tasks.

mon_procd

Table 58. System summary data format (continued)

Type	Name	Description
__u32	task_zombie	Number of zombie tasks.
__u32	num_cpus	Number of CPUs.
__u16	puser	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for normal processes executing in user mode).
__u16	pnice	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for niced processes executing in user mode).
__u16	psystem	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for processes executing in kernel mode).
__u16	pidle	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU idle time).
__u16	piowait	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for I/O wait).
__u16	pirq	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for interrupts).
__u16	psoftirq	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for softirqs).
__u16	psteal	A number that represents (100 * percentage of total CPU time spent in stealing).
__u64	mem_total	Total memory in KB.
__u64	mem_used	Used memory in KB.
__u64	mem_free	Free memory in KB.
__u64	mem_buffers	Memory in buffer cache in KB.
__u64	mem_pgpgin	Data that is read from disk in KB.
__u64	mem_pgpgout	Data that is written to disk in KB
__u64	swap_total	Total swap memory in KB.
__u64	swap_used	Used swap memory in KB.
__u64	swap_free	Free swap memory in KB.
__u64	swap_cached	Cached swap memory in KB.
__u64	swap_pswpin	Pages that are swapped in.
__u64	swap_pswpout	Pages that are swapped out.

The following is the format of a process information data that is passed to the z/VM monitor stream.

Table 59. Process data format

Type	Name	Description
__u64	time_stamp	Time at which the process data was sampled.
__u16	data_len	Length of data following the header.
__u16	data_offset	Offset from start of the header to the start of the process data.
__u32	pid	ID of the process.

Table 59. Process data format (continued)

Type	Name	Description
__u32	ppid	ID of the process parent.
__u32	euid	Effective user ID of the process owner.
__u16	tty	Device number of the controlling terminal or 0.
__s16	priority	Priority of the process
__s16	nice	Nice value of the process.
__u32	processor	Last used processor.
__u16	pcpu	A number that represents (100 * percentage of the elapsed cpu time used by the process since last sampling).
__u16	pmem	A number that represents (100 * percentage of physical memory used by the process).
__u64	total_time	Total cpu time the process used.
__u64	ctotal_time	Total cpu time the process and its dead child processes used.
__u64	size	Total virtual memory that is used by the task in KB.
__u64	swap	Swapped out portion of the virtual memory in KB.
__u64	resident	Non-swapped physical memory that is used by the task in KB.
__u64	trs	Physical memory that is devoted to executable code in KB.
__u64	drs	Physical memory that is devoted to other than executable code in KB.
__u64	share	Shared memory that is used by the task in KB.
__u64	dt	Dirty page count.
__u64	maj_flt	Number of major page faults occurred for the process.
char	state	Status of the process.
__u32	flags	The process current scheduling flags.
__u16	ruser_len	Length of real user name of the process owner and should not be larger than 64.
char[ruser_len]	ruser	Real user name of the process owner. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	euser_len	Length of effective user name of the process owner and should not be larger than 64.
char[euser_len]	euser	Effective user name of the process owner. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	egroup_len	Length of effective group name of the process owner and should not be larger than 64.
char[egroup_len]	egroup	Effective group name of the process owner. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	wchan_len	Length of sleeping in function's name and should not be larger than 64.
char[wchan_len]	wchan_name	Name of sleeping in function or '-'. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	cmd_len	Length of command name or program name that is used to start the process and should not be larger than 64.

mon_procd

Table 59. Process data format (continued)

Type	Name	Description
char[cmd_len]	cmd	Command or program name that is used to start the process. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	cmd_line_len	Length of command line that is used to start the process and should not be larger than 1024.
char [cmd_line_len]	cmd_line	Command line that is used to start the process. If the name is longer than 1024, the name is truncated to the length 1024.

Use the time_stamp to correlate all process information that were sampled in a given interval.

Reading the monitor data

All records written to the z/VM monitor stream begin with a product identifier.

The product ID is a 16-byte structure of the form ppppppffffvvrrmm, where for records that are written by mon_procd, these values are:

ppppppp

is a fixed ASCII string LNXAPPL.

ff

is the application number for mon_procd = x'0002'.

n

is the record number as follows:

- x'00' indicates summary data.
- x'01' indicates process data.

vv

is the version number = x'0000'.

rr

is the release number, which can be used to mark different versions of process APPLDATA records.

mm

is reserved for mon_procd and should be ignored.

Note: Though the mod_level field (mm) of the product ID varies, there is no relationship between any particular mod_level and process. The mod_level field should be ignored by the reader of this monitor data.

This item uses at most 101 monitor buffer records from the monwriter device driver. A maximum number of buffers is set when a monwriter module is loaded. Because of this, the maximum number of buffers must not be less than the sum of buffer records that are used by all monwriter applications.

There are many tools available to read z/VM monitor data. One such tool is the Linux monreader character device driver. For more information about monreader, see Chapter 17, “Reading z/VM monitor records,” on page 233.

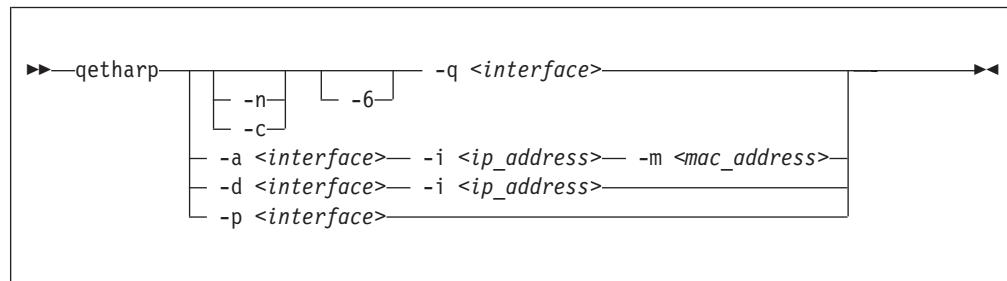
qetharp - Query and purge OSA and HiperSockets ARP data

Use the **qetharp** command to query and purge address data such as MAC and IP addresses from the ARP cache of the OSA and HiperSockets hardware.

Before you begin:

- The **qetharp** command applies only to devices in layer 3 mode (see “Layer 2 and layer 3” on page 129).
 - The **qetharp** command supports IPv6 only for real HiperSockets and z/VM guest LAN HiperSockets.
 - ForHiperSockets, z/VM guest LAN and VSWITCH interfaces, the **qetharp** command supports only the **--query** option.

qetharp syntax



Where:

-q or --query

shows the address resolution protocol (ARP) information about the specified network interface. Depending on the device that the interface was assigned to, this information is obtained from an OSA feature's ARP cache or a Hipersockets ARP cache.

The default command output shows symbolic host names and includes only numerical addresses for host names that cannot be resolved. Use the **-n** option to show numerical addresses instead of host names.

By default, qetharp omits IPv6 related information. Use the **-6** option to include IPv6 information for HiperSockets.

-n or --numeric

shows numeric addresses instead of trying to determine symbolic host names. This option can be used only with the **-q** option.

-c or --compact

limits the output to numeric addresses only. This option can be used only with the **-q** option.

-6 or --ipv6

includes IPv6 information for HiperSockets. For real HiperSockets, shows the IPv6 addresses. For guest LAN HiperSockets, shows the IPv6 to MAC address mappings. This option can be used only with the **-q** option.

<interface>

specifies the qeth interface to which the command applies.

-a or --add

adds a static ARP entry to the OSA adapter. Static entries can be deleted with **-d**.

qetharp

-d or --delete

deletes a static ARP entry from the OSA adapter. Static entries are created with **-a**.

-p or --purge

flushes the ARP cache of the OSA. The cache contains dynamic ARP entries, which the OSA adapter creates through ARP queries. After flushing the cache, the OSA adapter creates new dynamic entries. This option works only with OSA devices. qetharp returns immediately.

-i <ip_address> or --ip <ip_address>

specifies the IP address to be added to or removed from the OSA adapter.

-m <mac_address> or --mac <mac_address>

specifies the MAC address to be added to the OSA adapter.

-v or --version

shows version information and exits

-h or --help

displays usage information and exits. To view the man page, enter **man qetharp**.

Examples

- Show all ARP entries of the OSA defined as enccw0.0.f500:

```
# qetharp -q enccw0.0.f500
```

- Show all ARP entries of the HiperSockets interface that is defined as enccw0.0.a1c0 including IPv6 entries:

```
qetharp -6q enccw0.0.a1c0
```

- Show all ARP entries of the OSA defined as enccw0.0.f500, without resolving host names:

```
# qetharp -nq enccw0.0.f500
```

- Show all ARP entries, including IPv6 entries, of the HiperSockets interface that is defined as enccw0.0.a1c0 without resolving host names:

```
qetharp -n6q enccw0.0.a1c0
```

- Flush the OSA ARP cache for enccw0.0.f500:

```
# qetharp -p enccw0.0.f500
```

- Add a static entry for enccw0.0.f500 and IP address 1.2.3.4 to the OSA ARP cache, with MAC address aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff:

```
# qetharp -a enccw0.0.f500 -i 1.2.3.4 -m aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
```

- Delete the static entry for enccw0.0.f500 and IP address 1.2.3.4 from the OSA ARP cache.

```
# qetharp -d enccw0.0.f500 -i 1.2.3.4
```

qethconf - Configure qeth devices

Use the **qethconf** command to configure IP address takeover, virtual IP address (VIPA), and proxy ARP for layer3 qeth devices.

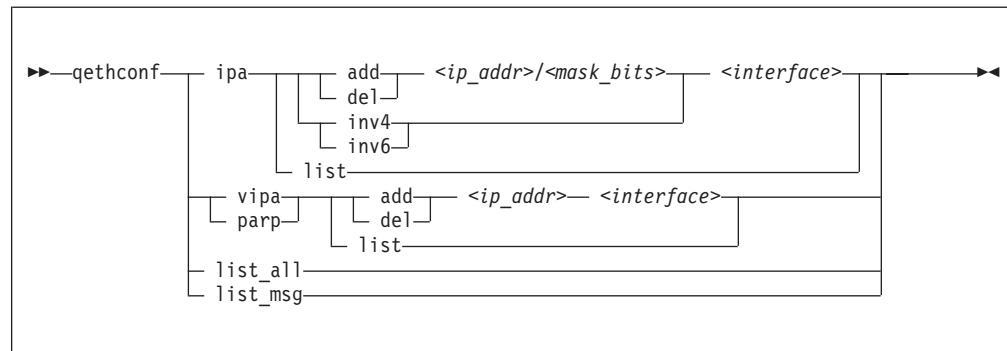
See Chapter 9, “qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets,” on page 123 for details about the following concepts:

- IP address takeover
- VIPA (virtual IP address)
- Proxy ARP

You cannot use this command with the layer2 option.

From the arguments that are specified, **qethconf** assembles the function command and redirects it to the corresponding sysfs attributes. You can also use **qethconf** to list the already defined entries.

qethconf syntax



The **qethconf** command has these function keywords:

ipa

configures qeth for IP address takeover (IPA).

vipa

configures qeth for virtual IP address (VIPA).

parp or rxip

configures qeth for proxy ARP.

The **qethconf** command has these action keywords:

add

adds an IP address or address range.

del

deletes an IP address or address range.

inv4

inverts the selection of address ranges for IPv4 address takeover. This inversion makes the list of IP addresses that was specified with **qethconf add** and **qethconf del** an exclusion list.

qethconf

inv6

inverts the selection of address ranges for IPv6 address takeover. This inversion makes the list of IP addresses that was specified with qethconf add and qethconf del an exclusion list.

list

lists existing definitions for specified qeth function.

list_all

lists existing definitions for IPA, VIPA, and proxy ARP.

<ip_addr>

IP address. Can be specified in one of these formats:

- IP version 4 format, for example, 192.168.10.38
- IP version 6 format, for example, FE80::1:800:23e7:f5db
- 8- or 32-character hexadecimals prefixed with -x, for example, -xc0a80a26

<mask_bits>

specifies the number of bits that are set in the network mask. Enables you to specify an address range.

Example: A <mask_bits> of 24 corresponds to a network mask of 255.255.255.0.

<interface>

specifies the name of the interface that is associated with the specified address or address range.

list_msg

lists qethconf messages and explanations.

-h or --help

displays help information.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

- List existing proxy ARP definitions:

```
# qethconf parp list  
parp add 1.2.3.4 enccw0.0.f500
```

- Assume responsibility for packages that are destined for 1.2.3.5:

```
# qethconf parp add 1.2.3.5 enccw0.0.f500  
qethconf: Added 1.2.3.5 to /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.f500/device/rxip/add4.  
qethconf: Use "qethconf parp list" to check for the result
```

Confirm the new proxy ARP definitions:

```
# qethconf parp list  
parp add 1.2.3.4 enccw0.0.f500  
parp add 1.2.3.5 enccw0.0.f500
```

- Configure enccw0.0.f500 for IP address takeover for all addresses that start with 192.168.10:

```
# qethconf ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 enccw0.0.f500
qethconf: Added 192.168.10.0/24 to /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.f500/device/ipa_takeover/add4
qethconf: Use "qethconf ipa list" to check for the result
```

Display the new IP address takeover definitions:

```
# qethconf ipa list
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 enccw0.0.f500
```

- Configure VIPA for enccw0.0.e400:

```
# qethconf vipa add 10.99.3.3 enccw0.0.e400
qethconf: Added 10.99.3.3 to /sys/class/net/enccw0.0.e400/device/vipa/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf vipa list" to check for the result
```

Display the new VIPA definitions:

```
# qethconf vipa list
vipa add 10.99.3.3 enccw0.0.e400
```

- List all existing IPA, VIPA, and proxy ARP definitions.

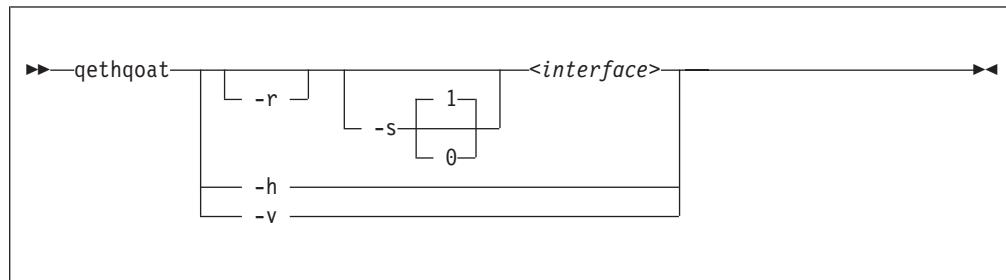
```
# qethconf list_all
parp add 1.2.3.4 enccw0.0.f500
parp add 1.2.3.5 enccw0.0.f500
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 enccw0.0.f500
vipa add 10.99.3.3 enccw0.0.e400
```

qethqoat - Query OSA address table

Purpose

Use the **qethqoat** command to query the OSA address table and display physical and logical device information.

qethqoat syntax



where:

-r or --raw

writes raw data to stdout.

-s or --scope

defines the scope of the query. The following values are valid:

0 queries the level of the OSA address table

1 interface (this is the default)

<interface>

specifies the interface for which you want to display information.

-h or --help

displays help information. To view the man page, enter **man qethqoat**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

To display physical and logical device information for interface enccw0.0.f500, issue:

```
# qethqoat enccw0.0.f500
PCHID: 0x05f1
CHPID: 0x76
Manufacturer MAC address: 00:14:5e:76:a2:40
Configured MAC address: 00:00:00:00:00:00
Data device sub-channel address: 0xf5f2
CULA: 0x00
Unit address: 0x53
Physical port number: 0
Number of output queues: 1
Number of input queues: 1
Number of active input queues: 0
Interface flags: 0x0e000000
OSA Generation: OSA-Express3
Port speed/mode: 1000 mbs / full duplex
Port media type: copper
Jumbo frames: yes
Firmware: 0x00000010

IPv4 router: no
IPv6 router: no
IPv4 vmac router: no
IPv6 vmac router: no
Connection isolation: not active
Connection isolation VEPA: no
IPv4 assists enabled: 0x00111c77
IPv6 assists enabled: 0x00215c60
IPv4 outbound checksum enabled: 0x0000001a
IPv6 outbound checksum enabled: 0x00000000
IPv4 inbound checksum enabled: 0x0000001a
IPv6 inbound checksum enabled: 0x00000000

IPv4 Address:           IPA Flags:
-----
192.0.2.0               0x00000000

IPv4 Multicast Address: MAC Address:
-----
224.0.0.1               01:00:5e:00:00:01

IPv6 Address:           IPA Flags:
-----
2001:DB8:0:0:0:0:0:0     0x00000001

IPv6 Multicast Address: MAC Address:
-----
ff02::1                 33:33:00:00:00:01
ff02::1:ff76:a240        33:33:ff:76:a2:40
ff02::202                33:33:00:00:02:02
```

This example uses scope 0 to query the supported OAT level and descriptor header types.

```
# qethqoat -s 0 enccw0.0.f500
Supported Scope mask: 0x00000001
Supported Descriptor hdr types: 0x0001070f
```

This example shows how the binary output from **qethqoat** can be processed in another tool. Here it is displayed in a hexdump viewer:

qethqoat

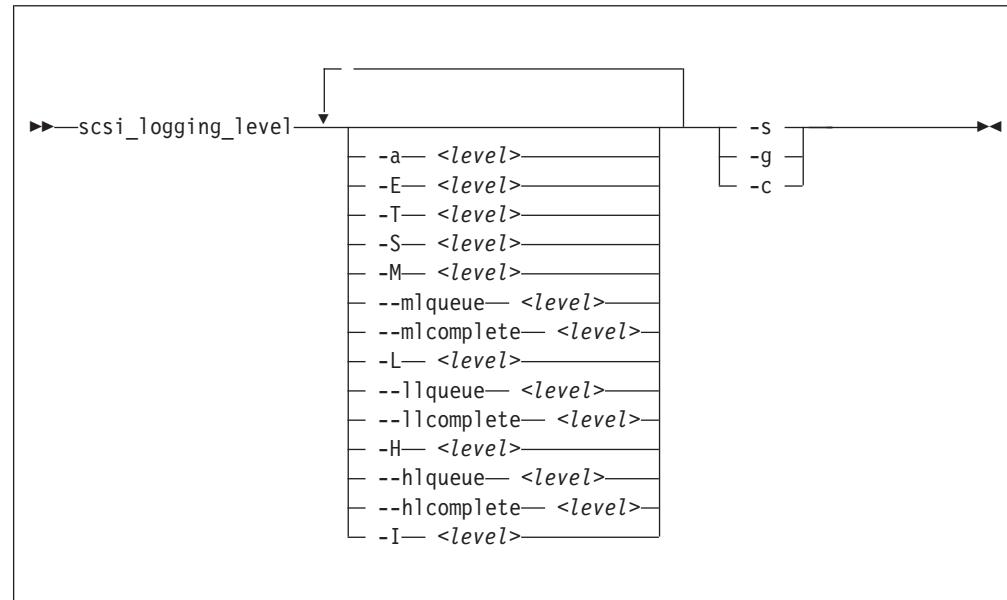
```
# qethqoat -r enccw0.0.f500 | hexdump
0000000 0158 0000 0008 0000 0000 0101 0000 0000
0000010 0000 0001 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
0000020 0004 0050 0001 0000 0000 0000 d7c8 4040
0000030 0120 0094 001a 643b 8a22 0000 0000 0000
0000040 e102 0002 0000 0004 0001 0000 0800 0000
0000050 0100 0480 0000 0766 0000 0000 0000 0000
0000060 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
0000070 0008 0060 0001 0000 0000 0000 d3c8 4040
0000080 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
0000090 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0011 1c77
00000a0 0021 5c60 0000 001a 0000 0000 0000 001a
00000b0 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
00000c0 0002 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
00000d0 0010 0030 0001 0000 0000 0000 c4c8 f4d4
00000e0 0000 0002 0000 0000 0000 0001 0000 0010
00000f0 0001 0001 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
0000100 e000 0001 0100 5e00 0001 0000 0000 0000
0000110 0010 0030 0001 0000 0000 0000 c4c8 f6d4
0000120 0000 0008 0000 0000 0000 0001 0000 0018
0000130 0001 0001 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
0000140 ff02 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001
0000150 3333 0000 0001 0000
0000158
```

scsi_logging_level - Set and get the SCSI logging level

Use the `scsi_logging_level` command to create, set, or get the SCSI logging level.

The SCSI logging feature is controlled by a 32-bit value – the SCSI logging level. This value is divided into 3-bit fields that describe the log level of a specific log area. Due to the 3-bit subdivision, setting levels or interpreting the meaning of current levels of the SCSI logging feature is not trivial. The `scsi_logging_level` script helps with both tasks.

scsi_logging_level syntax



Where:

- a or --all <level>**
specifies value for all SCSI_LOG fields.
- E or --error <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_ERROR.
- T or --timeout <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT.
- S or --scan <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_SCAN.
- M or --midlevel <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_MLQUEUE and SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE.
- mlqueue <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_MLQUEUE.
- mlcomplete <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE.
- L or --lowlevel <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE and SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE.
- llqueue <level>**
specifies SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE.

scsi_logging_level

```
--llcomplete <level>
    specifies SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE.

-H or --highlevel <level>
    specifies SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE and SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE.

--hlqueue <level>
    specifies SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE.

--hlccomplete <level>
    specifies SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE.

-I or --ioctl <level>
    specifies SCSI_LOG_IOCTL.

-v or --version
    displays version information.

-h or --help
    displays help text.

-s or --set
    creates and sets the logging level as specified on the command line.

-g or --get
    gets the current logging level.

-c or --create
    creates the logging level as specified on the command line.
```

You can specify several SCSI_LOG fields by using several options. When multiple options specify the same SCSI_LOG field, the most specific option has precedence.

Examples

- This command prints the logging word of the SCSI logging feature and each logging level.

```
#> scsi_logging_level -g
Current scsi logging level:
dev.scsi.logging_level = 0
SCSI_LOG_ERROR=0
SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT=0
SCSI_LOG_SCAN=0
SCSI_LOG_MQUEUE=0
SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE=0
SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE=0
SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE=0
SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=0
SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=0
SCSI_LOG_IOCTL=0
```

- This command sets all logging levels to 3:

```
#> scsi_logging_level -s -a 3
New scsi logging level:
dev.scsi.logging_level = 460175067
SCSI_LOG_ERROR=3
SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT=3
SCSI_LOG_SCAN=3
SCSI_LOG_MQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE=3
SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE=3
SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=3
SCSI_LOG_IOCTL=3
```

- This command sets SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=3, SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=2 and assigns all other SCSI_LOG fields the value 1.

```
# scsi_logging_level --hlqueue 3 --highlevel 2 --all 1 -s
New scsi logging level:
dev.scsi.logging_level = 174363209
SCSI_LOG_ERROR=1
SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT=1
SCSI_LOG_SCAN=1
SCSI_LOG_MQUEUE=1
SCSI_LOG_MCOMPLETE=1
SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE=1
SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE=1
SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=2
SCSI_LOG_IOCTL=1
```

tape390_crypt - Manage tape encryption

Use the **tape390_crypt** command to enable and disable tape encryption for a channel attached tape device. You can also specify key encrypting keys (KEK) by using labels or hashes.

For 3592 tape devices, it is possible to write data in an encrypted format. The encryption keys are stored on an encryption key manager (EKM) server, which can run on any machine with TCP/IP and Java support. The EKM communicates with the tape drive over the tape control unit by using TCP/IP. The control unit acts as a proxy and forwards the traffic between the tape drive and the EKM. This type of setup is called out-of-band control-unit based encryption.

The EKM creates a data key that encrypts data. The data key itself is encrypted with KEKs and is stored in so called external encrypted data keys (EEDKs) on the tape medium.

You can store up to two EEDKs on the tape medium. With two EEDKs, one can contain a locally available KEK and the other can contain the public KEK of the location or company to where the tape is to be transferred. Then, the tape medium can be read in both locations.

When the tape device is mounted, the tape drive sends the EEDKs to the EKM. The EKM tries to unwrap one of the two EEDKs and sends back the extracted data key to the tape drive.

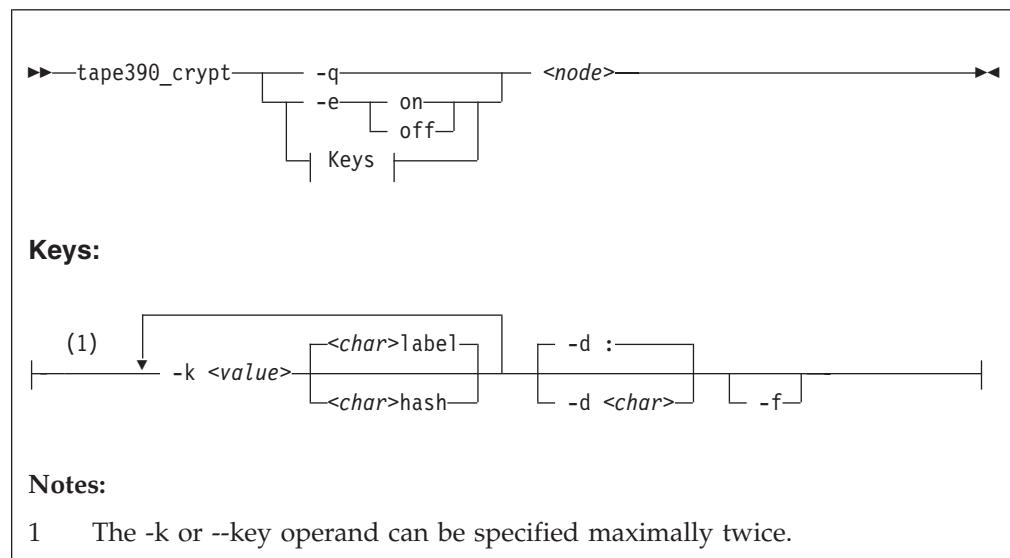
Linux can address KEKs by specifying either hashes or labels. Hashes and labels are stored in the EEDKs.

Note: If a tape is encrypted, it cannot be used for IPL.

Before you begin:

To use tape encryption, you need:

- A 3592 crypto-enabled tape device and control unit that is configured as system-managed encryption.
- A crypto-enabled 3590 channel-attached tape device driver. See Chapter 7, “Channel-attached tape device driver,” on page 105.
- A key manager. See *Encryption Key Manager Component for the Java(TM) Platform Introduction, Planning, and User’s Guide*, GA76-0418 for more information.

tape390_crypt syntax

Where:

-q or --query

displays information about the tape's encryption status. If encryption is active and the medium is encrypted, additional information about the encryption keys is displayed.

-e or --encryption

sets tape encryption on or off.

-k or --key

sets tape encryption keys. You can only specify the -k option if the tape medium is loaded and rewound. While processing the -k option, the tape medium is initialized and all previous data contained on the tape medium is lost.

You can specify the -k option twice because the tape medium can store two EEDKs. If you specify the -k option once, two identical EEDKs are stored.

<value>

specifies the key encrypting key (KEK), which can be up to 64 characters long. The keywords **label** or **hash** specify how the KEK in **<value>** is to be stored on the tape medium. The default store type is **label**.

-d or --delimiter

specifies the character that separates the KEK in **<value>** from the store type (**label** or **hash**). The default delimiter is ":" (colon).

<char>

is a character that separates the KEK in **<value>** from the store type (**label** or **hash**).

-f or --force

specifies that no prompt message is to be issued before writing the KEK information and initializing the tape medium.

<node>

specifies the device node of the tape device.

tape390_crypt

-h or --help

displays help text. For more information, enter the command `man tape390_crypt`.

-v or --version

displays information about the version.

Examples

The following scenarios illustrate the most common use of tape encryption. In all examples `/dev/ntibm0` is used as the tape device.

Querying a tape device before and after encryption is turned on

This example shows a query of tape device `/dev/ntibm0`. Initially, encryption for this device is off. Encryption is then turned on, and the status is queried again.

```
tape390_crypt -q /dev/ntibm0
ENCRYPTION: OFF
MEDIUM: NOT ENCRYPTED

tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0

tape390_crypt -q /dev/ntibm0
ENCRYPTION: ON
MEDIUM: NOT ENCRYPTED
```

Then, two keys are set, one in label format and one in hash format. The status is queried and there is now additional output for the keys.

```
tape390_crypt -k my_first_key:label -k my_second_key:hash /dev/ntibm0
-->> ATTENTION! <<---
All data on tape /dev/ntibm0 will be lost.
Type "yes" to continue: yes
SUCCESS: key information set.

tape390_crypt -q /dev/ntibm0
ENCRYPTION: ON
MEDIUM: ENCRYPTED
KEY1:
  value: my_first_key
  type: label
  ontape: label
KEY2:
  value: my_second_key
  type: label
  ontape: hash
```

Using default keys for encryption

1. Load the cartridge. If the cartridge is already loaded:

- Switch off encryption:

```
tape390_crypt -e off /dev/ntibm0
```

- Rewind:

```
mt -f /dev/ntibm0 rewind
```

2. Switch encryption on:

```
tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0
```

3. Write data.

Using specific keys for encryption

1. Load the cartridge. If the cartridge is already loaded, rewind:
`mt -f /dev/ntibm0 rewind`
2. Switch encryption on:
`tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0`
3. Set new keys:
`tape390_crypt -k key1 -k key2 /dev/ntibm0`
4. Write data.

Writing unencrypted data

1. Load the cartridge. If the cartridge is already loaded, rewind:
`mt -f /dev/ntibm0 rewind`
2. If encryption is on, switch off encryption:
`tape390_crypt -e off /dev/ntibm0`
3. Write data.

Appending new files to an encrypted cartridge

1. Load the cartridge
2. Switch encryption on:
`tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0`
3. Position the tape.
4. Write data.

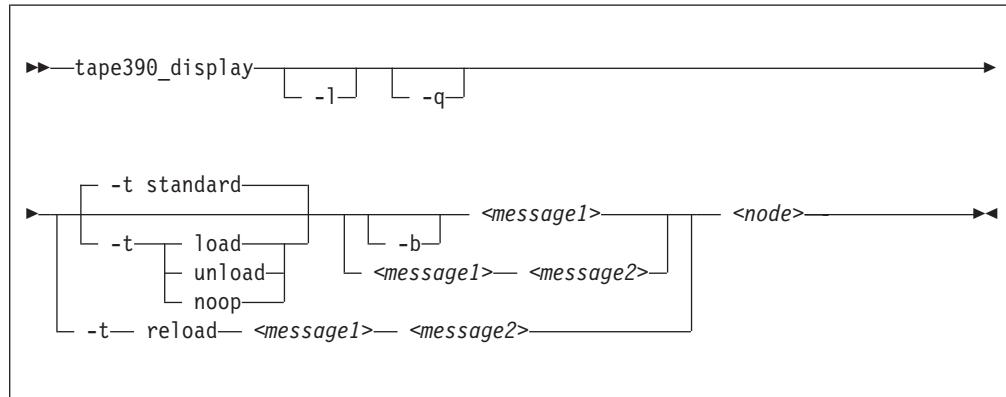
Reading an encrypted tape

1. Load the cartridge
2. Switch encryption on:
`tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0`
3. Read data.

tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes

Use the **tape390_display** command to show messages on the display unit of a physical tape device, optionally in conjunction with loading a tape.

tape390_display syntax



Where:

-l or --load

instructs the tape unit to load the next indexed tape from the automatic tape loader (if installed). Ignored if no loader is installed or if the loader is not in “system” mode. The loader “system” mode allows the operating system to handle tape loads.

-t or --type

The possible values have the following meanings:

standard

displays the message or messages until the physical tape device processes the next tape movement command.

load displays the message or messages until a tape is loaded; if a tape is already loaded, the message is ignored.

unload

displays the message or messages while a tape is loaded; if no tape is loaded, the message is ignored.

reload displays the first message while a tape is loaded and the second message when the tape is removed. If no tape is loaded, the first message is ignored and the second message is displayed immediately. The second message is displayed until the next tape is loaded.

noop is intended for test purposes only. It accesses the tape device but does not display the message or messages.

-b or --blink

causes `<message1>` to be displayed repeatedly for 2 seconds with a half-second pause in between.

<message1>

is the first or only message to be displayed. The message can be up to 8 byte.

<message2>

is a second message to be displayed alternately with the first, at 2-second intervals. The message can be up to 8 byte.

<node>
 is a device node of the target tape device.

-q or --quiet
 suppresses all error messages.

-h or --help
 displays help text.

-v or --version
 displays information about the version.

Note:

1. Symbols that can be displayed include:

Alphabetic characters:

A through Z (uppercase only) and spaces. Lowercase letters are converted to uppercase.

Numeric characters:

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

Special characters:

@ \$ # , . / ' () * & + - = % : _ < > ? ;

The following are included in the 3490 hardware reference but might not display on all devices: | ¢

2. If only one message is defined, it remains displayed until the tape device driver next starts to move or the message is updated.
3. If the messages contain spaces or shell-sensitive characters, they must be enclosed in quotation marks.

Examples

The following examples assume that you are using standard devices nodes and not device nodes that are created by udev:

- Alternately display “BACKUP” and “COMPLETE” at 2-second intervals until device /dev/ntibm0 processes the next tape movement command:
`tape390_display BACKUP COMPLETE /dev/ntibm0`
- Display the message “REM TAPE” while a tape is in the physical tape device followed by the message “NEW TAPE” until a new tape is loaded:
`tape390_display --type reload "REM TAPE" "NEW TAPE" /dev/ntibm0`
- Attempts to unload the tape and load a new tape automatically, the messages are the same as in the previous example:
`tape390_display -l -t reload "REM TAPE" "NEW TAPE" /dev/ntibm0`

tunedasd - Adjust low-level DASD settings

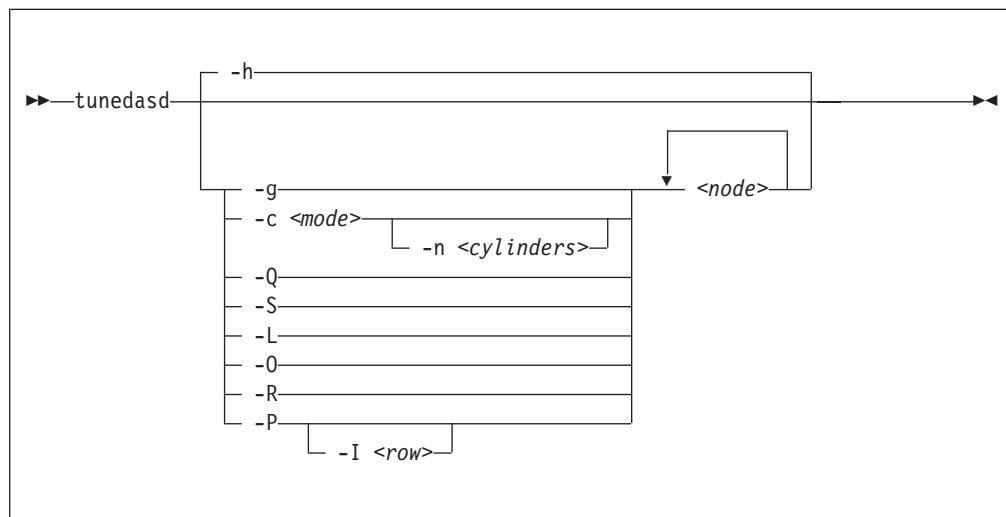
Use the **tunedasd** command to adjust performance relevant settings and other low-level DASD device settings.

In particular, you can perform these tasks:

- Query and set a DASD's cache mode
- Display and reset DASD performance statistics
- Reserve and release DASD
- Break the lock of an online DASD (to learn how to access a boxed DASD that is not yet online, see “Accessing DASD by force” on page 46)

Before you begin: For the performance statistics, data gathering must be turned on by writing “on” to /proc/dasd/statistics.

tunedasd syntax



Where:

<node>

specifies a device node for the DASD to which the command is to be applied.

-g or --get_cache

gets the current caching mode of the storage controller. This option applies to ECKD only.

-c <mode> or --cache <mode>

sets the caching mode on the storage controller to *<mode>*. This option applies to ECKD only.

Today's ECKD devices support the following behaviors:

normal

for normal cache replacement.

bypass

to bypass cache.

inhibit

to inhibit cache.

sequential

for sequential access.

prestage

for sequential prestage.
record for record access.

For details, see *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server® System/390® Command Reference 2105 Models E10, E20, F10, and F20, SC26-7295*.

-n <cylinders> or --no_cyl <cylinders>

specifies the number of cylinders to be cached. This option applies to ECKD only.

-Q or --query_reserve

queries the reserve status of the device. The status can be:

none the device is not reserved.

implicit

the device is not reserved, but there is a contingent or implicit allegiance to this Linux instance.

other the device is reserved to another operating system instance.

reserved

the device is reserved to this Linux instance.

For details, see the “Storage Control Reference” of the attached storage server.

This option applies to ECKD only.

-S or --reserve

reserves the device. This option applies to ECKD only.

-L or --release

releases the device. This option applies to ECKD only.

-0 or --slock

reserves the device unconditionally. This option applies to ECKD only.

Note: This option is to be used with care as it breaks any existing reserve by another operating system.

-R or --reset_prof

resets the profile information of the device.

-P or --profile

displays a usage profile of the device.

-I <row> or --prof_item <row>

prints the usage profile item that is specified by <row>. <row> can be one of:

reqs number of DASD I/O requests.

sects number of 512-byte sectors.

sizes histogram of sizes.

total histogram of I/O times.

totsect histogram of I/O times per sector.

start histogram of I/O time until ssch.

irq histogram of I/O time between ssch and irq.

irqsect histogram of I/O time between ssch and irq per sector.

end histogram of I/O time between irq and end.

queue number of requests in the DASD internal request queue at enqueueing.

-v or --version

displays version information.

tunedasd

-h or --help

displays help information.

Examples

- The following sequence of commands first checks the reservation status of a DASD and then reserves it:

```
# tunedasd -Q /dev/dasdzzz
none
# tunedasd -S /dev/dasdzzz
Reserving device </dev/dasdzzz>...
Done.
# tunedasd -Q /dev/dasdzzz
reserved
```

- This example first queries the current setting for the cache mode of a DASD with device node /dev/dasdzzz and then sets it to one cylinder “prestige”.

```
# tunedasd -g /dev/dasdzzz
normal (0 cyl)
# tunedasd -c prestage -n 2 /dev/dasdzzz
Setting cache mode for device </dev/dasdzzz>...
Done.
# tunedasd -g /dev/dasdzzz
prestage (2 cyl)
```

- In this example two device nodes are specified. The output is printed for each node in the order in which the nodes were specified.

```
# tunedasd -g /dev/dasdzzz /dev/dasdzyy  
prestage (2 cyl)  
normal (0 cyl)
```

- The following command prints the usage profile of a DASD.

- The following command prints a row of the usage profile of a DASD. The output is on a single line as indicated by the (cont...) (... cont) in the illustration:

```
# tunedasd -P -I irq /dev/dasdzzz
          0|          0|          0|          0|          0|          0|          0|          503|        271|(cont...)
(... cont) 267| 18544| 224| 3| 4| 4| 0| 0|(cont...)
(... cont) 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0|(cont...)
(... cont) 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0|(cont...)
```

vmcp - Send CP commands to the z/VM hypervisor

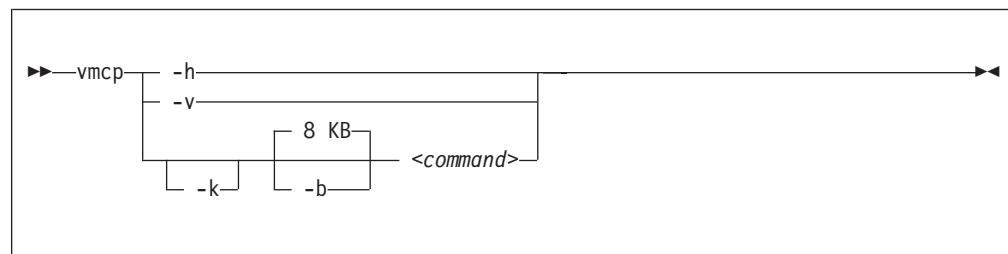
Use the **vmcp** command to send control program (CP) commands to the z/VM hypervisor and display the response from z/VM.

The **vmcp** command expects the command line as a parameter and returns the response to stdout. Error messages are written to stderr.

You can issue **vmcp** commands using the `/dev/vmcp` device node (see Chapter 22, “z/VM CP interface device driver,” on page 265) or from a command prompt in a terminal session. In both cases, you must load the `vmcp` module.

Before you begin: Ensure that vmcp is loaded by issuing: `modprobe vmcp`.

vmcp syntax



Where:

-h or --help

displays help information.

-v or --version

3.1 version displays version information.

-k or --keepcase

`keepcase` preserves the case of the characters in the specified command string. By default, the command string is converted to uppercase characters.

-b <size> or **--buffer <size>**

--buffer-size

specifies the buffer size in bytes for the response from z/VM CP. Valid values are from 4096 (or 4k) up to 1048756 (or 1M). By default, **vmcp** allocates an 8192 byte (8k) buffer. You can use k and M to specify kilo- and megabytes.

<command>

specifies the command that you want to send to CP.

If the command completes successfully, **vmcp** returns 0. Otherwise, **vmcp** returns one of the following values:

1. CP returned a non-zero response code.
 2. The specified buffer was not large enough to hold CP's response. The command was run, but the response was truncated. You can use the **--buffer** option to increase the response buffer.
 3. Linux reported an error to **vmcp**. See the error message for details.
 4. The options that are passed to **vmcp** were erroneous. See the error messages for details.

vmcp

Examples

- To get your user ID issue:

```
# vmcp query userid
```

- To attach the device 1234 to your guest, issue:

```
# vmcp attach 1234 \*
```

- If you add the following line to /etc/sudoers:

```
ALL ALL=NOPASSWD:/sbin/vmcp indicate
```

every user on the system can run the **indicate** command by using:

```
# sudo vmcp indicate
```

- If you need a larger response buffer, use the --buffer option:

```
# vmcp --buffer=128k q 1-ffff
```

vmur - Work with z/VM spool file queues

Use the **vmur** command to work with z/VM spool file queues.

In particular, the **vmur** command provides these functions:

Receive

Read data from the z/VM reader file queue. The command performs the following steps:

- Places the reader queue file to be received at the top of the queue.
- Changes the reader queue file attribute to NOHOLD.
- Closes the z/VM reader after reading the file.

Punch or print

Write data to the z/VM punch or printer file queue and transfer it to another user's virtual reader, optionally on a remote z/VM node. The data is sliced up into 80-byte or 132-byte chunks (called *records*) and written to the punch or printer device. If the data length is not an integer multiple of 80 or 132, the last record is padded with 0x00.

List

Display detailed information about one or all files on the specified spool file queue.

Purge Remove one or all files on the specified spool file queue.

Order Position a file at the top of the specified spool file queue.

The **vmur** command provides strict serialization of all its functions other than list, which does not affect a file queue's contents or sequence. Thus concurrent access to spool file queues is blocked to prevent unpredictable results or destructive conflicts.

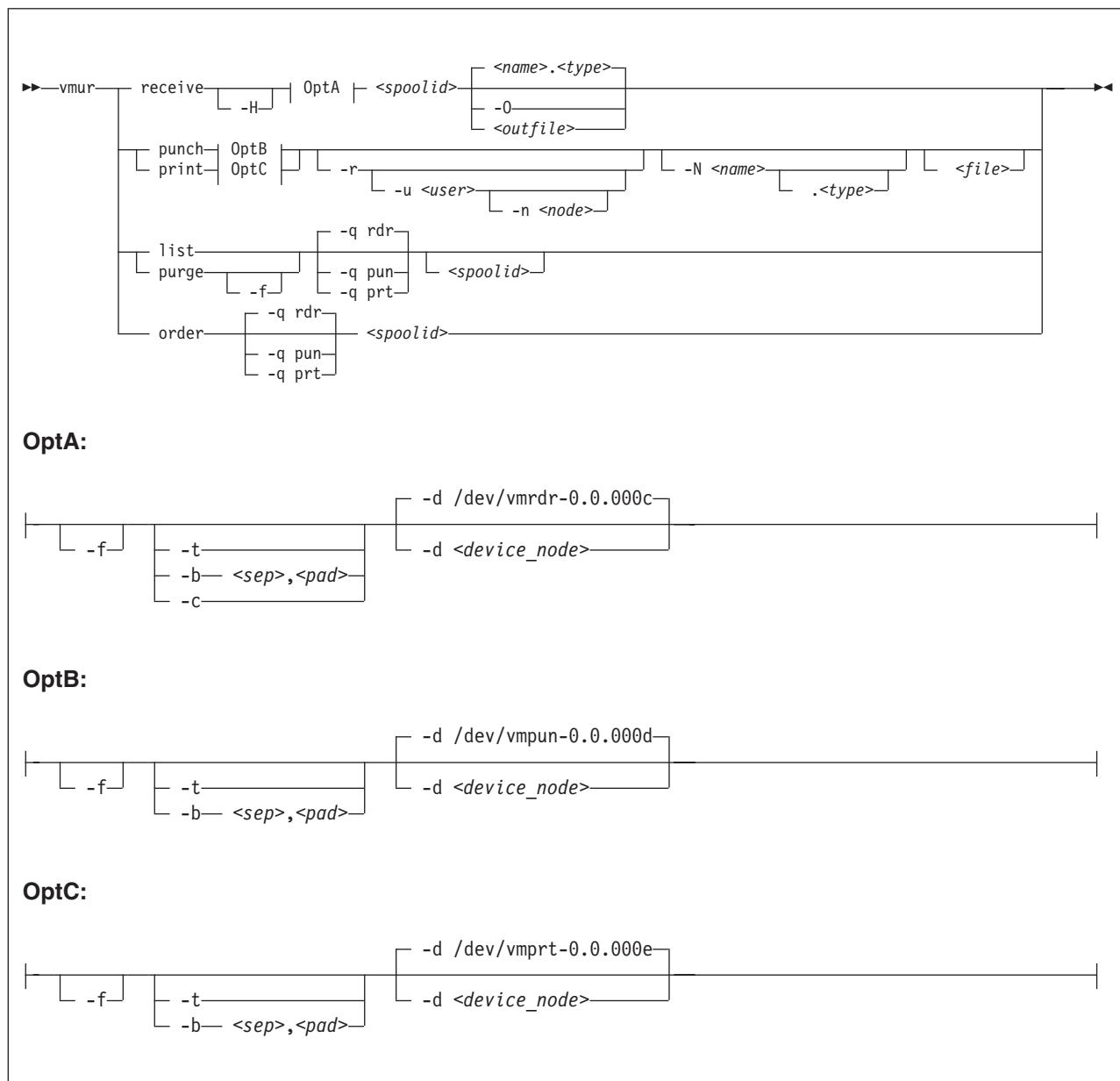
For example, this serialization prevents a process from issuing **vmur purge -f** while another process is executing **vmur receive 1234**. However, **vmur** is not serialized against concurrent CP commands that are issued through **vmcp**: if one process is executing **vmur receive 1234** and another process issues **vmcp purge rdr 1234**, then the received file might be incomplete. To avoid such unwanted effects, use **vmur** exclusively when you work with z/VM spool file queues.

The **vmur** command detects z/VM reader queue files in:

- VMDUMP format as created by CP VMDUMP.
- NETDATA format as created by CMS SENDFILE or TSO XMIT.

Before you begin:

- Ensure that **vmcp** module is loaded by issuing: **modprobe vmcp**
- To use the receive, punch, and print functions, the **vmur** device driver must be loaded and the corresponding unit record devices must be set online.

vmur syntax

Where:

re or receive

specifies that a file on the z/VM reader queue is to be received.

pun or punch

specifies that a file is to be written to the z/VM punch queue.

li or list

specifies that information about one or all files on a z/VM spool file queue is to be listed.

pur or purge

specifies that one or all files on a z/VM spool file queue is to be purged.

or or order

specifies that a file on a z/VM spool file queue is to be ordered, that is, to be placed at the top of the queue.

Note: The short forms that are given for receive, punch, print, list, purge, and order are the shortest forms possible. As is common in z/VM, you can use any form of these keywords that contain the minimum form. For example, **vmur re**, **vmur rec**, or **vmur rece** are all equivalent.

-d or --device

specifies the device node of the virtual unit record device.

- If omitted in the receive function, /dev/vmrdr-0.0.000c is assumed.
- If omitted in the punch function, /dev/vmpun-0.0.000d is assumed.
- If omitted in the print function, /dev/vmprt-0.0.000e is assumed.

-q or --queue

specifies the z/VM spool file queue to be listed, purged, or ordered. If omitted, the reader file queue is assumed.

-t or --text

specifies a text file that requires EBCDIC-to-ASCII conversion (or vice versa) according to character sets IBM037 and ISO-8859-1.

- For the receive function: specifies to receive the reader file as text file. That is, perform EBCDIC-to-ASCII conversion and insert an ASCII line feed character (0x0a) for each input record read from the z/VM reader. Trailing EBCDIC blanks (0x40) in the input records are stripped.
- For the punch or print function: specifies to punch the input file as text file. That is, perform ASCII-to-EBCDIC conversion and pad each input line with trailing blanks to fill up the record. The record length is 80 for a punch and 132 for a printer. If an input line length exceeds 80 for punch or 132 for print, an error message is issued.

The --text and the --blocked attributes are mutually exclusive.

-b <sep, pad>or --blocked <sep, pad>

specifies that the file must be received or written by using the blocked mode. As parameter for the -b option, specify the hex codes of the separator and the padding character. Example:

```
--blocked 0xSS,0xPP
```

Use this option if you need to use character sets other than IBM037 and ISO-8859-1 for conversion.

- For the receive function: All trailing padding characters are removed from the end of each record read from the virtual reader and the separator character is inserted afterward. The receive function's output can be piped to **iconv** using the appropriate character sets. Example:

```
# vmur rec 7 -b 0x25,0x40 -0 | iconv -f EBCDIC-US -t ISO-8859-1 > myfile
```

- For the punch or print function: The separator is used to identify the line end character of the file to punch or print. If a line has fewer characters than the record length of the used unit record device, the residual of the record is filled up with the specified padding byte. If a line exceeds the record size, an error is printed. Example:

```
# iconv test.txt -f ISO-8859-1 -t EBCDIC-US | vmur pun -b 0x25,0x40 -N test
```

- c or --convert**
converts the VMDUMP spool file into a format appropriate for further analysis with crash.
- r or --rdr**
specifies that the punch or print file is to be transferred to a reader.
- u <user> or --user <user>**
specifies the z/VM user ID to whose reader the data is to be transferred. If user is omitted, the data is transferred to your own machine's reader. The user option is only valid if the **-r** option was specified.
- n <node> or --node <node>**
specifies the z/VM node ID of the z/VM system to which the data is to be transferred. Remote Spooling Communications Subsystem (RSCS) must be installed on the z/VM systems and the specified node ID must be defined in the RSCS machine's configuration file. If node is omitted, the data is transferred to the specified user at your local z/VM system. The node option is only valid, if the **-u** option was specified.
- f or --force**
suppresses confirmation messages.
 - For the receive function: specifies that *<outfile>* is to be overwritten without displaying any confirmation message.
 - For the purge function: specifies that the spool files specified are to be purged without displaying any confirmation message.
 - For the punch or print option: convert Linux input file name to valid spool file name automatically without any error message.
- 0 or --stdout**
specifies that the reader file's contents are written to standard output.
- N or --name**
specifies a name and, optionally, a type for the z/VM spool file to be created by the punch or print option. To specify a type after the file name, enter a period followed by the type. For example:


```
# vmur pun -r /boot/parmfile -N myname.mytype
```

Both the name and the type must comply to z/VM file name rules (that is, must be one to eight characters long).

If omitted, the Linux input file name (if any) is used instead. Use the **--force** option to enforce valid spool file names and types.
- H or --hold**
specifies that the spool file to be received remains in the reader queue. If omitted, the spool file is purged.
- <spool id>**
denotes the spool ID that identifies a file that belongs to z/VM's reader, punch, or printer queue. The spool ID must be a decimal number in the range 0-9999. If the spool ID is omitted in the list or purge function, all files in the queue are listed or purged.
- <outfile>**
specifies the name of the output file to receive the reader spool file's data. If both *<outfile>* and **--stdout** are omitted, the name and type of the spool file to be received (see the NAME and TYPE columns in **vmur list** output) are taken

to build the output file *<name>.<type>*. If the spool file to be received is an unnamed file, an error message is issued.

<file>

specifies the file data to be punched or printed. If file is omitted, the data is read from standard input.

-h or --help

displays short information about command usage. To view the man page, issue **man vmur**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

These examples illustrate common scenarios for unit record devices.

In all examples the following device nodes are used:

- /dev/vmrdr-0.0.000c as virtual reader.
- /dev/vmpun-0.0.000d as virtual punch.

Besides the vmur device driver and the **vmur** command, these scenarios require that the **vmcp** and **vmconvert** commands from the s390utils package are available.

Creating and reading a guest memory dump

You can use the **vmur** command to read a guest memory dump that was created, for example, with the **vmcp** command.

Procedure

1. Produce a memory dump of the z/VM guest virtual machine memory:

```
# vmcp vmdump
```

Depending on the memory size this command might take some time to complete.

2. List the spool files for the reader to find the spool ID of the dump file, VMDUMP. In the example, the spool ID of VMDUMP is 463.

```
# vmur li
ORIGINID FILE CLASS RECORDS CPY HOLD DATE TIME NAME TYPE DIST
T6360025 0463 V DMP 00020222 001 NONE 06/11 15:07:42 VMDUMP FILE T6360025
```

3. Read and convert the VMDUMP spool file to a file in the current working directory of the Linux file system:

```
# vmur rec 463 -c linux_dump
```

Using FTP to receive and convert a dump file:

Use the **--convert** option together with the **--stdout** option to receive a VMDUMP spool file straight from the z/VM reader queue, convert it, and send it to another host with FTP.

Procedure

1. Establish an FTP session with the target host and log in.
2. Enter the FTP command binary.
3. Enter the FTP command:

```
put |"vmur re <spoolid> -c -0" <filename_on_target_host>
```

Log and read the z/VM guest virtual machine console

You can use the **vmur** command to read a console transcript that has been spooled; for example, with the **vmcp** command.

Procedure

1. Begin console spooling:

```
# vmcp sp cons start
```

2. Produce output to the z/VM console (for example, with CP TRACE).
3. Stop console spooling, close the file with the console output, and transfer the file to the reader queue. In the resulting CP message, the spool ID follows the FILE keyword. In the example, the spool ID is 398:

```
# vmcp sp cons stop close \* rdr
RDR FILE 0398 SENT FROM T6360025 CON WAS 0398 RECS 1872 CPY 001 T NOHOLD NOKEEP
```

4. Read the file with the console output into a file in the current working directory on the Linux file system:

```
# vmur re -t 398 linux_cons
```

Preparing the z/VM reader as an IPL device for Linux

You can use the **vmur** command to transfer all files for booting Linux to the z/VM reader. You can also arrange the files such that the reader can be used as an IPL device.

Procedure

1. Send the kernel parameter file, *parmfile*, to the z/VM punch device and transfer the file to the reader queue. The resulting message shows the spool ID of the parameter file.

```
# vmur pun -r /boot/parmfile
Reader file with spoolid 0465 created.
```

2. Send the kernel image file to the z/VM punch device and transfer the file to the reader queue. The resulting message shows the spool ID of the kernel image file.

```
# vmur pun -r /boot/vmlinuz -N image
Reader file with spoolid 0466 created.
```

3. Optional: Check the spool IDs of *image* and *parmfile* in the reader queue. In this example, the spool ID of *parmfile* is 465 and the spool ID of *image* is 466.

```
# vmur li

ORIGINID FILE CLASS RECORDS CPY HOLD DATE TIME NAME TYPE DIST
T6360025 0463 V DMP 00020222 001 NONE 06/11 15:07:42 VMDUMP FILE T6360025
T6360025 0465 A PUN 00000002 001 NONE 06/11 15:30:31 parmfile T6360025
T6360025 0466 A PUN 00065200 001 NONE 06/11 15:30:52 image T6360025
```

- Move **image** to the first and **parmfile** to the second position in the reader queue:

```
# vmur or 465
# vmur or 466
```

- Configure the z/VM reader as the re-IPL device:

```
# echo 0.0.000c > /sys/firmware/reipl/ccw/device
```

- Boot Linux from the z/VM reader:

```
# reboot
```

Sending a file to different z/VM guest virtual machines

You can use the **vmur** command to send files to other z/VM guest virtual machines.

About this task

This scenario describes how to send a file called **lnxprofile.exec** from the file system of an instance of Linux on z/VM to other z/VM guest virtual machines. For example, **lnxprofile.exec** could contain the content of a PROFILE EXEC file with CP and CMS commands to customize z/VM guest virtual machines for running Linux.

Procedure

- Send **lnxprofile.exec** to two z/VM guest virtual machines: z/VM user ID t2930020 at node boet2930 and z/VM user ID t6360025 at node boet6360.

```
vmur pun lnxprofile.exec -t -r -u t2930020 -n boet2930 -N PROFILE
vmur pun lnxprofile.exec -t -r -u t6360025 -n boet6360 -N PROFILE
```

- Log on to t2930020 at boet2930, IPL CMS, and issue the CP command:

```
QUERY RDR ALL
```

The command output shows the spool ID of PROFILE in the FILE column.

- Issue the CMS command:

```
RECEIVE <spoolid> PROFILE EXEC A (REPL
```

In the command, **<spoolid>** is the spool ID of PROFILE found in step 2.

- Repeat steps 2 and 3 for t6360025 at boet6360.

Sending a file to a z/VSE instance

You can use the **vmur** command to send files to a z/VSE instance.

Procedure

To send lserv.job to user ID vseuser at node vse01sys, issue:

```
vmur pun lserv.job -t -r -u vseuser -n vse01sys -N LSERV
```

znetconf - List and configure network devices

Use the **znetconf** command to list, configure, add, and remove network devices.

The **znetconf** command:

- Lists potential network devices.
- Lists configured network devices.
- Automatically configures and adds network devices.
- Removes network devices.

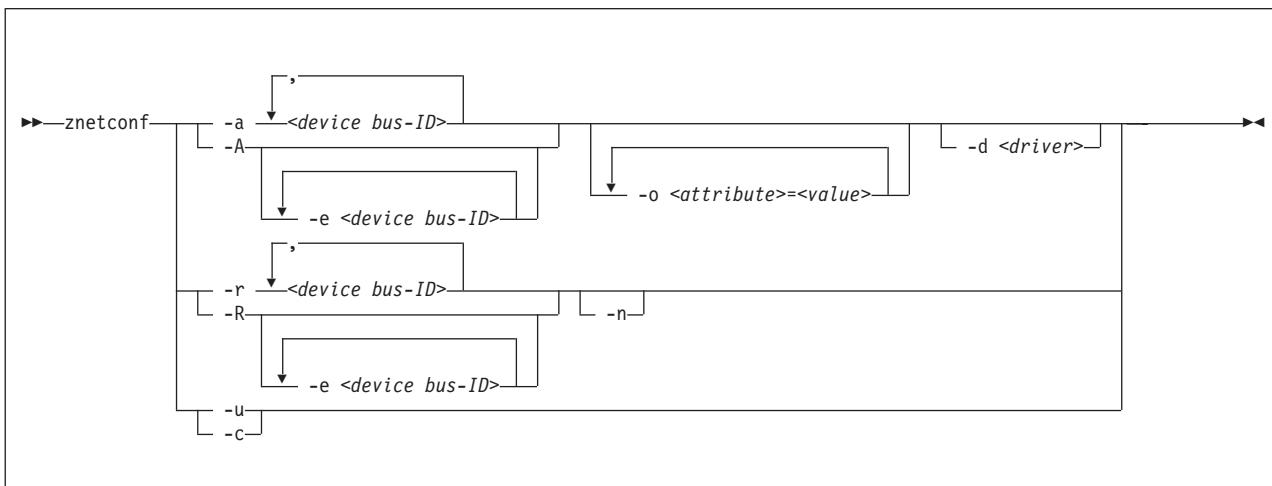
For automatic configuration, **znetconf** first builds a channel command word (CCW) group device from sensed CCW devices. It then configures any specified option through the sensed network device driver and sets the new network device online.

During automatic removal, **znetconf** sets the device offline and removes it.

Attention: Removing all network devices might lead to complete loss of network connectivity. Unless you can access your Linux instance from a terminal server on z/VM (see *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596), you might require the HMC or a 3270 terminal session to restore the connectivity.

Before you begin: The qeth, ctcm, or lcs device drivers must be loaded. If needed, the **znetconf** command attempts to load the particular device driver.

znetconf syntax



Where:

-a or --add

configures the network device with the specified device bus-ID. If you specify only one bus ID, the command automatically identifies the remaining bus IDs of the group device. You can enter a list of device bus-IDs that are separated by commas. The **znetconf** command does not check the validity of the combination of device bus-IDs.

<device bus-ID>

specifies the device bus-ID of the CCW devices that constitute the network device. If a device bus-ID begins with "0.0.", you can abbreviate it to the final hexadecimal digits. For example, you can abbreviate 0.0.f503 to f503.

znetconf

-A or --add-all

configures all potential network devices. After you run **znetconf -A**, enter **znetconf -c** to see which devices were configured. You can also enter **znetconf -u** to display devices that were not configured.

-e or --except

omits the specified devices when configuring all potential network devices or removing all configured network devices.

-o or --option <attribute>=<value>

configures devices with the specified sysfs option.

-d or --driver <driver name>

configures devices with the specified device driver. Valid values are qeth, lcs, ctc, or ctcm.

-n or --non-interactive

answers all confirmation questions with "Yes".

-r or --remove

removes the network device with the specified device bus-ID. You can enter a list of device bus-IDs that are separated by a comma. You can remove only configured devices as listed by **znetconf -c**.

-R or --remove-all

removes all configured network devices. After successfully running this command, all devices that are listed by **znetconf -c** become potential devices that are listed by **znetconf -u**.

-u or --unconfigured

lists all network devices that are not yet configured.

-c or --configured

lists all configured network devices.

-h or --help

displays short information about command usage. To view the man page, enter **man znetconf**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

If the command completes successfully, **znetconf** returns 0. Otherwise, 1 is returned.

Examples

- To list all potential network devices:

```
# znetconf -u
Device IDs          Type   Card Type  CHPID Drv.
-----
0.0.f500,0.0.f501,0.0.f502 1731/01 OSA (QDIO) 00    qeth
0.0.f503,0.0.f504,0.0.f505 1731/01 OSA (QDIO) 01    qeth
```

- To configure device 0.0.f503:

```
znetconf -a 0.0.f503
```

or

```
znetconf -a f503
```

- To configure the potential network device 0.0.f500 with the layer2 option with the value 0 and the portname option with the value myname:

```
znetconf -a f500 -o layer2=0 -o portname=myname
```

- To list configured network devices:

Device IDs	Type	Card Type	CHPID	Drv.	Name	State
0.0.f500,0.0.f501,0.0.f502	1731/01	Virt.NIC	QDIO	00	qeth enccw0.0.f500	online
0.0.f503,0.0.f504,0.0.f505	1731/01	Virt.NIC	QDIO	01	qeth enccw0.0.f503	online
0.0.f5f0,0.0.f5f1,0.0.f5f2	1731/01	OSD_1000		76	qeth enccw0.0.f5f0	online

- To remove network device 0.0.f503:

```
znetconf -r 0.0.f503
```

or

```
znetconf -r f503
```

- To remove all configured network devices except the devices with bus IDs 0.0.f500 and 0.0.f5f0:

```
znetconf -R -e 0.0.f500 -e 0.0.f5f0
```

- To configure all potential network devices except the device with bus ID 0.0.f503:

```
znetconf -A -e 0.0.f503
```

znetconf

Chapter 46. Selected kernel parameters

You can use kernel parameters that are beyond the scope of an individual device driver or feature to configure Linux in general.

Device driver-specific kernel parameters are described in the setting up section of the respective device driver.

See Chapter 3, “Kernel and module parameters,” on page 21 for information about specifying kernel parameters.

cio_ignore

cio_ignore - List devices to be ignored

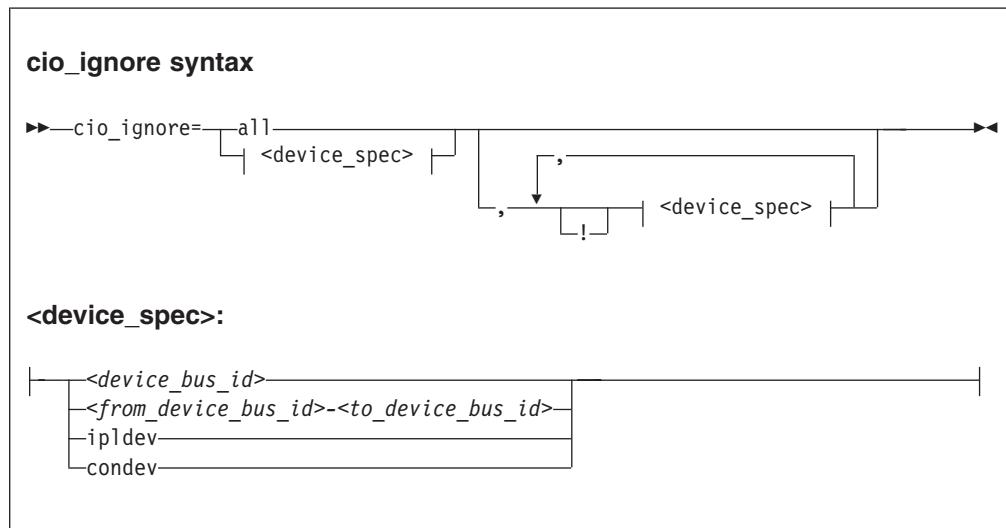
Use the `cio_ignore=` kernel parameter to list specifications for I/O devices that are to be ignored.

When a Linux on System z instance boots, it senses and analyzes all available I/O devices. The following applies to ignored devices:

- Ignored devices are not sensed and analyzed. The device cannot be used until it is analyzed.
- Ignored devices are not represented in sysfs.
- Ignored devices do not occupy storage in the kernel.
- The subchannel to which an ignored device is attached is treated as if no device were attached.
- For Linux on z/VM, `cio_ignore` might hide essential devices such as the console. The console is typically device number 0.0.0009.

See also “Changing the exclusion list” on page 571.

Format



Where:

all

states that all devices are to be ignored.

<device_bus_id>

is a device bus-ID of the form “0.n.dddd”, where n is the subchannel set ID, and dddd a device number.

<from_device_bus_id>-<to_device_bus_id>

are two device bus-IDs that specify the first and the last device in a range of devices.

ipldev

specifies the IPL device. Use this keyword with the ! operator to avoid ignoring the IPL device.

condev

specifies the CCW console. Use this keyword with the ! operator to avoid ignoring the console device.

- ! makes the following term an exclusion statement. This operator is used to exclude individual devices or ranges of devices from a preceding more general specification of devices.

Examples

- This example specifies that all devices in the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff, and the device 0.0.a100 are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,0.0.a100
```

- This example specifies that all devices are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=all
```

- This example specifies that all devices except the console are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=all,!condev
```

- This example specifies that all devices but the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff, and the device 0.0.a100 are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=all,!0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,!0.0.a100
```

- This example specifies that all devices in the range 0.0.1000 through 0.0.1500 are to be ignored, except for devices in the range 0.0.1100 through 0.0.1120.

```
cio_ignore=0.0.1000-0.0.1500,!0.0.1100-0.0.1120
```

This is equivalent to the following specification:

```
cio_ignore=0.0.1000-0.0.10ff,0.0.1121-0.0.1500
```

- This example specifies that all devices in range 0.0.1000 through 0.0.1100 and all devices in range 0.1.7000 through 0.1.7010, plus device 0.0.1234 and device 0.1.4321 are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=0.0.1000-0.0.1100, 0.1.7000-0.1.7010, 0.0.1234, 0.1.4321
```

Changing the exclusion list

Use the **cio_ignore** command or the procfs interface to view or change the list of I/O device specifications that are ignored.

When a Linux on System z instance boots, it senses and analyzes all available I/O devices. You can use the **cio_ignore** kernel parameter to list specifications for devices that are to be ignored.

On a running Linux instance, you can view and change the exclusion list through a procfs interface.

After booting Linux you can display the exclusion list by issuing:

```
# cat /proc/cio_ignore
```

To add device specifications to the exclusion list issue a command of this form:

```
# echo add <device_list> > /proc/cio_ignore
```

When you add specifications for a device that is already sensed and analyzed, there is no immediate effect of adding it to the exclusion list. For example, the

cio_ignore

device still appears in the output of the **lscss** command and can be set online. However, if the device later becomes unavailable, it is ignored when it reappears. For example, if the device is detached in z/VM it is ignored when it is attached again.

To make all devices that are in the exclusion list and that are currently offline unavailable to Linux issue a command of this form:

```
# echo purge > /proc/cio_ignore
```

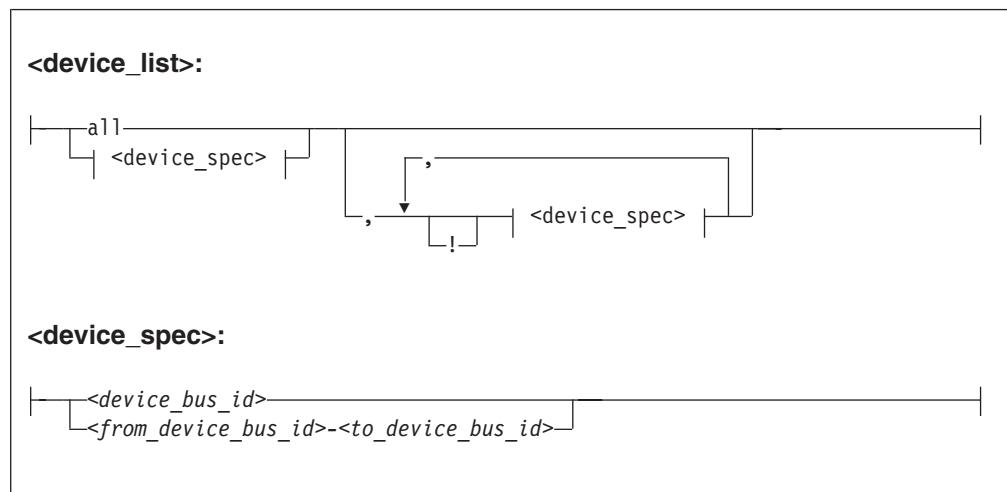
This command does not make devices unavailable if they are online.

To remove device specifications from the exclusion list issue a command of this form:

```
# echo free <device_list> > /proc/cio_ignore
```

When you remove device specifications from the exclusion list, the corresponding devices are sensed and analyzed if they exist. Where possible, the respective device driver is informed, and the devices become available to Linux.

In these commands, *<device_list>* follows this syntax:



Where the keywords and variables have the same meaning as in “Format” on page 570.

Ensure device availability

After the echo command completes successfully, some time might elapse until the freed device becomes available to Linux. To confirm that a device has become available to Linux verify that the sysfs attribute **/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device-bus-ID>/online** is present.

Results

The dynamically changed exclusion list is only taken into account when a device in this list is newly made available to the system, for example after it is defined to

the system. It does not have any effect on setting devices online or offline within Linux.

Examples

- This command removes all devices from the exclusion list.

```
# echo free all > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command adds all devices in the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff and device 0.0.a100 to the exclusion list.

```
# echo add 0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,0.0.a100 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command lists the ranges of devices that are ignored by common I/O.

```
# cat /proc/cio_ignore
0.0.0000-0.0.a0ff
0.0.a101-0.0.b0ff
0.0.b200-0.0.ffff
```

- This command removes all devices in the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff and device 0.0.a100 from the exclusion list.

```
# echo free 0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,0.0.a100 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command removes the device with bus ID 0.0.c104 from the exclusion list.

```
# echo free 0.0.c104 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command adds the device with bus ID 0.0.c104 to the exclusion list.

```
# echo add 0.0.c104 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command makes all devices that are in the exclusion list and that are currently offline unavailable to Linux.

```
# echo purge > /proc/cio_ignore
```

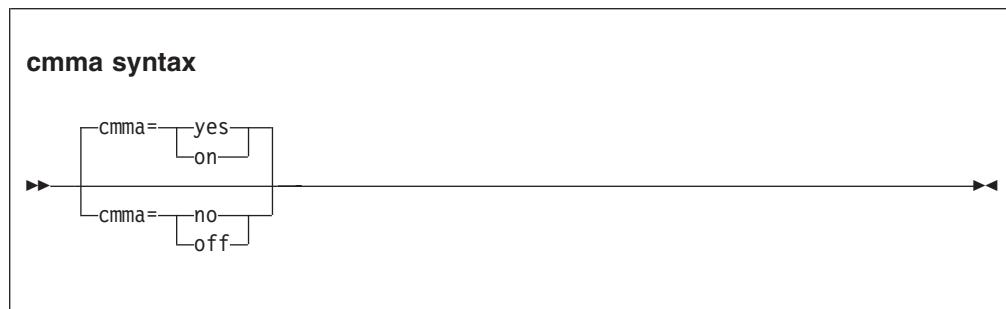
cmma

cmma - Reduce hypervisor paging I/O overhead

Use the `cmma=` kernel parameter to reduce hypervisor paging I/O overhead.

You can use Collaborative Memory Management Assist (CMMA, or "cmm2") on all IBM mainframe systems that Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 supports. With this support, the z/VM control program and guest virtual machines can communicate attributes for specific 4K-byte blocks of guest memory. This exchange of information helps both the z/VM host and the guest virtual machines to optimize their use and management of memory.

Format



Examples

This specification disables the CMMA support:

```
cmma=off
```

Alternatively, you can use the following specification to disable the CMMA support:

```
cmma=no
```

maxcpus - Restrict the number of CPUs Linux can use at IPL

Use the `maxcpus=` kernel parameter to restrict the number of CPUs that Linux can use at IPL.

For example, if there are four CPUs, specifying `maxcpus=2` causes the kernel to use only two CPUs. See also “`possible_cpus` - Limit the number of CPUs Linux can use” on page 577.

Format

maxcpus syntax

►►—`maxcpus=<number>`————►►

Examples

`maxcpus=2`

mem

mem - Restrict memory usage

Use the `mem=` kernel parameter to restrict memory usage to the size specified.

You can use the K, M, or G suffix to specify the value in kilobyte, megabyte, or gigabyte.

Format

mem syntax



Examples

`mem=64M`

Restricts the memory Linux can use to 64 MB.

`mem=123456K`

Restricts the memory Linux can use to 123456 KB.

possible_cpus - Limit the number of CPUs Linux can use

Use the `possible_cpus=` kernel parameter to specify the maximum number of usable CPUs that Linux can add to the system. If you also specify the common code kernel parameter `nr_cpus`, the smaller of the two numbers is used.

See also “[maxcpus - Restrict the number of CPUs Linux can use at IPL](#)” on page 575.

Format

possible_cpus syntax

►►—possible_cpus=<number>————►►

Examples

`possible_cpus=8`

ramdisk_size

ramdisk_size - Specify the ramdisk size

Use the `ramdisk_size=` kernel parameter to specify the size of the ramdisk in kilobytes.

Format

ramdisk_size syntax

►►—`ramdisk_size=<size>`————►►

Examples

`ramdisk_size=32000`

ro - Mount the root file system read-only

Use the ro kernel parameter to mount the root file system read-only.

Format

ro syntax

►►—ro—►►

root - Specify the root device

Use the `root=` kernel parameter to tell Linux what to use as the root when mounting the root file system.

Format

root syntax

```
►►—root=<rootdevice>————►►
```

Examples

This example makes Linux use `/dev/dasda1` when mounting the root file system:

```
root=/dev/dasda1
```

user_mode - Set address mode for user space processes

Use the `user_mode=` kernel parameter to set the address mode for user space processes.

Format



Use this parameter if you are running an application that requires an address mode home. The default address mode for user space processes is primary.

vdso

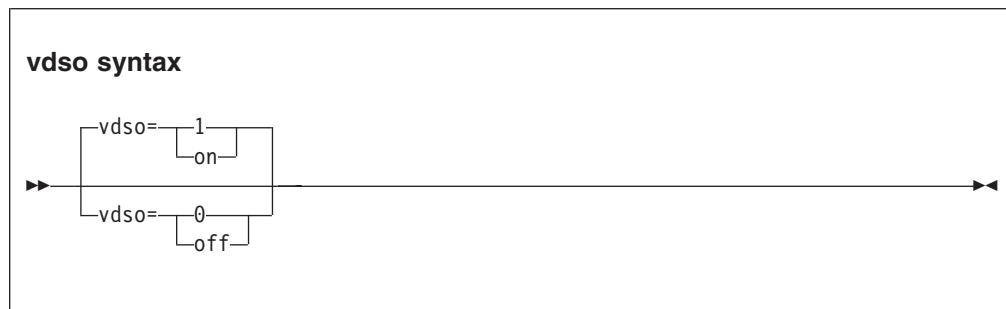
vdso - Optimize system call performance

Use the `vdso=` kernel parameter to control the vdso support for the `gettimeofday`, `clock_getres`, and `clock_gettime` system calls.

The virtual dynamic shared object (vdso) support is a shared library that the kernel maps to all dynamically linked programs. The glibc detects the presence of the vdso and uses the functions that are provided in the library.

The vdso support is included in the Linux on System z kernel.

Format



As the vdso library is mapped to all user-space processes, this change is visible in user space. In the unlikely event that a user-space program does not work with the vdso support, you can disable the support.

Examples

This example disables the vdso support:

```
vdso=0
```

vmhalt - Specify CP command to run after a system halt

Use the `vmhalt=` kernel parameter to specify a command to be issued to CP after a system halt.

This command applies only to Linux on z/VM.

Format

vmhalt syntax

```
►►—vmhalt=<COMMAND>—►►
```

Examples

This example specifies that an initial program load of CMS is to follow the Linux **halt** command:

```
vmhalt="CPU 00 CMD I CMS"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

vmpanic

vmpanic - Specify CP command to run after a kernel panic

Use the `vmpanic=` kernel parameter to specify a command to be issued to CP after a kernel panic.

This command applies only to Linux on z/VM.

Note: Ensure that the `dumpconf` service is disabled when you use this kernel parameter. Otherwise, `dumpconf` will override the setting.

Format

vmpanic syntax

```
►►—vmpanic=<COMMAND>————►►
```

Examples

This example specifies that a VMDUMP is to follow a kernel panic:

```
vmpanic="VMDUMP"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

vmpoff - Specify CP command to run after a power off

Use the vmpoff= kernel parameter to specify a command to be issued to CP after a system power off.

Format

vmpoff syntax

```
►►vmpoff=<COMMAND>—————►►
```

Examples

This example specifies that CP is to clear the guest virtual machine after the Linux **power off** or **halt -p** command:

```
vmpoff="SYSTEM CLEAR"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

vmreboot

vmreboot - Specify CP command to run on reboot

Use the `vmreboot=` kernel parameter to specify a command to be issued to CP on reboot.

This command applies only to Linux on z/VM.

Format

vmreboot syntax

```
►►—vmreboot=<COMMAND>————►►
```

Examples

This example specifies a message to be sent to the z/VM guest virtual machine OPERATOR if a reboot occurs:

```
vmreboot="MSG OPERATOR Reboot system"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

Chapter 47. Linux diagnose code use

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 for System z issues several diagnose instructions to the hypervisor (LPAR or z/VM).

Table 60 lists all diagnoses that are used by the Linux kernel or a kernel module.

Linux can fail if you change the privilege class of the diagnoses marked as **required** by using the `MODIFY diag` command in z/VM.

Table 60. Linux diagnoses

Number	Description	Linux use	Required/ Optional
0x008	z/VM CP command console interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none">The <code>vmcp</code> commandThe 3215 and 3270 console driversThe z/VM recording device driver (<code>vmlogrdr</code>)<code>smsgiucv</code><code>AF_IUCV</code>	Required
0x010	Release pages	CMM	Required
0x014	Input spool file manipulation	The <code>vmur</code> device driver	Required
0x044	Voluntary time-slice end	In the kernel for spinlock and <code>udelay</code>	Required
0x064	Allows Linux to attach a DCSS	The DCSS block device driver (<code>dcssblk</code>) and the MONITOR record device driver (<code>monreader</code>).	Required
0x09c	Voluntary time slice yield	Spinlock.	Optional
0x0dc	Monitor stream	The APPLDATA monitor record and the MONITOR stream application support (<code>monwriter</code>).	Required
0x204	LPAR Hypervisor data	The hypervisor file system (hypfs).	Required
0x210	Retrieve device information	<ul style="list-style-type: none">The common I/O layerThe DASD driver DIAG access methodDASD read-only queryThe <code>vmur</code> device driver	Required
0x224	CPU type name table	The hypervisor file system (hypfs).	Required
0x250	Block I/O	The DASD driver DIAG access method.	Required
0x258	Page-reference services	In the kernel, for <code>pfault</code> .	Optional
0x288	Virtual machine time bomb	The watchdog device driver.	Required
0x2fc	Hypervisor cpu and memory accounting data	The hypervisor file system (hypfs).	Required
0x308	Re-ipl	Re-ipl and dump code.	Required

Required means that a function is not available without the diagnose; optional means that the function is available but there might be a performance impact.

Part 11. Appendixes

Appendix A. Accessibility

Accessibility features help users who have a disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use information technology products successfully.

Documentation accessibility

The Linux on System z publications are in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) and should be compliant with accessibility standards. If you experience difficulties when you use the PDF file and want to request a Web-based format for this publication, use the Reader' Comments form in the back of this publication, send an email to eservdoc@de.ibm.com, or write to:

IBM Deutschland Research & Development GmbH
Information Development
Department 3282
Schoenaicher Strasse 220
71032 Boeblingen
Germany

In the request, be sure to include the publication number and title.

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

IBM and accessibility

See the IBM Human Ability and Accessibility Center for more information about the commitment that IBM has to accessibility at

www.ibm.com/able

Appendix B. Understanding syntax diagrams

This section describes how to read the syntax diagrams in this manual.

To read a syntax diagram follow the path of the line. Read from left to right and top to bottom.

- The ►— symbol indicates the beginning of a syntax diagram.
- The —► symbol, at the end of a line, indicates that the syntax diagram continues on the next line.
- The ►— symbol, at the beginning of a line, indicates that a syntax diagram continues from the previous line.
- The —►● symbol indicates the end of a syntax diagram.

Syntax items (for example, a keyword or variable) may be:

- Directly on the line (required)
- Above the line (default)
- Below the line (optional)

If defaults are determined by your system status or settings, they are not shown in the diagram. Instead the rule is described together with the option, keyword, or variable in the list following the diagram.

Case sensitivity

Unless otherwise noted, entries are case sensitive.

Symbols

You **must** code these symbols exactly as they appear in the syntax diagram

*	Asterisk
:	Colon
,	Comma
=	Equal sign
-	Hyphen
//	Double slash
()	Parentheses
.	Period
+	Add
\$	Dollar sign

For example:

dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7fff

Variables

An *italicized* lowercase word enclosed in angled brackets indicates a variable that you must substitute with specific information. For example:

►— -p —<interface>————►●

Here you must code **-p** as shown and supply a value for *<interface>*.

An italicized uppercase word in angled brackets indicates a variable that must appear in uppercase:

►—vmhalt—=—<COMMAND>—►

Repetition

An arrow returning to the left means that the item can be repeated.



A character within the arrow means you must separate repeated items with that character.



Defaults

Defaults are above the line. The system uses the default unless you override it. You can override the default by coding an option from the stack below the line. For example:



In this example, A is the default. You can override A by choosing B or C.

Required Choices

When two or more items are in a stack and one of them is on the line, you **must** specify one item. For example:



Here you must enter either A or B or C.

Optional Choice

When an item is below the line, the item is optional. Only one item **may** be chosen. For example:



Here you may enter either A or B or C, or you may omit the field.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A. IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at "Copyright and trademark information" at www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml

Adobe is either a registered trademark or trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States, and/or other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Glossary

This glossary includes IBM product terminology as well as selected other terms and definitions.

Additional information can be obtained in:

- The American National Standard Dictionary for Information Systems, ANSI X3.172-1990, copyright 1990 by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). Copies may be purchased from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd Street, New York, New York 10036.
- The ANSI/EIA Standard-440-A, Fiber Optic Terminology. Copies may be purchased from the Electronic Industries Association, 2001 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20006.
- The Information Technology Vocabulary developed by Subcommittee 1, Joint Technical Committee 1, of the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Commission (ISO/IEC JTC1/SC1).
- The IBM Dictionary of Computing, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994.
- Internet Request for Comments: 1208, Glossary of Networking Terms
- Internet Request for Comments: 1392, Internet Users' Glossary
- The Object-Oriented Interface Design: IBM Common User Access Guidelines , Carmel, Indiana: Que, 1992.

Numerics

10 Gigabit Ethernet. An Ethernet network with a bandwidth of 10000-Mbps.

3215. IBM console printer-keyboard.

3270. IBM information display system.

3370, 3380 or 3390. IBM direct access storage device (disk).

3480, 3490, 3590. IBM magnetic tape subsystem.

9336 or 9345. IBM direct access storage device (disk).

A

address space. The range of addresses available to a computer program or process. Address space can refer to physical storage, virtual storage, or both.

auto-detection. Listing the addresses of devices attached to a card by issuing a query command to the card.

C

CCL.

The Communication Controller for Linux on System z (CCL) replaces the 3745/6 Communication Controller so that the Network Control Program (NCP) software can continue to provide business critical functions like SNI, XRF, BNN, INN, and SSCP takeover. This allows you to leverage your existing NCP functions on a "virtualized" communication controller within the Linux on System z environment.

cdl. compatible disk layout. A disk structure for Linux on System z which allows access from other System z operating systems. This replaces the older **ldl**.

CEC. (Central Electronics Complex). A synonym for **CPC**.

channel subsystem. The programmable input/output processors of the System z, which operate in parallel with the CPU.

checksum. An error detection method using a check byte appended to message data

CHPID. channel path identifier. In a channel subsystem, a value assigned to each installed channel path of the system that uniquely identifies that path to the system.

Console. In Linux, an output device for kernel messages.

CPC. (Central Processor Complex). A physical collection of hardware that includes main storage, one or more central processors, timers, and channels. Also referred to as a **CEC**.

CRC. cyclic redundancy check. A system of error checking performed at both the sending and receiving station after a block-check character has been accumulated.

CSMA/CD. carrier sense multiple access with collision detection

CTC. channel to channel. A method of connecting two computing devices.

CUU. control unit and unit address. A form of addressing for System z devices using device numbers.

D

DASD. direct access storage device. A mass storage medium on which a computer stores data.

device driver.

- A file that contains the code needed to use an attached device.
- A program that enables a computer to communicate with a specific peripheral device; for example, a printer, a videodisc player, or a CD-ROM drive.
- A collection of subroutines that control the interface between I/O device adapters and the processor.

DIAGNOSE. In z/VM, a set of instructions that programs running on z/VM guest virtual machines can call to request CP services.

disconnected device. In Linux on System z, a device that is online, but to which Linux can no longer find a connection. Reasons include:

- The device was physically removed
- The device was logically removed, for example, with a CP DETACH command in z/VM
- The device was varied offline

E

ECKD. extended count-key-data device. A disk storage device that has a data transfer rate faster than some processors can utilize and that is connected to the processor through use of a speed matching buffer. A specialized channel program is needed to communicate with such a device.

ESCON. enterprise systems connection. A set of IBM products and services that provide a dynamically connected environment within an enterprise.

Ethernet. A 10-Mbps baseband local area network that allows multiple stations to access the transmission medium at will without prior coordination, avoids contention by using carrier sense and deference, and resolves contention by using collision detection and delayed retransmission. Ethernet uses CSMA/CD.

F

Fast Ethernet (FENET). Ethernet network with a bandwidth of 100 Mbps

FBA. fixed block architecture. A type of DASD emulated by z/VM.

FDDI. fiber distributed data interface. An American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard for a 100-Mbps LAN using optical fiber cables.

fibre channel. A technology for transmitting data between computer devices. It is especially suited for attaching computer servers to shared storage devices and for interconnecting storage controllers and drives.

FTP. file transfer protocol. In the Internet suite of protocols, an application layer protocol that uses TCP and Telnet services to transfer bulk-data files between machines or hosts.

G

Gigabit Ethernet (GbE). An Ethernet network with a bandwidth of 1000-Mbps

H

hardware console. A service-call logical processor that is the communication feature between the main processor and the service processor.

Host Bus Adapter (HBA). An I/O controller that connects an external bus, such as a Fibre Channel, to the internal bus (channel subsystem).

In a Linux environment HBAs are normally virtual and are shown as an FCP device.

HMC. hardware management console. A console used to monitor and control hardware such as the System z microprocessors.

HFS. hierarchical file system. A system of arranging files into a tree structure of directories.

I

intraensemble data network (IEDN). A private 10 Gigabit Ethernet network for application data communications within an ensemble. Data communications for workloads can flow over the IEDN within and between nodes of an ensemble. All of the physical and logical resources of the IEDN are configured, provisioned, and managed by the Unified Resource Manager.

intranode management network (INMN). A private 1000BASE-T Ethernet network operating at 1 Gbps that is required for the Unified Resource Manager to manage the resources within a single zEnterprise node. The INMN connects the Support Element (SE) to the zEnterprise 196 (z196) or zEnterprise 114 (z114) and to any attached zEnterprise BladeCenter[®] Extension (zBX).

ioctl system call. Performs low-level input- and output-control operations and retrieves device status information. Typical operations include buffer manipulation and query of device mode or status.

IOCS. input / output channel subsystem. See channel subsystem.

IP. internet protocol. In the Internet suite of protocols, a connectionless protocol that routes data through a network or interconnected networks and acts as an intermediary between the higher protocol layers and the physical network.

IP address. The unique 32-bit address that specifies the location of each device or workstation on the Internet. For example, 9.67.97.103 is an IP address.

IPIP. IPv4 in IPv4 tunnel, used to transport IPv4 packets in other IPv4 packets.

IPL. initial program load (or boot).

- The initialization procedure that causes an operating system to commence operation.
- The process by which a configuration image is loaded into storage at the beginning of a work day or after a system malfunction.
- The process of loading system programs and preparing a system to run jobs.

IPv6. IP version 6. The next generation of the Internet Protocol.

IUCV. inter-user communication vehicle. A z/VM facility for passing data between virtual machines and z/VM components.

K

kernel. The part of an operating system that performs basic functions such as allocating hardware resources.

kernel module. A dynamically loadable part of the kernel, such as a device driver or a file system.

kernel image. The kernel when loaded into memory.

L

LCS. LAN channel station. A protocol used by OSA.

ldl. Linux disk layout. A basic disk structure for Linux on System z. Now replaced by cdl.

LDPP. Linux Documentation Project. An attempt to provide a centralized location containing the source material for all open source Linux documentation. Includes user and reference guides, HOW TOs, and FAQs. The homepage of the Linux Documentation Project is

www.linuxdoc.org

Linux. a variant of UNIX which runs on a wide range of machines from wristwatches through personal and small business machines to enterprise systems.

Linux on System z. the port of Linux to the IBM System z architecture.

LPAR. logical partition of System z.

LVS (Linux virtual server). Network sprayer software used to dispatch, for example, http requests to a set of web servers to balance system load.

M

MAC. medium access control. In a LAN this is the sub-layer of the data link control layer that supports medium-dependent functions and uses the services of the physical layer to provide services to the logical link control (LLC) sub-layer. The MAC sub-layer includes the method of determining when a device has access to the transmission medium.

Mbps. million bits per second.

MIB (Management Information Base).

- A collection of objects that can be accessed by means of a network management protocol.
- A definition for management information that specifies the information available from a host or gateway and the operations allowed.

MTU. maximum transmission unit. The largest block which may be transmitted as a single unit.

Multicast. A protocol for the simultaneous distribution of data to a number of recipients, for example live video transmissions.

N

NIC. network interface card. The physical interface between the IBM mainframe and the network.

O

OSA-Express. Abbreviation for Open Systems Adapter-Express networking features. These include 10 Gigabit Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, and Fast Ethernet.

OSM. OSA-Express for Unified Resource Manager. A CHPID type that provides connectivity to the intranode management network (INMN) from z196 or z114 to Unified Resource Manager functions. Uses OSA-Express3 1000BASE-T Ethernet exclusively operating at 1 Gbps.

OSPF. open shortest path first. A function used in route optimization in networks.

OSX. OSA-Express for zBX. A CHPID type that provides connectivity and access control to the intraensemble data network (IEDN) from z196 or z114 to zBX.

P

POR. power-on reset

POSIX. Portable Operating System Interface for Computer Environments. An IEEE operating system standard closely related to the UNIX system.

R

router. A device or process which allows messages to pass between different networks.

S

SE. support element.

- An internal control element of a processor that assists in many of the processor operational functions.
- A hardware unit that provides communications, monitoring, and diagnostic functions to a central processor complex.

SNA. systems network architecture. The IBM architecture that defines the logical structure, formats, protocols, and operational sequences for transmitting information units through, and controlling the configuration and operation of, networks. The layered structure of SNA allows the ultimate origins and destinations of information (the users) to be independent of and unaffected by the specific SNA network services and facilities that are used for information exchange.

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol). In the Internet suite of protocols, a network management protocol that is used to monitor routers and attached networks. SNMP is an application layer protocol. Information about devices managed is defined and stored in the application's Management Information Base (MIB).

Sysctl. system control programming manual control (frame). A means of dynamically changing certain Linux kernel parameters during operation.

T

Telnet. A member of the Internet suite of protocols which provides a remote terminal connection service. It allows users of one host to log on to a remote host and interact as if they were using a terminal directly attached to that host.

Terminal. A physical or emulated device, associated with a keyboard and display device, capable of sending and receiving information.

U

UNIX. An operating system developed by Bell Laboratories that features multiprogramming in a multiuser environment. The UNIX operating system was originally developed for use on minicomputers but has been adapted for mainframes and microcomputers.

V

V=R. In z/VM, a guest whose real memory (virtual from a z/VM perspective) corresponds to the real memory of z/VM.

V=V. In z/VM, a guest whose real memory (virtual from a z/VM perspective) corresponds to virtual memory of z/VM.

Virtual LAN (VLAN). A group of devices on one or more LANs that are configured (using management software) so that they can communicate as if they were attached to the same wire, when in fact they are located on a number of different LAN segments. Because VLANs are based on logical rather than physical connections, they are extremely flexible.

volume. A data carrier that is usually mounted and demounted as a unit, for example a tape cartridge or a disk pack. If a storage unit has no demountable packs the volume is the portion available to a single read/write mechanism.

Z

z114. IBM zEnterprise 114

z196. IBM zEnterprise 196

zBC12. IBM zEnterprise BC12.

zBX. IBM zEnterprise BladeCenter Extension

zEC12. IBM zEnterprise EC 12.

zEnterprise. IBM zEnterprise System. A heterogeneous hardware infrastructure that can consist of an IBM zEnterprise BC12, a zEnterprise EC12 (zEC12), a zEnterprise 114 (z114) or a zEnterprise 196 (z196) and an attached IBM zEnterprise BladeCenter Extension (zBX), managed as a single logical virtualized system by the Unified Resource Manager.

zSeries. The family of IBM enterprise servers that demonstrate outstanding reliability, availability, scalability, security, and capacity in today's network computing environments.

Bibliography

The publications listed here are considered useful for a more detailed study of the topics contained in this book.

Linux on System z publications

The Linux on System z publications can be found on the developerWorks website.

See

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_red_hat.html

- *Device Drivers, Features, and Commands on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2710
- *Using the Dump Tools on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7*, SC34-2711
- *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413
- *How to Improve Performance with PAV*, SC33-8414
- *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596
- *libica Programmer's Reference*, SC34-2602
- *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294
- *Linux on System z Troubleshooting*, SC34-2612

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 publications

The documentation for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 can be found on the Red Hat documentation website.

See

https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux

- *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Deployment Guide*
- *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Installation Guide*

z/VM publications

The publication numbers listed are for z/VM version 6.

For the complete library including other versions, see

www.ibm.com/vm/library

- *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6174
- *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6175
- *z/VM CP Planning and Administration*, SC24-6178
- *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6179
- *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6194
- *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6208
- *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6229
- *z/VM Systems Management Application Programming*, SC24-6234
- *z/VM TCP/IP Planning and Customization*, SC24-6238
- *z/VM Virtual Machine Operation*, SC24-6241

- *REXX/VM Reference*, SC24-6221
- *REXX/VM User's Guide*, SC24-6222

IBM Redbooks publications

You can search for, view, or download Redbooks publications, RedpapersTM, Hints and Tips, draft publications and additional materials on the Redbooks website.

You can also order hardcopy Redbooks or CD-ROMs. See
www.ibm.com/redbooks

- *IBM zEnterprise Unified Resource Manager*, SG24-7921
- *Building Linux Systems under IBM VM*, REDP-0120
- *FICON CTC Implementation*, REDP-0158
- *Networking Overview for Linux on zSeries*, REDP-3901
- *Linux on IBM eServer zSeries and S/390: TCP/IP Broadcast on z/VM Guest LAN*, REDP-3596
- *Linux on IBM eServer zSeries and S/390: VSWITCH and VLAN Features of z/VM 4.4*, REDP-3719
- *Security on z/VM*, SG24-7471
- *IBM Communication Controller Migration Guide*, SG24-6298
- *Problem Determination for Linux on System z*, SG24-7599
- *Fibre Channel Protocol for Linux and z/VM on IBM System z*, SG24-7266

Other System z publications

General System z publications that might be of interest in the context of Linux on System z.

- *zEnterprise System Introduction to Ensembles*, GC27-2609
- *zEnterprise System Ensemble Planning and Configuring Guide*, GC27-2608
- *System z Application Programming Interfaces*, SB10-7030
- *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server System/390 Command Reference 2105 Models E10, E20, F10, and F20*, SC26-7295
- *Processor Resource/Systems Manager Planning Guide*, SB10-7041
- *z/Architecture Principles of Operation*, SA22-7832

Networking publications

- *HiperSockets Implementation Guide*, SG24-6816
- *OSA-Express Customer's Guide and Reference*, SA22-7935
- *OSA-Express Implementation Guide*, SG25-5848

Security related publications

- *zSeries Crypto Guide Update*, SG24-6870

ibm.com resources

On the ibm.com[®] website you can find information about many aspects of Linux on System z including z/VM, I/O connectivity, and cryptography.

- For CMS and CP Data Areas, Control Block information, and the layout of the z/VM monitor records see
www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ctlblk.html

- For I/O connectivity on System z information, see
www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity
- For Communications server for Linux information, see
www.ibm.com/software/network/commserver/linux
- For information about performance monitoring on z/VM, see
www.ibm.com/vm/perf
- For cryptographic coprocessor information, see
www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards
- (Requires registration.) For information for planning, installing, and maintaining IBM Systems, see
www.ibm.com/servers/resourcelink
- For information about STP, see
www.ibm.com/systems/z/advantages/psos/stp.html

Finding IBM books

For the referenced IBM books, links have been omitted to avoid pointing to a particular edition of a book.

You can locate the latest versions of the referenced IBM books through the IBM Publications Center at
www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order

Index

Special characters

/debug, mount point ix
/proc, mount point viii
/sys, mount point viii
/sys/devices 7
/sys/kernel/debug, mount point ix
*ACCOUNT, z/VM record 239
*LOGREC, z/VM record 239
*SYMPTOM, z/VM record 239

Numerics

10 Gigabit Ethernet
 SNMP 185
1000Base-T Ethernet
 LAN channel station 193
 SNMP 185
1750, control unit 31
2105, control unit 31
2107, control unit 31
3088, control unit 193, 199
3270 emulation 335
3270 terminal device driver 333
 switching the views of 338
3370, DASD 31
3380, DASD 31
3390, DASD 31
3480 tape drive 105
3490 tape drive 105
3590 tape drive 105
3592 tape drive 105
3880, control unit 31
3990, control unit 31
6310, control unit 31
9336, DASD 31
9343, control unit 31
9345, DASD 31

A

access control
 osasnmpd 187
access_denied
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
access_shared
 zfcp attribute 88
accessibility 591
ACCOUNT, z/VM record 239
actions, shutdown 401
activating standby CPU 277
adapter outage 166
add, DCSS attribute 253
adding and removing cryptographic adapters 314
Address Resolution Protocol
 See ARP
AF_IUCV
 addressing sockets in applications 215
 set up devices for addressing 214
AF_IUCV address family 213

AF_IUCV address family (*continued*)
 features 213
 set up support for 214
af_iucv, kernel module 215
AgentX protocol 185
alias
 DASD attribute 62
ap
 module parameter 308
AP
 devices 7
AP bus
 attributes 315
ap_functions
 cryptographic adapter attribute 310
ap_interrupt
 cryptographic adapter attribute 313
API
 cryptographic 316
 FC-HBA 69
 zfcp HBA 98
APPLDATA monitor records 219
 monitoring Linux instances 219
APPLDATA, monitor stream 223
applet
 emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages 341
applications
 addressing AF_IUCV sockets in 215
ARP 135
 proxy ARP 164
 query/purge OSA-Express ARP cache 535
attributes
 device 9
 for CCW devices 9
 for subchannels 13
 qeth 137, 138
 setting 10
authorization
 CPU-measurement counter facility 415
auto-detection
 DASD 41
autoconfiguration, IPv6 131
automatic problem reporting
 activating 427
autopurge, z/VM recording attribute 242
autorecording, z/VM recording attribute 241
availability
 common CCW attribute 9
 DASD attribute 47
avg_*, cmf attributes 409
avg_control_unit_queuing_time, cmf attribute 409
avg_device_active_only_time, cmf attribute 409
avg_device_busy_time 409
avg_device_busy_time, cmf attribute 409
avg_device_connect_time, cmf attribute 409
avg_device_disconnect_time, cmf attribute 409
avg_function_pending_time, cmf attribute 409
avg_initial_command_response_time, cmf attribute 409
avg_sample_interval, cmf attribute 409
avg_utilization, cmf attribute 409

B

base device
 helper script 357
block_size_bytes, memory attribute 282
blocksize, tape attribute 111
book_id
 CPU sysfs attribute 279
book_siblings
 CPU sysfs attribute 279
boot configuration
 module parameters 27
boot devices 376
 logical 354
 preparing 347
boot loader code 377
boot menu
 DASD, LPAR example 387
 DASD, z/VM example 380
 zipl 364
booting Linux 375
 troubleshooting 431
buffer_count, qeth attribute 143
buffer, CTCM attribute 205
bus ID 8

C

Call Home
 callhome attribute 427
callhome
 Call Home attribute 427
capability change, CPU 277
card_type, qeth attribute 145
card_version, zfcp attribute 74
case conversion 342
CCW
 channel measurement facility 407
 common attributes 9
 devices 7
 group devices 7
 hotplug events 18
 setting attributes 436
 setting devices online/offline 436
CCW terminal device
 switching on- or offline 338
CD-ROM, loading Linux 387
CEX3A (Crypto Express3) 305
CEX3C (Crypto Express3) 305
CEX4A (Crypto Express4S) 305
CEX4C (Crypto Express4S) 305
change, CPU capability 277
channel measurement facility 407
 cmb_enable attribute 408
 features 407
 kernel parameters 407
 read-only attributes 408
channel path
 changing status 438
 determining usage 429
 ensuring correct status 429
 list 497
channel path availability
 planned changes 429
 unplanned changes 429
channel path ID 15
channel path measurement 14
channel subsystem view 12
channel-attached tape 105
chccwdev 10
chccwdev, Linux command 436
chchp, Linux command 438
chcpu, Linux command 277
checksum
 inbound 157
 outbound 158
CHID
 mapping physical to virtual 17
Chinese-Remainder Theorem 306
chiucvallow, Linux command 332
chmem, Linux command 440
CHPID
 in sysfs 15
 map to PCHID 17
 online attribute 15, 16
chpids, subchannel attribute 14
chreipl, Linux command 442
chshut, Linux command 446
chzcrypt, Linux command 448
cio_ignore
 disabled wait 430
cio_ignore, procfs interface 571
cio_ignore=, kernel parameter 570
cio_settle 10
clock synchronization 297
 enabling and disabling 299
 switching on and off 299
cm_enable
 channel subsystem sysfs attribute 14
cmb_enable
 cmf attribute 408
 common CCW attribute 9
 tape attribute 110
cmd=, module parameters 262
cmf.format=, kernel parameter 407
cmf.maxchannels=, kernel parameter 407
cmm
 avoid swapping with 221
 background information 221
CMM
 unload module 430
cmm, kernel module 273
CMMA 574
cmma=, kernel parameter 574
CMS disk layout 36
CMS1 labeled disk 36
cmsfs-fuse, Linux command 450
code page 451
 for x3270 335
Collaborative Memory Management Assist 574
collecting QETH performance statistics 152
command
 qetharp 535
commands, Linux
 chccwdev 436
 chchp 438
 chcpu 277
 chiucvallow 332
 chmem 440
 chreipl 442
 chshut 446
 chzcrypt 448
 cmsfs-fuse 450
 cpuplugd 455

commands, Linux (*continued*)

- dasdfmt 464
- dasdstat 468
- dasdview 471
- dmesg 5
- dumpconf 402
- fdasd 479
- hyptop 487
- icainfo 435
- icastats 435
- ip 4
- iucvconn 332
- iucvttt 332
- lschp 497
- lscpu 277
- lscss 499
- lsdasd 503
- lsluns 505
- lsmem 507
- lsqeth 509
- lsreipl 511
- lsscm 512
- lsshut 514
- lstape 515
- lszcrypt 519
- lszfcf 522
- mon_fsstatd 524
- mon_procd 528
- qetharp 535
- qethconf 537
- qethqoat 540
- readlink 5
- scsi_logging_level 543
- sg_inq 515
- tape390_crypt 546
- tape390_display 550
- tunedasd 552
- vmconvert 561
- vmcp 555
- vmur 557
- zfcp_ping 100
- zfcp_show 100
- zipl 347
- znetconf 565

commands, z/VM

- sending from Linux 555
- communication facility

 - Inter-User Communication Vehicle 213

- compatible disk layout 33
- compression, tape 112
- conceal=, module parameters 262
- configuration file

 - CPU control 456
 - cpuplugd 462
 - memory control 457

- configure LPAR I/O devices 429
- commode=, kernel parameter 330
- console

 - definition 325
 - device names 325
 - device nodes 326
 - mainframe versus Linux 325

- console device driver

 - kernel parameter 331
 - overriding default driver 330
 - restricting access to HVC terminal devices 332
 - SCLP line-mode buffer page reuse 331

console device driver (*continued*)

- SCLP line-mode buffer pages 331
- specifying preferred console 331
- specifying the number of HVC terminal devices 332
- console device drivers 323
- device and console names 325
- features 324
- terminal modes 326
- console=, kernel parameter 331
- control characters 339
- control program identification 423
- control unit

 - 1750 31
 - 2105 31
 - 2107 31
 - 3880 31
 - 3990 31
 - 6310 31
 - 9343 31

- cooperative memory management 273
- set up 273
- core_id

 - CPU sysfs attribute 279

- core_siblings

 - CPU sysfs attribute 279

- CP Assist for Cryptographic Function 319
- CP commands

 - send to z/VM hypervisor 555
 - VINPUT 344

- CP Error Logging System Service 239
- CP VINPUT 344
- CP1047 451
- cpc_name attribute 301
- CPI

 - set attribute 425
 - sysplex_name attribute 424
 - system_level attribute 425
 - system_name attribute 424
 - system_type attribute 425

- CPI (control program identification) 423
- CPU

 - managing 277

- CPU capability change 277
- CPU configuration 455
- CPU control

 - complex rules 461
 - configuration file 456

- CPU hotplug

 - sample configuration file 462

- CPU hotplug rules 459
- CPU sysfs attribute

 - book_id 279
 - book_siblings 279
 - core_id 279
 - core_siblings 279
 - dispatching 279
 - polarization 279

- CPU sysfs attributes

 - location of 277

- CPU-measurement counter facility 415, 417
- CPU, activating standby 277
- CPU, deactivating operating 278
- cpuplugd

 - complex rules 461
 - configuration file 462

- cpuplugd, Linux command 455

cpustat
 cpuplugd keywords
 use with historical data 461
CRT 306
Crypto Express3 305
Crypto Express4 305
cryptographic 316
 request processing 308
cryptographic adapter
 attributes 310
 hardware status 312
cryptographic adapter sysfs attribute
 online 312
 poll_thread 312, 313
cryptographic adapters
 adding and removing dynamically 314
 detection 307
cryptographic device driver 305
 API 316
 features 305
 hardware and software prerequisites 306
 setup 308
 starting 311
cryptographic device nodes 307
cryptographic devices
 See also **zcrypt**
 for Linux on z/VM 305
cryptographic modules
 unload 316
csulincl.h 317
CTC
 activating an interface 206
CTC interface
 recovery 207
CTC network connections 200
CTCM
 buffer attribute 205
 device driver 199
 group attribute 201
 online attribute 204
 protocol attribute 203
 subchannels 199
 type attribute 203
 ungroup attribute 202
cutype
 common CCW attribute 9
 tape attribute 110

D

DASD 35, 44, 46
 access by udev-created device nodes 40
 access by VOLSER 39
 alias attribute 62
 availability attribute 47
 boot menu, LPAR example 387
 boot menu, z/VM example 380
 booting from 379, 383
 boxed 47
 CMS disk layout 36
 compatible disk layout 33
 control unit attached devices 31
 device driver 31
 device names 37
 discipline attribute 62
 disk layout summary 37
 displaying information 471

DASD (continued)
 displaying overview 503
 eer_enabled attribute 49
 erplog attribute 51
 expires attribute 53
 extended error reporting 32
 failfast attribute 52
 features 31
 forcing online 47
 formatting ECKD 464
 last_known_reservation_state attribute 60
 Linux disk layout 36
 module parameter 41
 online attribute 50
 partitioning 479, 487
 partitions on 32
 performance statistics 468
 performance tuning 552
 raw_track_access attribute 57
 readonly attribute 62
 reservation_policy attribute 59
 statistics 53
 status attribute 63
 uid attribute 63
 use_diag attribute 48, 63
 vendor attribute 63
 virtual 31
 volume label 34
DASD information
 displaying 62
dasd=
 module parameter 41
dasdfmt, Linux command 464
dasdstat, Linux command 468
dasdview, Linux command 471
data consistency checking, SCSI 95
data integrity extension 95
data integrity field 95
datarouter=
 zfcp module parameter 70
dbfsize=, zfcp module parameters 70
DCSS 235
 access mode 254
 add attribute 253
 adding 253
 device driver 249
 device names 249
 device nodes 249
 exclusive-writable mode 249
 loader 363
 minor number 254
 performance monitoring using 220
 remove attribute 257
 save attribute 256
 saving with properties 256
 seglist attribute 253
 shared attribute 255
 with options 250
dcssblk.segments=, module parameter 250
deactivating a qeth interface 149
deactivating operating CPU 278
debug feature 222
decryption 306
delete
 zfcp sysfs attribute 94
delete, zfcp attribute 94

depth
 cryptographic adapter attribute 310
 determine channel path usage 429
 device bus-ID 8
 of a qeth interface 146
 device driver
 cryptographic 305
 CTCM 199
 DASD 31
 DCSS 249
 HiperSockets 123
 LCS 193
 monitor stream application 229
 network 119
 OSA-Express (QDIO) 123
 overview 8
 pseudo-random number 319
 qeth 123
 SCLP_ASYNC 427
 SCSI-over-Fibre Channel 65
 smsgiucv_app 267
 starting cryptographic 311
 storage-class memory 101
 tape 105
 vmcp 265
 vmur 247
 watchdog 261
 XPRAM 115
 z/VM *MONITOR record reader 233
 z/VM recording 239
 zcrypt 305
 device drivers
 support of the FCP environment 66
 device names 3
 console 325
 DASD 37
 DCSS 249
 random number 319
 storage class memory 101
 tape 106
 vmur 247
 XPRAM 115
 z/VM *MONITOR record 234
 z/VM recording 239
 device node
 z90crypt 309
 device nodes 3
 console 326
 DASD 38
 DCSS 249
 random number 319
 SCSI 67
 storage class memory 101
 tape 107
 vmcp 265
 vmur 247
 watchdog 261
 z/VM *MONITOR record 234
 z/VM recording 239
 zfcp 67
 device numbers 3
 device special file
 See device nodes
 device view 12
 by category 11
 by device drivers 11
 device_blocked
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 devices
 alias 62
 attributes 9
 base 62
 corresponding interfaces 5
 ignoring 570
 in sysfs 8
 working with newly available 10
 devs=, module parameter 116
 devtype
 common CCW attribute 9
 tape attribute 110
 dhcp 181
 DHCP 180
 required options 180
 DIAG
 access method 48
 DIAG access method
 for ECKD 37
 for FBA 37
 DIAG call 587
 diagnose call 587
 diagnosis
 using XPRAM 116
 DIF 95
 dif=
 zfcp module parameter 70
 Direct Access Storage Device
 See DASD
 Direct SNMP 185
 disabled wait
 booting stops with 431
 cio_ignore 430
 discipline
 DASD attribute 62
 discontiguous saved segments
 See DCSS
 disk layout
 CMS 36
 LDL 36
 summary 37
 System z compatible 33
 dispatching
 CPU sysfs attribute 279
 displaying
 DASD information 62
 displaying information
 FCP channel and device 74
 DIX 95
 dmesg 5
 Documentation directory ix
 documentation website
 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 601
 domain=
 module parameter 308
 dracut 27
 drivers
 See device driver
 dump
 creating automatically after kernel panic 431
 dump device
 DASD and tape 357
 ECKD DASD 359
 SCSI 360

dump file
receive and convert 562
dumpconf, Linux command 402
dumped_frames, zfcp attribute 75
DVD, loading Linux 387
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
See DHCP
dynamic routing, and VIPA 166

E

EADM subchannels
list 102
EBCDIC 21
conversion through cmsfs-fuse 450
kernel parameters 377
ECKD 31
devices 31
disk layout summary 37
raw_track_access attribute 57
ECKD type DASD 44
preparing for use 44
edit characters, z/VM console 344
EEDK 546
eer_enabled
DASD attribute 49
EKM 546
emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages
applet 341
enable, qeth IP takeover attribute 160
encoding 451
encryption 306
encryption key manager 546
end-of-line character 343
end-to-end data consistency, SCSI 95
Enterprise Storage Server 31
environment variable 269
environment variables 269
for CP special messages 269
TERM 333
ZIPCONF 369
erplog, DASD attribute 51
Error Logging System Service 239
error_frames, zfcp attribute 75
escape character
for terminals 343
ESS 31
Ethernet
interface name 131
LAN channel station 193
etr
online attribute 299
ETR 297, 299
etr= 298
kernel parameter 298
etr=, kernel parameter 298
exclusive-writable mode
DCSS access 249
expanded memory 115
expires, DASD attribute 53
extended error reporting
DASD 49
extended error reporting, DASD 32
extended remote copy 297
external encrypted data key 546
external time reference 297

F

failed
zfcp attribute (channel) 77
zfcp attribute (port) 82
zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 91
failfast, DASD attribute 52
fake_broadcast, qeth attribute 159
Fast Ethernet
LAN channel station 193
FBA
disk layout summary 37
FBA devices 31
FBA type DASD
preparing for use 46
FC-HBA 69
FC-HBA API functions 98
FCP 65
channel 65
debugging 70
device 65
traces 70
FCP channel
displaying information 74
FCP device
displaying information 74
FCP devices
listing 97
status information 79
sysfs structure 66
FCP environment 66
fcp_control_requests zfcp attribute 75
fcp_input_megabytes zfcp attribute 75
fcp_input_requests zfcp attribute 75
fcp_lun
zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
fcp_lun, zfcp attribute 87
fcp_output_megabytes zfcp attribute 75
fcp_output_requests zfcp attribute 75
fdasd
menu example 483
options, example 485
fdasd menu 481
fdasd, Linux command 479
fdisk command 69
Fibre Channel 65
file system
hugetlbfs 287
file systems
cmsfs-fuse for z/VM minidisk 450
sysfs 7
XFS 95
Flash Express memory 101
for performance measuring 405
formatting 44
FTP server, loading Linux 387
full ECKD tracks 57
full-screen mode terminal 333

G

GB ix
generating random numbers 310
getxattr 452
giga ix
Gigabit Ethernet
SNMP 185

group
 CTCM attribute 201
 LCS attribute 194
 qeth attribute 139
 group devices
 CTCM 199
 LCS 193
 qeth 130
 guest LAN sniffer 182
 guest memory dump
 vmur command 561
 guest swapping 430

H

hardware
 service level 430
 hardware counter
 reading with perf tool 416
 hardware facilities 405
 Hardware Management Console
 See HMC
 hardware sampling
 set up LPAR 411
 hardware status, cryptographic adapter
 online 312
 hardware_version, zfcp attribute 74
 HBA API 69
 developing applications that use 98
 functions 98
 running applications that use 99
 HBA API support
 zfcp 98
 hba_id
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 hba_id, zfcp attribute 87
 High Performance FICON, suppressing 42
 high resolution polling timer 448
 HiperSockets
 device driver 123
 interface name 131
 network traffic analyzer 181
 HiperSockets Network Concentrator 175
 historical data
 cpuplugd keywords 461
 HMC 323
 as terminal 336
 definition 325
 for booting Linux 376
 Integrated ASCII console applet 327, 328
 Operating System Messages applet 327
 using in LPAR 327
 using on z/VM 328
 HMC Operating System Messages applet
 emulation of the 341
 hmc_network attribute 301
 hotplug
 CCW devices 18
 memory 281
 hotplug memory
 in sysfs 281
 large pages 287
 reboot 282
 hotplug rules
 CPU 459
 memory 460
 hsuid, qeth attribute 144

hugepages=, kernel parameters 287
 hugetlbfs
 virtual file system 287
 HVC device driver 329
 hvc_iucv_allow=, kernel parameter 332
 hvc_iucv=, kernel parameter 332
 hw_interval
 OProfile attribute 412
 hw_max_interval
 OProfile attribute 412
 hw_min_interval
 OProfile attribute 412
 hw_sdbt_blocks
 OProfile attribute 412
 hw_trap, qeth attribute 153
 hwrng
 cryptographic device node 307
 hwsampler
 OProfile attribute 411
 hwtype
 cryptographic adapter attribute 310
 hypervisor
 service level 430
 hyptop
 navigate between windows 488
 select data 489
 sort data 489
 units 492
 hyptop command
 z/VM fields 491
 hyptop, Linux command 487

I

IBM compatible disk layout 33
 IBM label partitioning scheme 32
 IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server 31
 ica_api.h 317
 icainfo, Linux command 435
 icastats, Linux command 435
 IDRC compression 112
 if names 4
 if_name, qeth attribute 146
 Improved Data Recording Capability compression 112
 in_recovery
 zfcp attribute (channel) 77
 zfcp attribute (port) 80, 82
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88, 91
 in_recovery, zfcp attribute 74
 inbound checksum
 offload operation 157
 inbound checksum, qeth 157
 Initial Program Load
 See IPL
 initial RAM disk 377
 initrd
 module parameters 27
 Integrated ASCII console applet
 on HMC 327
 interface
 MTIO 107
 network 4
 network, setup of 5
 interface names
 ctc 200
 mpc 200
 qeth 131, 146

interface names (*continued*)
 storage class memory 101
 versus devices 5
 vmur 247

interfaces 316
 CTC 200
 FC-HBA 69

invalid_crc_count zfcp attribute 75

invalid_tx_word_count zfcp attribute 75

iocounterbits
 zfcp attribute 88

iodone_cnt
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88

ioerr_cnt
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88

iorequest_cnt
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88

ip 4

IP address
 confirming 148
 duplicate 148
 takeover 160
 virtual 165

IP address takeover, activating and deactivating 161

ip link
 command 173

IP service types 142

ipa_takeover, qeth attributes 160

IPL 375
 displaying current settings 511

IPL devices
 for booting 376
 preparing 347

IPv6
 stateless autoconfiguration 131
 support for 131

ISO-8859-1 451

isolation, qeth attribute 150

IUCV
 accessing terminal devices over 337
 authorizations 214
 enablement 214
 maximum number of connections 214
 OPTION MAXCONN 214

iucvconn 324
 set up a z/VM guest virtual machine for 332
 using on z/VM 329

iucvttt 332

iucvttt, Linux command 332

K

KB ix

KEK 546

kernel image 377

kernel module 21
 af_iucv 215
 ap 308
 appldata_mem 223
 appldata_net_sum 223
 appldata_os 223
 cmm 273
 ctcm 201
 dasd_diag_mod 42
 dasd_eckd_mod 42
 dasd_fba_mod 42
 dasd_mod 41

kernel module (*continued*)
 dcssblk 250
 lcs 193
 monreader 235
 monwriter 229
 prng 319
 qeth 135
 qeth_12 135
 qeth_13 135
 sclp_async 427
 sclp_cpi 423
 tape_34xx 108
 tape_3590 108
 vmlogdr 240
 vmur 247
 vmwatchdog 262
 xram 116
 zfcp 70

kernel panic 392
 creating dump automatically after 431

kernel parameter
 etr= 298

kernel parameter file
 for z/VM reader 23

kernel parameter line
 length limit for booting 24
 length limit, zipl 23
 module parameters 26

kernel parameters 21, 298, 377
 and zipl 353
 channel measurement facility 407
 cio_ignore= 570
 cmf.format= 407
 cmf.maxchannels= 407
 cmma= 574
 conflicting 23
 commode= 330
 console= 331
 encoding 21
 general 569
 hugepages= 287
 hvc_iucv_allow= 332
 hvc_iucv= 332
 maxcpus= 575
 mem= 576
 no_console_suspend 397
 noresume 397
 possible_cpus= 577
 ramdisk_size= 578
 reboot 26
 resume= 397
 ro 579
 root= 580
 sclp_con_drop= 331
 sclp_con_pages= 331
 specifying 21
 stp= 299
 vdso= 582
 vmhalt= 583
 vmpanic= 584
 vmpoff= 585
 vmreboot= 586
 zipl 22

kernel source tree ix

key encrypting key 546

kilo ix

L

LAN
 sniffer 181
 z/VM guest LAN sniffer 182
LAN channel station
 See LCS
LAN, virtual 171
lancmd_timeout, LCS attribute 196
large page support 287
 change number of 288
 display information about 288
 read current number of 288
large pages
 hotplug memory 287
last_known_reservation_state, DASD attribute 60
layer 2
 qeth discipline 129
layer 3
 qeth discipline 129
layer2
 qeth attribute 141
layer2, qeth attribute 131
lcs
 recover attribute 197
LCS
 activating an interface 197
 device driver 193
 group attribute 194
 lancmd_timeout attribute 196
 online attribute 196
 subchannels 193
 ungroup attribute 195
LCS device driver
 setup 193
LDL disk layout 36
LGR 222
libhbaapi-devel 98
libica 306
libzfcpbaapi 99
libzfcpbaapi, package 99
lic_version, zfcp attribute 74
line edit characters, z/VM console 344
line-mode terminal 333
 control characters 339
 special characters 339
link_failure_count, zfcp attribute 75
Linux
 as LAN sniffer 181
 device categories 7
Linux commands
 generic options 435
Linux device special file
 See device nodes
Linux guest relocation 222
Linux in LPAR mode, booting 383
Linux on z/VM
 booting 378
 reducing memory of 221
lip_count, zfcp attribute 75
listxattr 452
LNX1 labeled disk 36
load balancing and VIPA 168
LOADDEV 380
LOADNSHR operand
 DCSS 249
log file, osasnmpd 191

log information
 FCP devices 79
logging
 I/O subchannel status 421
logical boot device
 base parameters 355
 helper script 357
LOGREC, z/VM record 239
long random numbers 310
loss_of_signal_count, zfcp attribute 75
loss_of_sync_count, zfcp attribute 75
lost DASD reservation 59
LPAR
 configuration
 storage-class memory 101
 I/O devices, configuring 429
 set up for hardware sampling 411
 System z hardware counters 415
LPAR configuration 101
LPAR Linux, booting 383
lschp, Linux command 497
lscpu, Linux command 277
lcss, Linux command 102, 499
lsdasd, Linux command 503
lsluns, Linux command 505
lsmem, Linux command 507
lsqeth
 command 146
lsqeth, Linux command 509
lsreipl, Linux command 511
lsscm, Linux command 103, 512
lsshut, Linux command 514
lstape, Linux command 515
lszcrypt, Linux command 519
lszfcp, Linux command 522
LUNs
 finding available 97
LVM 103

M

MAC addresses 131
MAC header
 layer2 for qeth 131
magic sysrequest functions 340
 procfs 341
major number 3
 DASD devices 37
 pseudo-random number 319
 tape devices 106
 XPRAM 115
management information base 185
maxcpus=, kernel parameter 575
maxframe_size
 zfcp attribute 74
MB ix
measurement
 channel path 14
Media Access Control (MAC) addresses 131
Medium Access Control (MAC) header 133
medium_state, tape attribute 111
mega ix
mem=, kernel parameter 576
memory
 block_size_bytes attribute 282
 displaying 507
 Flash Express 101

memory (*continued*)
 guest, reducing 221
 hotplug 281
 setting online and offline 440
 state attribute 283
 storage-class 101
 memory blocks
 in sysfs 281
 memory control
 complex rules 461
 configuration file 457
 memory hotplug
 sample configuration file 462
 memory hotplug rules 460
 memory, expanded 115
 menu configuration 364, 370
 z/VM example 380
 MIB (management information base) 185
 minor number 3
 DASD devices 37
 DCSS devices 254
 pseudo-random number 319
 tape devices 106
 XPRAM 115
 modalias
 cryptographic adapter attribute 310
 mode terminal
 full-screen 333
 model
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 modprobe 21
 module parameters 21
 ap 308
 boot configuration 27
 cmd= 262
 conceal= 262
 CPI 423
 dasd= 41
 dcssblk.segments= 250
 devs= 116
 domain= 308
 kernel parameter line 26
 mondcss= 229, 235
 nowayout= 262
 poll_thread= 308
 scm_block= 102
 sender= 267
 sizes= 116
 system_name= 423
 XPRAM 116
 modules
 qeth, removing 136
 modulus-exponent 306
 mon_fsstatd
 command-line syntax 526
 monitor data, processing 527
 monitor data, reading 528
 mon_fsstatd, command 524
 mon_procd
 command-line syntax 530
 monitor data, reading 534
 mon_procd, command 528
 mon_statd
 monitor data, processing 531
 service utility syntax 524, 529
 mondcss=, module parameters 229, 235
 monitor data
 read 220
 monitor stream 223
 module activation 224
 sampling interval 225
 monitor stream application
 device driver 229
 monitoring
 z/VM performance 219
 monitoring Linux instances 219
 mount point
 debugfs ix
 procfs viii
 sysfs viii
 mt-st, package 112
 MTIO interface 107
 MTU
 qeth 147
 multicast_router, value for qeth router attribute 155
 multiple subchannel set 11

N

name
 devices
 See device names
 names
 DASD 37
 navigate between windows
 htop 488
 net-snmp 185
 network
 device drivers 119
 network concentrator
 examples 177
 Network Concentrator 175
 network interface
 setup 5
 network interfaces 4
 network names 4
 network traffic analyzer
 HiperSockets 181
 no_auto_port_rescan=
 zfcp module parameters 70
 no_console_suspend, kernel parameters 397
 no_prio_queueing, value for qeth priority_queueing
 attribute 142
 no_router, value for qeth router attribute 155
 node_name
 zfcp attribute 74
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
 node, device
 See device nodes
 non-operational terminals
 preventing re-spawns for 334
 non-priority commands 342
 noresume, kernel parameters 397
 nos_count, zfcp attribute 75
 nowayout=, module parameters 262
 NPIV 84
 example 79
 FCP channel mode 78
 for FCP channels 70
 removing SCSI devices 94
 numbers, random 310

O

object ID 185
offline
 CHPID 15, 16
 devices 9
offload operations
 inbound checksum 157
 outbound checksum 157
 TCP segmentation offload (TSO) 157
OID (object ID) 185
online
 CHPID 15, 16
 common CCW attribute 9
 cryptographic adapter attribute 312
 CTCM attribute 204
 DASD attribute 50
 etr attribute 299
 LCS attribute 196
 qeth attribute 145
 stp attribute 300
 tape attribute 109, 110
 TTY attribute 339
 zfcp attribute 73
opcontrol 411
Open Source Development Network, Inc. 185
openCryptoki, library 316
operating CPU, deactivating 278
Operating System Messages applet
 emulation of the HMC 341
 on HMC 327
operation, tape attribute 111
OProfile
 hardware sampling 411
 hw_interval attribute 412
 hw_max_interval attribute 412
 hw_min_interval attribute 412
 hw_sdbt_blocks attribute 412
 hw_sampler attribute 411
 initializing 411
 starting and stopping 412
OPTION MAXCONN 214
optional properties
 DCSS 250
OSA-Express
 device driver 123
 LAN channel station 193
 SNMP subagent support 185
OSA-Express MIB file 186
osasnmpd
 access control 187
 checking the log file 191
 master agent 185
 setup 186
 starting the subagent 190
 stopping 192
 subagent 185
osasnmpd, OSA-Express SNMP subagent 185
OSDN (Open Source Development Network, Inc.) 185
outbound checksum
 offload operation 157
outbound checksum, qeth 158
overlap with guest storage 235

P

page pool
 static 221
 timed 222
parallel access volume (PAV) 62
parameter
 kernel and module 21
partition
 on DASD 32
 schemes for DASD 32
 table 35
 XPRAM 115
partitioning
 SCSI devices 69
PAV (parallel access volume) 62
PAV enablement, suppression 42
PCHID
 map to CHPID 17
peer_d_id, zfcp attribute 74
peer_wwn, zfcp attribute 74
peer_wwpn, zfcp attribute 74
perf tool 415
 reading a System z hardware counter 416
performance
 CPU-measurement counter facility 415
 DASD 53, 468
 OProfile 411
performance measuring
 with hardware facilities 405
performance monitoring
 z/VM 219
performance statistics, QETH 152
permanent_port_name, zfcp attribute 74, 78
permissions
 S/390 hypervisor file system 294
physical_s_id, zfcp attribute 78
pimpampom, subchannel attribute 14
polarization
 CPU sysfs attribute 279
 values 279
poll thread
 disable using chcrypt 448
 enable using chcrypt 448
poll_thread
 AP bus 315
 cryptographic adapter attribute 312, 313
poll_timeout
 cryptographic adapter attribute 314
 set using chcrypt 448
port_id
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
port_id, zfcp attribute 74
port_name
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
port_name, zfcp attribute 74
port_remove, zfcp attribute 83
port_rescan, zfcp attribute 79
port_state
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
port_type, NPIV 84
port_type, zfcp attribute 74
portno, qeth attribute 143
ports
 listing 97
possible_cpus=, kernel parameter 577

power/state attribute 399
 preferred console 331
 preparing ECKD 44
 preparing FBA 46
 pri=, fstab parameter 398
 prim_seq_protocol_err_count, zfcp attribute 75
 primary_connector, value for qeth router attribute 156
 primary_router, value for qeth router attribute 155
 prio_queueing, value for qeth priority_queueing attribute 142
 priority command 342
 priority_queueing, qeth attribute 142
 processors
 cryptographic 7
 procfs
 appldata 223
 cio_ignore 571
 magic sysrequest function 341
 VLAN 173
 prot_capabilities
 zfcp attribute 95
 protocol, CTCM attribute 203
 proxy ARP 164
 proxy ARP attributes 138
 pseudo-random number
 device driver 319
 device names 319
 device nodes 319
 PSW
 disabled wait 431
 purge, z/VM recording attribute 242
 PVMMSG 342

Q

QDIO 130
 qeth
 activating an interface 147
 activating and deactivating IP addresses for takeover 161
 auto-detection 130
 buffer_count attribute 143
 card_type attribute 145
 configuration tool 537
 deactivating an interface 149
 device directories 131
 device driver 123
 device driver functions 126
 displaying device overview 509
 enable attribute for IP takeover 160
 fake_broadcast attribute 159
 group attribute 139
 group devices, names of 129
 hsuid attribute 144
 hw_trap attribute 153
 if_name attribute 146
 interface names 131
 ipa_takeover attributes 160
 isolation attribute 150
 layer 2 129
 layer 3 129
 layer2 attribute 131, 141
 MTU 147
 online attribute 145
 portno attribute 143
 priority_queueing attribute 142
 problem determination attribute 137
 proxy ARP attributes 138
 recover attribute 149

qeth (*continued*)
 removing modules 136
 route4 attribute 155
 route6 attribute 155
 sniffer attributes 138
 subchannels 130
 summary of attributes 137, 138
 switching the discipline 136
 TCP segmentation offload 159
 ungroup attribute 140
 VIPA attributes 138
 qeth interfaces, mapping 5
 QETH performance statistics 152
 getharp, Linux command 535
 gethconf, Linux command 537
 qethqoat, Linux command 540
 queue_depth, zfcp attribute 90
 queue_depth=, zfcp module parameters 70
 queue_ramp_up_period, zfcp attribute 90
 queue_type
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 queueing, priority 142

R

RAM disk, initial 377
 ramdisk_size=, kernel parameter 578
 random number
 device driver 319
 device names 319
 device nodes 319
 random numbers
 reading 319
 raw_track_access, DASD attribute 57
 read monitor data 220
 readlink, Linux command 5
 readonly
 DASD attribute 62
 reboot
 kernel parameters 26
 record layout
 z/VM 239
 recording, z/VM recording attribute 241
 recover, lcs attribute 197
 recover, qeth attribute 149
 recovery, CTC interfaces 207
 Red Hat Enterprise Linux
 documentation website 601
 reflective relay mode 150
 relative port number
 qeth 143
 Remote Spooling Communications Subsystem 560
 remove, DCSS attribute 257
 removing
 cryptographic modules 316
 request processing
 cryptographic 308
 request_count
 cryptographic adapter attribute 310
 rescan
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 91
 reservation state
 DASD 60
 reservation_policy, DASD attribute 59
 reset_statistics
 zfcp attribute 75
 respawn prevention 334

resume 395
 resume=, kernel parameters 397
 reuse 116
 rev
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 Rivest-Shamir-Adleman 306
 ro, kernel parameter 579
 roles
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
 root=, kernel parameter 580
 route4, qeth attribute 155
 route6, qeth attribute 155
 router
 IPv4 router settings 155
 IPv6 router settings 155
 RPM
 libhbaapi-devel 98
 libhugetlbfs 287
 libica 306
 libzfcphbaapi 99
 mt-st 112
 openCryptoki 316
 oprofile 411
 s390utils 435
 sg3_utils 515
 src_vipa 168
 util-linux 277
 RSA 306
 RSA exponentiation 306
 RSCS 560
 rx_frames, zfcp attribute 75
 rx_words, zfcp attribute 75

S

s_id, zfcp attribute 78
 S/390 hypervisor file system 291
 defining access rights 294
 directory structure 291
 LPAR directory structure 291
 updating hypfs information 295
 z/VM directory structure 292
 s390dbf 222
 s390utils, package 435
 sample_count, cmf attribute 409
 save, DCSS attribute 256
 SCLP_ASYNC 427
 SCLP_ASYNC device driver 427
 sclp_con_drop=, kernel parameter 331
 sclp_con_pages=, kernel parameter 331
 sclp_cpi
 kernel module 423
 SCM 103
 scm_block=, module parameters 102
 script
 base device 357
 SCSI
 data consistency checking 95
 device nodes 67
 multipath devices 68
 SCSI device
 automatically attached, configuring 84
 configuring manually 85
 SCSI devices
 in sysfs 86
 information in sysfs 87
 partitioning 69

SCSI devices (*continued*)
 removing 94
 sysfs structure 66
 SCSI devices, in sysfs 87
 SCSI system dumper 360
 SCSI tape
 ltape data 517
 scsi_host_no, zfcp attribute 86
 scsi_id, zfcp attribute 86
 scsi_level
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 scsi_logging_level, Linux command 543
 scsi_lun, zfcp attribute 86
 scsi_target_id
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
 SCSI-over-Fibre Channel
 See zfcp
 SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver 65
 SCSI, booting from 380, 383
 SE (Support Element) 376
 secondary unicast 127, 128
 secondary_connector, value for qeth router attribute 156
 secondary_router, value for qeth router attribute 155
 seconds_since_last_reset
 zfcp attribute 75
 seglist, DCSS attribute 253
 segmentation offload, TCP 159
 send files
 vmur command 563
 send files to z/VSE
 vmur command 564
 sender=, module parameter 267
 serial_number, zfcp attribute 74
 service levels
 reporting to IBM Support 430
 service types, IP 142
 set, CPI attribute 425
 setsockopt 142
 setup
 LCS device driver 193
 network interface 5
 source VIPA 168
 standard VIPA 166
 setxattr 452
 sg_inq, Linux command 515
 sg3_utils, package 515
 shared, DCSS attribute 255
 shutdown actions 401
 Simple Network Management Protocol 185
 sizes=, module parameter 116
 SMSG_ID 269
 SMSG_SENDER 269
 smsgicuv_app
 device driver 267
 sniffer
 attributes 138
 sniffer, guest LAN 182
 SNMP 185
 SNMP queries 191
 snmpcmd command 191
 source VIPA 168
 example 170
 setup 168
 special characters
 line-mode terminals 339
 z/VM console 344

special file
See also device nodes
 DASD 38
 speed, zfcp attribute 74
 ssch_rsch_count, cmf attribute 409
 standard VIPA
 adapter outage 166
 setup 166
 standby CPU, activating 277
 state
 sysfs attribute 283
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 93
 state attribute, power management 399
 state, tape attribute 111
 stateless autoconfiguration, IPv6 131
 static page pool 221
 reading the size of the 274
 static page pool size
 setting to avoid guest swapping 430
 static routing, and VIPA 166
 statistics
 DASD 53, 468
 status
 DASD attribute 63
 status information
 FCP devices 79
 status, CHPID attribute 15, 16
 storage
 memory hotplug 281
 storage class memory
 device names 101
 device nodes 101
 displaying overview 512
 storage-class memory 101
 device driver 101
 stp
 online attribute 300
 STP 297
 sysfs interface 299
 stp=, kernel parameter 299
 subchannel
 multiple set 11
 status logging 421
 subchannel set ID 11
 subchannels
 attributes in sysfs 13
 CCW and CCW group devices 7
 CTCM 199
 displaying overview 499
 EADM 101
 in sysfs 12
 LCS 193
 qeth 130
 support
 AF_IUCV address family 213
 Support Element 376
 supported_classes
 zfcp attribute (port) 80
 supported_classes, zfcp attribute 75
 supported_speeds, zfcp attribute 75
 suspend 395
 swap partition
 for suspend resume 397
 priority 398
 swapping
 avoiding 221
 SYMPTOM, z/VM record 239
 syntax diagrams 593
 syntax overview
 zipl 348
 sysfs 7
 channel subsystem view 12
 device view 12
 device view by category 11
 device view by drivers 11
 FCP devices 66
 information about SCSI devices 87
 representations of SCSI devices 86
 SCSI devices 66
 sysfs attribute
 cm_enable 14
 state 283
 sysplex_name, CPI attribute 424
 system states
 displaying current settings 514
 system time 297
 system time protocol 297
 system_level, CPI attribute 425
 system_name, CPI attribute 424
 system_name=, module parameter 423
 system_type, CPI attribute 425
 systemd 333

T

T10 DIF 96
 tape
 blocksize attribute 111
 booting from 378, 383
 cmb_enable attribute 110
 cutype attribute 110
 device names 106
 device nodes 107
 devtype attribute 110
 display support 550
 displaying overview 515
 encryption support 546
 IDRC compression 112
 loading and unloading 113
 medium_state attribute 111
 MTIO interface 107
 online attribute 109, 110
 operation attribute 111
 state attribute 111
 tape device driver 105
 tape devices
 typical tasks 109
 tape390_crypt, Linux command 546
 tape390_display, Linux command 550
 TCP segmentation offload 159
 TCP segmentation offload (TSO)
 offload operation 157
 TCP/IP
 ARP 135
 DHCP 180
 point-to-point 199
 service machine 200
 TERM, environment variable 333
 terminal
 3270, switching the views of 338
 accessing over IUCV 337
 CCW, switching device on- or offline 338
 line-mode 333
 mainframe versus Linux 325

terminal (*continued*)
 non-operational, preventing re-spawns for 334
 provided by the 3270 terminal device driver 333
 terminals
 escape character 343
 tgid_bind_type, zfcp attribute 75
 time
 cuplugged keyword
 use with historical data 461
 time-of-day clock 297
 timed page pool 222
 reading the size of the 274
 timed page pool size
 setting to avoid guest swapping 430
 timeout
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 92
 timeout for LCS LAN commands 196
 TOD clock 297
 troubleshooting 429
 TSO
 offload operation 157
 TTY
 online attribute 339
 ttyrun 334
 tunedasd, Linux command 552
 tx_frames, zfcp attribute 75
 tx_words, zfcp attribute 75
 type
 cryptographic adapter attribute 310
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 type, CTCM attribute 203

U

udev
 DASD device nodes 38
 handling CP special messages 269
 uevent 269
 uid
 DASD attribute 63
 ungroup
 CTCM attribute 202
 LCS attribute 195
 qeth attribute 140
 unit_add, zfcp attribute 85
 unit_remove, zfcp attribute 94
 unloading
 cryptographic modules 316
 updating information
 S/390 hypervisor file system 295
 use_diag
 DASD attribute 63
 use_diag, DASD attribute 48
 user terminal login 333
 user_mode, kernel parameter 581
 using SCM devices with 103

V

VACM (View-Based Access Control Mechanism) 187
 vdso=, kernel parameter 582
 vendor
 DASD attribute 63
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
 VEPA mode 150

view
 channel subsystem 12
 device 12
 device by category 11
 device by drivers 11
 View-Based Access Control Mechanism (VACM) 187
 VINPUT 342
 CP command 343
 VIPA (virtual IP address)
 attributes 138
 description 165
 example 166
 high-performance environments 168
 source 168
 static routing 166
 usage 166
 VIPA, source
 setup 168
 VIPA, standard
 adapter outage 166
 setup 166
 virtual
 DASD 31
 IP address 165
 LAN 171
 virtual dynamic shared object 582
 Virtual Ethernet Port Aggregator mode 150
 VLAN
 configure 173
 introduction to 171
 VLAN (virtual LAN) 171
 VLAN example 173
 five Linux instances 174
 vmconvert, Linux command 561
 vmcp
 device driver 265
 device nodes 265
 vmcp, Linux command 555
 vmlhalt=, kernel parameter 583
 vmpanic=, kernel parameter 584
 vmpoff=, kernel parameter 585
 vmlreboot=, kernel parameter 586
 VMRM 222
 VMSG 342
 vmlur
 device driver 247
 device names 247
 device nodes 247
 vmlur command
 FTP 562
 guest memory dump 561
 send files 563
 send files to z/VSE 564
 z/VM reader as IPL device 562
 vmlur, kernel module 247
 vmlur, Linux command 557
 VOL1 labeled disk 33
 VOLSER 34
 VOLSER, DASD device access by 39
 volume label 34
 Volume Table Of Contents 35
 VTOC 34, 35

W

watchdog
 device driver 261

watchdog (*continued*)
 device node 261
 when adding DCSS 253
wwpn
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 88
wwpn, zfcp attribute 78, 87

X

x3270 code page 335
XFS 95
XPRAM 116
 device driver 115
 diagnosis 116
 features 115
 module parameter 116
 partitions 115
XRC, extended remote copy 297

Z

z/VM
 guest LAN sniffer 182
 monitor stream 223
 performance monitoring 219
z/VM *MONITOR record
 device name 234
 device node 234
z/VM *MONITOR record reader
 device driver 233
z/VM console, line edit characters 344
z/VM discontiguous saved segments
 See DCSS
z/VM reader
 booting from 382
z/VM reader as IPL device
 vmur command 562
z/VM record layout 239
z/VM recording
 device names 239
 device nodes 239
z/VM recording device driver 239
 autopurge attribute 242
 autorecording attribute 241
 purge attribute 242
 recording attribute 241
z/VM spool file queues 557
z90crypt
 cryptographic device node 307
 device node 309
zcrypt
 device driver 305
 unload 316
zcrypt configuration 448, 519
zcrypt sysfs attribute
 depth 310
 hwtype 310
 modalias 310
 request_count 310
 type 310
zfcp
 access_denied attribute (port) 80
 access_denied attribute (SCSI device) 88
 access_shared attribute 88
 card_version attribute 74
 delete attribute 94

zfcp (*continued*)
 device driver 65
 device nodes 67
 device_blocked attribute (SCSI device) 88
 dumped_frames attribute 75
 error_frames attribute 75
 failed attribute (channel) 77
 failed attribute (port) 82
 failed attribute (SCSI device) 91
 fcp_control_requests attribute 75
 fcp_input_megabytes attribute 75
 fcp_input_requests attribute 75
 fcp_lun attribute 87
 fcp_lun attribute (SCSI device) 88
 fcp_output_megabytes attribute 75
 fcp_output_requests attribute 75
 features 65
 hardware_version attribute 74
 HBA API support 98
 hba_id attribute 87
 hba_id attribute (SCSI device) 88
 in_recovery attribute 74
 in_recovery attribute (channel) 77
 in_recovery attribute (port) 80, 82
 in_recovery attribute (SCSI device) 88, 91
 invalid_crc_count attribute 75
 invalid_tx_word_count attribute 75
 iocountbits attribute 88
 iodone_cnt attribute (SCSI device) 88
 ioerr_cnt attribute (SCSI device) 88
 iorequest_cnt attribute (SCSI device) 88
 lic_version attribute 74
 link_failure_count attribute 75
 lip_count attribute 75
 loss_of_signal_count attribute 75
 loss_of_sync_count attribute 75
 maxframe_siz attribute 74
 model attribute (SCSI device) 88
 node_name attribute 74
 node_name attribute (port) 80
 nos_count attribute 75
 online attribute 73
 peer_d_id attribute 74
 peer_wwnn attribute 74
 peer_wwpn attribute 74
 permanent_port_name attribute 74, 78
 physical_s_id attribute 78
 port_id attribute 74
 port_id attribute (port) 80
 port_name attribute 74
 port_name attribute (port) 80
 port_remove attribute 83
 port_rescan attribute 79
 port_state attribute (port) 80
 port_type attribute 74
 prim_seq_protocol_err_count attribute 75
 prot_capabilities attribute 95
 queue_depth attribute 90
 queue_ramp_up_period attribute 90
 queue_type attribute (SCSI device) 88
 rescan attribute (SCSI device) 91
 reset_statistics attribute 75
 rev attribute (SCSI device) 88
 roles attribute (port) 80
 rx_frames attribute 75
 rx_words attribute 75
 s_id attribute 78

zfcp (*continued*)
 scsi_host_no attribute 86
 scsi_id attribute 86
 scsi_level attribute (SCSI device) 88
 scsi_lun attribute 86
 scsi_target_id attribute (port) 80
 seconds_since_last_reset attribute 75
 serial_number attribute 74
 speed attribute 74
 state attribute (SCSI device) 93
 supported_classes attribute 75
 supported_classes attribute (port) 80
 supported_speeds attribute 75
 tgid_bind_type attribute 75
 timeout attribute (SCSI device) 92
 tx_frames attribute 75
 tx_words attribute 75
 type attribute (SCSI device) 88
 unit_add attribute 85
 unit_remove attribute 94
 vendor attribute (SCSI device) 88
 wwpn attribute 78, 87
 wwpn attribute (SCSI device) 88
zfcp HBA API 69
zfcp HBA API library 99
zfcp module parameters
 datarouter= 70
 dbfsize= 70
 dif= 70
 no_auto_port_rescan= 70
 queue_depth= 70
zfcp traces 70
zfcp_disk_configure 94
zfcp_ping 100
zfcp_show 100
zipl
 and kernel parameters 353
 base functions 347
 base parameters 355
 boot device 351
 configuration file 369
 Linux command 347
 menu configurations 370
 modes 348
 parameters 365
 syntax overview 348
zipl boot menu 325
ZIPLCONF, environment variable 369
znetconf, Linux command 565

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

**Linux on System z
Device Drivers, Features, and Commands
on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7**

Publication No. SC34-2710-00

We appreciate your comments about this publication. Please comment on specific errors or omissions, accuracy, organization, subject matter, or completeness of this book. The comments you send should pertain to only the information in this manual or product and the way in which the information is presented.

For technical questions and information about products and prices, please contact your IBM branch office, your IBM business partner, or your authorized remarketer.

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you. IBM or any other organizations will only use the personal information that you supply to contact you about the issues that you state on this form.

Comments:

Thank you for your support.

Submit your comments using one of these channels:

- Send your comments to the address on the reverse side of this form.
- Send your comments via email to: eservdoc@de.ibm.com

If you would like a response from IBM, please fill in the following information:

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.

Email address

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You
SC34-2710-00



Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

PLACE
POSTAGE
STAMP
HERE

IBM Deutschland Research & Development GmbH
Information Development
Department 3282
Schoenaicher Strasse 220
71032 Boeblingen
Germany

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

SC34-2710-00

Cut or Fold
Along Line

IBM[®]

SC34-2710-00

